PanaXSeries

The One to Watch for Constant Innovation-Making the Future Come Alive

MICROCOMPUTER MN101C

MN101C78A/F78A

LSI User's Manual

Pub.No.21478-013E

Panasonic

Request for your special attention and precautions in using the technical information and semiconductors described in this book

(1) An export permit needs to be obtained from the competent authorities of the Japanese Government if any of the products or technologies described in this book and controlled under the "Foreign Exchange and Foreign Trade Law" is to be exported or taken out of Japan.

(2) The technical information described in this book is limited to showing representative characteristics and applied circuits examples of the products. It neither warrants non-infringement of intellectual property right or any other rights owned by our company or a third party, nor grants any license.

(3) We are not liable for the infringement of rights owned by a third party arising out of the use of the product or technologies as described in this book.

(4) The products described in this book are intended to be used for standard applications or general electronic equipment (such as office equipment, communications equipment, measuring instruments and household appliances).
Consult our sales staff in advance for information on the following applications:

- Special applications (such as for airplanes, aerospace, automobiles, traffic control equipment, combustion equipment, life support systems and safety devices) in which exceptional quality and reliability are required, or if the failure or malfunction of the products may directly jeopardize life or harm the human body.
- Any applications other than the standard applications intended.

(5) The products and product specifications described in this book are subject to change without notice for modification and/or improvement. At the final stage of your design, purchasing, or use of the products, therefore, ask for the most up-to-date Product Standards in advance to make sure that the latest specifications satisfy your requirements.

(6) When designing your equipment, comply with the guaranteed values, in particular those of maximum rating, the range of operating power supply voltage, and heat radiation characteristics. Otherwise, we will not be liable for any defect which may arise later in your equipment.
Even when the products are used within the guaranteed values, take into the consideration of incidence of break down and failure mode, possible to occur to semiconductor products. Measures on the systems such as redundant design, arresting the spread of fire or preventing glitch are recommended in order to prevent physical injury, fire, social damages, for example, by using the products.

(7) When using products for which damp-proof packing is required, observe the conditions (including shelf life and amount of time let standing of unsealed items) agreed upon when specification sheets are individually exchanged.

(8)

If you have any inquiries or questions about this book or our semiconductors, please contact one of our sales offices listed at the back of this book.

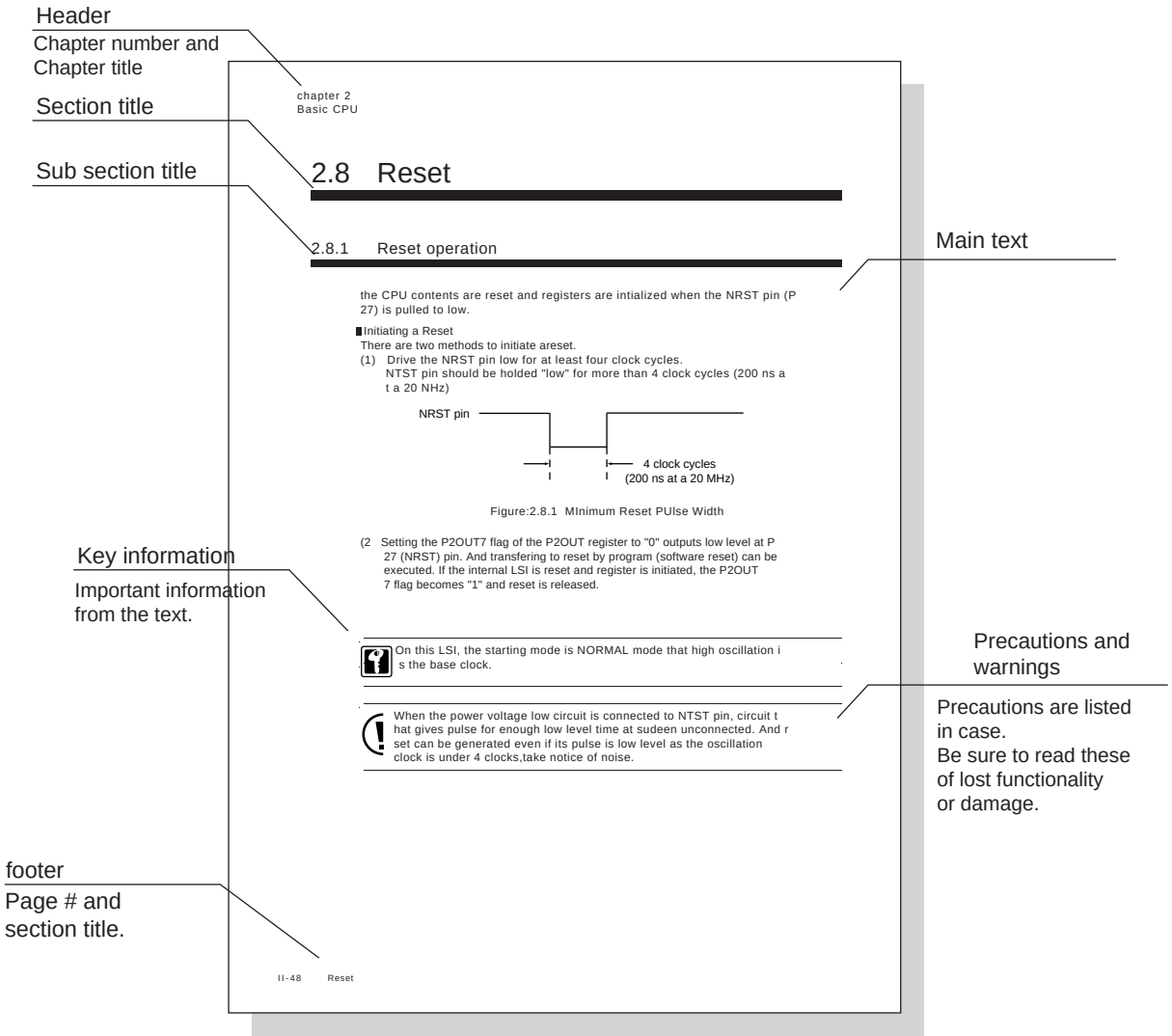
About This Manual

■Organization

In this LSI manual, this LSI functions are presented in the following order : overview, basic CPU functions, interrupt functions, port functions, timer functions, serial functions, and other peripheral hardware functions. Each section contains overview of function, block diagram, control register, operation, and setting example.

■Manual Configuration

Each section of this manual consists of a title, summary, main text, key information, precautions and warnings, and references.The layout and definition of each section are shown below.



■Finding Desired Information

This manual provides three methods for finding desired information quickly and easily.

1.Consult the index at the front of the manual to locate the beginning of each section.

2.Consult the table of contents at the front of the manual to locate desired titles.

3.A chapter number and its chapter title are located at the top corner of each page, and section titles are located at the bottom corner of each page.

■Related Manuals

Note that the following related documents are available.

- "MN101C Series LSI user's Manual"
  <Describes the device hardware>
- "MN101C Series Instruction Manual"
  <Describes the instruction set.>
- " Series C Compiler User's Manual: Usage Guide"
  <Describes the installation, the commands, and options of the C Compiler.>
- "MN101C Series C Compiler User's Manual: Language Description"
  <Describes the syntax of the C Compiler.>
- "MN101C Series C Compiler User's Manual: Library Reference"
  <Describes the standard library of the C Compiler.>
- "MN101C Series Cross-assembler User's Manual"
  <Describes the assembler syntax and notation.>
- "MN101C Series C Source Code Debugger User's Manual"
  <Describes the use of C source code debugger.>
- About This Manual "MN101C Series PanaX Series Installation Manual"
  <Describes the installation of C compiler, cross-assembler and C source code debugger and the procedure for bringing up the in-circuit emulator.>

Contents

Contents

0

Contents

Chapter 1 Overview

1

1.1 Overview

1.1.1 Overview

The MN101C series of 8-bit single-chip microcomputers incorporate multiple types of peripheral functions. This chip series is well suited for camera, VCR, MD, TV, CD, LD, printer, telephone, home automation, pager, air conditioner, PPC, remote control, fax machine, music instrument and other applications.

This LSI brings to embedded microcomputer applications flexible, optimized hardware configurations and a simple efficient instruction set. The MN101C78A has an internal 32 KB of ROM and 1.5 KB of RAM. Peripheral functions include 4 external interrupts, 18 internal interrupts including NMI, 9 timer counters, 4 sets of serial interfaces, A/D converter, watchdog timer, buzzer output, and remote control output. The configuration of this microcomputer is well suited for application as a system controller in a camera, timer selector for VCR, CD player, or MD.

With two oscillation system (max. 10 MHz/32 kHz) contained on the chip, the system clock can be switched to high frequency input (high speed mode), or to low frequency input (low speed mode).

The system clock is generated by dividing the oscillation clock. The best operation clock for the system can be selected by switching its frequency by software. High speed mode has the normal mode which is based on 2-cycle clock (fosc/2) and the double speed mode which is based on the same cycle clock with fosc.

A machine cycle (min. instructions execution) in the normal mode is 250 ns when fosc is 8 MHz, and when fosc is 10 MHz, a machine cycle is 200 ns. A machine cycle in the double speed mode is 125 ns when fosc is 8 MHz, and 100 ns when fosc is 10 MHz. Two types of packages are available, 48-pin TQFP and 44-pin QFP.

1.1.2 Product Summary

This manual describes the following models of the MN101C78 series. These products have identical functions.

However, MN101C78A is described mainly.

Table:1.1.1 Product Summary

Model	ROM Size	RAM Size	Classification
MN101C78A*1	32 KB	1.5 KB	Mask ROM version
MN101C789*2	24 KB	1.5 KB	Mask ROM version
MN101CF78A*1	32 KB	1.5 KB	Flash EEPROM version

*1 Under development

*2 Under consideration

1.2 Hardware Functions

■ Functions

- ROM capacity: 32768x8 bit *1
- RAM capacity: 1536x8 bit *1

*1 Differs depending upon the model. Refer to [Chapter 1 1-1-2 Product Summary]

- Package: QFP44 (10 mm square, 0.8 mm pitch)

  TQFP48 (7 mm square, 0.5 mm pitch)
- Machine cycle: High speed mode <fs=fosc/2, fosc/1>

  0.125 ms / -, 8 MHz (2.7 V to 3.6 V)

  0.25 ms / 8 MHz, 4 MHz (2.3 V to 3.6 V) *2

  0.50 ms / 4 MHz, 2 MHz (1.8 V to 3.6 V) *2

  Low speed mode <fs=fx / 2>

  62.5 ms / 32 kHz (1.8 V to 3.6 V) *2

*2 The guaranteed operating range for Flash EEPROM version MN1010CF78A is 2.7 V to 3.6 V.

- Internal clock gear: Operation speed of internal system clock is variable by changing the frequency.

  (2, 4, 16, 32, 64, 128 dividing)
- Oscillating circuit: Two oscillation circuits (high speed / low speed)
- Operation modes: NORMAL mode

  SLOW mode

  HALT mode

  STOP mode

  (The operation clock can be switched in each model)
- Operating voltage: 1.8 V to 3.6 V (Flash version of TQFP48, MN101CF78A is 2.7 V to 3.6 V)
- Operating temperature: -40 C to +85 C
- Interrupt: 22 levels

<External interrupts> Edge selectable.

IRQ0: External interrupt (AC zero cross detector. With/Without noise filter)

IRQ1: External interrupt (AC zero cross detector. With/Without noise filter)

IRQ2: External interrupt (Both edges selectable IRQ3 – external interrupt)

IRQ3: (Key scan interrupt only)

<Timer interrupts> TM0IRQ: Timer 0 interrupt (8-bit timer)

TM1IRQ: Timer 1 interrupt (8-bit timer)

TM2IRQ: Timer 2 interrupt (8-bit timer)

TM3IRQ: Timer 3 interrupt (8-bit timer)

TM7IRQ: Timer 7 interrupt (16-bit timer)

T7OC2IRQ: Timer 7 compare register 2 interrupt (16-bit timer)

TM8IRQ: Timer 8 interrupt (16-bit timer)

T8OC2IRQ: Timer 8 compare register 2 interrupt (16-bit timer)

TM6IRQ: Timer 6 interrupt (8-bit timer)

TBIRQ: Time base timer interrupt

<Serial interface interrupts>

SC0RIRQ: Serial interface 0 interrupt (UART reception)

SC0TIRQ: Serial interface 0 interrupt (UART transmission, synchronous)

SC1RIRQ: Serial interface 1 interrupt (UART reception)

SC1TIRQ: Serial interface 1 interrupt (UART transmission, synchronous)

SC3IRQ: Serial interface 3 interrupt (Single master IIC, synchronous)

SC4IRQ: Serial interface 4 interrupt (Slave IIC)

<Watchdog timer interrupt> NMI: Non-maskable interrupt

<A/D conversion end interrupt> ADIRQ: A/D conversion interrupt

- A/D converter: 10-bit x 7 channels

- Timer counter: 9 timers All timer counters generate interrupt

Timer 0 (8-bit timer for general use)

Square wave output, PWM output, Event count, Simple pulse width measurement,

Clock source: fosc, fosc/4, fosc/16, fosc/32, fosc/64, fs/2, fs/4, fx, external clock

P50 of the large current pin (TM0OA) or P15 (TM0OB) for PWM output

Timer 1 (8-bit timer for general use or UART baud rate timer)

Square wave output, Event count, Cascade connection to timer 0

Clock source: fosc, fosc/4, fosc/16, fosc/64, fosc/128, fs/2, fs/8, fx, external clock

Timer 2 (8-bit timer for general use or UART baud rate timer)

Square wave output, PWM output, Event count, Simple pulse width measurement

Clock source: fosc, fosc/4, fosc/16, fosc/32, fosc/64, fs/2, fs/4, fx, external clock

Added pulse (2-bit) system PWM

P52 of the large current pin (TM2OA) or P16 (TM2OB) for PWM output

Timer 3 (8-bit timer for general use)

Square wave output, Event count,

Cascade connection to timer2

Clock source: fosc, fosc/4, fosc/16, fosc/64, fosc/128, fs/2, fs/8, fx, external clock

Timer 6 (8-bit timer for general use)

Combined with time base timer, it can be set to measure one minute intervals.

Clock source: fosc, fs, fx, time base output ($1/2^{12}$ or $1/2^{13}$)

Timer 7 (16-bit timer for general use)

Square wave output, P51 of the large-current pin (TM7O) for PWM output and IGBT control output (Duty/Cycle continuous variable), Event count, Pulse width measurement, Input capture, Cascade connection to timer 8 (32-bit timer, 32-bit PWM, input capture can be used)

Clock source: 1/1, 1/2, 1/4, 1/16 of any one of fosc, fx, or external clock

Timer 8 (16-bit timer double buffering)

Square wave output, P53 of the large-current pin (TM8O) for PWM output (Duty continuous variable), Event count, pulse width measurement, Input capture

Time base timer

Clock source: fosc, fx

Interrupt enable for source clock at the dividing output of $1/2^{7}$, $1/2^{8}$, $1/2^{9}$, 1.2^{10}, $1/2^{13}$, $1/2^{15}$

Watchdog timer

Watchdog timer frequency can be selected from $fs/2^{16}$, $fs/2^{18}$, $fs/2^{20}$

- Buzzer output, Inverted buzzer output:

Output frequency can be selected from $fosc/2^{9}$, $fosc/2^{10}$, $fosc/2^{11}$, $fosc/2^{13}$, $fosc/2^{14}$, $fx/2^{3}$, $fx/2^{4}$.

- Remote control carrier output:

Based on the timer 0 and timer 3 output, a remote control carrier with duty cycle of 1/2 or 1/3 can be output.

- Clock output: OSC oscillation source or system clock output can be selected.

Clock source: 1/1, 1/2, 1/4, 1/16 of any one of fosc, fx, or external clock

- Serial interface: 4 types

Serial interface 0, 1: 2 channels

CH0: Duplex UART / Synchronous serial interface

- Transfer clock: focs/2, focs/4, focs/16, focs/64, fs/2, fs/4, 1/2 of timer 1 (timer 2) output
- Timer 1 (or timer2) is used as baud rate timer at UART.
- MSB/LSB can be selected as the first bit to be transferred. An arbitrate transfer size from 1 to 8 bits can be selected.
- It can be used as parity check, overrun error, framing error detection, or 2 channels serial interface.

CH1: Duplex UART / Synchronous serial interface

- Transfer clock: focs/2, focs/4, focs/16, focs/64, fs/2, fs/4, 1/2 of timer 1 (timer 2) output
- Timer 1 (or timer2) is used as baud rate timer at UART.
- MSB/LSB can be selected as the first bit to be transferred. An arbitrate transfer size from 1 to 8 bits can be selected.
- It can be used as parity check, overrun error, framing error detection, or 2 channels serial interface.

Serial interface 1 I/O (SBO1, SBI1, SBT1) can be switched to P15 to P17 or PA5 to PA7. (48 pin version only)

Serial interface 0 I/O (SBO0, SBI0, SBT0) can be switched to P75 to P77 or PA0 to PA2. (44 pin version/ 48 version)

Serial interface 3: 1 channel

Single master IIC / Synchronous serial interface

- Single master handling IIC communication enable (with ACK, 9 bits are transferred)
- Transfer clock: focs/2, focs/4, focs/16, focs/32, focs/64, fs/2, fs/4, timer 2 (timer 3) output
- MSB/LSB can be selected as the first bit to be transferred. An arbitrate transfer size from 1 to 8 bits can be selected.

Serial interface 4: 1 channel

IIC slave interface

- IIC high-speed transfer mode (communication speed: 400 kbps)
- 7-bit or 10-bit of slave address can be set.
- General call communication mode handling

(SCL pin, SDA pin can be switched to P10, P11, or P76, P77)

- LED driver: 4 pins

LCD driver pins:

Segment output 12 pins max. (SEG0 to SEG11)

SEG0 to SEG11 are switchable to I/O ports in unit of 1 pin.

[Note: At reset, SEG0 to SEG11 are input pors.]

Common output pins: 4 pins

COM0 to COM3 are switchable to I/O port in 1 pin unit.

Display mode selection

Static

1/2 duty, 1/2 bias

1/3 duty, 1/3 bias

1/4 duty, 1/4 bias

LCD driver clock

The source clock is the main clock (fosc):

$1/2^{18}$, $1/2^{17}$, $1/2^{16}$, $1/2^{15}$, $1/2^{14}$, $1/2^{13}$, $1/2^{12}$, $1/2^{11}$

The source clock is the sub-clock (fx)

$1/2^{9}$, $1/2^{8}$, $1/2^{7}$, $1/2^{6}$

LCD power supply

Available at VDD>VLC1

External supply voltage is supplied by VLC1, VLC2, VLC3 pins or voltage applied to VLC1 is divided by internal resistance and supplied to VLC2 and VLC3 pins

- Port:	48 pin version	44 pin version
I/O ports	39 pins (dual function)	35 pins (dual function)
LED (large current) driver pin (switchable to timer output)	4 pins	44 pins
LCD power supply pin	3 pins	3 pins
A/D input pin	1 pin	1 pin
A/D input/ Serial interface pin	6 pins	3 pins
Timer I/O / LCD driver/ Remote control carrier output pin	1 pin	1 pin
Timer output/ LCD driver/ Serial interface pin	2 pins	2 pins
Timer I/O /LCD driver/ Serial interface pin	1 pin	1 pin
Timer I/O /Buzzer output/ LCD driver pin	1 pin	1 pin
Timer I/O /inverted buzzer output/ LCD driver pin	1 pin	1 pin
IIC slave pin	2 pins	2 pins
Key input/ LCD driver pin	3	3
Key input/ LCD driver/ PWM output pin	2	2
Key input/ LCD driver/ Serial interface pin	1	1
Key input/ LCD driver/ Serial interface/ IIC slave pin	2	2
Common output pin	1	1
Common output/ Serial interface pin	3	3
External interrupt pin (2 pins are used as zero cross input pin)	3	3
I/O ports	1	-
XI pin	1	1
Special pin	10	10
Analog reference voltage input pin	1	1
Operation mode input pin	1	1
Reset input pin	1	1
Oscillation pin (1 pin is used as I/O pin)	4	4
Power supply pin	3	3

- Pin switching:

Serial interface I/O

	Option 1	Option 2	Option 3
Serial interface 0	SBT0A	SBT0B	-
Synchronous/ UART	SBO0A/TXD0A	SBO0B/TXD0B	
	STI0A/RXD0A	STI0B/RXD0B	
		*UART for onboard serial programming	
Serial interface 1	SBT1A	SBT1B	-
Synchronous/ UART	SBO1A/TXD1A	SBO1B/TXD1B	
	STI1A/RXD1A	STI1B/RXD1B	
		*44 pin version is not available	
Serial interface 3	SBT3	-	-
Synchronous/ IIC single master	SBT03		
	SBI3		
Serial interface 4	SDA4A	SDA4B	-
IIC slave	SCL4A	SCL4B	
	*D-Wire for onboard serial programming		

Timer I/O

	Option 1 (I/O)	Option 2 (output 1)	Option 3 (output 2)
Timer 0	TM0IO	TM0OA	TM0OB
Timer 1	TM1IO	-	-
Timer 2	TM2IO	TM2OA	TM2OB
Timer 3	TM3IO	-	-
Timer 7	TM7IO	TM7O	-
Timer 8	TM8IO	TM8O	-

1.3 Pin Description

1.3.1 Pin configuration

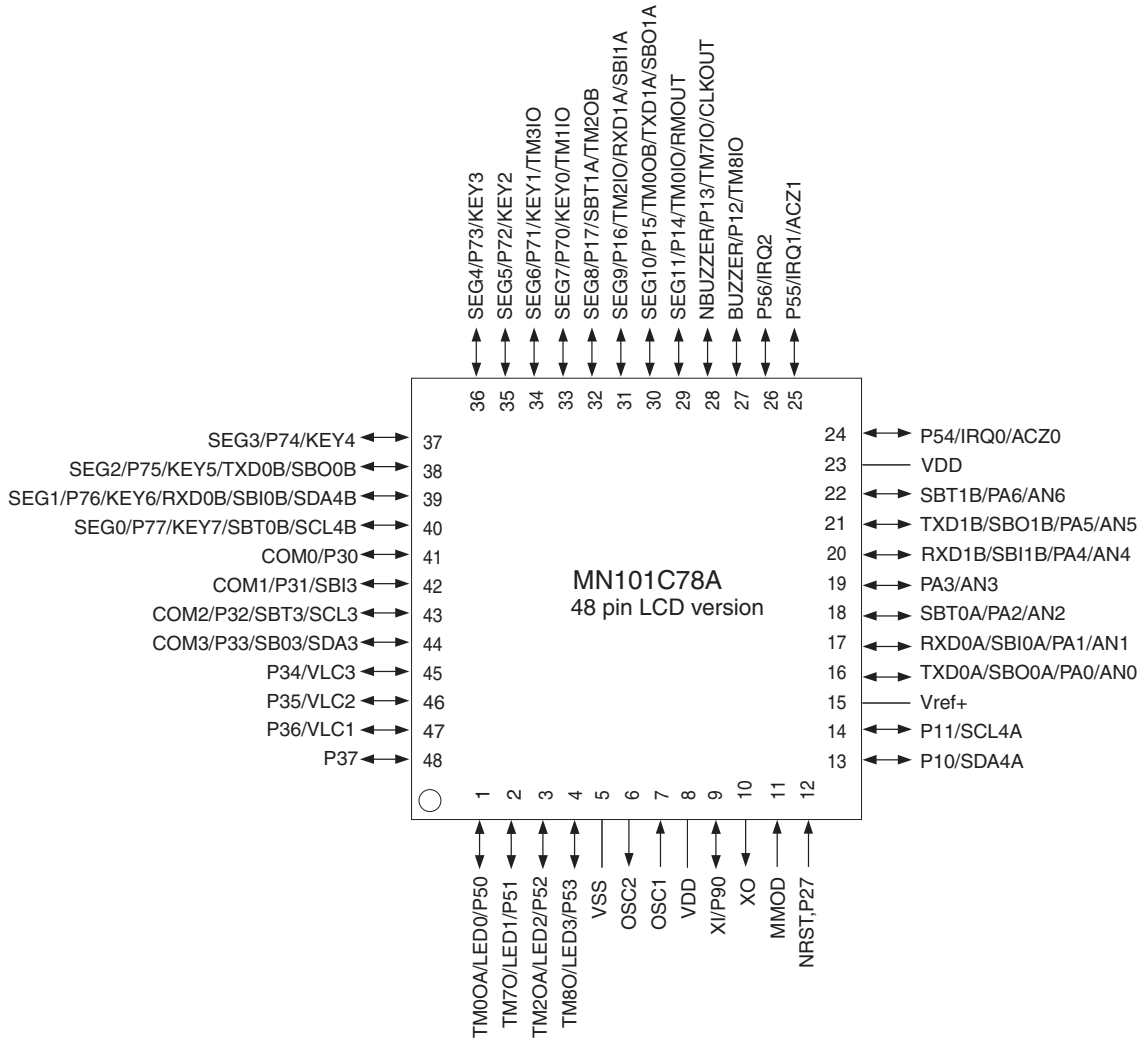


Figure:1.3.1 Pin Configuration (48TQFP: TOP VIEW)

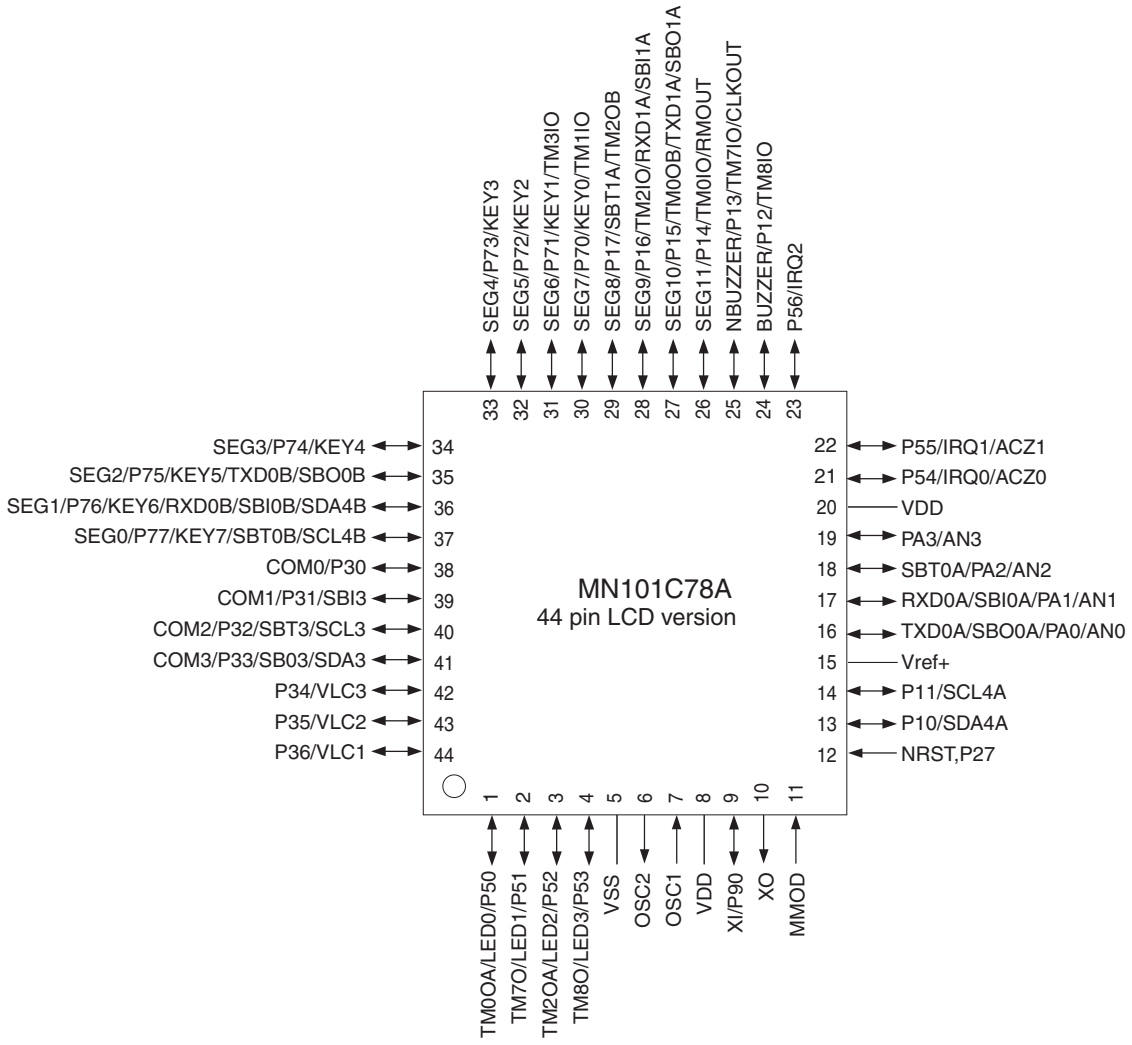


Figure:1.3.2 Pin Configuration (44QFP: TOP VIEW)

1.3.2 Pin Specification

Table:1.3.1 Pin Specification

Pins	Special Functions		I/O	Direction Control	Pin Control	Functions Description	
P10	SDA4A		in/out	P1DIR0	P1PLU0	SDA4A: IIC4 Data I/O	
P11	SCL4A		in/out	P1DIR1	P1PLU1	SCL4A: IIC4 Clock I/O	
P12	TM8IO	BUZZER	in/out	P1DIR2	P1PLU2	TM8IO: Timer 8 I/O	BUZZER: Buzzer output
P13	TM7IO	NBUZZER	in/out	P1DIR3	P1PLU3	TM7IO: Timer 7 I/O	NBUZZER: Buzzer reverse output
	CLKOUT					CLKOUT: Frequency output	
P14	TM0IO	RMOUT	in/out	P1DIR4	P1PLU4	TM0IO: Timer 0 I/O	RMOUT: Remote control carrier output
	SEG11					SEG11: Segment output	
P15	TM00B	SB01A	in/out	P1DIR5	P1PLU5	TMOOB: Timer 8 I/O	SB01A: Serial interface transmission data output
	TXD1A	SEG10				TXD1A: UART1 transmission data output	SEG10: Segment output
P16	TM2IO	SBI1A	in/out	P1DIR6	P1PLU6	TM2IO: Timer 2 I/O	SBI1A: Serial interface 1 reception data input
	RXD1A	SEG9	in/out			RXD1A: UART1 reception data input	SEG9: Segment output
P17	TM2OB	SBT1A	in/out	P1DIR7	P1PLU7	TM2OB: Timer 2 output	SBT1A: Serial interface 1 clock I/O
	SEG8					SEG8: Segment output	
P27	NRST		in	-	-	NRST: Reset	
P30	COM0		in/out	P3DIR0	P3PLU0	COM0: LCD common output	
P31	SBI3	COM1	in/out	P3DIR1	P3PLU1	COM1: LCD common output	SBI3: Serial interface 3 reception data input
P32	SBT3	SCL3	in/out	P3DIR2	P3PLU2	COM2: LCD common output	SBT3: Serial interface 3 clock I/O
	COM2					SCL3: IIC3 clock output	
P33	SBO3	SDA3	in/out	P3DIR3	P3PLU3	COM3: LCD common output	SBO3: Serial interface 3 transmission data output
	COM3					SDA3: Serial data I/O	
P34	VLC3		in/out			VLC3: LCD power	
P35	VLC2		in/out			VLC2: LCD power	
P36	VLC1		in/out	-	-	VLC1: LCD power	
P37 *1			in/out	P3DIR7	P3PLU7		
P50	TM0OA	LED0	in/out	P5DIR0	P5PLU0	TM0OA: Timer 0 output	LED0: LED driver pin 0
P51	TM7O	LED1	in/out	P5DIR1	P5PLU1	TM70: Timer 7 output	LED1: LED driver pin 1
P52	TM2OA	LED2t	in/out	P5DIR2	P5PLU2	TM2OA: Timer 2 output	LED2: LED driver pin 2
P53	TM8O	LED3	in/out	P5DIR3	P5PLU3	TM8O: Timer 8 output	LED3: LED driver pin 3
P54	IRQ0	ACZ0	in/out	P5DIR4	P5PLU4	IRQ0: External interrupt 0	ACZ0: Zero cross input 0
P55	IRQ1	ACZ1	in/out	P5DIR5	P5PLU5	IRQ1: External interrupt 1	ACZ1: Zero cross input 1
P56	IRQ2		in/out	P5DIR6	P5PLU6	IRQ2: External interrupt 2	
P70	TM1IO	KEY0	in/out	P7DIR0	P7PLU0	TM1IO: Timer 1 I/O	KEYO: Key interrupt input 0
	SEG7					SEG7: Segment output	
P71	TM3IO	KEY1	in/out	P7DIR1	P7PLU1	TM3IO: Timer 1 I/O	KEY1: Key interrupt input 1
	SEG6					SEG6: Segment output	
P72	KEY2	SEG5	in/out	P7DIR2	P7PLU2	KEY2: Key interrupt input 2	SEG5: Segment output
P73	KEY3	SEG4	in/out	P7DIR3	P7PLU3	KEY3: Key interrupt input 3	SEG4: Segment output
P74	KEY4	SEG3	in/out	P7DIR4	P7PLU4	KEY4: Key interrupt input 4	SEG3: Segment output

Pins	Special Functions		I/O	Direction Control	Pin Control	Functions Description	
P75	SBO0B	TXD0B	in/out	P7DIR5	P7PLU5	SBO0B: Serial interface 0 transmission data output	TXD0B: UART0 transmission data output
	KEY5	SEG2				KEY5: Key interrupt input 5	SEG2: Segment output
P76	SBIOB	RXDOB	in/out	P7DIR6	P7PLU6	SBI0B: Serial interface 0 reception data input	RXD0B: UART0 reception data input
	SDA4B	KEY6				SDA4B:IIC4 data I/O	KEY6: KEY interrupt input 6
	SEG1					SEG1: Segment output	
P77	SBT0B	SCL4B	in/out	P7DIR7	P7PLU7	SBT0B: Serial interface 0 clock I/O	SCL4B: IIC4 clock I/O
	KEY7	SEG0				KEY7: Key interrupt input 7	SEG0: Segment 0 output
P90	XI		in	P9DIR0	P9PLU0	XI: Low speed frequency input pin	
PA0	SBO0A	TXD0A	in/out	PADIR0	PAPLU0	SBO0A: Serial interface 0 data output	TXD0A: UART0 transmission data output
	AN0					AN0: Analog 0 input	
PA1	SBI0A	RXD0A	in/out	PADIR1	PAPLU1	SBI0A: Serial interface 0 data input	RXD0A: UART0 reception data input
	AN1					AN1: Analog 1 input	
PA2	SBT0A	AN2	in/out	PADIR2	PAPLU2	SBT0A: Serial interface 0 clock I/O	AN2: Analog 2 input
PA3	AN3		in/out	PADIR3	PAPLU3	AN3: Analog 3 input	
PA4 *1	AN4		in/out	PADIR4	PAPLU4	AN4: Analog 4 input	
	SBI1B	RXD1B				SBI1B: Serial interface 1 data input	RXD1B: UART1 reception data input
PA5 *1	SBO1B	TXD1B	in/out	PADIR5	PAPLU5	SBO1B: Serial interface 1 transmission data output	TXD1B: UART1 transmission data output
	AN5					AN5: Analog 5 input	
PA6 *1	SBT1B	AN6	in/out	PADIR6	PAPLU6	SBT1B: Serial interface 1 clock I/O	AN6: Analog 6 input

* 1 Not available for 44 pin QFP package

1.3.3 Pin Functions

Table:1.3.2 Pin Functions

Name	TQFP 48 Pin No.	QFP44 Pin No.	I/O	Other Function	Function	Description
V_{SS} V_{DD} Vref +	5 8, 23 15	5 8, 20 15	-		Power supply pins	Supply 1.8 V to 3.6 V to V_{DD} and 0 V to V_{SS}. For MN101CF78A, supply 2.7 V to 3.6 V to V_{DD}
OSC1 OSC2	7 6	7 6	Input Output		Clock input pins Clock output pins	Connect these oscillation pins to ceramic or crystal ocsillators for high-frequency clock operation. If the clock is an external input, connect it to OSC1 and leave OSC2 open. The chip will not operate with an external clock when using either the STOP or SLOW modes.
XI XO	9 10	9 10	Input Output	P90	Clock input pins Clock output pins	Connect these oscillation pins to crystal oscillators for low-frequency clock operation. If the clock is an external input, connect it to XI and leave XO open. When using the STOP mode, the chip will not operate with an external clock. If these pins are not used, connect XI to V_{SS} and leave XO open.
NRST	12	12	Input	P27	Reset pins [Active low]	This pin resets the chip when power is turned on, is allocated as P27 and contains an internal pull-up resistor (Type. 35 kw). Setting this pin “L” level initialize the internal state of the device. Thereafter, setting the input to “H” level releases the reset. The hardware waits for the system clock to stabilize, then processes the reset interrupt. Also, if “0” is written to P27 and the reset is initiated by software, “L” level will be output. The output has an N-ch open-drain configuration. If a capacitor is to be inserted between NRST and V_{SS}, it is recommended that a discharge diode be placed between NRST and V_{DD}.
P10 P11 P12 P13 P14 P15 P16 P17	13 14 27 28 29 30 31 32	13 14 24 25 26 27 28 29	I/O	SDA4A SCL4A TM8IO, BUZZER TM7IO, NBUZZER, CLKOUT TM0IO, RMOUT, SEG11 TM0OB, SBO1A, TXD1A, SEG10 TM2IO, SBI1A, RXD1A, SEG9 TM2OB, SBI1A, SEG8	I/O port 0	8-bit COMS tri-state I/O port. Each bit can be set individually as either an input or output by the P1DIR register. A pull-up / pull-down resistor for each bit can be selected individually by the P1PLU register. A pull-up / pull-down resistor for each port can be selected individually by the SELUD register. (However, pull-up and pull-down resistors cannot be mixed.) At reset, the input mode is selected and P10, P11 are pull-up resistor enable ("H" output), P12 to P17 are pull-up resistor disable (output"H", "Hi-Z").
MMOD	11	11	Input		Memory mode setting pins	Input always "L" level. It is used for Flash programming only.
P27	12	12	Input	NRST	I/O port 2	Port P27 has an N-ch open-drain configuration. When “0” is written and the reset is initiated by software, “L” level will be output.

Name	TQFP 48 Pin No.	QFP44 Pin No.	I/O	Other Function	Function	Description
P30 P31 P32 P33 P34 P35 P36 P37 *1	41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48	38 39 40 41 42 43 44		COM0 SBI3, COM1 SBT3, SCL3, COM2 SBO3, SDA3, COM3 VLC3 VLC2 VLC1	I/O port 3	8-bit COMS tri-state I/O port. Each bit can be set individually as either an input or output by the P3DIR register. A pull-up resistor for each bit can be selected individually by the P3PLU register. At reset, the input mode is selected and P37is pull-up resistor enable ("H" output), P31 to P37 are pull-up resistor disable (output "H", "Hi-Z").
P50 P51 P52 P53 P54 P55 P56	1 2 3 4 24 25 26	I 2 3 4 21 22 23	I/O	TM0OA, LED0 TM7O, LED1 TM2OA, LED2 TM8O, LED3 IRQ0, ACZ0 IRQ1, ACZ1 IRQ2	I/O port 5	7-bit COMS tri-state I/O port. Each bit can be set individually as either an input or output by the P5DIR register. A pull-up resistor for each bit can be selected individually by the P5PLU register. Also, at output, LED direct drive is enabled for P50 to P53. At reset, the input mode is selected and pull-up resistors are disabled (output “H”, “Hi-Z”).
P70 P71 P72 P73 P74 P75 P76 P77	33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40	30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37	I/O	TM1IO, KEY0, SEG7 TM3IO, KEY1, SEG6 KEY2, SEG5 KEY3, SEG4 KEY4, SEG3 SBO0B, TXD0B, KEY5, SEG2 SBI0B, RXD0B, SDA4B, KEY6, SEG1 SBT0B, SCL4B, KEY7, SEG0	I/O port 7	8-bit COMS tri-state I/O port. Each bit can be set individually as either an input or output by the P7DIR register. A pull-up / pull-down resistor for each bit can be selected individually by the P7PLU register. A pull-up / pull-down resistor for each port can be selected individually by the SELUD register. (However, pull-up and pull-down resistors cannot be mixed.) At reset, the input mode is selected and pull-up resistors are disabled (output “H”, “Hi-Z”).
P90	9	9	I/O	XI	I/O port 9	8-bit COMS tri-state I/O port. Each bit can be set individually as either an input or output by the P9DIR register. A pull-up / pull-down resistor for each bit can be selected individually by the P9PLU register. Also, by XSEL register, the pin can be switched to oscillation input pin which connects to crystal oscillators for low-frequency clock operation. If the clock is an external input, connect it to XI and leave XO open. At the STOP mode, the chip will not operate with an external clock. At reset, the input mode is selected and pull-up resistors are enabled (“H” output).
PA0 PA1 PA2 PA3 PA4 *1 PA5 *1 PA6 *1	16 17 18 19 20 21 22	16 17 18 19	I/O	AN0, SBO0A, TXD0A AN1, SBI0A, RXD0A AN2, SBT0A AN3 AN4, SBI1B, RXD1B AN5, SBO1A, TXD1B AN6, SBT1B	I/O port A	7-bit COMS tri-state I/O port. Each bit can be set individually as either an input or output by the P7DIR register. At reset, the input mode is selected and pull-up resistors are disabled (high impedance output).
SBO0A SBO0B SBO1A SBO1B *1 SBO3	16 38 30 21 44	16 35 27 41	I/O	PA0, AN0, TXD0A P75, KEY5, RXD0B, SEG2 P15, TXD1A, TM0OB, SEG10 PA5, AN5, TXD1B P33, COM3	Serial interface transmission data output pins	Transmission data output pins for serial interface 0, 1, 3. The output configuration, either COMS push-pull or Nch open-drain can be selected at the P1ODC, P3ODC, P7ODC, PAODC registers. Pull-up and pull-down registers can be selected by the P1PLUD, P3PLU, P7PLUD, PAPLU registers. Select the output mode at the PADIR registers and serial data output mode by serial mode register 1 (SC0MD1, SC1MD1, SC3MD1). These can be used as normal I/O pins when the serial interface is not used.

Name	TQFP 48 Pin No.	QFP44 Pin No.	I/O	Other Function	Function	Description
SBI0A SBI0B SBI1A SBI1B *1 SBI3	17 39 31 20 42	17 36 28 39	Input	PA1, SBI0A, AN1 P76, SBI0B, SEG1, KEY6 P16, TM2IO, SBI1A, SEG9 PA4, AN4, DBI1B P31, COM1	Serial interface reception data output pins	Reception data output pins for serial interface 0, 1, 3. Pull-up and pull-down resistors can be selected by the P1PLUD, P3PLU, P7PLUD, PAPLU registers. Select input mode by the P1DIR, P3DIR, P7DIR, PADIR registers and serial input mode by the serial mode register 1 (SC0MD1, SC1MD1, SC3MD1). These can be used as normal I/O pins when the serial interface is not used.
SBT0A SBT0B SBT1A SBT1B *1 SBT3	18 40 32 22 43	18 37 29 40	I/O	PA2, AN2 P77, KEY7, SCL4B, SEG0 P17, TM2OB, SEG8 PA6, AN6 P32, SCL3, COM2	Serial interface clock I/O pins	Clock I/O pins for serial interface 0, 1, 3. The output configuration, either COMS push-pull or Nch open-drain can be selected at the P1ODC, P3ODC, P7ODC, PAODC registers. Pull-up and pull-down registers can be selected by the P1PLUD, P3PLU, P7PLUD, PAPLU registers. Select clock I/O for each communication mode by the P1DIR, P3DIR, P7DIR, PADIR, PADIR registers and the serial mode register 1 (SC0MD1, SC1MD1, SC3MD1) These can be used as normal I/O pins when the serial interface is not used.
TXD0A TXD0B TXD1A TXD1B *1	16 38 30 21	16 35 27	Output	PA0, SBO0A, AN0 P75,SBO0B, SEG2, KEY5 P15, TMO0B, SBO1B, SEG10 PA5, AN5, SBO1B	UART transmission data output pins	Transmission data output pin for serial interface 0, 1 in UART mode The output configuration, either COMS push-pull or Nch open-drain can be selected at the P1ODC, P7ODC, PAODC registers. Pull-up and pull-down registers can be selected by the P0PLU, P1PLUD, PAPLU registers. Select the output mode at the P1DIR, P7DIR, PADIR registers and serial data output mode by serial mode register 1 (SC0MD1, SC1MD1). These can be used as normal I/O pins when the serial interface is not used.
RXD0A RXD0B RXD1A RXD1B *1	17 39 31 20	17 36 28	Input	PA1, SBI0A, AN1 P76, SBI0B, SEG1, KEY6 P16, TM2IO, SBI1A, SEG9 PA4, AN4, SBI1B	UART reception data input pins	Reception data input pin for serial interface 0, 1 in UART mode. Pull-up and pull-down registers can be selected by the P1PLUD, P7PLUD, PAPLU registers. Select the input mode at the P1DIR, P7DIR, PADIR registers and serial input mode by serial mode register 1 (SC0MD1, SC1MD1). These can be used as normal I/O pins when the serial interface is not used.
SDA3 SDA4A SDA4B	44 13 39	41 13 36	Output	P33, SBBO3, COM3 P10 P76, SBI0B, RXD0B, KEY6	IIC data output pins	Data output pin for serial interface 3, 4 in IIC mode. The output configuration, Nch open-drain can be selected by P1ODC, P3ODC, P7ODC registers and pull-up resistor can be enabled by the P1PLUD, P3PLU, P7PLU registers. Select output mode by the P1DIR, P3DIR, P7DIR registers. These can be used as normal I/O pins when the serial interface is not used.

Name	TQFP 48 Pin No.	QFP44 Pin No.	I/O	Other Function	Function	Description
SCL3 SCL4A SCL4B	43 14 40	40 14 37	Input	P32, SBT3, COM2 P11 P77, KEY7, SBT0B, SEG0	IIC clock I/O pins	Clock I/O pin for serial interface 3, 4 in IIC mode. The output configuration, Nch open-drain can be selected by P1ODC, P3ODC, P7ODC registers and pull-up resistor can be enabled by the P1PLUD, P3PLUD, P7PLUD registers. Select output mode by the P1DIR, P3DIR, P7DIR registers, and select clock I/O by the serial mode register 3 (SC3MD1) and the serial I/O switching control register (SCSEL). These can be used as normal I/O pins when the serial interface is not used.
TM0IO TM1IO TM2IO TM3IO	29 33 31 34	26 30 28 31	I/O	P14, RMOUT, SEG11 P70, KEY0, SEG7 P16, RXD1A, SBI1A, SEG9 P71, KEY1, SEG6	Timer I/O pins	Event counter clock input pin, timer output and PWM signal output pin for 8-bit timer 0 to 3. To use this pin as event clock input, configure this as input by the P1DIR register. In the input mode, pull-up / pull-down resistors can be selected by the P1PLUD, P7PLUD register. For timer output, PWM signal output, select the special function pin by the port 1 output mode register (P1OMD) and the port 7 output mode register (P7OMD), and set to the output mode by the P1DIR, P7DIR registers. These can be used as normal I/O pins when the serial interface is not used.
TM0O TM2O TM2OA TM2OB	1 30 3 32	1 27 3 29	Output	P50, LED0 P70, SBO1A, TXD1A, SEG10 P52, LED2 P17, SBT1A	Timer output pins	Timer output, PWM signal output pin for 8-bit timer 0 and 2. To select timer output and PWM signal output, select the special function pin by the port 5 output mode register (P5OMD) and port 7 output mode register (P7OMD), and set to the output mode by the P5DIR, P7DIR register. These can be used as normal I/O pins when the serial interface is not used.
RMOUT	29	26	Output	P14, TM0IO, SEG11	Remote control transmission signal output pins	Output pin for remote control transmission signal with a carrier signal. For remote control carrier output, select the special function pin by the port 1 output mode register (P1OMD) and set to the output mode by the P1DIR register. At the same time, select remote control carrier output by the remote control carrier output control register (RMCTR). These can be used as normal I/O pins when the serial interface is not used.
BUZZERA NBUZZERA	27 28	24 25	Output	P12, TM8IO P13, TM7IO, CLKOUT	Buzzer outputs	Piezoelectric buzzer driver pin. Buzzer output is available. Driving frequency can be set by the DLYCTR register. The driving frequency can be selected by the DLYCTR register. To select buzzer output for port 0, select the special function pin by the port 1 output mode register (P1OMD) and set to the output mode by the P1DIR register. At the same time, select buzzer output by the oscillation stabilization wait control register (DLYCTR). These can be used as normal I/O pins when the serial interface is not used.

Name	TQFP 48 Pin No.	QFP44 Pin No.	I/O	Other Function	Function	Description
TM7IO TM8IO	28 27	25 24	I/O	P13, NBUZZER, CLKOUT P12, BUZZER	Timer I/O pins	Event counter clock input pin, timer output and PWM signal output pin for 16-bit timer 7and 8. To use this pin as event clock input, configure this as input by the P1DIR register. In the input mode, pull-up / pull-down resistors can be selected by the P1PLU register. For timer output, PWM signal output, select the special function pin by the port 1 output mode register (P1OMD), and set to the output mode by the P1DIR register. These can be used as normal I/O pins when the serial interface is not used.
TM7O TM8O	2 4	2 4	Output	P51, LED1 P53, LED3	Timer output pins	Timer output, PWM signal output pin for 16-bit timer 7 and 8. To select timer output and PWM signal output, select the special function pin at the port 5 output mode register (P5OMD) and set to the output mode by the P5DIR register. These can be used as normal I/O pins when the serial interface is not used.
V_{REF+}	15	15	-		+ power supply for A/D converter	Reference power supply pins for the A/D converter. Normally, the values of $V_{REF+} = V_{DD}$ is used.
AN0 AN1 AN2 AN3 AN4 *1 AN5 *1 AN6 *1	16 17 18 19 20 21 22	16 17 18 19	Input	PA0, SBO0A, TXD0A PA1, SBI0A, RXD0A PA2, SBT0A PA3 PA4, SBI1B, RXD1B PA5, SBO1A, TXD1B PA6, SBT1B	Analog input pins	Analog input pins for an 7-channel, 10-bit A/D converter. When not used for analog input, these pins can be used as normal input pins.
IRQ0 IRQ1 IRQ2	24 25 26	21 22 23	Input	P54, ACZ0 P55, ACZ1 P56	External interrupt input pins	External interrupt input pins. The valid edge for IRQ0 to 2 can be selected by the IRQnICR register. IRQ1 is an external interrupt pin that is able to determine AC zero-crossings. Both edge for IRQ2 is valid for interrupt. When these are not used for interrupts, these can be used as normal input pins.
ACZ0 ACZ1	24 25	21 22	Input	P54, IRQ0 P55, IRQ1	AC zero-cross detection input pins	An input pin for an AC zero-cross detection circuit. AC zero-cross detection circuit outputs a high level when the input is at an intermediate level. It outputs a low level at all other times. ACZ input signal is connected to the P54 (P55) input circuit and the IRQ0 (IRQ1) interrupt circuit. When the AC zero-cross detection circuit is not used, this pin can be used as a normal P54 (P55) input.
KEY0 KEY1 KEY2 KEY3 KEY4 KEY5 KEY6 KEY7	33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40	30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37	Input	P70, TM1IO, SEG7 P71, TM3IO, SEG6 P72, SEG5 P73, SEG4 P74, SEG3 P75, SBO0B, TXD0B, SEG2 P76, SBI0B, RXD0B, SDA4B, SEG1 P77, SBT0B, SCL4B, SEG0	Key interrupt input pins	Input pins for interrupt based on ORed result of pin inputs. Key input pin for 1 bit can be selected individually by the key interrupt control register (KEYT3_1IMD, KEYT3_2IMD). When not used for KEY input, these pins can be used as a normal I/O pins.
LED0 LED1 LED2 LED3	1 2 3 4	1 2 3 4	I/O	P50, TM0OA P51, TM7O P52, TM2OA P53, TM8O	LED drive pins	Large current output pins. When not used for LED output, these pins can be used as a normal I/O pins.

* 1 Not available for 44 pin QFP package

Name	TQFP 48 Pin No.	QFP44 Pin No.	I/O	Other Function	Function	Description
CLKOUT	28	25	Output	P13, TM7IO, NBUZZER		Oscillation clock signal output pin.
COM0 COM1 COM2 COM3	41 42 43 44	38 39 40 41	Output	P30 P31, SBI3 P32, SBT3, SCL3 P33, SBO3, SDA3	LCD common output pin	These pins output the common signal with the required timing for the LCD display. Connect to the common pins of LCD display panel. When the LCD display panel is turned off, V_{SS} is output. When the LCD functions are unused, they can be used as a normal port by setting the LCD output control register LCCTR1.
V_{LC1} V_{LC2} V_{LC3}	45 46 47	42 43 44	-	P36 P35 P34	LCD power pins	Supply for LCD power. Apply voltage:3.6 V ≥ $V_{LC1} \geq V_{LC2} \geq V_{LC3} \geq 0$ V When the booster voltage circuit is used, V_{LC2} or V_{LC3} pins are selected as the reference input pins. When the internal voltage divider circuit is used, V_{LC1} pin is selected as the reference input pin. When the LCD functions are unused, V_{LC3} can be used as a normal port by setting the LCD mode control register 3 (LCDMD3).
SEG0 SEG1 SEG2 SEG3 SEG4 SEG5 SEG6 SEG7 SEG8 SEG9 SEG10 SEG11	40 39 38 37 36 35 34 33 32 31 30 29	37 36 35 34 33 32 31 30 29 28 27 26	Output	P77, SBT0B, SCL4B, KEY7 P76, SBI0B, RXD0B, SDA4B, KEY6 P75, SBO0B, TXD0B, KEY5 P74, KEY4 P73, KEY3 P72, KEY2 P71, TM3IO, KEY1 P70, TM1IO, KEY0 P17, TM2OB, SBI1A P16, TM2IO, SBI1A, RXD1A P15, TM0OB, SBO1A P14, TM0IO, RMOUT	LCD segment output pins	These pins output the segment signal with the required timing for the LCD display. Connect to the segment pins of the LCD panel. When the LCD display is turned off, V_{SS} level is output. It can be used as a normal port by setting of the LCD output control register LCCTR1, LCCTR2, LCCTR3, LCCTR4. Segment pin and normal port are switchable by each bit from SEG0 to SEG11.

* 1 Not available for 44 pin QFP package

1.4 Block Diagram

1.4.1 Block Diagram

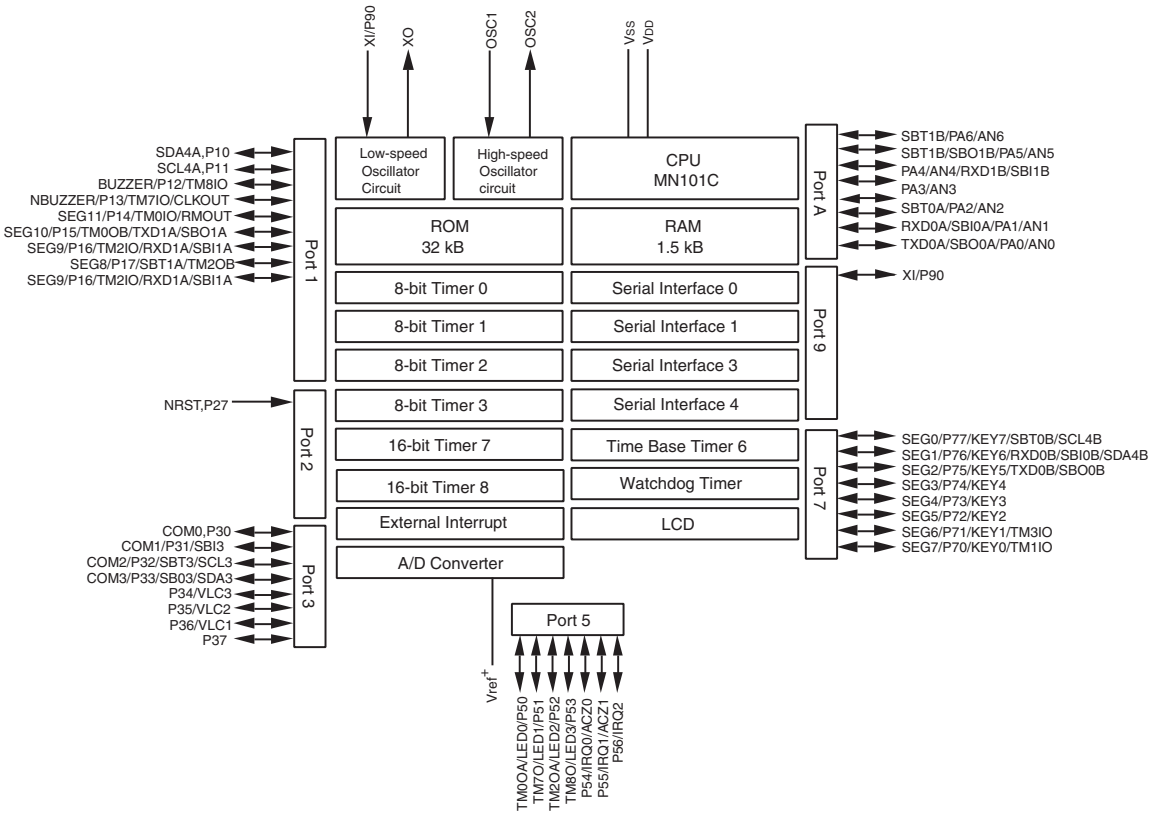


Figure:1.4.1 Block Diagram

* Differs depending upon the model. [Refer to 1.1.2 Product Summary]

1.5 Electrical Characteristics

This LSI manual describes the standard specification.

Machine cycle (system clock fs) is described based on the standard mode:1/2 of high oscillation at NORMAL mode, or on the clock frequency:1/2 of low oscillation at SLOW mode. Please ask our sales offices for the product specifications.

Model	MN101C78A	
Contents	Structure	CMOS integrated circuit
	Application	General purpose
	Function	CMOS, 8-bit, single chip micro controller

1.5.1 Absolute Maximum Ratings *2,*3

V_{DD}=1.8V to 3.6V V_{SS}=0V

Ta=-40°C to +85°C

Parameter			Symbol	Rating	Unit
1	Power supply voltage		V_{DD}	-0.3 to +4.6	V
2	Input clamp current		I_C	-400 to +400	µA
3	Input pin voltage		V_I	-0.3 to V_{DD} + 0.3	V
4	Output pin voltage		V_O	-0.3 to V_{DD} + 0.3	
5	I/O pin voltage		V_{IO1}	-0.3 to V_{DD} + 0.3 (except ACZ)	
6	Peak output current	P50 to P53	I_{OL1} (peak)	30	mA
7		Other than P50 to P53	I_{OL2} (peak)	10	
8		All pins	I_{OH} (peak)	-10	
9	Average output current *1	P50 to P53	I_{OL1} (avg)	20	
10		Other than P50 to P53	I_{OL2} (avg)	5	
11		All pins	I_{OH} (avg)	-5	
12	Total output current *1		I_{TOL}	60	
13			I_{TOH}	-60	
14	Power dissipation		P_T	400(Ta=+85°C)	mW
15	Operation ambient temperature		T_{opr}	-40 to +85	°C
16	Storage temperature		Tstg	-55 to +125	

*1 Applied to any 100-ms period.

*2 Connect at least one bypass capacitor of 0.1 µF or larger between the power supply pin and the ground for latch-up prevention.

*3 The absolute maximum ratings are the tolerance for the LSI to be operated properly. It does not guarantee the operation.

1.5.2 Operating Conditions [NORMAL mode:fs=fosc/2, SLOW mode:fs=fx/2]

V_{DD}=1.8V to 3.6V V_{SS}=0V

Ta=-40°C to +85°C

Parameter		Symbol	Conditions	Rating			Unit
				MIN	TYP	MAX	
Power supply voltage *4							
1	Mask ROM version Power supply voltage	V_{DD1}	fosc ≤ 10.0 MHz [Double-speed mode:fs=fosc]	3.0	-	3.6	V
2		V_{DD2}	fosc ≤ 8.5 MHz [Double-speed mode:fs=fosc]	2.7	-	3.6	
3		V_{DD3}	fosc ≤ 4.25 MHz [Normal mode:fs=fosc]	1.8	-	3.6	
4		V_{DD4}	fosc ≤ 4.25 MHz [Normal mode:fs=fosc/2]	1.8	-	3.6	
5		V_{DD5}	fx = 32.768 kHz [Normal mode:fs=fx/2]	1.8	-	3.6	
6	Flash EEPROM version Power supply voltage	V_{DD6}	fosc ≤ 5 MHz [Double-speed mode:fs=fosc]	3.0	-	3.6	
7		V_{DD7}	fosc ≤ 4.25 MHz [Double-speed mode:fs=fosc]	2.7	-	3.6	
8		V_{DD8}	fosc ≤ 10 MHz [Normal mode:fs=fosc/2]	3.0	-	3.6	
9		V_{DD9}	fosc ≤ 8.5 MHz [Normal mode:fs=fosc/2]	2.7	-	3.6	
10		V_{DD10}	fx = 32.768 kHz [Normal mode:fs=fx/2]	2.7	-	3.6	
11	Voltage to maintain RAM data	V_{DD11}	At STOP mode	1.8	-	3.6	
Operation speed *5							
12	Instruction execution time	t_{c1}	V_{DD}=3.0 to 3.6 V [Double speed mode:fs=fosc]	0.100	-	-	µs
13		t_{c2}	V_{DD}=2.7 to 3.6 V [Double speed mode:fs=fosc]	0.118	-	-	
14		t_{c3}	V_{DD}=1.8 to 3.6 V [Double speed mode:fs=fosc]	0.235	-	-	
15		t_{c4}	V_{DD}=1.8 to 3.6 V [Normal mode:fs=fosc/2]	0.470	-	-	
16		t_{c5}	V_{DD}=1.8 to 3.6 V [Normal mode:fs=fx/2]	20	-	62.5	

*4	fosc	Input clock frequency to OSC1 pin
	fx	Input clock frequency to XI pin
*5	t_{c1} to t_{c4}	OSC1 is the CPU clock.
	t_{c5}	XI is the CPU clock.

V_{DD}=1.8V to 3.6V V_{SS}=0V

Ta=-40°C to +85°C

	Parameter	Symbol	Conditions	Rating			Unit
				MIN	TYP	MAX	
Crystal oscillator 1 Figure:1.5.1							
17 18 19	Crystal frequency	f_{xtal1}	V_{DD}=Within operation power supply voltage (Refer to standard ratings B1 to B5.)	1.0	-	10.0	MHz
20	External capacitors	C_{11}		-	20	-	pF
21		C_{12}		-	20	-	
22	Internal feedback resistor	R_{f10}		-	1.2	-	MΩ
Crystal oscillator 2 Figure:1.5.2							
23	Crystal frequency	f_{xtal2}	V_{DD}=1.8 V to 3.6 V	-	32.768	-	kHz
24	External capacitors	C_{21}		-	20	-	pF
25		C_{22}		-	20	-	
26	Internal feedback resistor	R_{f20}		-	17.6	-	MΩ

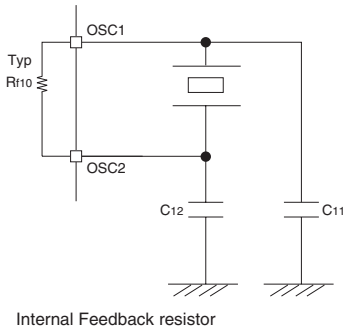


Figure:1.5.1 Crystal oscillator 1

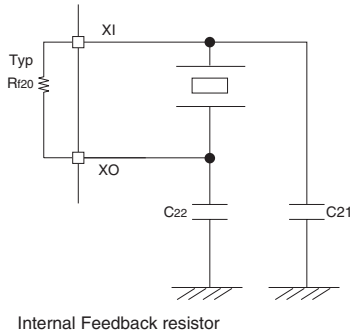


Figure:1.5.2 Crystal oscillator 2

Connect external capacitors that suits the used pin. When crystal oscillator or ceramic oscillator is used, the frequency is changed depending on the condenser rate. Therefore, consult the manufacturer of the pin for the appropriate external capacitor.

V_{DD}=1.8V to 3.6V V_{SS}=0V

Ta=-40°C to +85°C

Parameter		Symbol	Conditions	Rating			Unit
				MIN	TYP	MAX	
External clock input 1 OSC1 (OSC2 is unconnected)							
27	Clock frequency	f_{OSC}		1.0	-	10.0	MHz
28	High level pulse width *6	t_{wh1}	Figure:1.5.3	90	-	-	ns
29	Low level pulse width *6	t_{wl1}		90	-	-	
30	Rising time	t_{wr1}	Figure:1.5.3s	-	-	10	
31	Falling time	t_{wf1}		-	-	10	
External clock input 2 XI (XO is unconnected)							
32	Clock frequency	fx		32.768	-	100	kHz
33	High level pulse width *6	t_{wh2}	Figure:1.5.4	4.5	-	-	µs
34	Low level pulse width *6	t_{wl2}		4.5	-	-	
35	Rising time *7	t_{wr2}	Figure:1.5.4	-	-	20	ns
36	Falling time *7	t_{wf2}		-	-	20	

*6 The clock duty rate in the standard mode should be 45% to 55%.

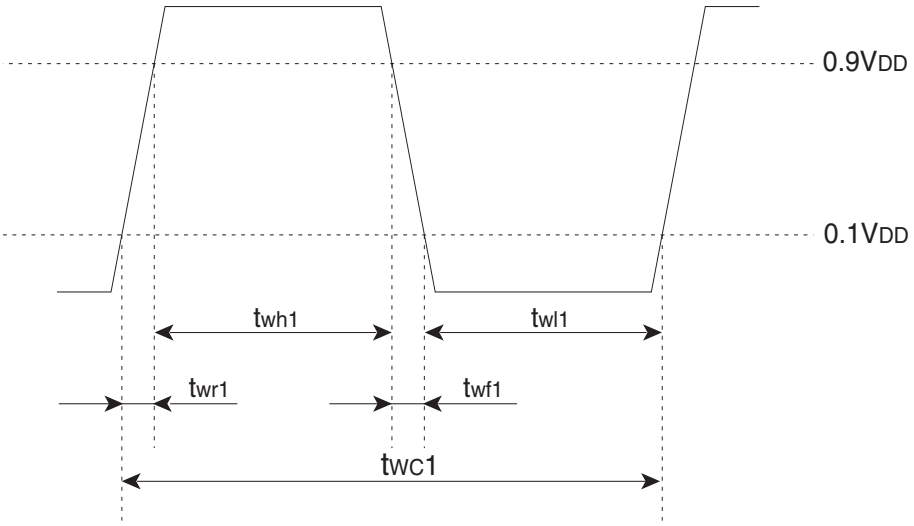


Figure:1.5.3 OSC1 Timing Chart

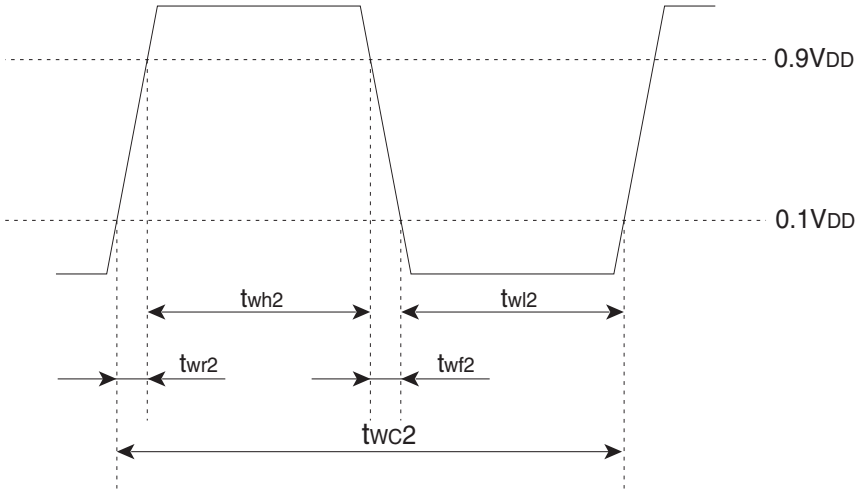


Figure:1.5.4 XI Timing Chart

1.5.3 DC Characteristics

V_{DD}=1.8V to 3.6V V_{SS}=0V

Ta=-40°C to +85°C

Parameter		Symbol	Conditions	Rating			Unit
				MIN	TYP	MAX	
Power supply current *7		[NORMAL mode: fs=fosc/2 SLOW mode:fs=fx/2]					
1	Mask ROM version Power supply current	I_{DD1}	fosc=10 MHz [Double-speed mode:fs=fosc] V_{DD}=3.0 V	-	2.5	5.5	mA
2		I_{DD2}	fosc=8.5 MHz [Double-speed mode:fs=fosc] V_{DD}=3.0 V	-	2.0	4.0	
3		I_{DD3}	fosc=4.25 MHz [Double-speed mode:fs=fosc] V_{DD}=3.0 V	-	1.0	2.2	
4		I_{DD4}	fosc=8.5 MHz [Normal mode:fs=fosc/2] V_{DD}=3.0 V	-	1.2	2.6	
5		I_{DD5}	fosc=4.25 MHz [Normal mode:fs=fosc/2] V_{DD}=3.0 V	-	0.6	1.4	
6		I_{DD6}	fx=32.768 kHz V_{DD}=3.0 V [fs=fx/2] Ta=25 °C	-	4	15	µA
7		I_{DD7}	fx=32.768 kHz V_{DD}=3 V [fs=fx/2] Ta=85 °C	-	-	50	
8	Flash EEPROM version Power supply current	I_{DD8}	fosc=5 MHz [Double-speed mode:fs=fosc] V_{DD}=3.3 V	-	2.4	t.b.d	mA
9		I_{DD9}	fosc=4.25 MHz [Double-speed mode:fs=fosc] V_{DD}=3.0 V	-	2.1	t.b.d	
10		I_{DD10}	fosc=10 MHz [Normal mode:fs=fosc] V_{DD}=3.3 V	-	-	t.b.d	
11		I_{DD11}	fosc=8.5 MHz [Normal mode:fs=fosc/2] V_{DD}=3.0 V	-	2.3	t.b.d	
12		I_{DD12}	fx=32.768 kHz V_{DD}=3.0 V [fs=fx/2] Ta=25 °C	-	-	t.b.d	µA
13		I_{DD13}	fx=32.768 kHz V_{DD}=3 V [fs=fx/2] Ta=85 °C	-	-	t.b.d	

V_{DD}=1.8V to 3.6V V_{SS}=0V

Ta=-40°C to +85°C

Parameter		Symbol	Conditions	Rating			Unit
				MIN	TYP	MAX	
14	Supply current during HALT1 mode	I_{DD14}	fx=32.768 kHz V_{DD}=3 .0V Ta=25 °C	-	-	4	µA
15		I_{DD15}	fx=32.768 kHz V_{DD}=3.0 V Ta=85 °C (fosc stop)	-	-	40	
16	Supply current during STOP mode	I_{DD16}	V_{DD}=3 V Ta=25 °C	-	-	2	
17		I_{DD17}	V_{DD}=3 V Ta=85 °C	-	-	30	

*7 Measured under conditions without load, Ta=25°C. (pull-up / pull-down resistors are unconnected.)

- The supply current during operation, I_{DD1} to I_{DD5} and I_{DD8} to I_{DD11} are measured under the following conditions:
  After all I/O pins are set to input mode and the oscillation is set to <NORMAL mode>, the MMOD pin is at V_{SS} level, the input pins are at V_{DD} level, and a 10 MHz (8.50 MHz, 5 MHz, 4.25 MHz) square wave of V_{DD} and V_{SS} amplitudes is input to the OSC1 pin.
- The supply current during operation, $I_{DD6,}$ I_{DD7}, and $I_{DD12,}$ I_{DD13} are measured under the following conditions:
  After all I/O pins are set to input mode and the oscillation is set to <SLOW mode>, the MMOD pin is at V_{SS} level, the input pins are at V_{DD} level, and a 32.768 kHz square wave of V_{DD} and V_{SS} amplitudes is input to the XI pin.
- The supply current during HALT1 mode, I_{DD14}, I_{DD15} are measured under the following conditions:
  After all I/O pins are set to input mode and the oscillation is set to <HALT mode>, the input pins are at V_{DD} level, and an 32.768 kHz square wave of V_{DD} and V_{SS} amplitudes is input to the XI pin.
- The supply current during STOP mode, I_{DD16} , I_{DD17} are measured under the following conditions:
  After the oscillation is set to <STOP mode>, the MMOD pin is at V_{SS} level, the input pins are at V_{DD} level, and the OSC1 and XI pins are unconnected.

V_{DD}=1.8V to 3.6V V_{SS}=0V

Ta=-40°C to +85°C

Parameter		Symbol	Conditions	Rating			Unit
				MIN	TYP	MAX	
Input pin 1 MMOD							
18	Input high voltage 1	V_{IH1}		0.8V_{DD}	-	V_{DD}	V
19	Input low voltage 1	V_{IL1}		0	-	0.2V_{DD}	
20	Input leakage current	I_{LK1}	V_I=0 V to V_{DD}	-	-	± 2	µA
Input pin 2 P54 (Schmitt trigger input)							
21	Input high voltage	V_{IH2}		0.8V_{DD}	-	V_{DD}	V
22	Input low voltage	V_{IL2}		0	-	0.2V_{DD}	
23	Input leakage current	I_{LK2}	V_I=0 V to V_{DD}	-	-	± 2	µA
24	Pull-up resistor	I_{RH2}	V_{DD}=3.0V V_I=V_{SS} Pull-up resistor ON	30	100	300	kΩ
25	Output high voltage	V_{OH2}	V_{DD}=3.0 V I_{OH}=-2.0 mA	2.4	-	-	V
26	Output low voltage	V_{OL2}	V_{DD}=3.0 V I_{OL}=2.0 mA	-	-	0.4	
Input pin 3 P55 (Schmitt trigger input)							
27	Input high voltage	V_{IH3}		0.8V_{DD}	-	V_{DD}	V
28	Input low voltage	V_{IL3}		0	-	0.2V_{DD}	
29	Input leakage current	I_{LK3}	V_I=0 V to V_{DD}	-		± 2	µA
30	Pull-up resistor	I_{RH3}	V_{DD}=3.0 V_I=V_{SS} Pull-up resistor ON	30	100	300	kΩ
31	Output high voltage	V_{OH3}	V_{DD}=3.0 V I_{OH}=-2.0 mA	2.4	-	-	
32	Output low voltage	V_{OL3}	V_{DD}=3.0 V I_{OL}=2.0 mA	-	-	0.4	
Input pin 4 P54, P55 (Used as ACZ)							
33	High level detection voltage	V_{DLH42}	V_{DD}=3.0 Figure:1.5.5	-	-	1.9	V
34		V_{DHL42}		1.1	-	-	
35	Low level detection voltage	V_{DHH42}		2.7	-	-	
36		V_{DLL42}		-	-	0.4	
37	Input leakage current	I_{LK4}2	V_I=0 V to V_{DD}	-	-	± 2	µA
38	Input clamp current	I_{C42}	$V_I > V_{DD}$ $V_I < 0V$	-	-	± 400	
Input pin 5 P27 (NRST)							
39	Input high voltage	V_{IH5}		0.8V_{DD}	-	V_{DD}	V
40	Input low voltage	V_{IL5}		0	-	0.15V_{DD}	
41	Pull-up resistor	I_{RH5}	V_{DD}=3.0V , V, V_I=V_{SS} Internal pull-up resistor	30	100	300	kΩ
I/O pin 6 P10 to P17, P70 to P77 (Schmitt trigger input)							
42	Input high voltage	V_{IH6}		0.8V_{DD}	-	V_{DD}	V
43	Input low voltage	V_{IL6}		0	-	0.2V_{DD}	
44	Input leakage current	I_{LK6}	V_I=0 V to V_{DD}	-	-	± 2	µA
45	Pull-up resistor	I_{RH6}	V_{DD}=3.0 V_I=V_{SS} Pull-up resistor ON	30	100	300	kΩ

V_{DD}=1.8V to 3.6V V_{SS}=0V

Ta=-40°C to +85°C

Parameter		Symbol	Conditions	Rating			Unit
				MIN	TYP	MAX	
46	Pull-down resistor	I_{RL6}	V_{DD}=3.0 V_I=V_{DD} Pull-down resistor ON	30	100	300	kΩ
47	Output high voltage	V_{OH6}	V_{DD}=3.0 I_{OH}=-2.0 mA	2.4	-	-	V
48	Output low voltage	V_{OL6}	V_{DD}=3.0 I_{OL}=2.0 mA	-	-	0.4	
I/O pin 7 P56, PA0 to PA6, P30 to P37 (Schmitt trigger input)							
49	Input high voltage	V_{IH7}		0.8V_{DD}	-	V_{DD}	V
50	Input low voltage	V_{IL7}		0	-	0.2V_{DD}	
51	Input leakage current	I_{LK7}	V_I=0 V to V_{DD}	-	-	± 2	μA
52	Pull-up resistor	I_{RH7}	V_{DD}=3.0 V_I=V_{SS} Pull-up resistor ON	30	100	300	kΩ
53	Output high voltage	V_{OH7}	V_{DD}=3.0 I_{OH}=-2.0 mA	2.4	-	-	V
54	Output low voltage	V_{OL7}	V_{DD}=3.0 I_{OL}=-2.0 mA	-	-	0.4	
I/O pin 8 P50 to P53 (Schmitt trigger input)							
55	Input high voltage	V_{IH8}		0.8V_{DD}	-	V_{DD}	V
56	Input low voltage	V_{IL8}		0	-	0.2V_{DD}	
57	Input leakage current	I_{LK8}	V_I=0 V to V_{DD}	-	-	± 2	μA
58	Pull-up resistor	I_{RH8}	V_{DD}=3.0 V_I=V_{SS} Pull-up resistor ON	30	100	300	kΩ
59	Output high voltage	V_{OH8}	V_{DD}=3.0 I_{OH}=2.0 mA	2.4	-	-	
60	Output low voltage (output at 2 mA)	V_{OL80}	V_{DD}=3.0 I_{OL}=2.0 mA	-	-	0.4	V
61	Output low voltage (output at 8 mA)	V_{OL81}	V_{DD}=3.0 I_{OL}=8.0 mA	-	-	0.4	
Display output pin 1 COM0 to COM3							
62	Output impedance	Z_{OCOM1}	V_{DD}=3.0 I_{OCM}=10 μA	-	-	0.6	V
Display output pin 2 SEG0 to SEG11							
63	Output impedance	Z_{OSEG1}	V_{DD}=3.0 I_{OCM}=2 μA	-	-	0.6	V
Display power pin 1 V_{LC1}, V_{LC2}, V_{LC3}							
64	Internal dividing resistor	R_{VL1}	Ta=+25°C (Impedance Between V_{LC1} , V_{SS}) *11	142.5	285	570	kΩ
65		V_{VL2}		15	30	60	

*8 However, COM0 to COM3 are also used as P30 to P33.

*9 However, SEG0 to SEG11 are also used as P14 to P17 and P70 to P77.

*10 The summation of 3 resistors among V_{LC1} and V_{LC2}, V_{LC2} and V_{LC3}, V_{LC3} and V_{SS}.

1.5.4 A/C Converter Characteristics

V_{DD}=1.8V to 3.6V V_{SS}=0V

Ta=-40°C to +85°C

Parameter		Symbol	Conditions	Rating			Unit
				MIN	TYP	MAX	
ACZ pin							
1	Rising time	t_{rs}	Figure:1.5.5	30	-	-	µs
2	Falling time	t_{fs}		30	-	-	

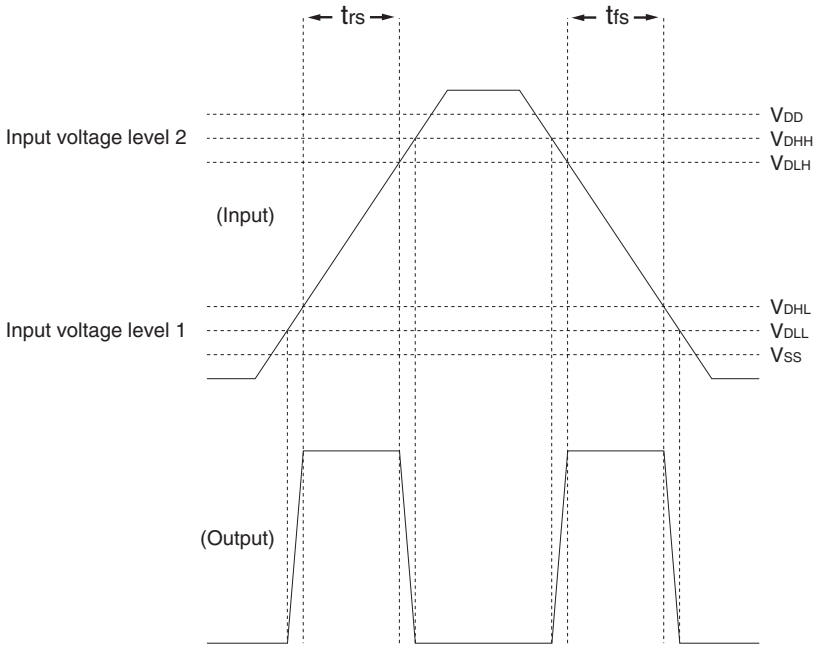


Figure:1.5.5 XI Timing Chart

1.5.5 A/D Converter Characteristics

V_{DD}=1.8V to 3.6V V_{SS}=0V

Ta=-40°C to +85°C

Parameter		Symbol	Conditions	Rating			Unit
				MIN	TYP	MAX	
1	Resolution			-	-	10	Bits
2	Non-linearity error 1		V_{DD}=3.0 V V_{SS}=0 V V_{REF+}=3.0 V T_{AD}=800 ns	-	-	±3	LSB
3	Differential non-linearity error 1			-	-	±3	
4	Zero transition voltage		V_{DD}=3.0 V V_{SS}=0 V V_{REF+}=3.0 V T_{AD}=800 ns	-	30	100	mV
5	Full-scale transition voltage			2900	2970	-	
6	A/D conversion time		T_{AD}=800 ns	12.25	-	-	ms
7			fx=32.768 kHz, T_{AD}=15.26 ms	-	-	778.31	
8	Sampling time		T_{AD}=800 ns	1.6	-	14.4	
9			fx=32.768 kHz, T_{AD}=15.26 ms	30.52	-	274.68	
10	Reference voltage	V_{REF+}	-	2.0	-	V_{DD}	V
11	Analog input voltage		-	V_{SS}	-	V_{REF+}	
12	Analog input leakage current		When channel is OFF V_{ADIN}=0 V to 3 V	-	-	±2	µA
13	Reference voltage pin input leakage current		When V_{REF+} is OFF $V_{ss} \leq V_{REF+} \leq V_{DD}$	-	-	±2	
14	Ladder resistance	R_{LADD}	V_{REF+}=3.0 V V_{SS}=0 V	10	30	60	kΩ

*11 TAD is A/D converter clock cycle.
The values of 2 to 5 are guaranteed on the condition that V_{DD}=V_{ref+}=3.0 V, V_{SS}=0 V.

1.6 Package Dimension

Package code: TQFP048-P-0707B Units: mm

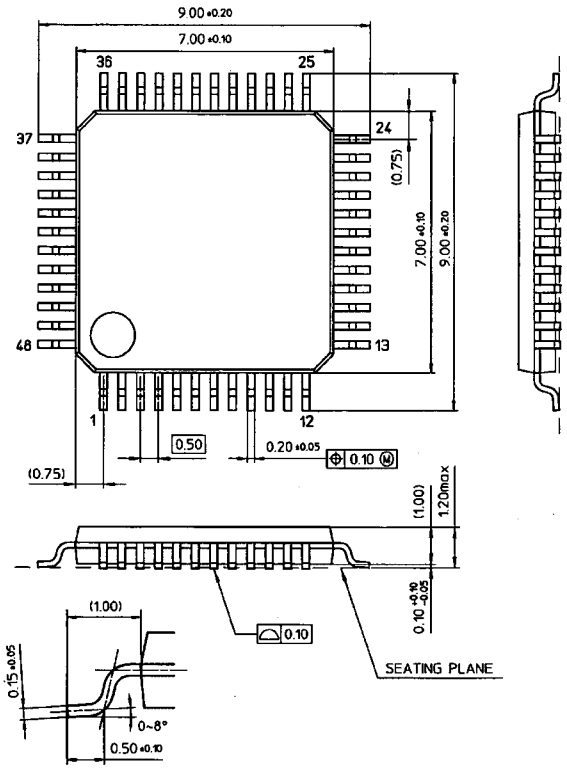


Figure:1.6.1 Package Dimension

The external dimensions of the package are subject to change. Before using this product, please obtain product specifications from the sales offices.

1.7 Cautions for Circuit Setup

1.7.1 General Usage

■ Connection of V_{DD} pin and V_{SS} pin

All of the VDD and VSS pins should be connected directly to the power source and ground in the external. Put them on printed circuit board after the location of LSI (package) pin is confirmed. Connection error may lead a fusion and breakdown of a micro controller.

■ Cautions for Operation

1. If you install the product close to high-field emissions (under the cathode ray tube, etc.), shield the package surface to ensure normal performance.
2. Operation temperature should be well considered. Each product has different condition. For example, if the operation temperature is over the condition, improper operation could be occurred.
3. Operation voltage should be also well considered. Each product has different operating range.
    - If the operation voltage is over the operating range, duration of the product could be shortened.
    - If the operation voltage is below the operating range, improper operation could be occurred.

1.7.2 Unused pins

■ Unused Pins (only for input)

Insert some 10 kΩ resistor to unused pins (only for input) for pull-up or pull-down.

If the input is unstable, Pch transistor and Nch transistor of input inverter are on, and through current goes to the input circuit. That increases current consumption and causes power supply noise.

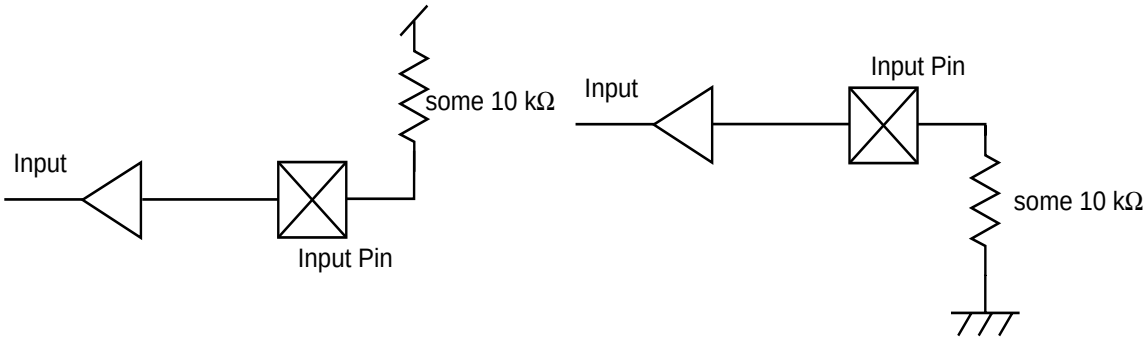
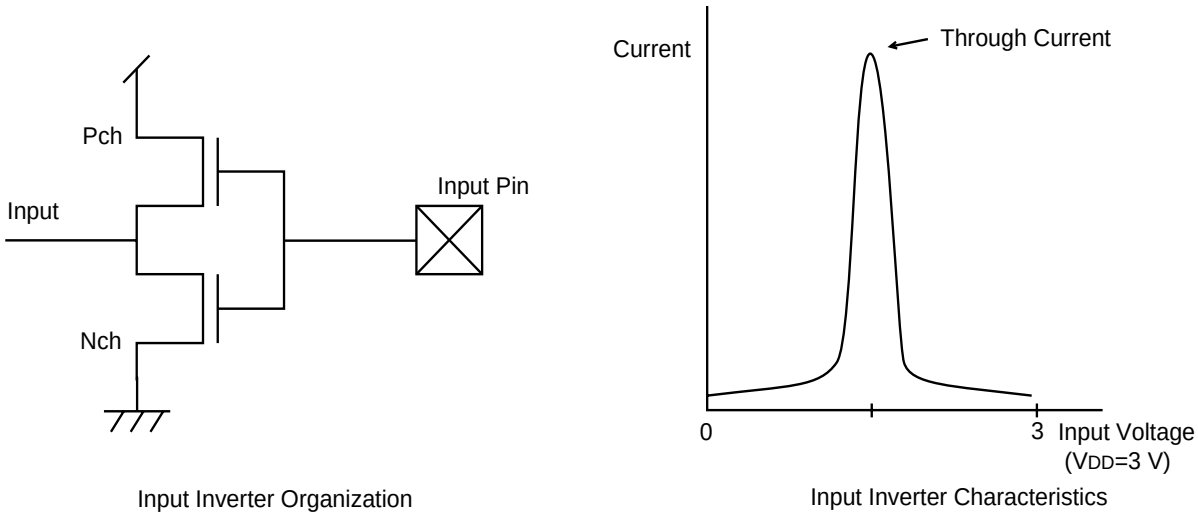


Figure:1.7.1 Unused Pins (only for input)



Input Inverter Organization

Input Inverter Characteristics

Figure:1.7.2 Input Inverter Organization and Characteristics

■ Unused Pins (for I/O)

Unused I/O pins should be set according to pins' condition at reset. If the output is high impedance (Pch / Nch transistor: output off) at reset, to stabilize input, set some 10 kΩ resistor to be pull-up or pull-down. If the output is on at reset, set them open. Pins used as both LCD and port pins should be set to open to be used as LCD output pins.

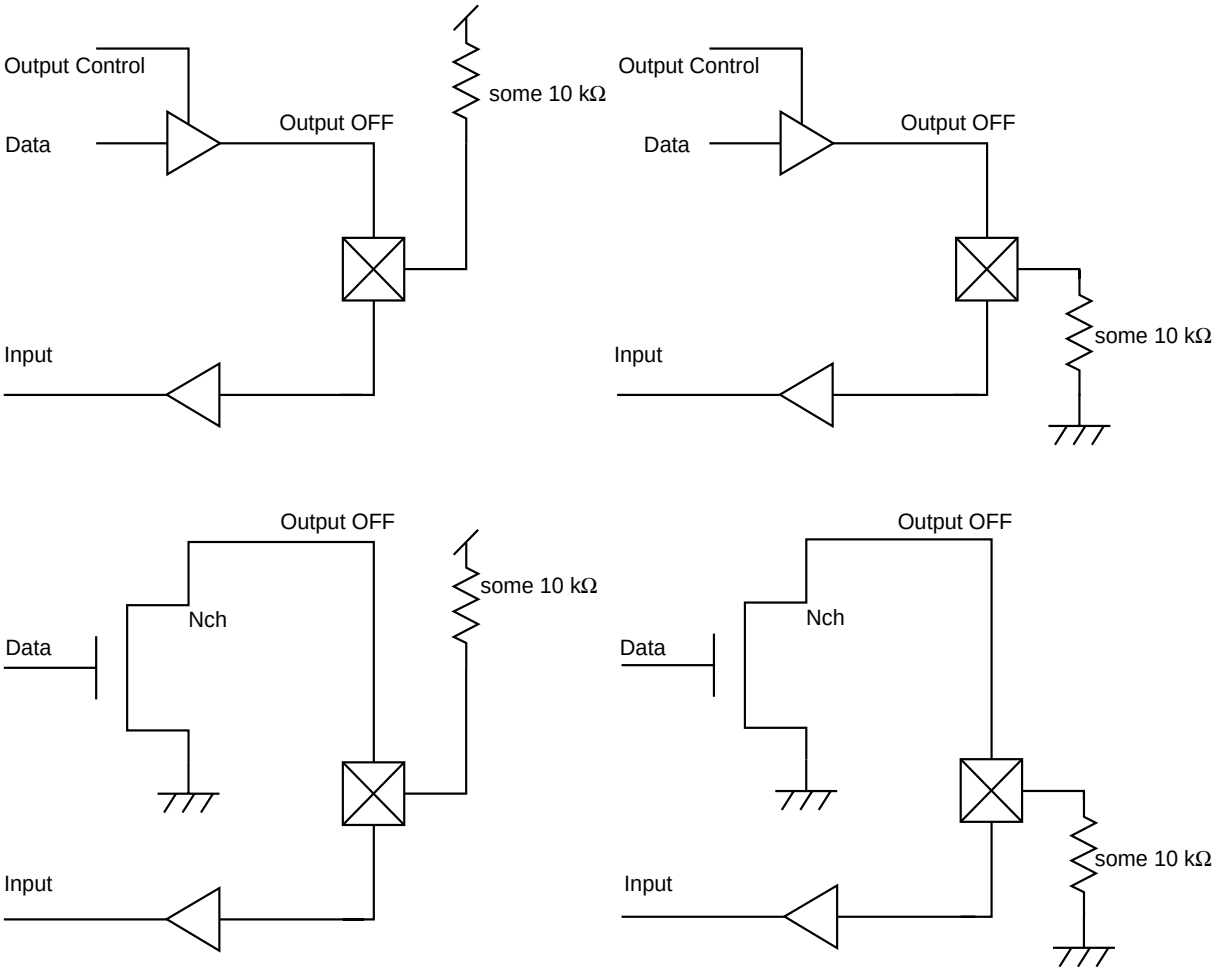


Figure:1.7.3 Unused I//O Pins (high impedance output at reset)

1.7.3 Power Supply

■ The Relation between Power Supply and Input Pin Voltage

Input pin voltage should be supplied only after power supply is on. If this order is reversed the destruction of micro controller by a large current flow could be occurred.

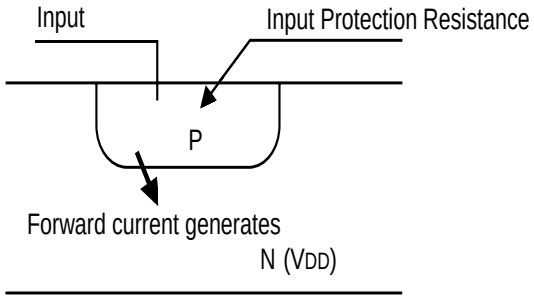


Figure:1.7.4 V_{DD} and Input Pin Voltage

■ The Relation between V_{DD} and Reset Input Voltage

After power supply is on, reset pin voltage should be low for sufficient time before rising, in order to be recognized as a reset signal.

[Refer to Chapter 1. 1.1.2 Product Summary]

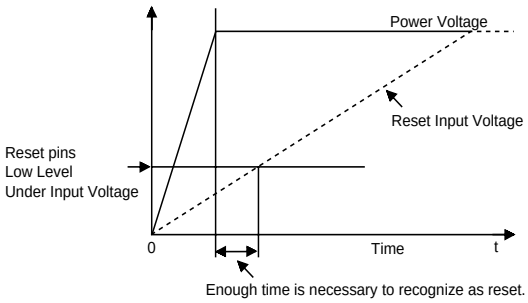


Figure:1.7.5 Power Supply and Reset Input Voltage

1.7.4 Power Supply Circuit

■ Cautions for Setting Circuit with V_{DD}

The MOS logic such a microcomputer is high speed and high density. So, the power circuit should be designed, taking into consideration of AC line noise, ripple caused by LED driver.

Figure:1.7.6 shows an example for a circuit with V_{DD} (Emitter follower type).

■ An Example for a Circuit with V_{DD} (Emitter follower type)

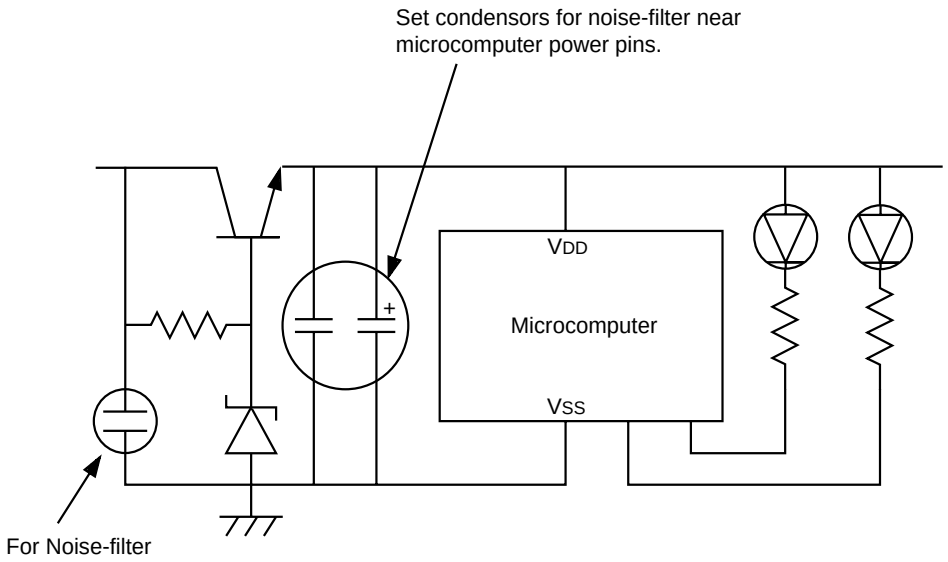


Figure:1.7.6 An Example for a Circuit of V_{DD} Supply (Emitter follower type)

Chapter 2 CPU Basics

2

2.1 Overview

The MN101C CPU has a flexible and optimized hardware configuration. It is a high speed CPU with a simple and efficient instruction set. Specific features are as follows:

1. Minimized code sizes with instruction lengths based on 4-bit increments:
   The series keeps code sizes down by adopting a basic instruction length of one byte and variable instruction lengths based on 4-bit increments.
2. Minimum execution instruction time is one system clock cycle.
3. Minimized register set that simplifies the architecture and supports C language:
   The instruction set has been determined, depending on the size and capacity of hardware, after on analysis of embedded application programing code and creation code by C language compiler. Therefore, the set is simple instruction using the minimal register set required for C language compiler.
   [" MN101C LSI User's Manual" (Architecture Instructions)]

Table:2.1.1 Basic Specifications

Structure	Load / store architecture	
	Six registers	Data : 8-bit x 4 Address : 16-bit x 2
	Others	PC : 19-bit PSW : 8-bit SP : 16-bit
Instructions	Number of instructions	37
	Addressing modes	9
	Instruction length	Basic portion : 1 byte (min. Extended portion : 0.5-byte x n (0£n£9)
Basic performance	Internal operating frequency (max)	10 MHz
	Instruction execution	Min. 1 cycle
	Inter-register operation	Min. 2 cycle
	Load / store	Min. 2 cycle
	Conditional branch	2 to 3 cycles
Pipeline	3-stage (instruction fetch, decode, execution)	
Address space	256 KB (max. 64 KB for data)	
	Instruction/data space	
External bus	Address	18-bit
	Data	8-bit
	Minimum bus cycle	1 system clock cycle
Interrupt	Vector interrupt	3 interrupt levels

Low-power consumption mode	STOP mode
	HALT mode

2.1.1 Block Diagram

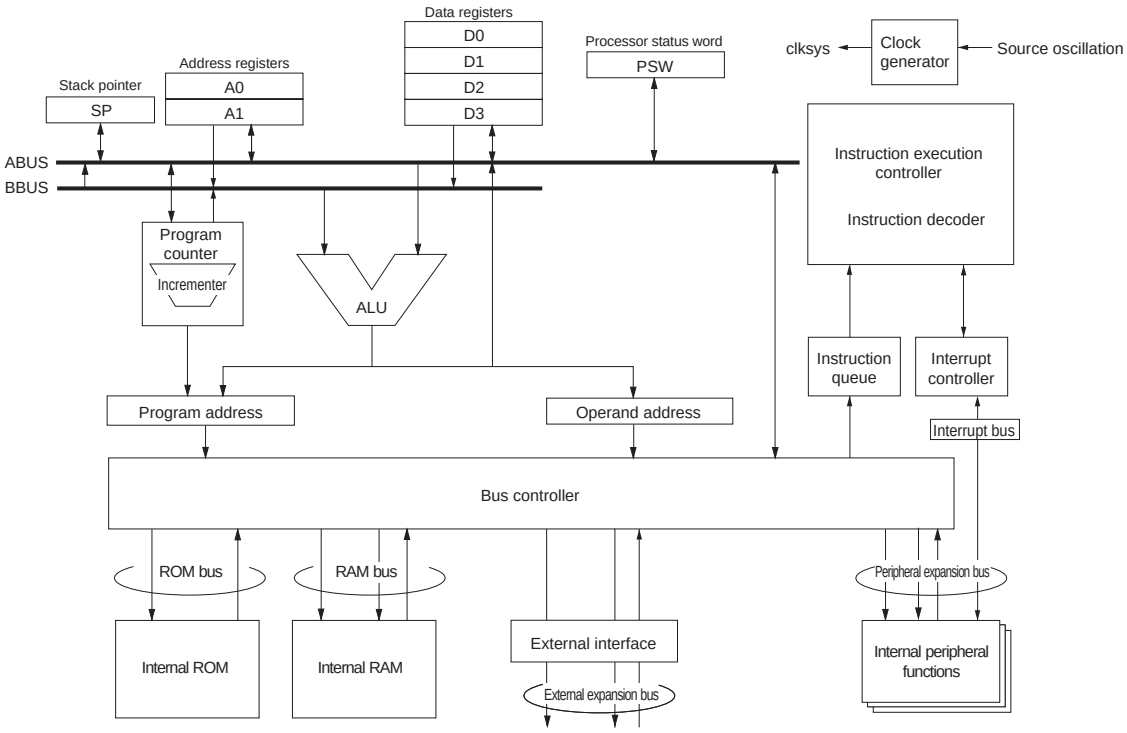


Figure:2.1.1 CPU Block Diagram

Table:2.1.2 Block Diagram and Function

Clock generator	Uses a clock oscillator circuit driven by an external crystal or ceramic resonator to supply clock signals to CPU blocks.
Program counter	Generates addresses for the instructions to be inserted into the instruction queue. Normally incremented by sequencer indication, but may be set to branch destination address or ALU operation result when branch instructions or interrupts occur.
Instruction queue	Stores up to 2 bytes of pre-fetched instructions.
Instruction decoder	Decodes the instruction queue, sequentially generates the control signals needed for instruction execution, and executes the instruction by controlling the blocks within the chip.
Instruction execution controller	Controls CPU block operations in response to the result decoded by the instruction decoder and interrupt requests.
ALU	Executes arithmetic operations, logic operations, shift operations, and calculates operand addresses for register relative indirect addressing mode.
Internal ROM, RAM	Assigned to the execution program, data and stack region.
Address register	Stores the addresses specifying memory for data transfer. Stores the base address for register relative indirect addressing mode.

Data register	Holds data for operations. Two 8-bit registers can be connected to form a 16-bit register.
Interrupt controller	Detects interrupt requests from peripheral functions and requests CPU shift to interrupt processing.
Bus controller	Controls connection of CPU internal bus and CPU external bus. Includes bus usage arbitration function.
Internal peripheral functions	Includes peripheral functions (timer, serial interface, A/D converter, D/A converter, etc.). Peripheral functions vary depending on the model.

2.1.2 CPU Control Registers

This LSI locates the peripheral circuit registers in memory space (0x03F00 to 0x03FFF) with memory mapped I/O. CPU control registers are also located in this memory space.

Table:2.1.3 CPU Control Registers

Registerss	Address	R/W	Function	Pages
CPUM	0x03F00	R/W *1	CPU mode control register	II-24 II-28
MEMCTR	0x03F01	R/W	Memory control register	II-20
NMICR	0x03FE1	R/W	Non - maskable interrupt control register	III-19
xxxICR	0x03FE2 to 0x03FF7	R/W	Maskable interrupt control register	III-20 to 40
Reserved	0x03FFF	-	Reserved (For reading interrupt vector data on interrupt process)	-

*1 a part of bit is for read only

2.1.3 Instruction Execution Controller

The instruction execution controller consists of four blocks: memory, instruction queue, instruction registers, and instruction decoder.

Instructions are fetched in 1-byte units, and temporarily stored in the 2-byte instruction queue. Transfer is made in 1-byte or half-byte units from the instruction queue to the instruction register to be decoded by the instruction decoder.

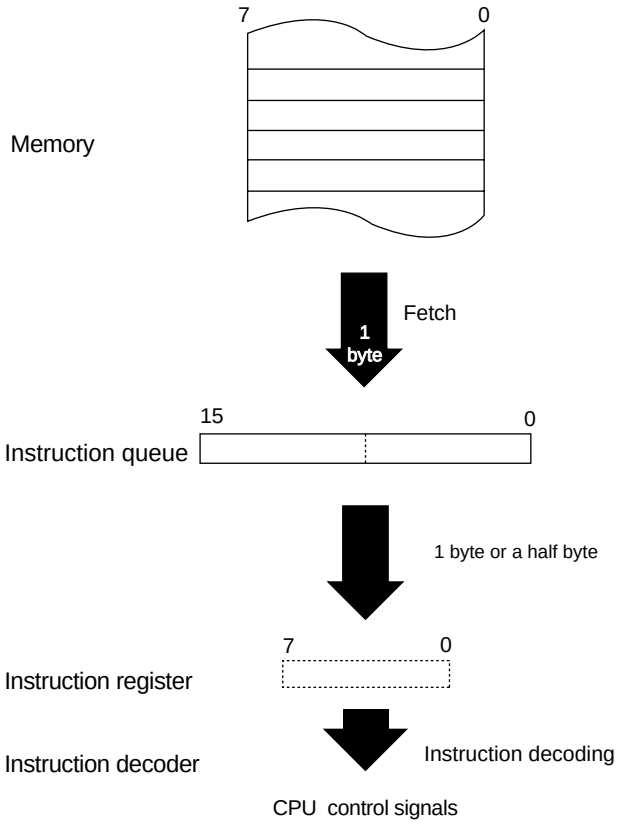


Figure:2.1.2 Instruction Execution Controller Configuration

2.1.4 Pipeline Process

Pipeline process means that reading and decoding are executed at the same time on different instructions, then instructions are executed without stopping. Pipeline process makes instruction execution continual and speedy. This process is executed with instruction queue and instruction decoder.

Instruction queue is buffer that fetches the second instruction in advance. That is controlled to fetch the next instruction when instruction queue is empty at each cycle on execution. At the last cycle of instruction execution, the first word (operation code) of executed instruction is stored to instruction register. At that time, the next operand or operation code is fetched to instruction queue, so that the next instruction can be executed immediately, even if register direct (da) or immediate (imm) is needed at the first cycle of the next instruction execution. But on some other instruction such as branch instruction, instruction queue becomes empty on the time that the next operation code to be executed is stored to instruction register at the last cycle. Therefore, only when instruction queue is empty, and direct address (da) or immediate data (imm) are needed, instruction queue keeps waiting for a cycle.

Instruction queue is controlled automatically by hardware so that there is no need to be controlled by software. But when instruction execution time is estimated, operation of instruction queue should be into consideration. Instruction decoder generates control signal at each cycle of instruction execution by micro program control. Instruction decoder uses pipeline process to decode instruction queue at one cycle before control signal is needed.

2.1.5 Registers for Address

Registers for address include program counter (PC), address registers (A0, A1), and stack pointer (SP)

■ Program Counter (PC)

This register gives the address of the currently executing instruction. It is 19 bits wide to provide access to a 256 KB address space in half byte(4-bit increments). The LSB of the program counter is used to indicate half byte instruction. The program counter after reset is stored from the value of vector table at the address of 0x04000.

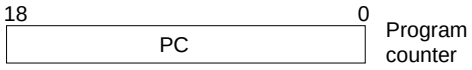


Figure:2.1.3 Program Counter

■ Address Registers (A0, A1)

These registers are used as address pointers specifying data locations in memory. They support the operations involved in address calculations (i.e. addition, subtraction and comparison). Those pointers are 2 bytes data. Transfers between these registers and memory are always in 16-bit units. Either odd or even address can be transferred. At reset, the value of address register is undefined.

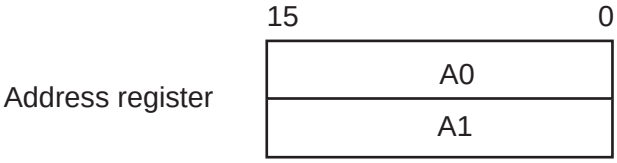


Figure:2.1.4 Address Registers

■ Stack Pointer (SP)

This register gives the address of the byte at the top of the stack. It is decremented during push operations and incremented during pop operations. Ar reset, the value of SP is undefined.

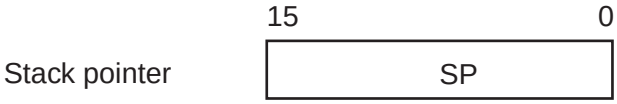


Figure:2.1.5 Stack Pointer

2.1.6 Registers for Data

Registers for data include four data registers (D0, D1, D2, D3).

■ Data Registers (D0, D1, D2, D3)

Data registers D0 to D3 are 8-bit general-purpose registers that support all arithmetic, logical and shift operations. All registers can be used for data transfers with memory.

The four data registers may be paired to form the 16-bit data registers DW0 (D0+D1) and DW1 (D2+D3). At reset, the value of Dn is undefined.

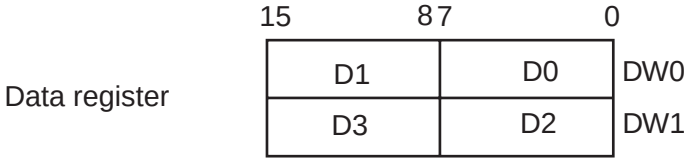


Figure:2.1.6 Data Registers

2.1.7 Processor Status Word

Processor status word (PSW) is an 8-bit register that stores flags for operation results, interrupt mask level, and maskable interrupt enable. PSW is automatically pushed onto the stack when an interrupt occurs and is automatically popped when return from the interrupt service routine.

■ Processor Status Word(PSW)

Table:2.1.4 Processor Status Word(PSW)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	MIE	IM1	IM0	VF	NF	CF	ZF
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

bp	Flag	Description
7	Reserved	Set always to "0".
6	MIE	Maskable interrupt enable 0: All maskable interrupts are disabled. 1: (xxxLVn,xxxIE) for each interrupt is enabled.
5-4	IM1 IM0	Interrupt mask level Controls maskable interrupt acceptance.
3	VF	Overflow flag 0: Overflow did not occur. 1: Overflow occurred.
2	NF	Negative flag 0: MSB of operation results is "0". 1: MSB of operation results is "1".
1	CF	Carry flag 0: A carry or a borrow from MSB did not occur. 1: A carry or a borrow from MSB occurred.
0	ZF	Zero flag 0: Operation result is not "0". 1: Operation result is "0".

■ Zero Flag (ZF)

Zero flag (ZF) is set to "1", when all bits are '0' in the operation result. Otherwise, zero flag is cleared to "0".

■ Carry Flag (CF)

Carry flag (CF) is set to "1", when a carry from or a borrow to the MSB occurs. Carry flag is cleared to "0", when no carry or borrow occurs.

■ Negative Flag (NF)

Negative flag (NF) is set to "1" when MSB is '1' and reset to "0" when MSB is '0'. Negative flag is used to handle a signed value.

■ Overflow Flag (VF)

Overflow flag (VF) is set to "1", when the arithmetic operation results overflow as a signed value. Otherwise, overflow flag is cleared to "0". Overflow flag is used to handle a signed value.

■ Interrupt Mask Level (IM1 and IM0)

Interrupt mask level (IM1 and IM0) controls the maskable interrupt acceptance in accordance with the interrupt factor interrupt priority for the interrupt control circuit in the CPU. The two-bit control flag defines levels '0' to '3'. Level 0 is the highest mask level. The interrupt request will be accepted only when the level set in the interrupt level flag (xxxLVn) of the interrupt control register (xxxICR) is higher than the interrupt mask level. When the interrupt is accepted, the level is reset to IM1-IM0, and interrupts whose mask levels are the same or lower are rejected during the accepted interrupt processing.

Table:2.1.5 Interrupt Mask Level and Interrupt Acceptance

	Interrupt mask level		Priority	Acceptable interrupt level
	IM1	IM0		
Mask level 0	0	0	Highest	Non-maskable interrupt (NMI) only
Mask level 1	0	1	High	NMI, level 0
Mask level 2	1	0	Low	NMI, level 0 to 1
Mask level 3	1	1	Lowest	NMI, level 0 to 2

■ Maskable Interrupt Enable (MIE)

Maskable interrupt enable flag (MIE) enables/disables acceptance of maskable interrupts by the CPU's internal interrupt acceptance circuit. A '1' enables maskable interrupts; a '0' disables all maskable interrupts regardless of the interrupt mask level (IM1-IM0) setting in PSW. This flag is not changed by interrupts.

2.1.8 Address Space

The address space of this LSI is 256 KB. (max.) The instruction and data areas are not separated.
The instruction area can be used as linear address space. The data area needs bank specification in every 64 KB. (The initial value is first 64 KB space). The data described in this section includes RAM data and ROM table data.
The data area consists of an area of 256 bytes that supports efficient access with RAM short addressing and an area of 256 bytes that supports efficient access with I/O short addressing.
The memory control register controls memory to be expanded.

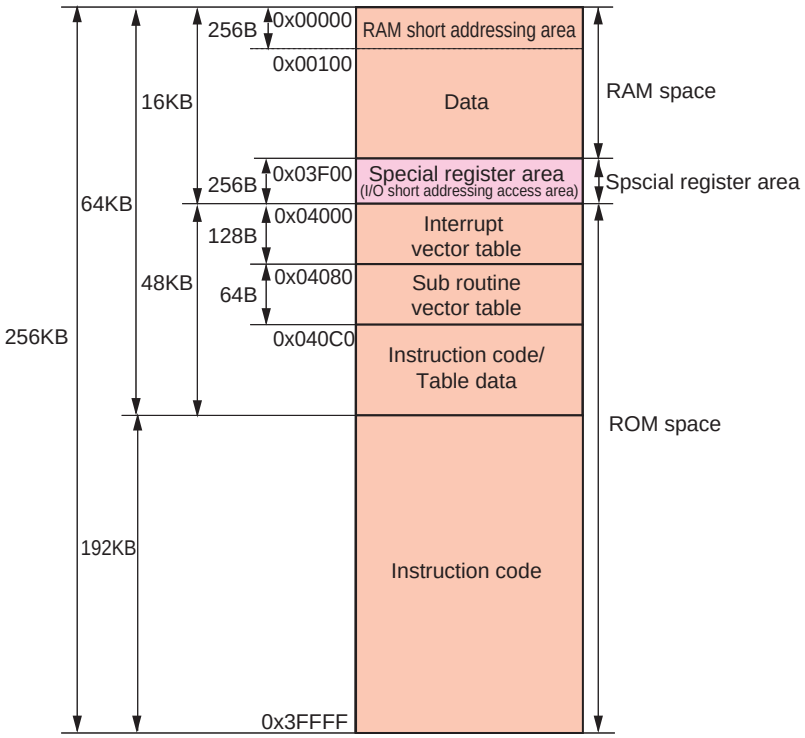


Figure:2.1.7 Address Space

2.1.9 Addressing Modes

This LSI supports the nine addressing modes.

Each instruction uses a combination of the following addressing

1) Register direct

2) Immediate

3) Register indirect

4) Register relative indirect

5) Stack relative indirect

6) Absolute

7) RAM short

8) I/O short

9) Handy

These addressing modes are well-suited for C language compilers. All of the addressing modes can be used for data transfer instructions. In modes that allow half-byte addressing, the relative value can be specified in half-byte (4-bit) increments, so that instruction length can be shorter. Handy addressing reuses the last memory address accessed and is only available with the MOV and MOVW instructions. Combining handy addressing with absolute addressing reduces code size. For transfer data between memory, 8 addressing modes; register indirect, register relative indirect, stack relative indirect, absolute, RAM short, I/O short, handy can be used. For operation instruction, register direct and immediate can be used. Refer to instruction's manual for the MN101C series.

This LSI is designed for 8-bit data access. It is possible to transfer data in 16-bit increments with odd or all even addresses.

Addressing mode		Effective address	Explanation
Register direct	Dn/DWn An/SP PSW	-	Directly specifies the register. Only internal registers can be specified.
Immediate	imm4/imm8 imm16	-	Directly specifies the operand or mask value appended to the instruction code.
Register indirect	(An)	15 0 An	Specifies the address using an address register.
Register relative indirect	(d8, An)	15 0 An+d8	Specifies the address using an address register with 8-bit displacement.
	(d16, An)	15 0 An+d16	Specifies the address using an address register with 16-bit displacement.
	(d4, PC) (branch instructions only)	17 0 H PC+d4 *1	Specifies the address using the program counter with 4-bit displacement and H bit.
	(d7, PC) (branch instructions only)	17 0 H PC+d7 *1	Specifies the address using the program counter with 7-bit displacement and H bit.
	(d11, PC) (branch instructions only)	17 0 H PC+d11 *1	Specifies the address using the program counter with 11-bit displacement and H bit.
	(d12, PC) (branch instructions only)	17 0 H PC+d12 *1	Specifies the address using the program counter with 12-bit displacement and H bit.
	(d16, PC) (branch instructions only)	17 0 H PC+d16 *1	Specifies the address using the program counter with 16-bit displacement and H bit.
Stack relative indirect	(d4, SP)	15 0 SP+d4	Specifies the address using the stack pointer with 4-bit displacement.
	(d8, SP)	15 0 SP+d8	Specifies the address using the stack pointer with 8-bit displacement.
	(d16, SP)	15 0 SP+d16	Specifies the address using the stack pointer with 16-bit displacement.
Absolute	(abs8)	7 0 abs8	Specifies the address using the operand value appended to the instruction code. Optimum operand length can be used to specify the address.
	(abs12)	11 0 abs12	
	(abs16)	15 0 abs16	
	(abs18) (branch instructions only)	17 0 H abs18 *1	
RAM short	(abs8)	7 0 abs8	Specifies an 8-bit offset from the address x'00000'.
I/O short	(io8)	15 0 IOTOP+io8	Specifies an 8-bit offset from the top address (x'03F00') of the special function register area.
Handy	(HA)	-	Reuses the last memory address accessed and is only available with the MOV and MOVW instructions. Combined use with absolute addressing reduces code size.

*1 H: half-byte bit

Figure:2.1.8 Address Space

2.1.10 Machine Clock

Machine clock is generated based on the system clock dividing the source oscillation frequency. The machine clock is the base timing for control of CPU.

■ Internal Memory Access (no wait cycle) (NORMAL mode)

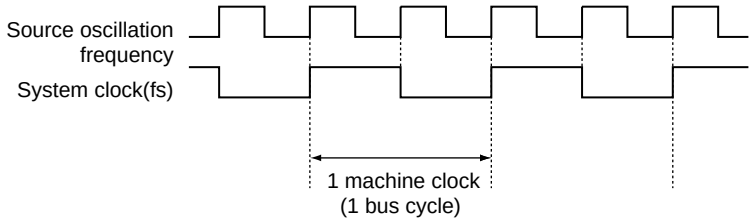


Figure:2.1.9 Machine Clock (no wait cycle)

Oscillation frequency of system clock differs depending on the CPUM register settings. [Chapter 2. 2.5 Clock Switching]

2.2 Memory Space

2.2.1 Memory Mode

ROM is the read only area and RAM is the memory area which contains readable/writable data. In addition to these, peripheral resources such as memory-mapped special registers are allocated. The MN101C series supports three memory modes (single chip mode, memory expansion mode, processor mode) in its memory model. This LSI supports one memory modes (single chip mode) in its memory model. Setting of each mode is different.

In single chip mode, the system consists of only internal memory.

2.2.2 Single-chip Mode

In single-chip mode, the system consists of only internal memory. This is the optimized memory mode and allows construction of systems with the highest performance. The single-chip mode uses only internal ROM and internal RAM. The MN101C series devices offer up to 11.75 KB of RAM and up to 224 KB of ROM. This LSI offers 1.5 KB of RAM and 32 KB of ROM.

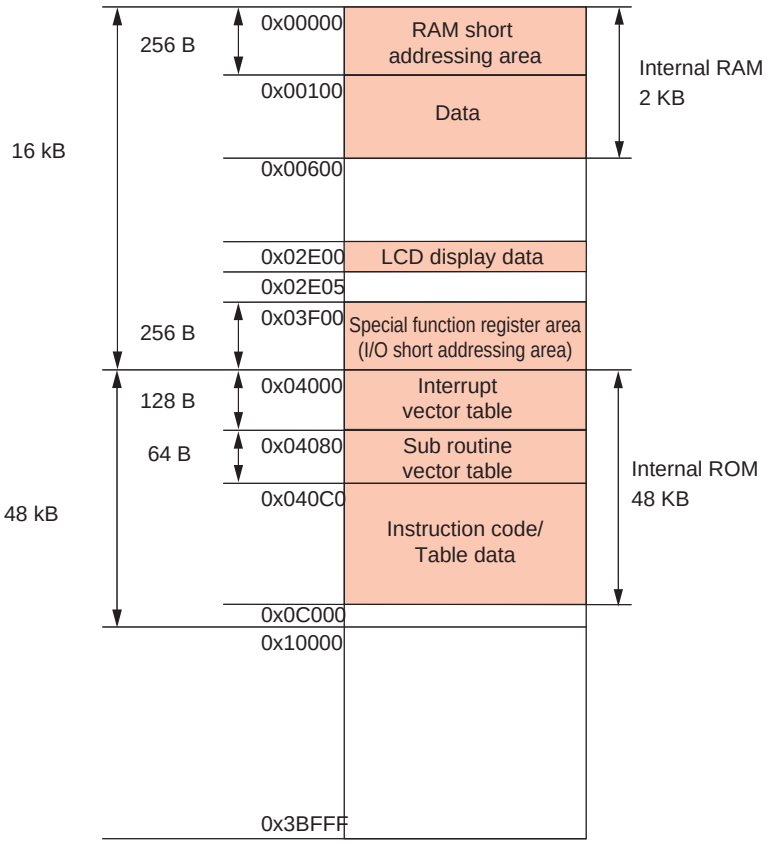


Figure:2.2.1 Single-chip Mode

The value of internal RAM is uncertain when power is applied to it.
It needs to be initialized before used.

2.2.3 Special Function Registers

The MN101C series locates the special function registers (I/O spaces) at the addresses 0x03F00 to 0x03FFF in memory space. The special function registers of this LSI are located as shown below.

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
03F0X	CPUM	MEMCTR	WDCTR	DLYCTR	Reserved						Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved		Reserved
03F1X		P1OUT	P2OUT	P3OUT		P5OUT		P7OUT		P9OUT	PAOUT	P1ODC	P1OMD	P7ODC	EDGDT	CLKOUT
03F2X		P1IN		P3IN		P5IN		P7IN		P9IN	PAIN	Reserved	P5OMD	PAODC	NFCTR	
03F3X		P1DIR		P3DIR		P5DIR		P7DIR		P9DIR	PADIR	P3ODC	P7OMD	P1CNT0	KEYT3_1 IMD	KEYT3_2 IMD
03F4X		P1PLUD		P3PLUD		P5PLU		P7PLUD		P9PLUD	PAPLUD	SELUD	XSEL		PAIMD	Reserved
03F5X	TM0BC	TM1BC	TM0OC	TM1OC	TM0MD	TM1MD	CK0MD	CK1MD	TM2BC	TM3BC	TM2OC	TM3OC	TM2MD	TM3MD	CK2MD	CK3MD
03F6X	TM6BC	TM6OC	TM6MD	TBCLR	TM6BEN								RMCTR	PSCMD	TM7MD4	TM8MD4
03F7X	TM7BCL	TM7BCH	TM7OC1L	TM7OC1H	TM7PR1L	TM7PR1H	TM7ICL	TM7ICH	TM7MD1	TM7MD2	TM7OC2L	TM7OC2H	TM7PR2L	TM7PR2H	TM7DPR1	TM7DPR2
03F8X	TM8BCL	TM8BCH	TM8OC1L	TM8OC1H	TM8PR1L	TM8PR1H	TM8ICL	TM8ICH	TM8MD1	TM8MD2	TM8OC2L	TM8OC2H	TM8PR2L	TM8PR2H	TM7MD3	TM8MD3
03F9X	SCSEL	SC0MD0	SC0MD1	SC0MD2	SC0MD3	SC0STR	RXBUF0	TXBUF0		SC1MD0	SC1MD1	SC1MD2	SC1MD3	SC1STR	RXBUF1	TXBUF1
03FAX	SC3MD0	SC3MD1	SC3MD1	SC3STR	SC3TRB	TXBUF3	SC3CTR	SC4AD0	SC4AD1	SC4RXB	SC4TXB	SC4STR				
03FBX	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved							
03FCX	LCDMD1	LCDMD2	LCCTR1	LCCTR2	LCCTR3					Reserved	Reserved	ANCTR0	ANCTR1	ANCTR2	ANBUF0	ANBUF1
03FDX	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
03FEX	Reserved	NMICR	IRQ0ICR	IRQ1ICR	IRQ2ICR	Reserved	IRQ4ICR	TM0ICR	TM1ICR	TM2ICR	TM3ICR	TM6ICR	TBICR	TM7ICR	T7OC2 ICR	SC0RICR
03FFX	SC0TICR	SC1RICR	SC1TICR	SC3ICR	ADICR	SC4ICR	TM8ICR	T8OC2 ICR								Reserved

03F0X	CPU Mode Memory Control
03F1X	I/O Port Control
03F2X	
03F3X	
03F4X	
03F5X	Timer Control
03F6X	
03F7X	
03F8X	
03F9X	Serial I/F Control
03FAX	
03FBX	
03FCX	Analog I/F Control
03FDX	LCD Control
03FEX	Interrupt Control
03FFX	

Figure:2.2.2 Register Map

2.3 Bus Interface

2.3.1 Bus Controller

The MN101C series provides separate buses to the internal memory and internal peripheral circuits to reduce bus line loads and thus realize faster operation.

There are three such buses: ROM bus, RAM bus and peripheral expansion bus (I/O bus). They connect to the internal ROM, internal RAM and internal peripheral circuits respectively. The bus control block controls the parallel operation of instruction read and data access. A functional block diagram of the bus controller is given below.

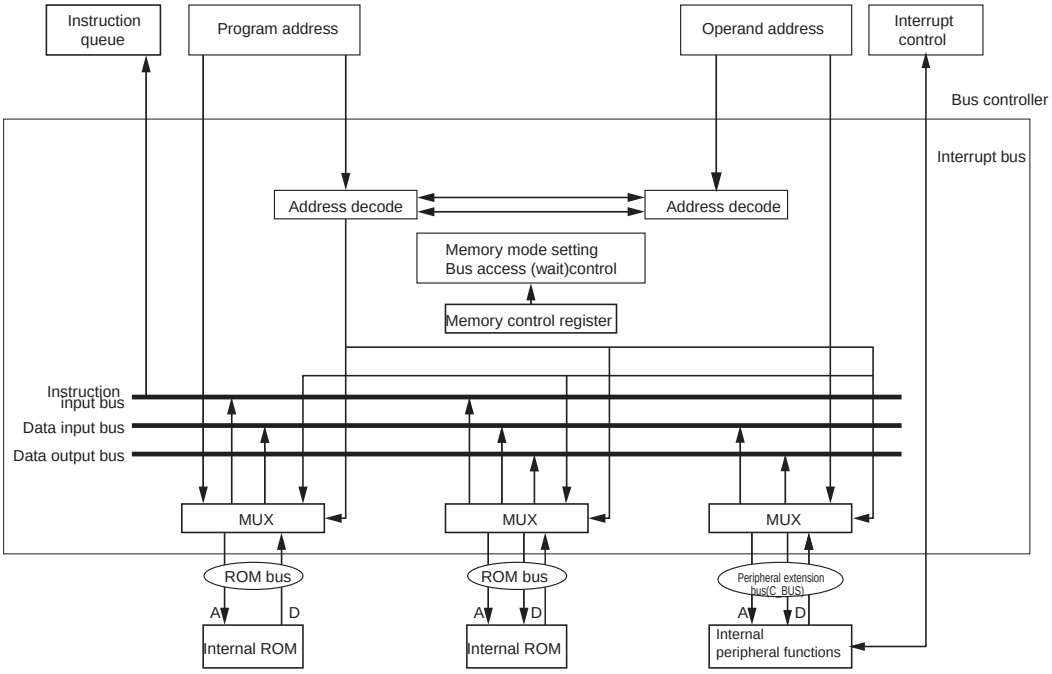


Figure:2.3.1 Functional Block Diagram of the Bus Controller

2.3.2 Control Registers

Bus interface is controlled by the memory control register (MEMCTR).

■ Memory Control Register (MEMCTR)

Table:2.3.1 Memory Control Register (MEMCTR: 0x03F01)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	IOW1	IOW0	IVBM	Reserved	Reserved	IRWE	Reserved	Reserved
At reset	1	1	0	0	1	0	1	1
Access	R/W							

bp	Flag	Description	
7-6	IOW1 IOW0	Wait cycles when accessing special register area 00: No wait cycles 01: 1 wait cycle 10: 2 wait cycles 11: 3 wait cycles	Bus cycle at 10 MHz oscillation 200 ns 300 ns 400 ns 500 ns
5	IVBN	Base address setting for interrupt vector table Interrupt vector base = 0x04000 Interrupt vector base = 0x00100	
4	Reserved	Set always to “0”¶	
3	Reserved	Set always to “1”¶	
2	IRWE	Software write enable flag for interrupt request flag Software write disable Even if data is written to each interrupt control (register (xxxICR), the state of the interrupt request flag (xxxIR) will not change.	
1-0	Reserved	Set always to “11”	

The IOW1-IOW0 wait settings affect accesses to the special registers located at the addresses 0x3F00-0x3FFF. After reset, MEMCTR specifies the fixed wait cycle mode with three wait cycles. Wait setting of IOW is a function, which CPU supports for special use, for example, when special function register or I/O is expanded to external. For this LSI, wait cycle setting is not always necessary. Select "no-wait cycle" for high performance system construction.

2.4 Standby Function

2.4.1 Overview

This LSI has two sets of system clock oscillator (high speed oscillation, low speed oscillation) for two CPU operating modes (NORMAL and SLOW), each with two standby modes (HALT and STOP). Power consumption can be decreased with using those modes.

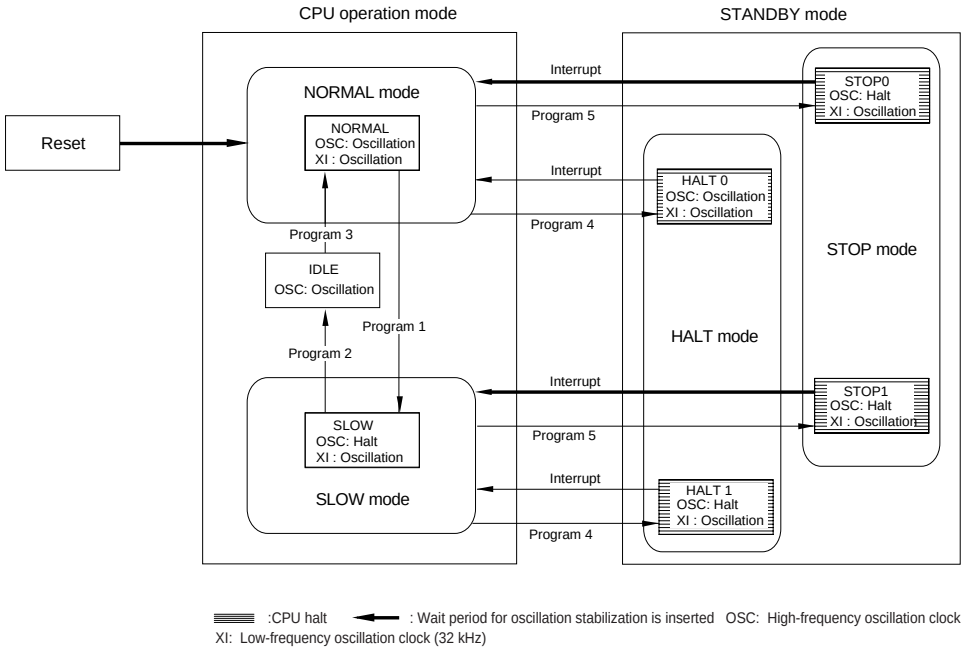


Figure:2.4.1 Transition Between Operation Modes

■ HALT Modes (HALT0, HALT1)

The CPU stops operating. But both of the oscillators remain operational in HALT0 and only the high-frequency oscillator stops operating in HALT1.

An interrupt returns the CPU to the previous CPU operating mode that is, to NORMAL from HALT0 or to SLOW from HALT1.

■ STOP Modes (STOP0, STOP1)

The CPU and both of the oscillators stop operating.

An interrupt restarts the oscillators and, after allowing time for them to stabilize, returns the CPU to the previous CPU operating mode - that is, to NORMAL from STOP0 or to SLOW from STOP1.

■ SLOW Mode

This mode executes the software using the low-frequency clock. Since the high-frequency oscillator is turned off, the device consumes less power while executing the software.

■ IDLE Mode

This mode allows time for the high-frequency oscillator to stabilize when the software is changing from SLOW to NORMAL mode.

To reduce power dissipation in STOP and HALT modes, it is necessary to check the stability of both the output current from pins and port level of input pins. For output pins, the output level should match the external level or direction control should be changed to input mode. For input pins, the external level should be fixed.

This LSI has two system clock oscillation circuits. OSC is for high-frequency operation (NORMAL mode) and XI is for low-frequency operation (SLOW mode). Transition between NORMAL and SLOW modes or to standby mode is controlled by the CPU mode control register (CPUM). Reset and interrupts are the return factors from standby mode. A wait period is inserted for oscillation stabilization at reset and when returning from STOP mode, but not when returning from HALT mode. High/low-frequency oscillation mode is automatically returned to the same state as existed before entering standby mode.

To stabilize the synchronization at the moment of switching clock speed between high speed oscillation (fosc) and low speed oscillation (fx), fosc should be set to 2.5 times or higher

Set the bp0 of XSEL register before changing to the low speed oscillation mode.

P90 can be used as the low speed oscillation, as well. Set the low speed oscillation selection register (XSEL) for SLOW mode setting.

■ Low Speed Oscillation Selection Register (XSEL)

Table:2.4.1 Low Speed Oscillation Selection Register (XSEL: 0x03F4C)

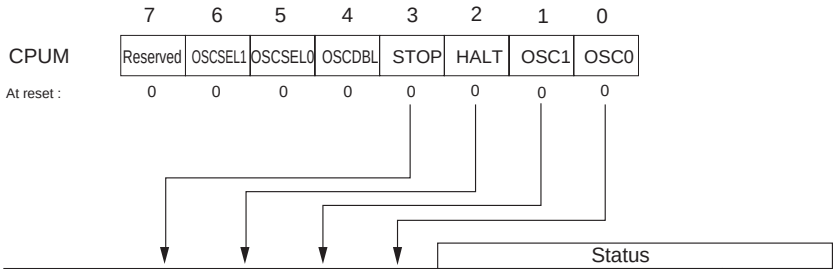
bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	XSEL
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Accesst	R							R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7-1	-	-
0	XSEL	P90, I/O port low speed oscillation selection 0:I/O port 1:Low speed oscillation

Set the bp0 of XSEL register before changing to the low speed oscillation mode.

2.4.2 CPU Mode Control Register

Transition from one mode to another mode is controlled by the CPU mode control register (CPUM).



Operation mode	STOP	HALT	OSC1	OSC0	Status: OSCI /OSCO	Status: XI/XO	Status: System clock	Status: CPU
NORMAL	0	0	0	0	Oscillation	Oscillation*	OSCI	Operating
IDLE	0	0	0	1	Oscillation	Oscillation	XI	Operating
SLOW	0	0	1	1	Halt	Oscillation	XI	Operating
HALT0	0	1	0	0	Oscillation	Oscillation*	OSCI	Halt
HALT1	0	1	1	1	Halt	Oscillation	XI	Halt
STOP0	1	0	0	0	Halt	Halt	Halt	Halt
STOP1	1	0	1	1	Halt	Halt*	Halt	Halt

* Status in NORMAL mode and HALT mode differ depending upon the XSEL.
XSEL=0 Halt
XSEL=1 Oscillation

Figure:2.4.2 Operating Mode and Clock Oscillation (CPUM: 0x3F00)

The procedure for transition from NORMAL to HALT or STOP mode is given below.

(1) If the return factor is a maskable interrupt, set the MIE flag in the PSW to "1" and set the interrupt mask (IM) to a level permitting acceptance of the interrupt.

(2) Clear the interrupt request flag (xxxIR) in the maskable interrupt control register (xxxICR), set the interrupt enable flag (xxxIR) for the return factor, and set the IE flag in the PSW.

(3) Set CPUM to HALT or STOP mode.

Do not change the setting of standby functions (STOP flag, HALT flag, OSC1 flag, OSC2 flag) at the same time with the setting of clock switching functions (OSCDBL flag, OSCSEL1 flag, OSCSEL0 flag).

Set the IRWE flag of the memory control register (MEMCTR) to clear interrupt request flag by software.

2.4.3 Transition between SLOW and NORMAL

This LSI has two CPU operating modes, NORMAL and SLOW. Transition from SLOW to NORMAL requires passing through IDLE mode.

A sample program for transition from NORMAL to SLOW mode is given below.

```
Program 1
        MOV     x'3',     D0              ; Set SLOW mode.
        MOV     D0, (CPUM)
```

Transition from NORMAL to SLOW mode, when the low-frequency clock has fully stabilized, can be done by writing to the CPU mode control register. In this case, transition through IDLE is not needed.

For transition from SLOW to NORMAL mode, the program must maintain the idle state until high-frequency clock oscillation is fully stable. In IDLE mode, the CPU operates on the low-frequency clock.

For transition from SLOW to NORMAL, oscillation stabilization waiting time is required same as that after reset. Software must count that time. We recommend selecting the oscillation stabilization time after consulting with oscillator manufacturers.

Sample program for transition from SLOW to NORMAL mode is given below.

```
Program 2
        MOV     x'1',     D0              ; Set IDLE mode.
        MOV     D0, (CPUM)
```

```
Program 3
        MOV   x'0B',   D0              ; A loop to keep approx. 6.7ms with low-frequency clock (32 kHz)
LOOP    ADD    -1,  D0                 ; operation when changed to high-frequency clock (10 MHz).
        BNE    LOOP                    ;
        SUB    D0, D0                  ;
        MOV    D0,(CPUM)                   ;  Set NORMAL mode.
```

2.4.4 Transition to STANDBY Modes

The program initiates transitions from a CPU operating mode to the corresponding STANDBY (HALT/STOP) modes by specifying the new mode in the CPU mode control register (CPUM). Interrupts initiate the return to the former CPU operating mode.

Before initiating a transition to a STANDBY mode, however, the program must

(1) Set the maskable interrupt enable flag (MIE) in the processor status word (PSW) to '0' to disable all maskable interrupts temporarily.

(2) Set the interrupt enable flags (xxxIE) in the interrupt control registers (xxxICR) to '1' or '0' to specify which interrupts do and do not initiate the return from the STANDBY mode. Set MIE '1' to enable those maskable interrupts.

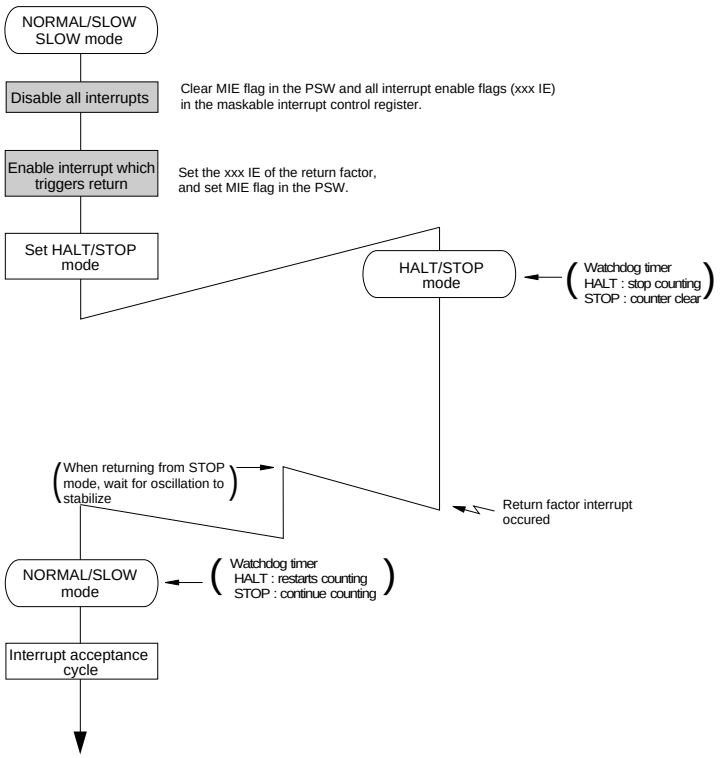


Figure:2.4.3 Transition to/from STANDBY Mode

If the interrupt is enabled but interrupt priority level of the interrupt to be used is not equal to or higher than the mask level in PSW before transition to HALT or STOP mode, it is impossible to return to CPU operation mode by maskable interrupt.

Set the bp0 of XSEL register before changing to the low speed oscillation mode.

■ Transition to HALT modes

The system transfers from NORMAL mode to HALT0 mode, and from SLOW mode to HALT1 mode. The CPU stops operating, but the oscillators remain operational. There are two ways to leave a HALT mode: a reset or an interrupt. A reset produces a normal reset; an interrupt, an immediate return to the CPU state prior to the transition to the HALT mode. The watchdog timer, if enabled, resumes counting.

```
Program 4
MOV   x'4',   D0                    ; Set HALT mode.
MOV   D0,  (CPUM)
NOP                                 ; After written in CPUM, some NOP
NOP                                 ; instructions (three or less) are
NOP                                      ; executed.
```

■ Transition to STOP mode

The system transfers from NORMAL mode to STOP0 mode, and from SLOW mode to STOP1 mode. In both cases, oscillation and the CPU are both halted. There are two ways to leave a STOP mode: a reset or an interrupt. When it changed to the stop mode, watchdog timer counter is cleared. Restart counting at the recovery and the oscillation stabilization wait is done. The count is continued after the recovery to CPU operation mode.

```
Program 5
MOV   x'8',   D0      ; Set HALT mode.
MOV   D0,  (CPUM)
NOP                   ; After written in CPUM, some NOP
NOP                   ; instructions (three or less) are
NOP                     ; executed.
```

Insert three NOP instructions right after the instruction of the transition to HALT, STOP mode.

Set the bp0 of XSEL register before changing to the low speed oscillation mode.

2.5 Clock Switching

This LSI can select the best operation clock for system by switching clock cycle division factor by program. Division factor is determined by both flags of the CPU mode control register (CPUM) and the Oscillator frequency control register (OSCMD). At the highest-frequency, CPU can be operated in the same clock cycle to the external clock hence providing wider operating frequency range.

■ CPU Mode Control Register (CPUM)

Table:2.5.1 CPU Mode Control Register (CPUM: 0x03F00)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	RESERVED	OSCSEL1	OSCSEL0	OSCDBL	STOP	HALT	OSC1	OSC0
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W							

bp	Flag	Description
7	RESERVED	Set always to "0".
6-5	OSCSEL1 OSCSEL0	Clock Frequency 00: 1 01: 4 10: 16 11: 64
4	OSCDBL	Internal System Clock 0: Standard (Input the oscillation clock cycle divided by 2) 1: 2x-speed (Input the oscillation clock cycle)

See Figure:2.4.2 for setup of bp3-0 flags of the CPU mode control register (CPUM).

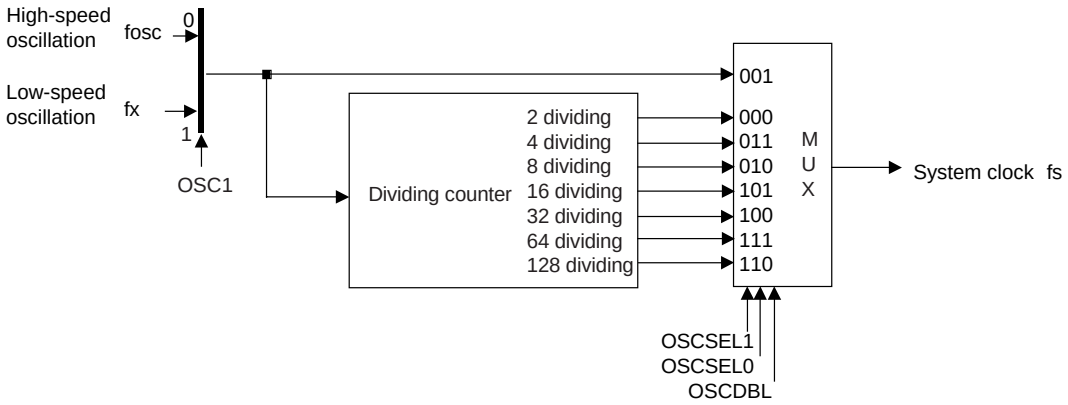


Figure:2.5.1 Clock Switching Circuit

OSCSEL1	OSCSEL0	OSCDBL	Oscillating frequency
0	0	0	2
0	0	1	1
0	1	0	8
0	1	1	4
1	0	0	32
1	0	1	16
1	1	0	128
1	1	1	64

Figure:2.5.2 Setting Division Factor at NORMAL mode by combination of OSCSEL and OSCDBL

Do not change the setting of standby functions (STOP flag, HALT flag, OSC1 flag, OSC2 flag) at the same time with the setting of clock switching functions (OSCDBL flag, OSCSEL1 flag, OSCSEL0 flag).

OSCDBL flag, OSCSEL1 flag and OSCSEL0 flag can be changed at the same time.

2.6 Reset

2.6.1 Reset operation

The CPU contents are reset and registers are initialized when the NRST pin is pulled to low.

■ Initiating a Reset

There are two methods to initiate a reset.

(1) Drive the NRST pin low. NRST pin should be held “low” for more than OSC 4 clock cycles (100 ns at a 10 MHz).

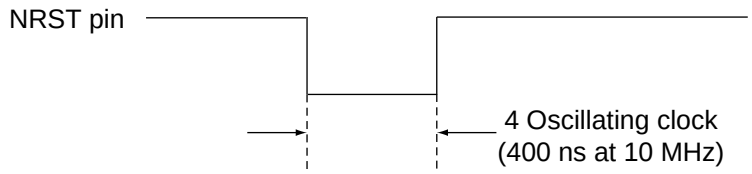


Figure:2.6.1 Minimum Reset Pulse Width

(2) Setting the P2OUT7 flag of the P2OUT register to "0" outputs low level at P27 (NRST) pin. And transferring to reset by program (software reset) can be executed. If the internal LSI is reset and register is initiated, the P2OUT7 flag becomes "1" and reset is released.

When NRST pin is connected to low power voltage detection circuit that gives pulse for enough low level time at sudden unconnected. And reset can be generated even if NRST pin is held "low" for less than OSC 4 clock cycles, take notice of noise.

■ Sequence at Reset

(1) When reset pin comes to high level from low level, the internal 14-bit counter (It can be used as watchdog timer, too.) starts its operation by system clock. The period from starting its count from its overflow is called oscillation stabilization wait time.

(2) During reset, internal register and special function register are initiated.

(3) After oscillation stabilization wait time, internal reset is released and program is started from the address written at address 0x4000 at interrupt rector table.

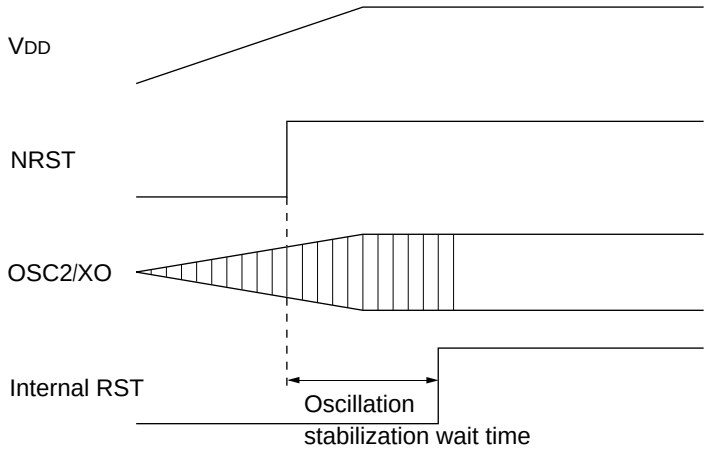


Figure:2.6.2 Reset Released Sequence

2.6.2 Oscillation Stabilization Wait time

Oscillation stabilization wait time is the period from the stop of oscillation circuit to the stabilization for oscillation. Oscillation stabilization wait time is automatically inserted at releasing from reset and at recovering from STOP mode. At recovering from STOP mode the oscillation stabilization wait time control register (DLYCTR) is set to select the oscillation stabilization wait time. At releasing from reset, oscillation stabilization wait time is fixed.
The timer that counts oscillation stabilization wait time is also used as a watchdog timer. That is used as a runaway detective timer at anytime except at releasing from reset and at recovering from STOP mode. Watchdog timer is initiated at reset and at STOP mode and starts counting from the initialize value (0x0000) when system clock (fs) is as clock source.

■ Block Diagram of Oscillation Stabilization Wait Time (watchdog timer)

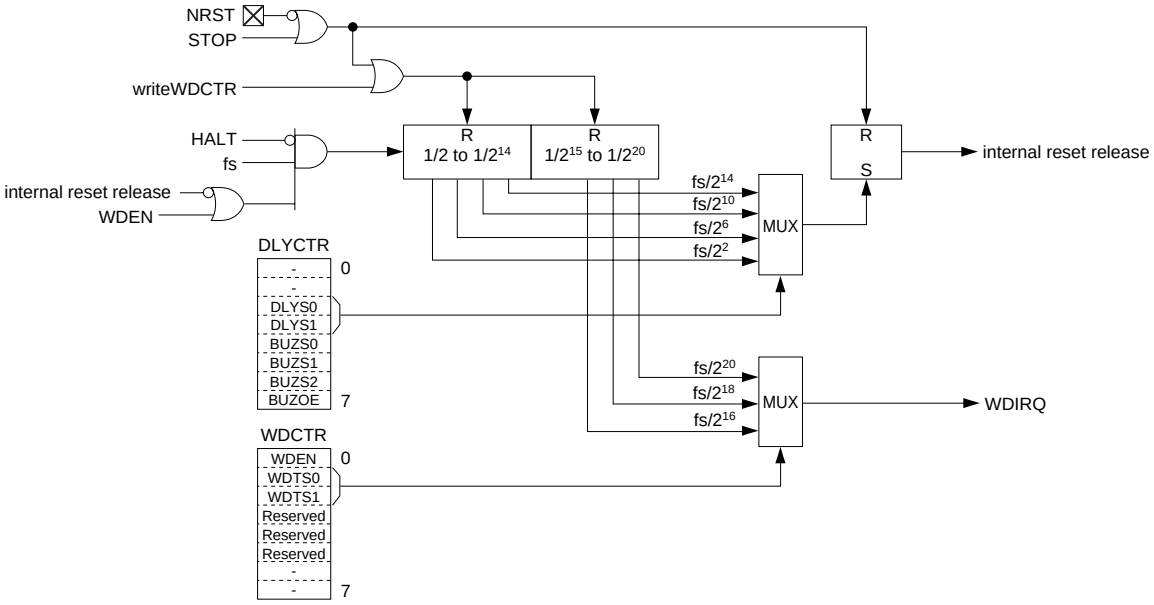


Figure:2.6.3 Block Diagram of Oscillation Stabilization Wait Time (watchdog timer)

■ Oscillation Stabilization Wait Time Control Register (DLYCTR)

Table:2.6.1 Oscillation Stabilization Wait Time Control Register (DLYCTR: 0x03F03)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	BUZOE	BUZS2	BUZS1	BUZS0	DLYS1	DLYS0	-	-
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	-
Access	R/W							

bp	Flag	Description
7	BUZOE	Output selection 0: Port data output 1: Buzzer output
6-4	BUZS2 BUZS1 BUZS0	Buzzer output frequency selection 000: fosc/2^{14} 001: fosc/2^{13} 010: fosc/2^{12} 011: fosc/2^{11} 100: fosc/2^{10} 101: fosc/2^{9} 110: fx/2^{4} 111: fx/2^{3}
3-2	DLYS1 DLYS0	Oscillation stabilization wait period selection 00: fs/2^{14} 01: fs/2^{10} 10: fs/2^{6} *1 11: fs/2 *1
1-0	-	-

*1 Do not use in high-speed operation (NORMAL mode).
Use in low-speed operation (SLOW mode).

■ Control the Oscillation Stabilization Wait Time

At recovering from STOP mode, the bit 3-2 (DLYS1, DLYS0) of the oscillation stabilization wait time control register can be set to select the oscillation stabilization wait time from 214, 210, 26, 22 x system clock. The DLYCTR register is also used for controlling of buzzer functions.

At releasing from reset, the oscillation stabilization wait time is fixed to "2^{14} x system clock". System clock is determined by the CPU mode control register (CPUM).

Table:2.6.2 Oscillation Stabilization Wait Time

DLYS1	DLYS0	Oscillation stabilization wait time
0	0	2^{14} x System clock
0	1	2^{10} x System clock
1	0	2^{6} x System clock *1
1	1	2^{2} x System clock *1

*1 Do not use in high-speed operation (NORMAL mode).
Use in low-speed operation (SLOW mode).

Chapter 3 Interrupts

3

3.1 Overview

This LSI speeds up interrupt response with circuitry that automatically loads the branch address to the corresponding interrupt service routine from an interrupt vector table:reset, non-maskable interrupts (NMI), 4 external interrupts, and 17 internal interrupts (peripheral function interrupts).

For interrupts other than reset, the interrupts processing sequence consists of interrupt request, interrupt acceptance, and hardware processing. After the interrupt is accepted, the program counter (PC) and processor status word (PSW) and handy addressing data (HA) are saved onto the stack. And an interrupts handler ends by restoring, using the POP instruction and other means, the contents of any registers used during processing and then executing the return from interrupt (RTI) instruction to return to the point at which execution was interrupted. Max. 12 machine cycles before execution, and max 11 machine cycles after execution.

Each interrupt has a interrupt control register, which controls the interrupts. Interrupt control register consists of the interrupt level field (LV1 to 0), interrupt enable flag (IE), and interrupt request flag (IR).

Interrupt request flag (IR) is set to “1” by an interrupt request, and cleared to “0” by the interrupt acceptance. This flag is managed by hardware, but can be rewritten by software.

Interrupt enable flag (IE) is the flag that enables interrupts in the group. There is no interrupt enable flag in non-maskable interrupt (NMI). Once this interrupt request flag is set, it is accepted without any conditions. Interrupts enable flag is set in maskable interrupt. Interrupt enable flag of maskable interrupt is valid when the maskable interrupt enable flag (MIE flag) of PSW is “1”.

Maskable interrupts have had vector numbers by hardware, but their priority can be changed by setting interrupts level field. There are three hierarchical interrupt levels. If multiple interrupts have the same priority, the one with the lowest vector number takes priority. Maskable interrupts are accepted when its level is higher than the interrupt mask level (IM1 to 0) of PSW. Non-maskable interrupts are always accepted, regardless of the interrupt mask level.

3.1.1 Functions

Table:3.1.1 Interrupt Functions

Interrupt type	Reset (interrupt)	Non-maskable interrupt	Maskable interrupt
Vector number	0	1	2 to 23
Table address	0x04000	0x04004	0x04008 to 0x0405C
Starting address	Address specified by vector address		
Interrupt level	-	-	Can be set to levels 0 to 2 by software
Interrupt factor	External RST pin input	Errors detection, PI interrupt	External pin input internal peripheral function
Generated operation	Direct input to CPU core	Input to CPU core from non-maskable interrupt control register (NMICR)	Input interrupt request level set in interrupt level flag (xxxL Vn) of maskable interrupt control register (xxxICR) to CPU core.
Accept operation	Always accepts	Always accepts	Acceptance only by the interrupt control of the register (xxxICR) and the interrupt mask level in PSW.
Machine cycles until accepted	12	12	12
PWS status after acceptance	All flags are cleared to “0”	The interrupt mask level flag in PSW is cleared to “00”	Values of the interrupt level flag (xxxLVn) are set to the interrupt mask level (masking all interrupt requests with the same or the lower priority).

3.1.2 Block Diagram

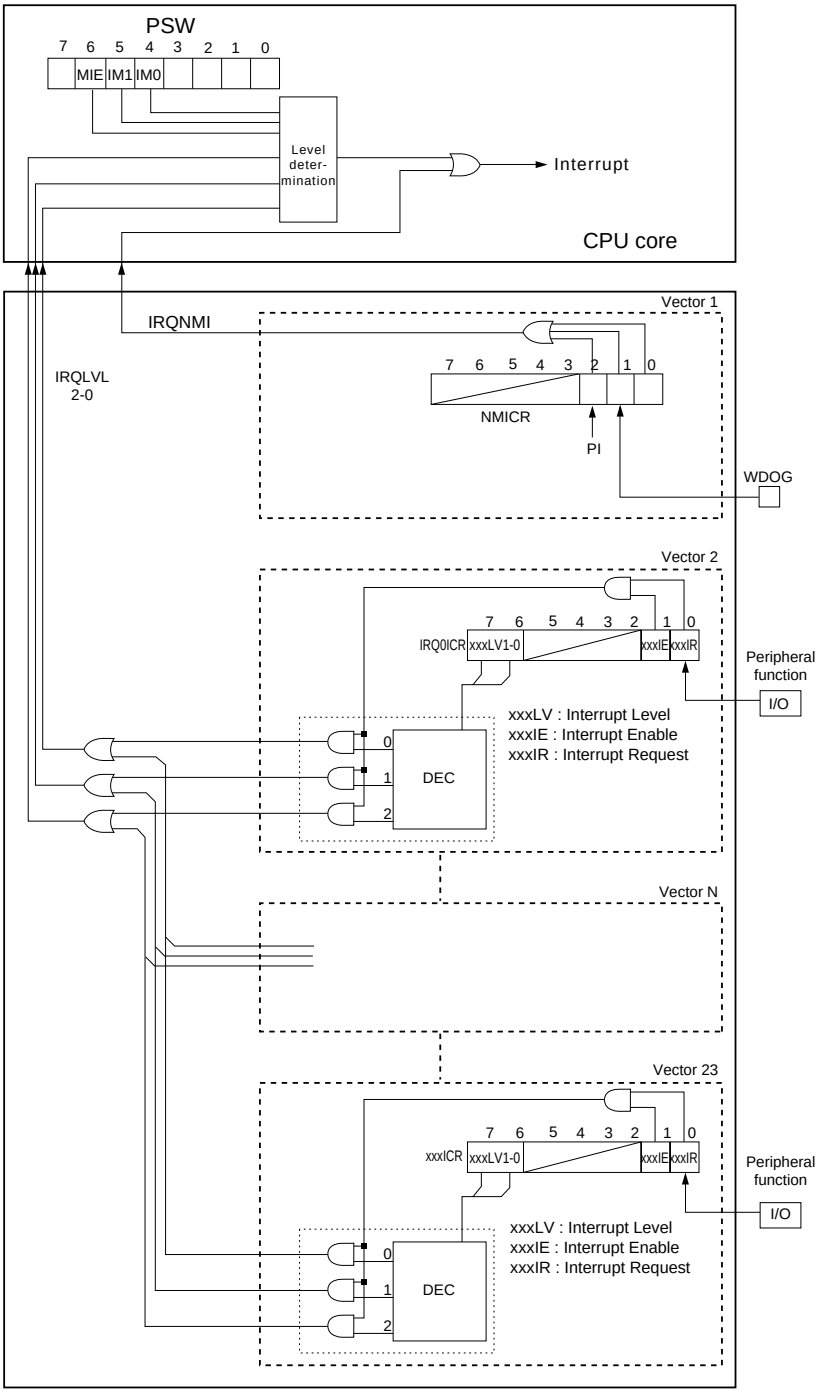


Figure:3.1.1 Interrupt Block Diagram

3.1.3 Operation

■ Interrupt Processing Sequence

For interrupts other than reset, the interrupt processing sequence consists of interrupt request, interrupt acceptance, and hardware processing. The program counter (PC) and processor status word (PSW) and hard addressing data (HA) are saved onto the stack, and program is branched to the address specified by the corresponding interrupt vector. An interrupt handler ends by restoring the contents of any registers used during processing and then executing the return from interrupt (RTI) instruction to return to the point at which execution was interrupted.

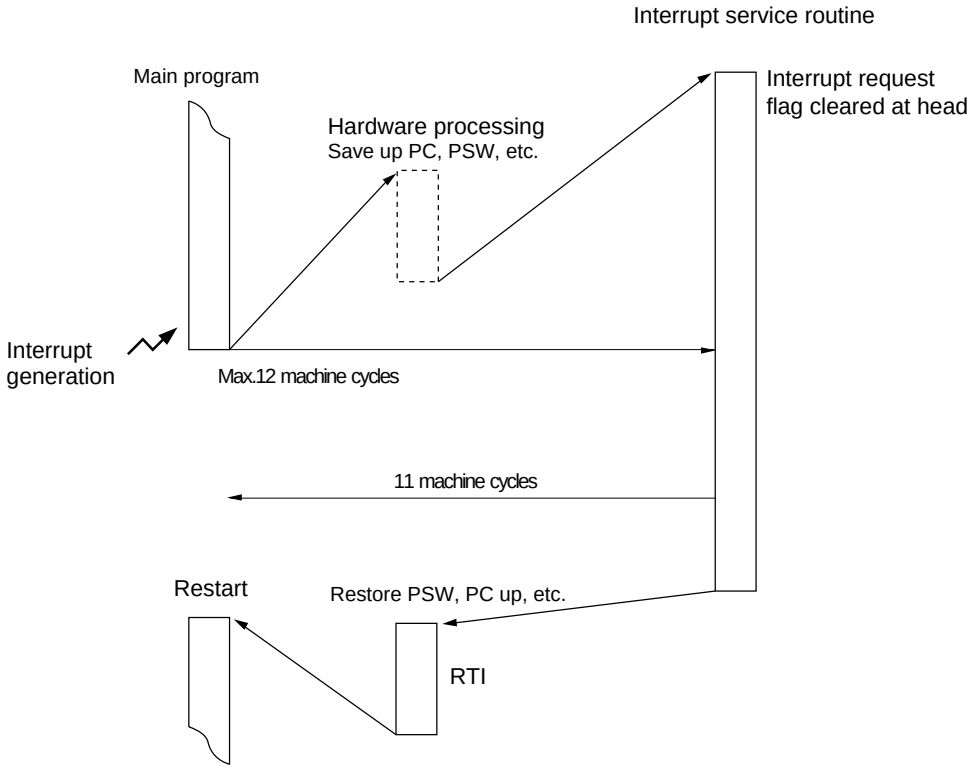


Figure:3.1.2 Interrupt Processing Sequence (maskable interrupts)

■ Interrupt Group and Vector Addresses

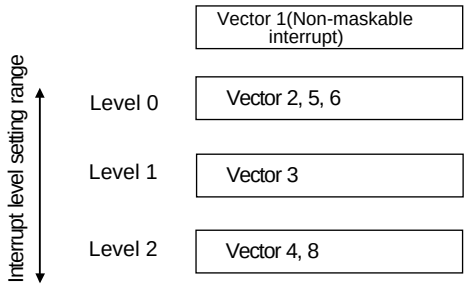
Table:3.1.2 shows the list of interrupt vector addresses and interrupt group.

Table:3.1.2 Interrupt Vector Addresses and Interrupt Group

Vector number	Vector addresses	Interrupt group (interrupt factor)		Control register (address)	
0	0x04000	Reset	-	-	-
1	0x04004	Non-maskable interrupt	NMI	NMICR	0x03FE1
2	0x04008	External interrupt 0	IRQ0	IRQ0ICR	0x03FE2
3	0x0400C	External interrupt 1	IRQ1	IRQ1ICR	0x03FE3
4	0x04010	External interrupt 2	IRQ2	IRQ2ICR	0x03FE4
5	0x04014	Reserved	-	-	0x03FE5
6	0x04018	External interrupt 4	IRQ4	IRQ4ICR	0x03FE6
7	0x0401C	Timer 0 interrupt	TM0IRQ	IRQ0ICR	0x03FE7
8	0x04020	Timer 1 interrupt	TM1IRQ	IRQ1ICR	0x03FE8
9	0x04024	Timer 2 interrupt	TM2IRQ	TM2ICR	0x03FE9
10	0x04028	Timer 3 interrupt	TM3IRQ	TM3ICR	0x03FEA
11	0x0402C	Timer 6 interrupt	TM6IRQ	TM6ICR	0x03FEB
12	0x04030	Time base interrupt	TBIRQ	TBICR	0x03FEC
13	0x04034	Timer 7 interrupt	TM7IRQ	TM7ICR	0x03FED
14	0x04038	Timer 7 compere 2-match interrupt	T7OC2IRQ	T7OC2ICR	0x03FEE
15	0x0403C	Serial 0 UART reception interrupt	SC0RIRQ	SC0RICR	0x03FEF
16	0x04040	Serial 0 UART transmission interrupt	SC0TIRQ	SC0TICR	0x03FF0
17	0x04044	Serial 1 UART reception interrupt	SC1RIRQ	SC1RICR	0x03FF1
18	0x04048	Serial 1 UART transmission interrupt	SC1TIRQ	SC1TICR	0x03FF2
19	0x0404C	Serial 3 interrupt	SC3IRQ	SC3ICR	0x03FF3
20	0x04050	A/D conversion interrupt	ADIRQ	ADICR	0x03FF4
21	0x04054	Serial 4 interrupt	SC4IRQ	SC4ICR	0x03FF5
22	0x04058	Timer 8 interrupt	TM8IRQ	TM8ICR	0x03FF6
23	0x0405C	Timer 8 compare 2-match interrupt	TM8OC2IRQ	TM8OC2ICR	0x03FF7

■ Interrupt Level and Priority

This LSI allocated vector numbers and interrupt control registers (except reset interrupt) to each interrupt. The interrupt level (except reset interrupt, non-maskable interrupt) can be set by software, per each interrupt group. There are three hierarchical interrupt levels. If multiple interrupts have the same priority, the one with the lowest vector number takes priority. For example, if a vector 3 set to level 1 and a vector 4 set to level 2 request interrupt simultaneously, vector 3 will be accepted.



Priority	Interrupt vector No.
1	Vector 1
2	Vector 2
3	Vector 5
4	Vector 6
5	Vector 3
6	Vector 4
7	Vector 8

Figure:3.1.3 Example of Interrupt Level

■ Determination of Interrupt Acceptance

The following is the procedure from interrupt request input to acceptance.

1. The interrupt request flag (xxxR) in the corresponding external interrupt control register (IRQnICR) and internal interrupt control register (xxxICR) are set to “1”.
2. An interrupt request is input to the CPU. (If the interrupt enable flag (xxxIE) of the same register is “1”.)
3. The interrupt request signal is set for each interrupt. The interrupt level (IL) is input to the CPU.
4. The interrupt request is accepted. (If IL has higher priority than IM and MIE is “1”.)
5. Acceptance of an interrupt does not reset the corresponding interrupt enable flag (xxxIE) to “0”.

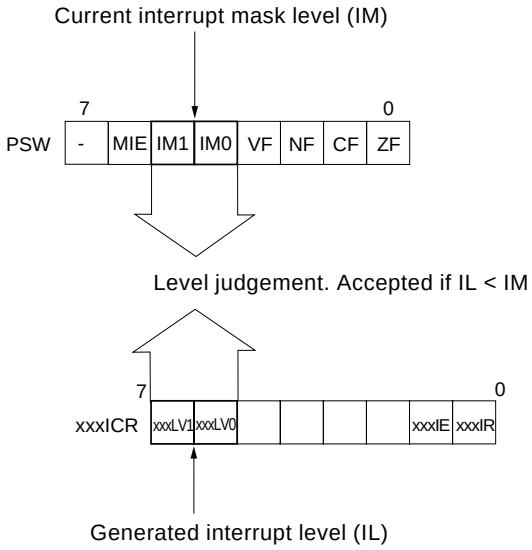


Figure:3.1.4 Determination of Interrupt Acceptance

Acceptance of an interrupt does not reset the corresponding interrupt enable flag (xxxIE) to “0”.

MIE = “0” and interrupts are disabled when:

- MIE in the PSW is reset to “0” by a program
- Reset is detected.

MIE = “1” and interrupts are enabled when:

- MIE in the PSW is set to “1” by a program

The interrupt mask level (IM = IM1 - IM0) in the processor status word (PSW) changes when:

- The program alters it directly,
- A reset initializes it to 0 (00b),
- Maskable interrupt is accepted (the interrupt level becomes the interrupt mask level).
- Execution of the RTI instruction at the end of an interrupt service routine restores the processor status word (PSW) and thus the previous interrupt mask level.

The MN101C series does not reset the maskable interrupt enable (MIE) flag of the processor status word (PSW) to “0” when accepting interrupts.

Non-maskable interrupts have priority over maskable ones.

■ Interrupt Acceptance Operation

When accepting an interrupt, this LSI hardware saves the handy address register, the return address from the program counter, and the processor status word (PSW) to the stack and branches program to the interrupt handler using the starting address in the vector table. The following is the hardware processing sequence invoked by interrupt acceptance.

1. the stack pointer (SP) is updated.
   (SP-6) ⟶ (SP)
2. The contents of the handy address register (HA) are saved to the stack.
   Upper half of HA ⟶ (SP + 5)
   Lower half of HA ⟶ (SP + 4)
3. The contents of the program counter (PC) -i.e., the return address- are saved to the stack.
   PC bits 18, 17, and 0 ⟶ (SP + 3)
   PC bits 16-9 ⟶ (SP + 2)
   PC bits 8-1 ⟶ (SP + 1)
4. The contents of the PSW are saved to the stack.
   PSW ⟶ (SP)
5. The interrupt level (xxxLVn) for the interrupt is copied to the interrupt mask (IMn) in the PSW.
   Interrupt level (xxxLVn) ⟶ IMn
6. The hardware branches program to the address in the vector table.

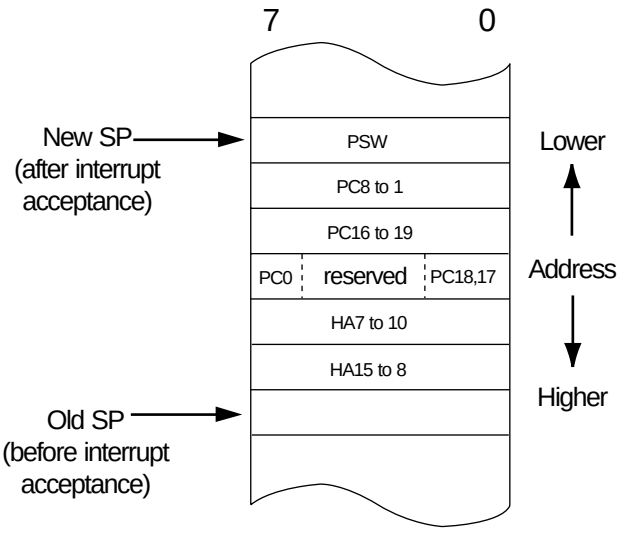


Figure:3.1.5 Stack Operation during Interrupt Acceptance

■ Interrupt Return Operation

An interrupt handler ends by restoring the contents of any registers saved to the stack during processing by the POP instruction and other means, and the RTI instruction restores the program to the point at execution was interrupted.

The following is the processing sequence invoked by the RTI instruction.

1. The contents of the PSW are restored from the stack. (SP)
2. The contents of the program counter (PC) -i.e., then return address- are restored from the stack. (SP + 1 to SP + 3)
3. The contents of the handy address register (HA) are restored from the stack. (SP + 4, SP+ 5)
4. The stack pointer is updated. (SP +6 $\rightarrow$ SP)
5. Execution branches program to the address in the program counter.

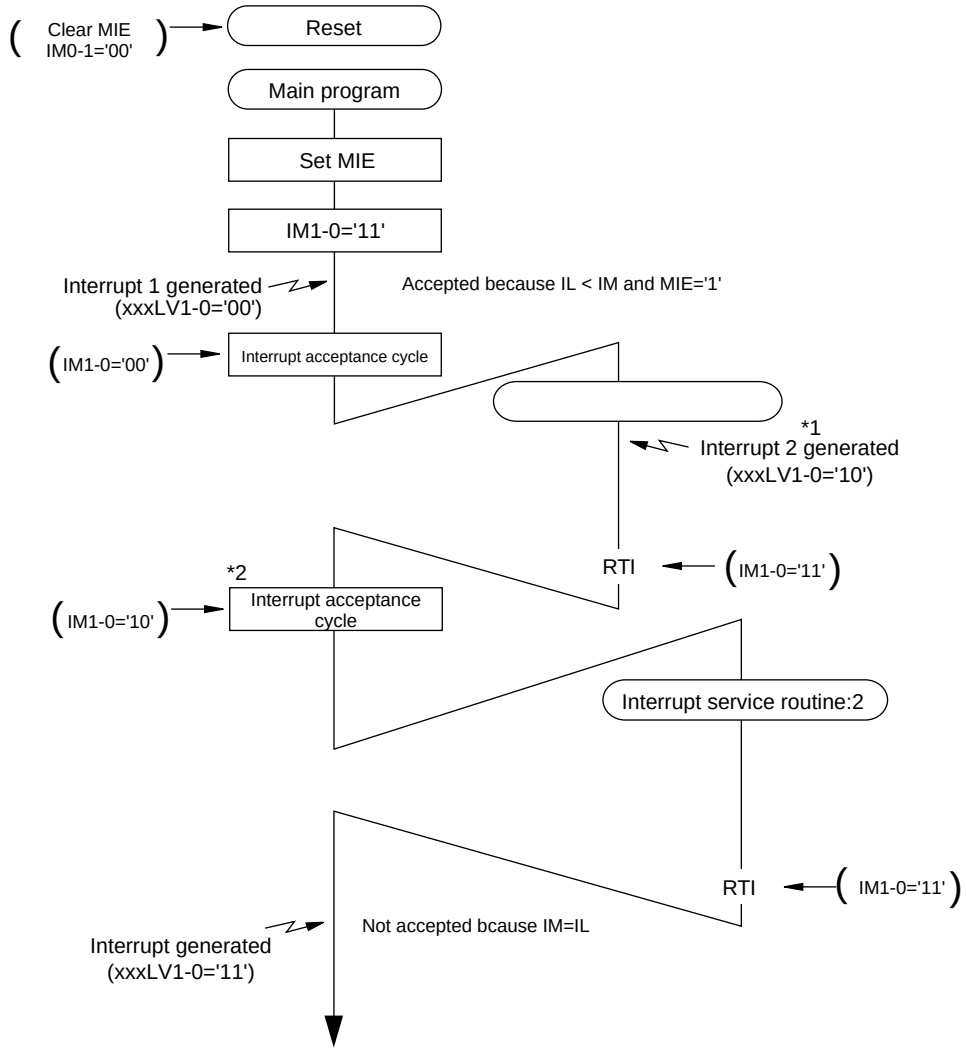
The handy address register is an internal register used by the handy addressing function. The hardware saves its contents to the stack to prevent the interrupt from interfering with operation of the function.

Registers such as data register, or address register are not saved, so that PUSH instruction from program should be used to save them onto stack, if necessary.

The address bp6 to bp2, when program counter (PC) are saved to the stack, are reserved. Do not change it by program.

■ Maskable Interrupt

Figure:3.1.6 shows the processing flow when a second interrupt with a lower priority level (xxxLV1 - xxxLV0 = “10”) arrives during the processing of the with a higher priority level (xxxLV1 - xxxLV0 = “00”).



Parentheses ( ) indicates hardware processing.

*1 If during the processing of the first interrupt, an interrupt request with an interrupt level (IL) numerically lower than the interrupt mask (IM) arrives, it is accepted as a nested interrupt. If IL > IM, however, the interrupt is not accepted.
*2 The second interrupt, postponed because its interrupt level (IL) was numerically greater than the interrupt mask (IM) for the first interrupt service routine, is accepted when the first interrupt handler returns.

Figure:3.1.6 Processing Sequence for Maskable Interrupts

■ Multiplex Interrupt of Maskable Interrupt

When this LSI accepts an interrupt, it automatically disables acceptance of subsequent interrupts with the same or lower priority level. When the hardware accepts an interrupt, it copies the interrupt level (xxxLVn) for the interrupt to the interrupt mask (IM) in the PSW. As a result, subsequent interrupts with the same or lower priority levels are automatically masked. Only interrupts with higher priority levels are accepted. The net result is that interrupts are normally processed in decreasing order of priority. It is, however, possible to alter this arrangement.

1. To disable interrupt nesting
    - Reset the MIE bit in the PSW to “0”.
    - Raise the priority level of the interrupt mask (IM) in the PSW.
2. To enable interrupts with lower priority than the currently accepted interrupt
    - Lower the priority level or the interrupt mask (IM) in the PSW.

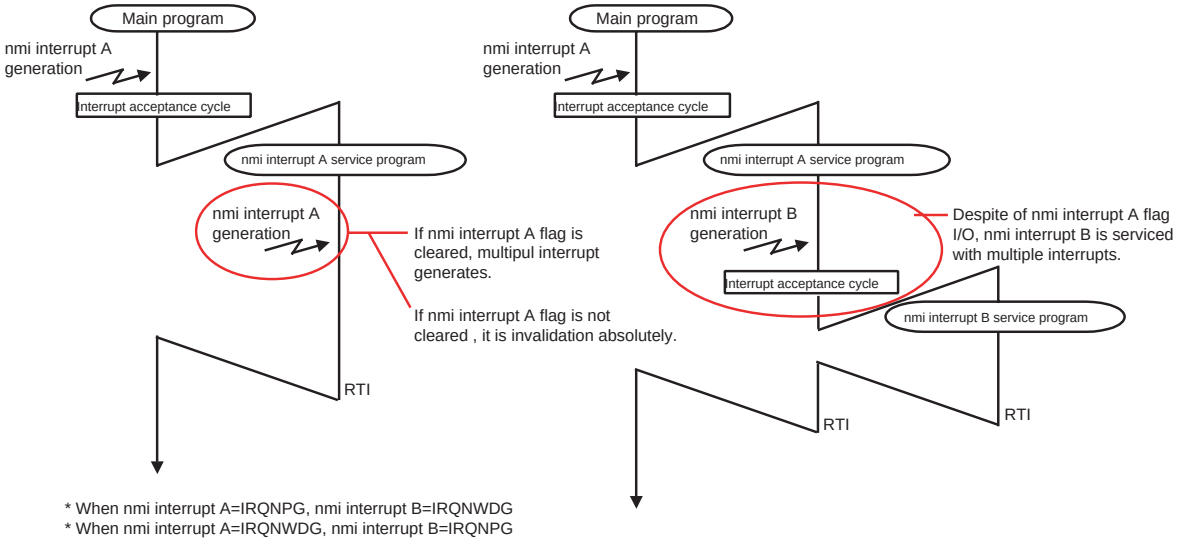
Multiplex interrupts are only enables for interrupts with levels higher than the PSW interrupt mask level (IM).

It is possible to forcibly rewrite IM to accept an interrupt with a priority lower than the interrupt being processed, but the careful of stack overflow.

Do not operate the maskable interrupt control register (xxxICR) when multiple interrupts are enabled. If operation is necessary, first clear the PSW MIE flag.

■ Multiple Interrupt of Non-maskable

On the acceptance of nim interrupt, when other nmi interrupt factor is generated, this interrupt is processed right away. Also, when the same nmi interrupt factor is generated before nmi interrupt flag is be soft cleared, it is not accepted. (Unless nmi interrupt clears the flag by the soft, the following same nmi interrupt is not accepted and valid.)



* When nmi interrupt A=IRQNPG, nmi interrupt B=IRQNWDG
* When nmi interrupt A=IRQNWDG, nmi interrupt B=IRQNPG

Figure:3.1.7 shows the processing sequence of the multiple interrupt.
(multiple interrupt:xxxLV1 to 0 = “10”, xxxLV1 to 0 = “00”)

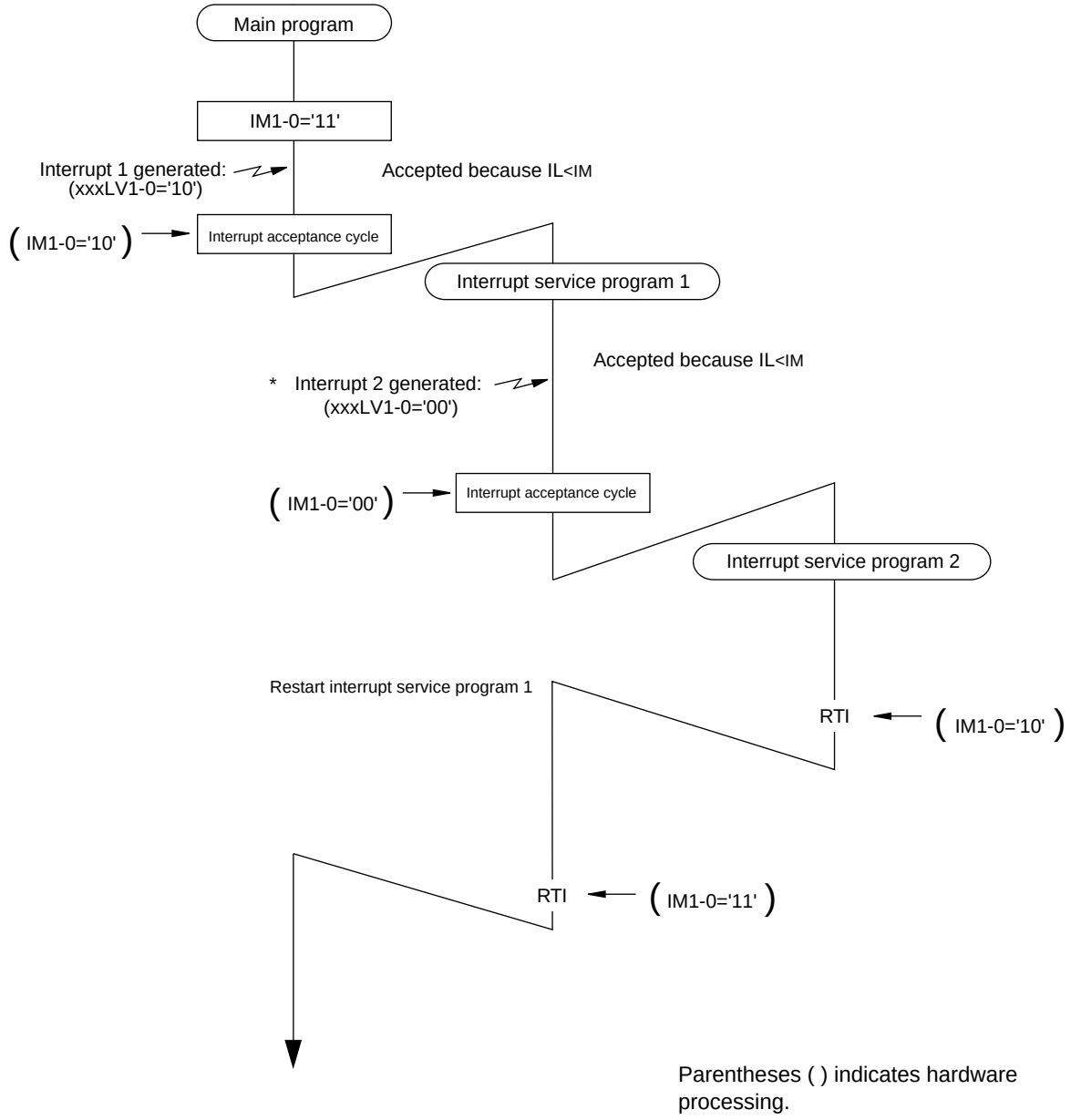


Figure:3.1.7 Processing Sequence for Non-Maskable Multiple Interrupt

3.1.4 Interrupt Flag Setup

■ Interrupt Request Flag (IR) Setup by the Software

The interrupt request flag is operated by the hardware. That is set to "1" when any interrupt factor is generated, and cleared to "0" when the interrupt is accepted. If you want to operate it by the software, the IRWE flag of MEMCTR should be set to "1".

■ Interrupt Flag Setup Procedure

A setup procedure of the interrupt request flag set by the hardware and the software shows as follows;

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Disable all maskable interrupts. PSW bp6:MIE =0	(1) Clear the MIE flag of PSW to disable all maskable interrupts. This is necessary, especially when the interrupt control register is changed.
(2) Select the interrupt factor.	(2) Select the interrupt doctor such as interrupt edge selection, or timer interrupt cycle change.
(3) Enable the interrupt request flag to be rewritten. MEMCTR(0¥03F01) bp2:IRWE =1	(3) Set the IRWE flag of MEMCTR to enable the interrupt request flag to be rewritten. This is necessary only when the interrupt request flag is changed by the software.
(4) Rewrite the interrupt request flag. xxxICR bp0:xxxIR	(4) Rewrite the interrupt request flag (xxxIR) of the interrupt control register (xxxICR).
(5) Disable the interrupt request flag to be rewritten. MEMCTR(0¥03F01) bp2:IRWE =0	(5) Clear the IRWE flag so that interrupt request flag can not be rewritten by the software.
(6) Set the interrupt level. xxxICR bp7-6:xxxLV1-0 PSW bp5-4:IM1-0	(6) Set the interrupt level by the xxxLV1 - 0 flag of the interrupt control register (xxxICR). Set the IM1 - 0 flag of PSW then the interrupt acceptance level of CPU should be changed.
(7) Enable the interrupt. xxxICR bp1:xxxIE =1	(7) Set the xxxIE flag of the interrupt control register (xxxICR) to enable the interrupt.
(8) Enable all maskable interrupts. PSW bp6:MIE =1	(8) Enable all maskable interrupts. PSW bp6:MIE =1

3.2 Control Registers

3.2.1 Registers List

Table:3.2.1 Interrupt Control Registers

Register	Address	R/W	Functions	Page
NMICR	0x03FE1	R/W	Non-maskable interrupt control register	III-19
IRQ0ICR	0x03FE2	R/W	External interrupt 0 control register	III-20
IRQ1ICR	0x03FE3	R/W	External interrupt 1 control register	III-21
IRQ2ICR	0x03FE4	R/W	External interrupt 2 control register	III-22
IRQ4ICR	0x03FE6	R/W	External interrupt 4 control register	III-23
TM0ICR	0x03FE7	R/W	Timer 0 interrupt control register (Timer 0 compare-match)	III-24
TM1ICR	0x03FE8	R/W	Timer 1 interrupt control register (Timer 1 compare-match)	III-25
TM2ICR	0x03FE9	R/W	Timer 2 interrupt control register (Timer 2 compare-match)	III-26
TM3ICR	0x03FEA	R/W	Timer 3 interrupt control register (Timer 3 compare-match)	III-27
TM6ICR	0x03FEB	R/W	Timer 6 interrupt control register (Timer 6 compare-match)	III-28
TBICR	0x03FEC	R/W	Time base interrupt control register (Time base period)	III-29
TM7ICR	0x03FED	R/W	Timer 7 interrupt control register (Timer 7 compare-match)	III-30
T7OC2ICR	0x03FEE	R/W	Timer 7 compare register 2-match interrupt control register	III-31
SC0RICR	0x03FEF	R/W	Serial 0 UART reception interrupt control register (SC0UART reception completion)	III-32
SC0TICR	0x03FF0	R/W	Serial 0 UART transmission interrupt control register (SC0UART transmission completion)	III-33
SC1RICR	0x03FF1	R/W	Serial 1 UART reception interrupt control register (SC1UART reception completion)	III-34
SC1TICR	0x03FF2	R/W	Serial 1 UART transmission interrupt control register (SC1UART transmission completion)	III-35
SC3ICR	0x03FF3	R/W	Serial 3 interrupt control register (SC3 transfer completion)	III-36
ADICR	0x03FF4	R/W	A/D conversion interrupt control register (A/D conversion completion)	III-37
SC4ICR	0x03FF5	R/W	Serial 4 interrupt control register (SC4 transmission completion)	III-38
T8ICR	0x03FF6	R/W	Timer 8 interrupt control register (Timer 8 compare-match)	III-39
T8OC2ICR	0x03FF7	R/W	Timer 8 compare register 2-match interrupt control register	III-40

If the interrupt level flag (xxxLVn) is set to “level 3”, its vector is disabled, regardless of interrupt enable flag and interrupt request flag.

Writing to the interrupt control register should be done after that all maskable interrupts are set to be disable by the MIE flag of the PSW register.

3.2.2 Interrupt Control Registers

The interrupt control registers include the non-maskable interrupt control register (NMICTR), the external interrupt control register and the internal interrupt control registers (xxxICR).

■ Non-maskable Interrupt Control Register (NMICR:0x03FE1)

The non-maskable interrupt control register (NMICTR) is stored the non maskable interrupt request. When the non-maskable interrupt request is generated, the interrupt is accepted regardless of the interrupt mask level (IMn) of PSW. The hardware then branches program to the address stored at location 0x04004 in the interrupt vector table. The watchdog timer overflow interrupt request flag (WDIR) is set to “1” when the watchdog timer overflows. The program interrupt request flag (PIR) is set to “1” when the undefined instruction is executed. Setting PIR or WDIR flag to be “1” enable non-maskable interrupt request to be set compulsory.

Table:3.2.2 Non-maskable Interrupt Control Register (NMICR:0x03FE1)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	-	-	-	-	IRQNPG	IRQNWDG	Reserved
At reset	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	0
Access	R/W							

bp	Flag	Description
7-3	-	-
2	IRQNPG	Program interrupt request flag 0:No interrupt request 1:Interrupt request generated
1	IRQNWDG	Watchdog interrupt request flag 0:No interrupt request 1:Interrupt request generated
0	Reserved	Set always to “0”

When the undefined instruction is going to be executed, this LSI generates the non-maskable interrupt at the same time of the setting of the program interrupt request flag IRQNPG. When the setting of the IRQNPG flag is confirmed by the non-maskable interrupt process program, the softreset is recommended by outputting “0” to the reset pin (P27).

■ External Interrupt 0 Control Register (IRQ0ICR)

The external interrupt 0 control register (IRQ0ICR) controls interrupt level of the external interrupt 0, valid edge, interrupt enable and interrupt request. Interrupt control register should be operated when the maskable interrupt enable flag (MIE) of PSW is “0”.

Table:3.2.3 External Interrupt 0 Control Register (IRQ0ICR:0x03FE2)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	IRQ0LV1	IRQ0LV0	REDG0	-	-	-	IRQ0IE	IRQ0IR
At reset	0	0	0	-	-	-	0	0
Access	R/W							

bp	Flag	Description
7-6	IRQ0LV1 IRQ0LV0	Interrupt level flag The CPU has interrupt levels from 0 to 3. This flag sets the interrupt level for interrupt requests.
5	REDG0	Interrupt valid edge flag (at the standby mode) 0:Falling edge (low level) 1:Rising edge (high level)
4-2	-	-
1	IRQ0IE	Interrupt enable flag 0:Disable interrupt 1:Enable interrupt
0	IRQ0IR	Interrupt request flag 0:No interrupt request 1:Interrupt request generated

■ External Interrupt 1 Control Register (IRQ1ICR)

The external interrupt 1 control register (IRQ1ICR) controls interrupt level of external interrupt 1, valid edge, interrupt enable and interrupt request. Interrupt control register should be operated when the maskable interrupt enable flag (MIE) of PSW is “0”.

Table:3.2.4 External Interrupt 1 Control Register (IRQ1ICR:0x03FE3)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	IRQ1LV1	IRQ1LV0	REDG1	-	-	-	IRQ1IE	IRQ1IR
At reset	0	0	0	-	-	-	0	0
Access	R/W							

bp	Flag	Description
7-6	IRQ1LV1 IRQ1LV0	Interrupt level flag The CPU has interrupt levels from 0 to 3. This flag sets the interrupt level for interrupt requests.
5	REDG1	Interrupt valid edge flag (at the standby mode) 0:Falling edge (low level) 1:Rising edge (high level)
4-2	-	-
1	IRQ1IE	Interrupt enable flag 0:Disable interrupt 1:Enable interrupt
0	IRQ1IR	Interrupt request flag 0:No interrupt request 1:Interrupt request generated

■ External Interrupt 2 Control Register (IRQ2ICR)

The external interrupt 2 control register (IRQ2ICR) controls interrupt level of external interrupt 2, valid edge, interrupt enable and interrupt request. Interrupt control register should be operated when the maskable interrupt enable flag (MIE) of PSE is “0”.

Table:3.2.5 External Interrupt 2 Control Register (IRQ2ICR:0x03FE4

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	IRQ2LV1	IRQ2LV0	REDG2	-	-	-	IRQ2IE	IRQ2IR
At reset	0	0	0	-	-	-	0	0
Access	R/W							

bp	Flag	Description
7-6	IRQ2LV1 IRQ2LV0	Interrupt level flag The CPU has interrupt levels from 0 to 3. This flag sets the interrupt level for interrupt requests.
5	REDG2	Interrupt valid edge flag (at the standby mode) 0:Falling edge (low level) 1:Rising edge (high level)
4-2	-	-
1	IRQ2IE	Interrupt enable flag 0:Disable interrupt 1:Enable interrupt
0	IRQ2IR	Interrupt request flag 0:No interrupt request 1:Interrupt request generated

■ External Interrupt 4 Control Register (IRQ1ICR:0x03FE3)

The external interrupt 4 control register (IRQ4ICR) controls interrupt level of external interrupt 4, valid edge, interrupt enable flag and interrupt request. Interrupt control register should be operated when the maskable interrupt enable flag (MIE) of PSW is “0”.

Table:3.2.6 External Interrupt 4 Control Register (IRQ4ICR:0x03FE6)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	IRQ4LV1	IRQ4LV0	-	-	-	-	IRQ4IE	IRQ4IR
At reset	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0
Access	R/W							

bp	Flag	Description
7-6	IRQ4LV1 IRQ4LV0	Interrupt level flag The CPU has interrupt levels from 0 to 3. This flag sets the interrupt level for interrupt requests.
5-2	-	-
1	IRQ4IE	Interrupt enable flag 0:Disable interrupt 1:Enable interrupt
0	IRQ4IR	Interrupt request flag 0:No interrupt request 1:Interrupt request generated

■ Timer 0 Interrupt Control Register (TM0ICR)

The timer 0 interrupt control register (TM0ICR) controls interrupt level of timer 0 interrupt, interrupt enable flag and interrupt request. Interrupt control register should be operated when the maskable interrupt enable flag (MIE) or PSW is “0”.

Table:3.2.7 Timer 0 Interrupt Control Register (TM0ICR:0x03FE7)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TM0LV1	TM0LV0	-	-	-	-	TM0IE	TM0IR
At reset	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0
Access	R/W							

bp	Flag	Description
7-6	TM0LV1 TM0LV0	Interrupt level flag This 2-bit flag sets the interrupt level by assigning an interrupt level of 0 to 3 to interrupt requests.
5-2	-	-
1	TM0IE	Interrupt enable flag 0:Disable interrupt 1:Enable interrupt
0	TM0IR	Interrupt request flag 0:No interrupt request 1:Interrupt request generated

■ Timer 1 Interrupt Control Register (TM1ICR)

The timer 1 interrupt control register (TM1ICR) controls interrupt level of timer 1 interrupt, interrupt enable flag and interrupt request. Interrupt control register should be operated when the maskable interrupt enable flag (MIE) or PSW is “0”.

Table:3.2.8 Timer 1 Interrupt Control Register (TM1ICR:0x03FE8)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TM1LV1	TM1LV0	-	-	-	-	TM1IE	TM1IR
At reset	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0
Access	R/W							

bp	Flag	Description
7-6	TM1LV1 TM1LV0	Interrupt level flag This 2-bit flag sets the interrupt level by assigning an interrupt level of 0 to 3 to interrupt requests.
5-2	-	-
1	TM1IE	Interrupt enable flag 0:Disable interrupt 1:Enable interrupt
0	TM1IR	Interrupt request flag 0:No interrupt request 1:Interrupt request generated

■ Timer 2 Interrupt Control Register (TM2ICR)

The timer 2 interrupt control register (TM2ICR) controls interrupt level of timer 2 interrupt, interrupt enable flag and interrupt request. Interrupt control register should be operated when the maskable interrupt enable flag (MIE) or PSW is “0”.

Table:3.2.9 Timer 2 Interrupt Control Register (TM2ICR:0x03FE9)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TM2LV1	TM2LV0	-	-	-	-	TM2IE	TM2IR
At reset	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0
Access	R/W							

bp	Flag	Description
7-6	TM2LV1 TM2LV0	Interrupt level flag This 2-bit flag sets the interrupt level by assigning an interrupt level of 0 to 3 to interrupt requests.
5-2	-	-
1	TM2IE	Interrupt enable flag 0:Disable interrupt 1:Enable interrupt
0	TM2IR	Interrupt request flag 0:No interrupt request 1:Interrupt request generated

■ Timer 3 Interrupt Control Register (TM3ICR)

The timer 3 interrupt control register (TM3ICR) controls interrupt level of timer 3 interrupt, interrupt enable flag and interrupt request. Interrupt control register should be operated when the maskable interrupt enable flag (MIE) or PSW is “0”.

Table:3.2.10 Timer 3 Interrupt Control Register (TM3ICR:0x03FEA)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TM3LV1	TM3LV0	-	-	-	-	TM3IE	TM3IR
At reset	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0
Access	R/W							

bp	Flag	Description
7-6	TM3LV1 TM3LV0	Interrupt level flag This 2-bit flag sets the interrupt level by assigning an interrupt level of 0 to 3 to interrupt requests.
5-2	-	-
1	TM3IE	Interrupt enable flag 0:Disable interrupt 1:Enable interrupt
0	TM3IR	Interrupt request flag 0:No interrupt request 1:Interrupt request generated

■ Timer 6 Interrupt Control Register (TM6ICRB)

The timer 6 interrupt control register (TM6ICR) controls interrupt level of timer 6 interrupt, interrupt enable flag and interrupt request. Interrupt control register should be operated when the maskable interrupt enable flag (MIE) or PSW is “0”.

Table:3.2.11 Timer 6 Interrupt Control Register (TM6ICR:0x03FEB)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TM6LV1	TM6LV0	-	-	-	-	TM6IE	TM6IR
At reset	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0
Access	R/W							

bp	Flag	Description
7-6	TM6LV1 TM6LV0	Interrupt level flag This 2-bit flag sets the interrupt level by assigning an interrupt level of 0 to 3 to interrupt requests.
5-2	-	-
1	TM6IE	Interrupt enable flag 0:Disable interrupt 1:Enable interrupt
0	TM6IR	Interrupt request flag 0:No interrupt request 1:Interrupt request generated

■ Time Base Interrupt Control Register (TBICR)

The time base interrupt control register (TBICR) controls interrupt level of time base interrupt, interrupt enable flag and interrupt request. Interrupt control register should be operated when the maskable interrupt enable flag (MIE) of PSW is “0”.

Table:3.2.12 Time Base Interrupt Control Register (TBICR:0x03FEC)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TBLV1	TBLV0	-	-	-	-	TBIE	TBIR
At reset	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0
Access	R/W							

bp	Flag	Description
7-6	TBLV1 TBLV0	Interrupt level flag This 2-bit flag sets the interrupt level by assigning an interrupt level of 0 to 3 to interrupt requests.
5-2	-	-
1	TBIE	Interrupt enable flag 0:Disable interrupt 1:Enable interrupt
0	TBIR	Interrupt request flag 0:No interrupt request 1:Interrupt request generated

■ Timer 7 Interrupt Control Register (TM7ICR)

The timer 7 interrupt control register (TM7ICR) controls interrupt level of timer 7 interrupt, interrupt enable flag and interrupt request. Interrupt control register should be operated when the maskable interrupt enable flag (MIE) of PSW is “0”.

Table:3.2.13 Timer 7 Interrupt Control Register (TM7ICR:0x03FED)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TM7LV1	TM7LV0	-	-	-	-	TM7IE	TM7IR
At reset	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0
Access	R/W							

bp	Flag	Description
7-6	TM7LV1 TM0LV0	Interrupt level flag This 2-bit flag sets the interrupt level by assigning an interrupt level of 0 to 3 to interrupt requests.
5-2	-	-
1	TM7IE	Interrupt enable flag 0:Disable interrupt 1:Enable interrupt
0	TM7IR	Interrupt request flag 0:No interrupt request 1:Interrupt request generated

■ Timer 7 Compare Register 2-match Interrupt Control Register (T7OC2ICR)

The timer 7 compare register 2-match interrupt control register (T7OC2ICR) controls interrupt level of timer 7 compare register 2-match interrupt, interrupt enable flag and interrupt request. Interrupt control register should be operated when the maskable interrupt enable flag (MIE) of PSW is “0”.

Table:3.2.14 Timer 7 Compare Register 2-match Interrupt Control Register (T7OC2ICR:0x03FEE)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	T7OC2LV1	T7OC2LV0	-	-	-	-	T7OC2IE	T7OC2IR
At reset	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0
Access	R/W							

bp	Flag	Description
7-6	T7OC2LV1 T7OC2LV0	Interrupt level flag This 2-bit flag sets the interrupt level by assigning an interrupt level of 0 to 3 to interrupt requests.
5-2	-	-
1	T7OC2IE	Interrupt enable flag 0:Disable interrupt 1:Enable interrupt
0	T7OC2IR	Interrupt request flag 0:No interrupt request 1:Interrupt request generated

■ Serial 0 UART Reception Interrupt Control Register (SC0RICR)

The serial 0 UART reception interrupt control register (SC0RICR) controls interrupt level of timer 0 interrupt, interrupt enable flag and interrupt request. Interrupt control register should be operated when the maskable interrupt enable flag (MIE) of PSW is “0”.

Table:3.2.15 Serial 0 UART Reception Interrupt Control Register (SC0RICR:0x03FEF)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	SC0RLV1	SC0RLV0	-	-	-	-	SC0RIE	SC0RIR
At reset	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0
Access	R/W							

bp	Flag	Description
7-6	SC0RLV1 SC0RLV0	Interrupt level flag This 2-bit flag sets the interrupt level by assigning an interrupt level of 0 to 3 to interrupt requests.
5-2	-	-
1	SC0RIE	Interrupt enable flag 0:Disable interrupt 1:Enable interrupt
0	SC0RIR	Interrupt request flag 0:No interrupt request 1:Interrupt request generated

■ Serial 0 UART Transmission Interrupt Control Register (SC0TICR)

The serial 0 UART transmission interrupt control register (SC0TICR) controls interrupt level of timer 0 interrupt, interrupt enable flag and interrupt request. Interrupt control register should be operated when the maskable interrupt enable flag (MIE) of PSW is “0”.

Table:3.2.16 Serial 0 UART Transmission Interrupt Control Register (SC0TICR:0x03FF0)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	SC0TLV1	SC0TLV0	-	-	-	-	SC0TIE	SC0TIR
At reset	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0
Access	R/W							

bp	Flag	Description
7-6	SC0TLV1 SC0TLV0	Interrupt level flag This 2-bit flag sets the interrupt level by assigning an interrupt level of 0 to 3 to interrupt requests.
5-2	-	-
1	SC0TIE	Interrupt enable flag 0:Disable interrupt 1:Enable interrupt
0	SC0TIR	Interrupt request flag 0:No interrupt request 1:Interrupt request generated

■ Serial 1 UART Reception Interrupt Control Register (SC1RICR)

The serial 1 UART reception interrupt control register (SC1RICR) controls interrupt level of timer 0 interrupt, interrupt enable flag and interrupt request. Interrupt control register should be operated when the maskable interrupt enable flag (MIE) of PSW is “0”.

Table:3.2.17 Serial 1 UART Reception Interrupt Control Register (SC1RICR:0x03FF1)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	SC1RLV1	SC1RLV0	-	-	-	-	SC1RIE	SC1RIR
At reset	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0
Access	R/W							

bp	Flag	Description
7-6	SC1RLV1 SC1RLV0	Interrupt level flag This 2-bit flag sets the interrupt level by assigning an interrupt level of 0 to 3 to interrupt requests.
5-2	-	-
1	SC1RIE	Interrupt enable flag 0:Disable interrupt 1:Enable interrupt
0	SC1RIR	Interrupt request flag 0:No interrupt request 1:Interrupt request generated

■ Serial 1 UART Transmission Interrupt Control Register (SC1TICR)

The serial 1 UART transmission interrupt control register (SC1TICR) controls interrupt level of timer 0 interrupt, interrupt enable flag and interrupt request. Interrupt control register should be operated when the maskable interrupt enable flag (MIE) of PSW is “0”.

Table:3.2.18 Serial 0 UART Transmission Interrupt Control Register (SC0TICR:0x03FF2)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	SC1TLV1	SC1TLV0	-	-	-	-	SC1TIE	SC1TIR
At reset	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0
Access	R/W							

bp	Flag	Description
7-6	SC1TLV1 SC1TLV0	Interrupt level flag This 2-bit flag sets the interrupt level by assigning an interrupt level of 0 to 3 to interrupt requests.
5-2	-	-
1	SC1TIE	Interrupt enable flag 0:Disable interrupt 1:Enable interrupt
0	SC1TIR	Interrupt request flag 0:No interrupt request 1:Interrupt request generated

■ Serial 3 Interrupt Control Register (SC3ICR)

The serial 3 interrupt control register (SC3ICR) controls interrupt level of serial 3 interrupt, interrupt enable flag and interrupt request. Interrupt control register should be operated when the maskable interrupt enable flag (MIE) of PSW is “0”.

Table:3.2.19 Serial 3 Interrupt Control Register (SC3ICR:0x03FF3)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	SC3LV1	SC3LV0	-	-	-	-	SC3IE	SC3IR
At reset	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0
Access	R/W							

bp	Flag	Description
7-6	SC3LV1 SC3LV0	Interrupt level flag This 2-bit flag sets the interrupt level by assigning an interrupt level of 0 to 3 to interrupt requests.
5-2	-	-
1	SC3IE	Interrupt enable flag 0:Disable interrupt 1:Enable interrupt
0	SC3IR	Interrupt request flag 0:No interrupt request 1:Interrupt request generated

■ A/D Conversion Interrupt Control Register (ADICR)

The A/D conversion interrupt control register (ADICR) controls interrupt level of A/D conversion interrupt, interrupt enable flag and interrupt request. Interrupt control register should be operated when the maskable interrupt enable flag (MIE) of PSW is “0”.

Table:3.2.20 A/D Conversion Interrupt Control Register (ADICR:0x03FF4)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	ADLV1	ADLV0	-	-	-	-	ADIE	ADIR
At reset	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0
Access	R/W							

bp	Flag	Description
7-6	ADLV1 ADLV0	Interrupt level flag This 2-bit flag sets the interrupt level by assigning an interrupt level of 0 to 3 to interrupt requests.
5-2	-	-
1	ADIE	Interrupt enable flag 0:Disable interrupt 1:Enable interrupt
0	ADIR	Interrupt request flag 0:No interrupt request 1:Interrupt request generated

■ Serial 4 Interrupt Control Register (SC4ICR)

The serial 4 interrupt control register (SC4ICR) controls interrupt level of serial 4 interrupt, interrupt enable flag and interrupt request. Interrupt control register should be operated when the maskable interrupt enable flag (MIE) of PSW is “0”.

Table:3.2.21 Serial 4 Interrupt Control Register (SC4ICR:0x03FF5)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	SC4LV1	SC4LV0	-	-	-	-	SC4IE	SC4IR
At reset	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0
Access	R/W							

bp	Flag	Description
7-6	SC4LV1 SC4LV0	Interrupt level flag This 2-bit flag sets the interrupt level by assigning an interrupt level of 0 to 3 to interrupt requests.
5-2	-	-
1	SC4IE	Interrupt enable flag 0:Disable interrupt 1:Enable interrupt
0	SC4IR	Interrupt request flag 0:No interrupt request 1:Interrupt request generated

■ Timer 8 Interrupt Control Register (TM8ICR)

The timer 8 interrupt control register (TM8ICR) controls interrupt level of timer 8 interrupt, interrupt enable flag and interrupt request. Interrupt control register should be operated when the maskable interrupt enable flag (MIE) of PSW is “0”.

Table:3.2.22 Timer 8 Interrupt Control Register (TM8ICR:0x03FF6)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TM8LV1	TM8LV0	-	-	-	-	TM8IE	TM8IR
At reset	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0
Access	R/W							

bp	Flag	Description
7-6	TM8LV1 TM8LV0	Interrupt level flag This 2-bit flag sets the interrupt level by assigning an interrupt level of 0 to 3 to interrupt requests.
5-2	-	-
1	TM8IE	Interrupt enable flag 0:Disable interrupt 1:Enable interrupt
0	TM8IR	Interrupt request flag 0:No interrupt request 1:Interrupt request generated

■ Timer 8 Compare Register 2-match Interrupt Control Register (T8OC2ICR)

The timer 8 compare register 2-match interrupt control register (T8OC2ICR) controls interrupt level of timer 8 compare register 2-match interrupt, interrupt enable flag and interrupt request. Interrupt control register should be operated when the maskable interrupt enable flag (MIE) of PSW is “0”.

Table:3.2.23 Timer 8 Compare Register 2-match Interrupt Control Register (T8OC2ICR:0x03FF7)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	T8OC2LV1	T8OC2LV0	-	-	-	-	T8OC2IE	T8OC2IR
At reset	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0
Access	R/W							

bp	Flag	Description
7-6	T8OC2LV1 T8OC2LV0	Interrupt level flag This 2-bit flag sets the interrupt level by assigning an interrupt level of 0 to 3 to interrupt requests.
5-2	-	-
1	T8OC2IE	Interrupt enable flag 0:Disable interrupt 1:Enable interrupt
0	T8OC2IR	Interrupt request flag 0:No interrupt request 1:Interrupt request generated

3.3 External Interrupts

There are 4 external interrupts in this LSI. The circuit (external interrupt interface), operates the external interrupt input signal, is built-in between the external interrupt input pin and the external interrupt block. This external interrupt interface can manage to do with any kind of external interrupts.

3.3.1 Overview

Table:3.3.1 shows the list of functions which external interrupts 0 to 2 and 4 are used.

Table:3.3.1 External Interrupt Functions

	External interrupt input pin	Programmable active edge	Both edges interrupt	Noise filter built-in	AC zero cross detection	Key input interrupt
External interrupt 0	P54	O	-	O	O	-
External interrupt 1	P55	O	-	O	O	-
External interrupt 2	P56	O	O	-	-	-
External interrupt 3	-	-	-	-	-	O

Because the external interrupt event and the AC zero-cross is acknowledged by the rising of the system clock, the pulse which is shorter than the system clock cycle is neglected.

System clock × 2 for the interrupt factor generation is needed at the maximum against the external interrupt event from the pin because all synchronous circuits are inserted.

3.3.2 Block Diagram

■ External Interrupt 0 Interface Block Diagram

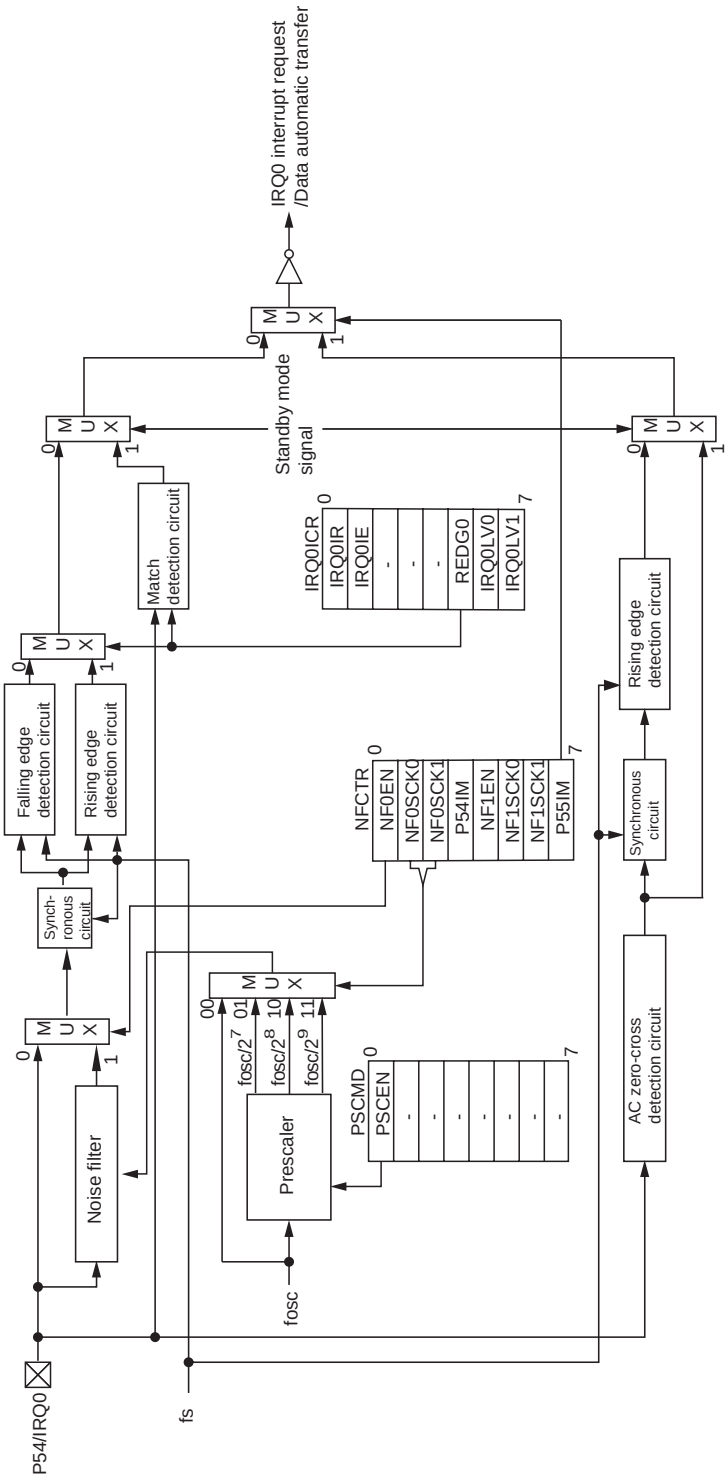


Figure:3.3.1 External Interrupt 0 Interface Block Diagram

■ External Interrupt 1 Interface Block Diagram

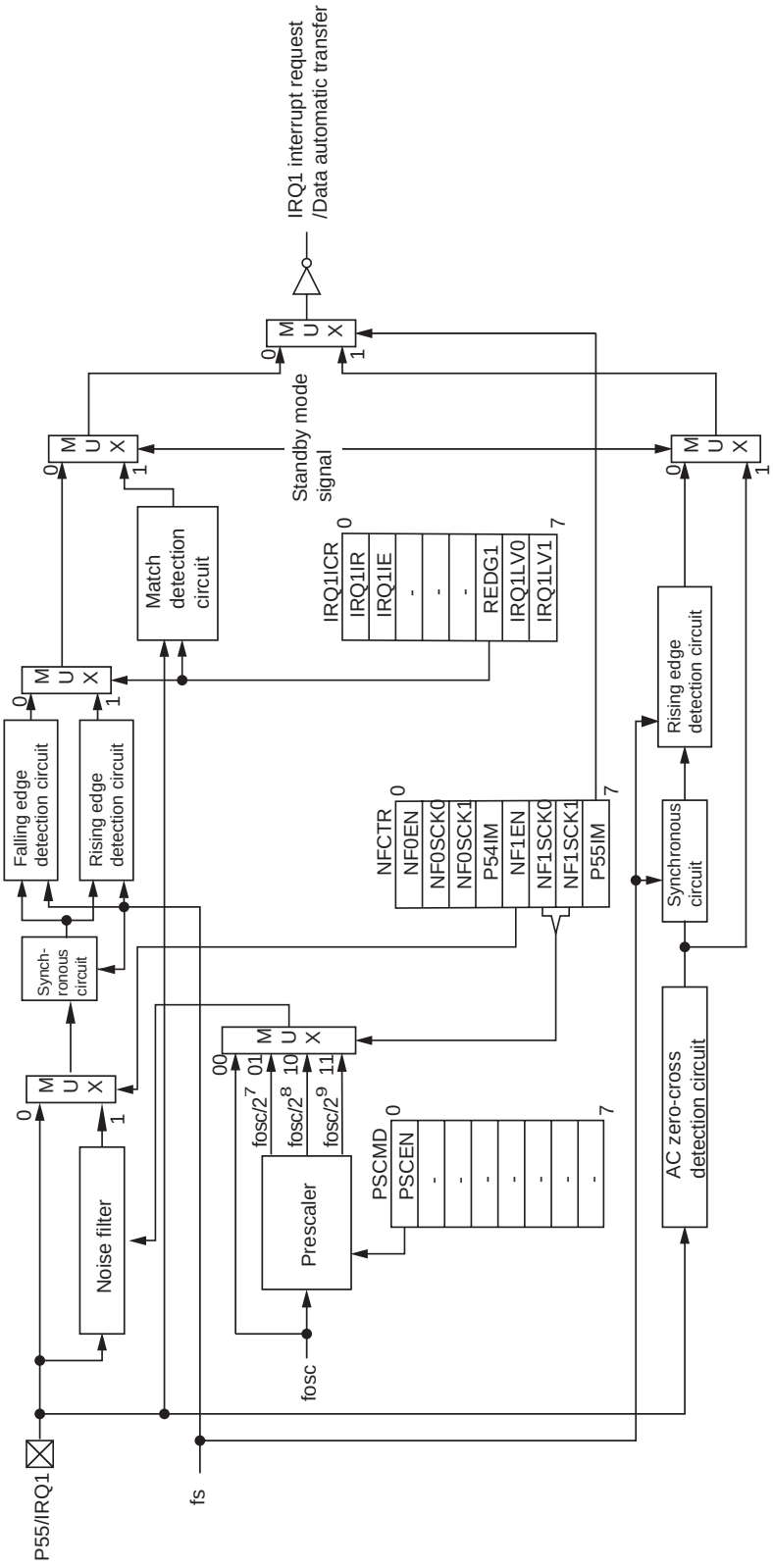


Figure:3.3.2 External Interrupt 1 Interface Block Diagram

■ External Interrupt 2 Interface Block Diagram

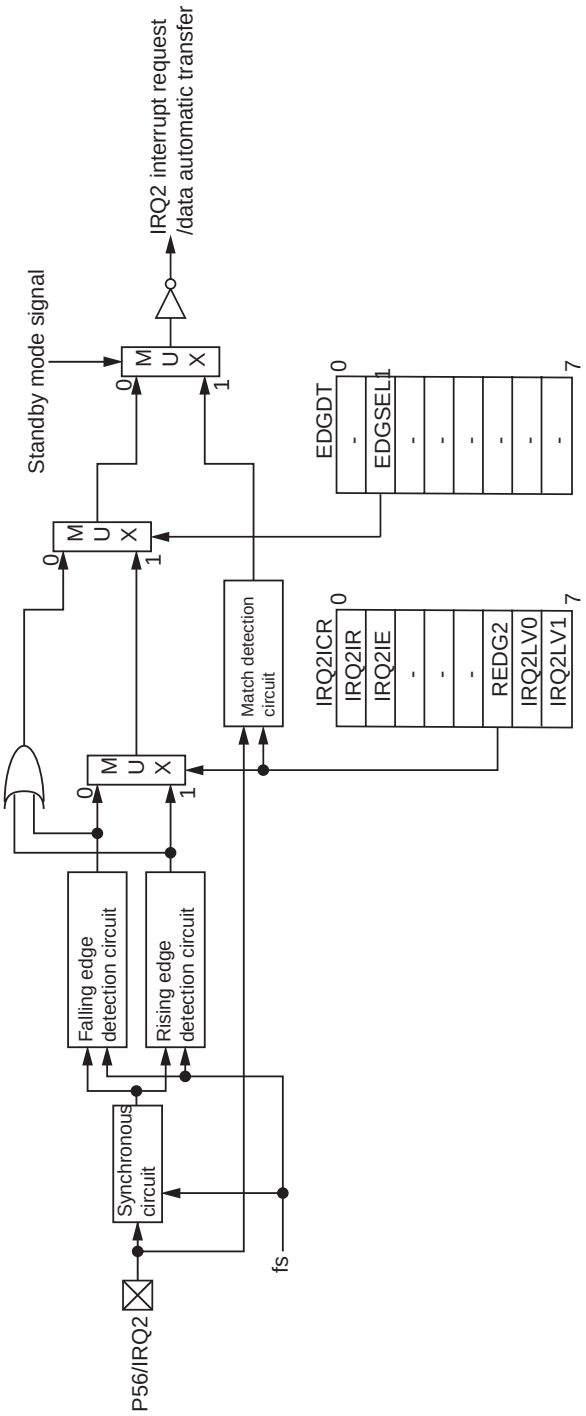


Figure:3.3.3 External Interrupt 2 Interface Block Diagram

■ External Interrupt 4 Interface Block Diagram

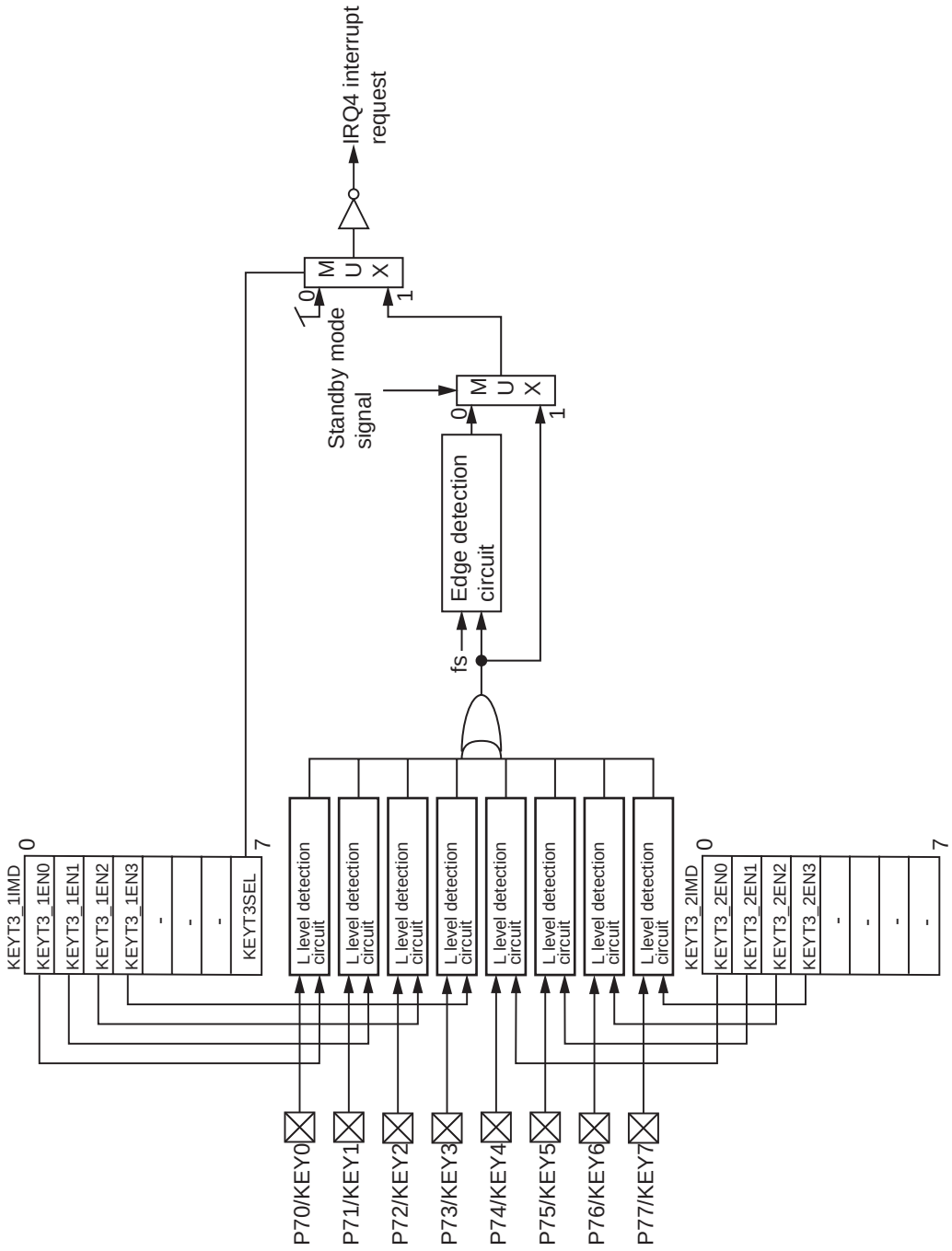


Figure:3.3.4 External Interrupt 4 Interface Block Diagram

3.3.3 Control Registers

The external interrupt input signals, which passed through each internal interrupt interface 0 to 2 and 4 generate interrupt requests.

External interrupt 0 to 2 and 4 interface are controlled by the external interrupt control register (IRQnICR). External interrupt interface 0 to 1 are controlled by the noise filter control register (NFCTR) and the prescaler control register (PSCMD), and external interrupt interface 2 is controlled by the both edges interrupt control register (EDGDT), and external interrupt interface 4 is controlled by the key interrupt control register 1 (KEYT3_1IMD) and the key interrupt control register 2 (KEYT3_2IMD).

Table:3.3.2 shows the list of registers, which control external interrupt 0 to 2 and 4.

Table:3.3.2 External Interrupt Control Register

External interrupt	Register	Address	R/W	Function	Page
External interrupt 0	IRQ0ICR	0x03FE2	R/W	External interrupt 0 control register	III-20
	NFCTR	0x03F2E	R/W	Noise filter control register	III-48
	PSCMD	0x03F6D	R/W	Prescaler control register	III-47
External interrupt 1	IRQ1ICR	0x03FE3	R/W	External interrupt 1 control register	III-21
	NFCTR	0x03F2E	R/W	Noise filter control register	III-48
	PSCMD	0x03F6D	R/W	Prescaler control register	III-47
External interrupt 2	IRQ2ICR	0x03FE4	R/W	External interrupt 2 control register	III-22
	EDGDT	0x03F1E	R/W	Both edges interrupt control register	III-53
External interrupt 4	IRQ4ICR	0x03FE6	R/W	External interrupt 4 control register	III-23
	KEYT3_1IMD	0x03F3E	R/W	Key interrupt control register 1	III-50
	KEYT3_2IMD	0x03F3F	R/W	Key interrupt control register 2	III-51

R/W:Readable/Writable

■ Prescaler Control Register (PSCMD)

Prescaler control register enables or disables the prescaler count. Prescaler is used when the dividing clock of fs base is used at IRQ0, IRQ1.

Table:3.3.3 Prescaler Control Register (PSCMD:0x03F6D)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	PSCEN
At reset	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0
Access	R/W							

bp	Flag	Description
7-1	-	-
0	PSCEN	Prescaler count control 0:Disable count 1:Enable count

■ Noise Filter Control Register (NFCTR)

The noise filter control register (NFCTR) sets the noise remove function to IRQ0 and IRQ1 and also selects the sampling cycle of noise remove function. And this register also sets the AC zero cross detection function to IRQ1.

Table:3.3.4 Noise Filter Control Register (NFCTR:0x03F2E)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	P55IM	NF1SCK1	NF1SCK0	NF1EN	P54IM	NF0SCK1	NF0SCK0	NF0EN
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W							

bp	Flag	Description
7	P55IM	ACZ input enable flag 0:Disable ACZ input 1:Enable ACZ input
6-5	NF1SCK1 NF1SCK0	IRQ1/noise sampling period 00:fosc 01:fosc/2^7 10:fosc/2^8 11:fosc/2^9
4	NF1ENM	IRQ1/noise filter setup 0:Noise filter OFF 1:Noise filter ON
3	P54IM	ACZ0 input enable flag 0:ACZ0 interrupt disable 1:ACZ0 interrupt enable
2-1	NF0SCK1 NF0SCK0	IRQ0/noise sampling period 00:fosc 01:fosc/2^7 10:fosc/2^8 11:fosc/2^9
0	NF0ENM	IRQ0/noise filter setup 0:Noise filter OFF 1:Noise filter ON

■ Both Edges Interrupt Control Register (EDGDT)

The both edges interrupt control register (EDGDT) selects interrupt edges of IRQ2. Interrupts are generated at both edges, or at single edge. The external interrupt control register (IRQ2ICR) specifies whether interrupts are generated.

Table:3.3.5 Both Edges Interrupt Control Register (EDGDT:0x03F1E)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	-	-	-	-	EDGSEL1	-	-
At reset	-	-	-	-	-	0	-	-
Access	R/W							

bp	Flag	Description
7-3	-	-
2	EDGSEL1	IRQ2 both edges interrupt selection 0:Programmable active edge interrupt selection 1:Both edges interrupt selection
1-0	-	-

■ Key Interrupt Control Register 1 (KEYT3_1IMD)

The key interrupt control register 1 selects if key interrupt is accepted. Also, this register assigns KEY input to key interrupt in 2-bit unit.

Table:3.3.6 Key Interrupt Control Register 1 (KEYT3_1IMD:0x03F3E)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	KEYT3SEL	-	-	-	KEYT3_1EN3	KEYT3_1EN2	KEYT3_1EN1	KEYT3_1EN0
At reset	0	-	-	-	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W							

bp	Flag	Description
7	KEYT3SEL	Key interrupt control 0:Key interrupt disable 1:Key interrupt enable
6-4	-	-
3	KEYT3_1EN3	KEY3 interrupt selection 0:Disable 1:Enable
2	KEYT3_1EN2	KEY2 interrupt selection 0:Disable 1:Enable
1	KEYT3_1EN1	KEY1 interrupt selection 0:Disable 1:Enable
0	KEYT3_1EN0	KEY0 interrupt selection 0:Disable 1:Enable

■ Key Interrupt Control Register 2 (KEYT3_2IMD)

The key interrupt control register 2 assigns KEY input to key interrupt in 1-bit unit.

Table:3.3.7 Key Interrupt Control Register 2 (KEYT3_2IMD:0x03F3F)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	-	-	-	KEYT3_2EN3	KEYT3_2EN2	KEYT3_2EN1	KEYT3_2EN0
At reset	-	-	-	-	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W							

bp	Flag	Description
7-4	-	-
3	KEYT3_2EN3	KEY7 interrupt selection 0:Disable 1:Enable
2	KEYT3_2EN2	KEY6 interrupt selection 0:Disable 1:Enable
1	KEYT3_2EN1	KEY5 interrupt selection 0:Disable 1:Enable
0	KEYT3_2EN0	KEY4 interrupt selection 0:Disable 1:Enable

3.3.4 Programmable Active Edge Interrupt

■ Programmable Active Edge Interrupts (External interrupts 0 to 2)

The programmable active edge interrupt can select the rising/falling edge about the signal which is input from the external interrupt input pin and generate the interrupt at the selected edge. Also, if the value which is set to the external interrupt valid edge specify flag and the level of the external interrupt pin are matched, it is possible from the standby mode.

At the standby mode, if the value that is set to the external interrupt valid specified flag and the external interrupt pin level are matched, the interrupt is generated. (refer to Figure:3.3.1 to Figure:3.3.5.)
[Chapter 3 3.3.9. External Interrupt At the Standby Mode]

■ Programmable Active Edge Interrupt Setup Example (External interrupt 0 to 2)

External interrupt 0 (IRQ0) is generated at the rising edge of the input signal from P54.
The table below shows a setup example of IRQ0.

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Specify the interrupt active edge IRQ0ICR(0x03FE2) bp5ÅFREDG0 =1	(1) Set the REDG0 flag of the external interrupt 0 control register (IRQ0ICR) to “1” to specify the rising edge as the active edge for interrupts.
(2) Set the interrupt level IRQ0ICR (0x03FE2) bp7-6:IRQ0LV1-0 =10	(2) Set the interrupt priority level in the IRQ0LV1 to 0 flag of the IRQ0ICR register.
(3) Enable the interrupt IRQ0ICR (0x03FE2) bp1:IRQ0IE =1	(3) Set the IRQ0IE flag of the IRQ0ICR register to “1” enable the interrupt.

External interrupt 0 is generated at the rising edge of the input signal from P54.

The interrupt request flag can be set at switching the interrupt edge, so specify the interrupt valid edge before the interrupt permission.

The external interrupt pin is recommended to be pull-up in advance.

3.3.5 Both Edges Interrupt

■ Both Edges Interrupt (External interrupt 2)

Both edges interrupt can generate interrupt at both the falling edge and the rising edge by the input signal from external input pins. CPU also can be returned from standby mode.

At the standby mode, if the value that is set to the external interrupt valid specified flag and the external interrupt pin level are matched, the interrupt is generated. (refer to Figure:3.3.1 to Figure:3.3.5.)
[Chapter 3 3.3.9. External Interrupt At the Standby Mode

■ Both Edges Interrupt Setup Example (External interrupt 2)

External interrupt 2 (IRQ2) is generated at the both edges of the input signal from P56 pin.
The table below shows a setup example of IRQ2.

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Select the both edges interrupt EDGDT (0x03F2E) bp2:EDGSEL2 =1	(1) Set the EDGSEL flag of the both edges interrupt control register (EDGDT) to “1” to select the both edges interrupt.
(2) Set the interrupt level IRQ2ICR (0x03FE3) bp7-6:IRQ2LV1-0 =10	(2) Set the interrupt level by the IRQ2LV1 to 0 flag of the IRQ2ICR register. The interrupt request flag of the IRQ2ICR register may be set, so make sure to clear the interrupt request flag (IRQ2IR). [Chapter 3. 3.1.4 Interrupt flag setup]
(3) Enable the interrupt IRQ2ICR (0x03FE3) bp1:IRQ2IE =1	(3) Set the IRQ2IE flag of the IRQ2ICR register to “1” to enable the interrupt.

At the both edges of the input signal from P56 pin, an external interrupt 2 is generated.

When the both edges interrupt is selected, the interrupt request is generated at the both edge, regardless of the REDGn flag of the external interrupt control register (IRQnICR).

The interrupt request flag may be set at switching the interrupt edge. So, clear the interrupt request flag before the interrupt acceptance. Also, select the both edges interrupt before the interrupt acceptance.

The external interrupt pis is recommended to be pull-up, in advance.

3.3.6 Key Input Interrupt

■ Key Input Interrupt (External interrupt 4)

This LSI can set port 7 (P70 to P77) pin by 1 bit to key input pin. An interrupt can be generated at the falling edge, if at least 1 key input pin outputs low level. (Standby mode can be recovered by the key interrupt.)

Key input pin should be pull-up in advance.

■ Key Input Interrupt Setup Example (External interrupt 4)

After P70 to P73 of port 4 are set to key input pins and key is input (low level), the external interrupt 4 (IRQ4) is generated.
An example setup procedure, with a description of each step is shown below.

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Set the key input to input P7DIR (0x03F34) bp3-0:P7DIR3-0 =0000	(1) Set the P7DIR3 to 0 flag of the port 7 direction control register (P7DIR) to “0000” to set P70 to P73 pins to input pins.
(2) Set the pull-up resistor P7PLU (0x03F44) bp3-0:P7PLU3-0 =1111	(2) Set the P7PLU3 to 0 flag of the port 7 pull-up resistor control register (P7PLU) to “1111” to add the pull-up resistors to P70 to P73 pins.
(3) Select the key input interrupt KEYT3_1IMD (0x03F3E) bp7:KEYT3_1SEL =1	(3) Set the KEYT3SEL flag of the key interrupt control register (KEYT3_1IMD) to “1” to enable the key interrupt.
(4) Select the key input pin KEYT3_1IMD (0x03F3E) bp1-0:KEYT3_1EN2-1 =11	(4) Set the KEYT3_1EN1 to 0 of the key interrupt control register (KEYT3_1IMD) to “1111” to set P70 to P73 pins to key input pins.
(5) Set the interrupt level IRQ4ICR (0x03FE6) bp7-6:IRQ4LV1-0 =10	(5) Set the interrupt level by the IRQ4LV1 to 0 flag of the IRQ4ICR register. If the interrupt request flag has been already set, clear the request flag. [Chapter 3 3.1.4. Interrupt Flag Setup]
(6) Enable the interrupt IRQ4ICR (0x03FE6) bp1:IRQ4IE =1	(6) Set the IRQ4IE flag of the IRQ4ICR register to “1” to enable the interrupt.

*Above (3) and (4) can be set at the same time.

If there is at least one input signal, from the P70 to P73 pins, shows low level, the external interrupt 4 is generated at the falling edge.

The key input should be setup before the interrupt is accepted.

3.3.7 Noise Filter

■ Noise Filter (External interrupts 0 and 1)

Noise filter reduce noise by sampling the input waveform from the external interrupt pins (IRQ0, IRQ1). Its sampling cycle can be selected from 4 types (fosc, fosc/2^7, fosc/2^8, fosc/2^9)

■ Noise Remove Selection (External interrupts 0 and 1)

Noise remove function can be selected by setting the NFnEN flag of the noise filter control register (NFCTR) to "1".

Table:3.3.8 Addition of Noise Remove Function

NFnEN	IRQ input (P54)	IRQ input (P55)
0	IRQ0 noise filter OFF	IRQ1 noise filter OFF
1	IRQ0 noise filter ON	IRQ1 noise filter ON

■ Sampling Cycle Setup (External interrupts 0 and 1)

The sampling cycle of noise remove function can be set by the NFnSCK2 to 0 flag of the NFCTR register.

Table:3.3.9 Sampling Cycle / Time of Noise Remove Function

NFnCKS1	NFnCKS0	Sampling cycle	fs=10 MHz, fx/32.768 kHz	
0	0	fosc	10 MHz	100 ns
	1	fosc/2^7	78.125 kHz	12.80 μs
1	0	fosc/2^8	39.062 kHz	25.60 μs
	1	fosc/2^9	19.521 kHz	51.20 μs

■ Noise Remove Function Operation (External interrupts 0 and 1)

After sampling the input signal to the external interrupt pins (IRQ0, IRQ1) with the set sampling time, if the same level comes continuously three times, that level is sent to the inside of LSI. If the same level does not come continuously three times, the previous level is sent. It means that only the signal with the amplitude of longer than "Sampling time × 3 sampling clock" can pass through the noise filter, and other signals with amplitude shorter than this are removed, because those are regarded as noise.

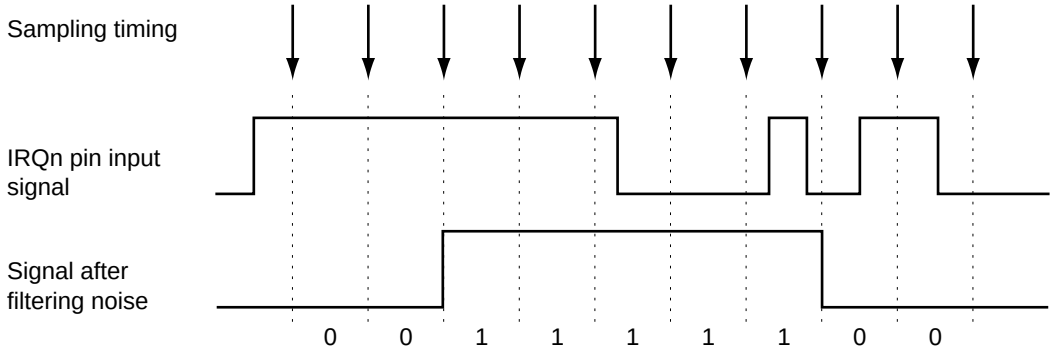


Figure:3.3.5 Noise Remove Function Operation

Noise filter cannot be used at STOP mode and HALT mode.

Noise filter can be uses at the SLOW mode. However, sampling timing gets slow extremely.

■ Noise Filter Setup Example (External interrupt 0 and 1)

Noise remove function is added to the input signal from P54 pin to generate the external interrupt 0 (IRQ0) at the rising edge. The sampling clock is set to fosc/2^7, and the operation state is fs = 10 MHz. An example setup procedure, with a description of each step is shown below.

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Specify the interrupt valid edge IRQ0ICR (0x03FE2) bp5:REDG0 =1	(1) Set the REDG0 flag of the external interrupt 0 control register (IRQ0ICR) to “1” to specify the interrupt valid edge to the rising edge.
(2) Select the sampling clock NFCTR (0x03F2E) bp2-1:NF0SCK1-0 =01	(2) Select the sampling clock to fosc/2^7 by the NF0SCK1 to 0 flag of the noise filter control register (NFCTR).
(3) Set the noise filter operation NFCTR (0x03F2E) bp0:NF0EN =1	(3) Set the NF0EN flag of the NFCTR register to “1” to add the noise filter operation.
(4) Set the interrupt level IRQ0ICR (0x03FE2) bp7-6:IRQ0LV1-0 =10	(4) Set the interrupt level by the IRQ0LV1 to 0 flag of the IRQ0ICR register. If the interrupt request flag has been already set, clear the request flag. [Chapter 3 3.1.4. Interrupt Flag Setup]
(5) Enable the interrupt IRQ0ICR (0x03FE2) bp1:IRQ0IE =1	(5) Set the IRQ0IE flag of the IRQ0ICR register to “1” to enable the interrupt.

*Above (2) and (3) can be set at the same time.

The input signal from P54 pin outputs the interrupt factor at the edge that is followed to the programmable active edge after passing through the noise filter.

The noise filter should be setup before the interrupt is enabled.

The external interrupt pins are recommended to be pull-up in advance.

3.3.8 AC Zero-Cross Detector

This LSI has AC zero-cross detector circuit. The P54 / ACZ0 and P55/ACZ1 pins are the input pins of AC zero-cross detector circuit. AC zero-cross detector circuit output the high level when the input level is at the middle, and outputs the low level at other level.

■ AC Zero-Cross Detector (External interrupt 0 and 1)

AC zero-cross detector set the IRQ1 pin to the high level when the input signal (P54 / ACZ0, P55/ACZ1 pins) is at intermediate range by AC zero-cross detector circuit. At the other level, IRQ1 pin set to the low level. AC zero-cross detector is set by setting the P55IM flag of the noise filter control register (NFCTR) to “1”. Also, it is possible to recover from the standby mode.

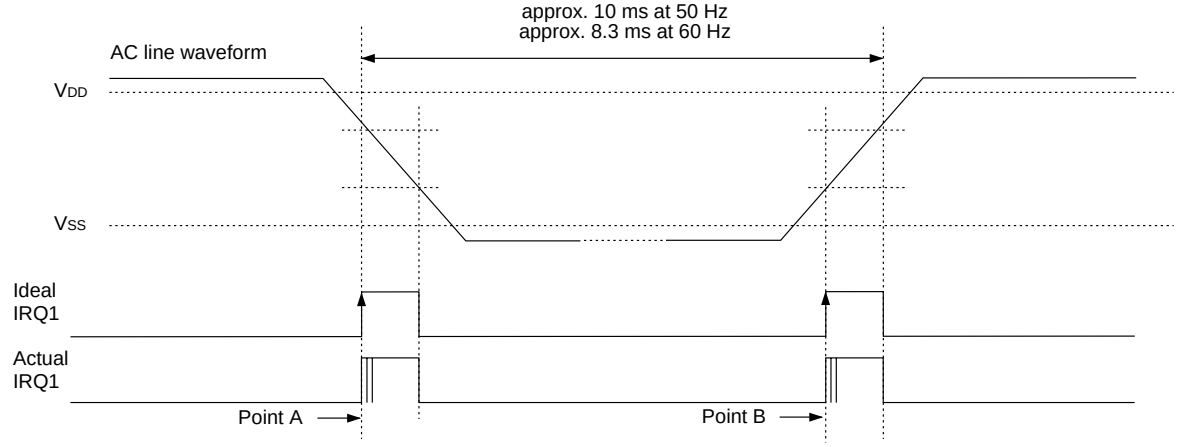


Figure:3.3.6 AC Line Waveform and IRQ1 Generation Timing

Actual IRQ1 interrupt request is generated several times at crossing the AC line waveform and the intermediate level (point A and B). So, the filtering operation by the program is needed.

The interrupt request is generated at the rising edge of the AC zero-cross detector signal.

The interrupt request is output at “H” level of the AC zero-cross detector signal at the standby mode.

■ AC Zero-Cross Detector Setup Example (External interrupt 0 and 1)

AC zero-cross detector generates the external interrupt 1 (IRQ1) by using P55/ACZ1 pin.
An example of the setup procedure, with a description of each step is shown below.

If the input level signal which is input from P55/ACZ1 pin cross with the intermediate level, the external interrupt 1 is generated.

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Select the AC zero-cross detector signal NFCTR (0x03F2E) bp7:P55IM =1	(1) Set the P21IM flag of the noise filter control register (NFCTR) to “1” to select the AC zero-cross detector signal as the external interrupt 1 generation factor.
(2) Set the interrupt level IRQ1ICR (0x03FE3) bp7-6:IRQ1LV1-0 =10	(2) Set the interrupt level by the IRQ1LV1 to 0 flag of the IRQ1ICR register. If the interrupt request flag has been already set, clear the interrupt flag. [Chapter 3 3.1.4. Interrupt Flag Setup]
(3) Enable the interrupt IRQ1ICR (0x03FE3) bp1:IRQ1IE =1	(3) Set the IRQ1IE flag of the IRQ1ICR register to “1” to enable the interrupt.

When the input level of the input signal from P55/ACZ1 pin crosses with the intermediate level, the external interrupt 1 is generated.

3.3.9 External Interrupt At The Standby Mode

■ External Interrupt at the Standby Mode (External interrupt 0 to 2)

It is possible to recover from the standby mode by the external interrupt.

At the standby mode, an interrupt is generated when the value set to the external interrupt valid edge specify flag matches the external interrupt pin level. Therefore, be aware of the value of the external interrupt valid edge specify flag and the external interrupt pin level at the transition to the standby mode. If the value set to the external interrupt valid edge specify flag matches the external interrupt pin level at the transition to the standby mode, it recovers from the standby mode right away.

■ Setup Examples of the External Interrupt at the Standby Mode

Recovery from STOP mode can be done by generation of the external interrupt 0 (IRQ0) by the low level signal input from P54. An example setup procedure, with a description of each step is shown below.

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Specify the interrupt valid edge IRQ0ICR (0x03FE2) bp5:REDG0 =0	(1) Set the REDG0 of the external interrupt 0 control register (IRQ0ICR) to “0” to specify the interrupt valid edge to the rising edge.
(2) Set the external interrupt pin The external interrupt 0 pin is pulled-up in advance.	(2) The value of the REDG0 flag of the IRQ0ICR register and the external interrupt pin level is different.
(3) Set the interrupt level IRQ0ICR (0x03FE2) bp7-6:IRQ0LV1-0 =10	(3) Set the interrupt level by the IRQ0LV1 to 0 flag of the IRQ0ICR register. If the interrupt request has been already set, clear the interrupt request flag (IRQ0IR).
(4) Enable the interrupt IRQ0ICR (0x03FE2) bp1:IRQ0IE =1	(4) Set the IRQ0IE flag of the IRQ0ICR register to “1” to enable the interrupt.
(5) Set the STOP mode CPUM (0x03F00) bp3:STOP =1	(5) Transfer to the STOP mode by setting STOP flag of the CPU mode control register (CPUM) to “1”. [Chapter 2 2.4.4. Transition to Standby Modes]

When the low level signal is input to P54 and the value of the external interrupt valid edge specify flag (REDG0) matches the external interrupt 0, the external interrupt 0 is accepted and recover from the STOP mode.

Chapter 4 I/O Ports

4

4.1 Overview

4.1.1 I/O Port Overview

A total of 40 pins on this LSI, including those shared with special function pins, are allocated for the I/O ports of port 1, port 2, port 3, port 5, port 7, port 9 and port A.

4.1.2 I/O Port Status at Reset

Table:4.1.1 I/O port status at reset (single chip mode)

Port	I/O mode	Pull-up/Pull-down resistor	I/O port, special functions
Port 1	Input mode	P17 to P12: No pull-up/pull-down resistor P11, P10: Pull-up/pull-down resistor	I/O port
Port 2	Input mode	P27:Pull-up resistor	I/O port
Port 3	Input mode	P30 to P36: No pull-up resistor P37: Pull-down resistor	I/O port
Port 5	Input mode	No pull-up resistor	I/O port
Port 7	Input mode	No pull-up/pull-down resistor	I/O port
Port 9	Input mode	P90: Pull-down resistor	I/O port
Port A	Input mode	PA3 to PA0: No pull-up resistor PA6 to PA4: Pull-down resistor	I/O port

4.1.3 Control Registers

Port 1, port 2, port3, port5, port 7, port 9 and port A are controlled by the data output register (PnOUT), the data input register (PnIN), the I/O direction control register (PnDIR), the pull-up resistor control register (PnPLU) or the pull-up/pull-down resistor control register (PnPLUD) and registers that control special function pin (PnOMD, PnIMD, PnSYO, PnSEV, PnCNT0, PnODC).

Table:4.1.2 shows the registers to control port 1, port 2, port3, port5, port 7, port 9 and port A;

Table:4.1.2 I/O Port Control Registers List

Register	Address	R/W	Function	Page
P1OUT	0x03F11	R/W	Port 1 output register	IV-7
P1IN	0x03F21	R	Port 1 input register	IV-8
P1DIR	0x03F31	R/W	Port 1 direction control register	IV-8
P1PLUD	0x03F41	R/W	Port 1 pull-up/pull-down resistor control register	IV-9
P1OMD	0x03F1C	R/W	Port 1 output mode register	IV-10
P1ODC	0x03F1B	R/W	Port 1 Nch open-drain control register	IV-11
SELUD	0x03F4B	R/W	Pull-up/pull-down resistor selection register	IV-11
P1CNT0	0x03F3D	R/W	Port 1 real time output control register 0	IV-11
CLKOUT	0x03F1F	R/W	Clock output control register	IV-13
P2OUT	0x03F12	R/W	Port 2 output register	IV-22
P3OUT	0x03F13	R/W	Port 3 output register	IV-26
P3IN	0x03F23	R	Port 3 input register	IV-27
P3DIR	0x03F33	R/W	Port 3 direction control register	IV-27
P3PLUD	0x03F43	R/W	Port 3 pull-up/pull-down resistor control register	IV-28
SELUD	0x03F4B	R/W	Pull-up/pull-down resistor selection register	IV-29
P3ODC	0x03F3B	R/W	Port 3 Nch open-drain control register	IV-30
P5OUT	0x03F15	R/W	Port 5 output register	IV-41
P5IN	0x03F25	R	Port 5 input register	IV-42
P5DIR	0x03F35	R/W	Port 5 direction control register	IV-42
P5PLU	0x03F45	R/W	Port 5 pull-up resistor control register	IV-43
P5OMD	0x03F2C	R/W	Port 5 output mode register	IV-44
P7OUT	0x03F17	R/W	Port 7 output register	IV-51
P7IN	0x03F27	R	Port 7 input register	IV-52
P7DIR	0x03F37	R/W	Port 7 direction control register	IV-52
P7PLUD	0x03F47	R/W	Port 7 pull-up resistor control register	IV-53
P7OMD	0x03F3C	R/W	Port 7 output mode register	IV-53
P7ODC	0x03F1D	R/W	Port 7 Nch open-drain control register	IV-54
SELUD	0x03F4B	R/W	Pull-up/pull-down resistor selection register	IV-54
P9OUT	0x03F19	R/W	Port 9 output register	IV-67

Register	Address	R/W	Function	Page
P9IN	0x03F29	R	Port 9 input register	IV-68
P9DIR	0x03F39	R/W	Port 9 direction control register	IV-68
P9PLUD	0x03F49	R/W	Port 9 pull-up/pull-down resistor control register	IV-69
SELUD	0x03F4B	R/W	Pull-up/pull-down resistor selection register	IV-69
XSEL	0x03F4C	R/W	Port9 oscillation switching register	IV-70
PAOUT	0x03F1A	R/W	Port A output register	IV-74
PAIN	0x03F2A	R	Port A input register	IV-75
PADIR	0x03F3A	R/W	Port A direction control register	IV-75
PAPLUD	0x03F4A	R/W	Port A pull-up/pull-down resistor control register	IV-76
SELUD	0x03F4B	R/W	Pull-up/pull-down resistor selection register	IV-77
PAIMD	0x03F4E	R/W	Port A input mode register	IV-76
PAODC	0x03F2D	R/W	PortA Nch open-drain control register	IV-77

R/W = Readable/Writable

R = Readable only

4.2 Port 1

4.2.1 Description

■ General Port Setup

To output data to pin, set the control flag of the port 1 direction control register (P1DIR) to “1” and write the value of the port 1 output register (P1OUT).

To read input data of pin, set the control flag of the port 1 direction control register (P1DIR) to “0” and read the value of the port 1 input register (P1IN).

Each bit can be set individually as either an input or output by the port 1 I/O direction control register (P1DIR). The control flag of the port 1 direction control register (P1DIR) is set to “1” for output mode, and “0” for input mode.

Each bit can be set individually if pull-up or pull-down resistor is added or not, by the port 1 pull-up/pull-down resistor control register (P1PLUD). Set the control flag of the port 1 pull-up/pull-down resistor control register (P1PLUD) to “1” to add pull-up or pull-down resistor.

Port 1 can be selected to add pull-up resistor or pull-down resistor by bp0 of the pull-up/pull-down resistor selection register (SELUD).

Each bit can be selected individually as input mode by the port 1 input mode register (P1IMD). The control flag of the port 1 input mode register (P1IMD) is set to “1” to output the special function data, and “0” to use as the general port.

For P10, P11, P15 and P17, each bit can be selected individually as Nch open-drain output by the port 1 Nch open-drain control register (P1ODC). The control flag of the port 1 Nch open-drain control register (P1ODC) is set to “1” for Nch open-drain output, and “0” for push-pull output.

■ Special Function Pin Setup

P10 is used as the transmission/reception data I/O pin of IIC4, as well. When the SELI2C flag of the serial interface 4 addressing register 1 (SC4AD1) is “1”, P10 is the serial transmission/reception data I/O pin. Push-pull output or Nch open-drain output can be selected by setting the Port 1 Nch open-drain control register (P1ODC).

P11 is used as the clock input pin of IIC, as well. When the SCLI2C flag of the serial interface 4 addressing register 1 (SC4AD1) is “1”, P11 is the serial clock input pin. Push-pull output or Nch open-drain output can be selected by setting the Port 1 Nch open-drain control register (P1ODC).

P12 is used as I/O pin of the timer 8, as well. The output mode can be selected by bp1 of the port 1 output mode register (P1OMD) by each bit. The bp1 of the port 1 output mode register (P1OMD) is set to “1” to output the special function data, and “0” to use as the general port.

P13 is used as I/O pin of the timer 7, as well. The output mode can be selected by bp3 of the port 1 output mode register (P1OMD) by each bit. The bp3 of the port 1 output mode register (P1OMD) is set to “1” to output the special function data, and “0” to use as the general port.

P14 is used as I/O pin of the timer 0 and as output pin of the remote control carrier, as well. The output mode can be selected by bp4 of the port 1 output mode register (P1OMD) by each bit. The bp4 of the port 1 output mode register (P1OMD) is set to “1” to output the special function data, and “0” to use as the general port.

P15 is used as the output pin of the timer 0, as well. The output mode can be selected by bp5 of the port 1 output mode register (P1OMD) by each bit. The bp5 of the port 1 output mode register (P1OMD) is set to “1” to output the special function data, and “0” to use as the general port.

P16 is used as I/O pin of the timer 2, as well. The output mode can be selected by bp6 of the port 1 output mode register (P1OMD) by each bit. The bp6 of the port 1 output mode register (P1OMD) is set to “1” to output the special function data, and “0” to use as the general port.

P17 is used as the output pin of the timer 0, as well. The output mode can be selected by bp7 of the port 1 output mode register (P1OMD) by each bit. The bp7 of the port 1 output mode register (P1OMD) is set to “1” to output the special function data, and “0” to use as the general port.

P13 is used as the output pin of the system clock, as well. The output mode can be selected by bp0 of the clock output control register (CLKOUT) by each bit. The bp0 of the clock output control register (CLKOUT) is set to “1” to output the special function data, and “0” to use as the general port.

P12, P14, P16 have the functions of the real time output control and can switch pin output to “0”, “1”, “Hi-impedance (Hi-z)” at the event generation timing of the falling edge of the external interrupt 0. The real time control is the function which can change the output signal without the interposition with synchronized to the interrupt event.

P12 is used as buzzer output pin, as well. When the bp7 of the oscillation stabilization wait control register (DLYCTR) is set to “1” and the bp1, bp0 of the port 1 output mode register (P1OMD) are set to “01”, buzzer output is enabled.

P13 is used as inverse buzzer output pin, as well. When the bp7 of the oscillation stabilization wait control register (DLYCTR) is set to “1” and the bp3, bp2 of the port 1 output mode register (P1OMD) are set to “01”, inverse buzzer output is enabled.

P15 is used as the output pin of the serial 1 transmission data and UART1 transmission data, as well. When the SC1SBOS flag of the serial interface 1 mode register 1 (SC1MD1) is “1”, P15 is the serial data output pin. Push-pull output or Nch open-drain output can be selected by setting the Port 1 Nch open-drain control register (P1ODC).

P16 is used as the input pin of the serial 1 reception data and UART1 reception data, as well.

P17 is used as the serial 1 clock I/O pin, as well. When the SC1SBTS flag of the serial interface 1 mode register 1 (SC1MD1) is “1”, P17 is the serial clock output pin. Push-pull output or Nch open-drain output can be selected by setting the Port 1 Nch open-drain control register (P1ODC).

The I/O of the serial 4 can be selected as P10, P11, or P76, P77 by setting the serial selection register (SCSEL). The SC4SL flag of the serial selection register (SCSEL) is set to “0”, P10, P11 are selected, to “1”, P76, P77 are selected.

The I/O of the serial 1 can be selected as P15 to P17, or PA4 to PA6 by setting the serial selection register (SCSEL). The SC4SL flag of the serial selection register (SCSEL) is set to “0”, P15 to P17 are selected, to “1”, PA4 to PA6 are selected.

P14 is used as LCD segment output pin, as well. The SEG11 pin selection can be done by setting the bp7 flag (LC2SL7) flag of the LCD output control register 2 (LCCTR2) to “1”. Port and segment switching can be selected by each bit. At segment output, it is forcefully set to input mode and pull-up resistor is disabled.

P15 is used as LCD segment output pin, as well. The SEG10 pin selection can be done by setting the bp6 flag (LC2SL6) flag of the LCD output control register 2 (LCCTR2) to “1”. Port and segment switching can be selected by each bit. At segment output, it is forcefully set to input mode and pull-up resistor is disabled.

P16 is used as LCD segment output pin, as well. The SEG9 pin selection can be done by setting the bp5 flag (LC2SL5) flag of the LCD output control register 2 (LCCTR2) to “1”. Port and segment switching can be selected by each bit. At segment output, it is forcefully set to input mode and pull-up resistor is disabled.

P17 is used as LCD segment output pin, as well. The SEG8 pin selection can be done by setting the bp4 flag (LC2SL4) flag of the LCD output control register 2 (LCCTR2) to “1”. Port and segment switching can be selected by each bit. At segment output, it is forcefully set to input mode and pull-up resistor is disabled.

4.2.2 Registers

Table:4.2.1 shows registers that control the port 1.

Table:4.2.1 Port 1 Control Register

Registers	Address	R/W	Function	Page
P1OUT	0x03F11	R/W	Port 1 output register	IV-7
P1IN	0x03F21	R	Port 1 input register	IV-8
P1DIR	0x03F31	R/W	Port 1 direction control register	IV-8
P1PLU	0x03F41	R/W	Port 1 pull-up/pull-down resistor control register	IV-9
P1OMD	0x03F1C	R/W	Port 1 output mode register	IV-10
P1ODC	0x03F1B	R/W	Port 1 Nch open-drain control register	IV-11
SELUD	0x03F4B	R/W	Pull-up/pull-down resistor selection register	IV-11
P1CNT0	0x03F3D	R/W	Port 1 real time output control register 0	IV-12
CLKOUT	0x03F1F	R/W	Clock output control register	IV-13
LCCTR2	0x03FC3	R/W	LCD output control register	IV-14
SCSEL	0x03F90	R/W	Serial I/O pin switching control register	IV-15

R/W:Readable/Writable

■ Port 1 Output Register (P1OUT:0x03F11)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	P1OUT7	P1OUT6	P1OUT5	P1OUT4	P1OUT3	P1OUT2	P1OUT1	P1OUT0
At reset	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0	P1OUT7 P1OUT6 P1OUT5 P1OUT4 P1OUT3 P1OUT2 P1OUT1 P1OUT0	Output data 0:Output L(VSS level) 1:Output H(VDD level)

■ Port 1 Input Register (P1IN:0x03F21)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	P1IN7	P1IN6	P1IN5	P1IN4	P1IN3	P1IN2	P1IN1	P1IN0
At reset	x	x	x	x	x	x	1	1
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

bp	Flag	Description
7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0	P1IN7 P1IN6 P1IN5 P1IN4 P1IN3 P1IN2 P1IN1 P1IN0	Input data 0:Pin is L(VSS level) 1:Pin is H(VDD level)

■ Port 1 Direction Control Register (P1DIR:0x03F31)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	P1DIR7	P1DIR6	P1DIR5	P1DIR4	P1DIR3	P1DIR2	P1DIR1	P1DIR0
At reset	x	x	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0	P1DIR7 P1DIR6 P1DIR5 P1DIR4 P1DIR3 P1DIR2 P1DIR1 P1DIR0	I/O mode selection 0:Input mode 1:Output mode

■ Port 1 Pull-up/Pull-down Resistor Control Register (P1PLUD:0x03F41)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	P1PLUD7	P1PLUD6	P1PLUD5	P1PLUD4	P1PLUD3	P1PLUD2	P1PLUD1	P1PLUD0
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0	P1PLUD7 P1PLUD6 P1PLUD5 P1PLUD4 P1PLUD3 P1PLUD2 P1PLUD1 P1PLUD0	Pull-up/pull-down resistor selection 0:Not added 1:Added

■ Port 1 Output Mode Register (P1OMD:0x03F1C)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	P1OMD7	P1OMD6	P1OMD5	P1OMD4	P1OMD3	NBUZSEL	P1OMD2	BUZSEL
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7	P1OMD7	I/O port, TM2OB selection 0:I/O port 1:TM2OB
6	P1OMD6	I/O port, TM2IO selection 0:I/O port 1:TM2IO
5	P1OMD5	I/O port, TM0OB selection 0:I/O port 1:TM0OB
4	P1OMD4	I/O port, TM0IO/RMOUT selection 0:I/O port 1:TM0IO/RMOUT
3	P1OMD3	P13 I/O port, TM7IO, NBUZZER selection 1X:TM7IO 01:NBUZZER
2	NBUZSEL	
1	P1OMD2	P12 I/O port, TM8IO, BUZZER selection 1X:TM8IO 01:BUZZER 00:I/O port
0	BUZSEL	

■ Port 1 Nch Open-drain Control Register (S1ODC:0x03F1B)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	P17ODC	-	P15ODC	-	-	-	P11ODC	P10ODC
At reset	0	-	0	-	-	-	0	0
Access	R/W	-	R/W	-	-	-	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0	P17ODC - P15ODC - - - P11ODC P10ODC	Nch open-drain output selection 0:Push-pull output 1:Nch open-drain output)

■ Pull-up/pull-down Resistor Selection Register (SELUD:0x03F4B)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	-	-	PADWN	P3DWN	P9DWN	P7DWN	P1DWN
At reset	-	-	-	1	1	1	0	0
Access	-	-	-	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7	-	-
6	-	-
5	-	-
4	PADWN	Port A pull-up/pull-down selectionl 0:Pull-up 1:Pull-down
3	P3DWN	Port 3 pull-up/pull-down selectionl 0:Pull-up 1:Pull-down
2	P9DWN	Port 9 pull-up/pull-down selectionl 0:Pull-up 1:Pull-down
1	P9DWN	Port 7 pull-up/pull-down selectionl 0:Pull-up 1:Pull-down
0	P9DWN	Port 1 pull-up/pull-down selectionl 0:Pull-up 1:Pull-down

■ Port 1 Real Time Output Control Register 0 (P1CNT0:0x03F3D)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	-	P1CNT05	P1CNT04	P1CNT03	P1CNT02	P1CNT01	P1CNT00
At reset	-	-	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	-	-	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7	-	-
5 4	P1CNT05 P1CNT04	P16 real time control 00:I/O port (real time control disabled) 01:”1” (High) output 10:”0” (Low) output 11:”Hi-z” output
3 2	P1CNT03 P1CNT02	P14 real time control 00:I/O port (real time control disabled) 01:”1” (High) output 10:”0” (Low) output 11:”Hi-z” output
1 0	P1CNT01 P1CNT00	P12 real time control 00:I/O port (real time control disabled) 01:”1” (High) output 10:”0” (Low) output 11:”Hi-z” output

■ Clock Output Control Register 0 (P1CNT0:0x03F3D)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	-	-	-	SCHMITT	PDOWN	CLKSEL	OUTEN
At reset	-	-	-	-	0	0	0	0
Access	-	-	-	-	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7-4	-	-
3	SCHMITT	Port 1, Port 3, Port A input level switching 0:VIH=0.8 VDD VIL=0.2 VDD 1:VIH=0.54 VDD VIL=0.3 VDD
2	PDOWN	Clock output capability 0:general port output capability 1:No capability
1	CLKSEL	Clock type selection 0:System clock (fx) 1:High speed oscillation (fosc)/ Low speed oscillation (fx)
0	OUTEN	Clock output permission 0:No 1:Oscillation output

■ LCD Output Control Register 2 (LCCTR2:X'3FC3', R/W)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	LC2SL7	LC2SL6	LC2SL5	LC2SL4	LC2SL3	LC2SL2	LC2SL1	LC2SL0
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7	LC2SL7	SEG11/P14 selection 0:P14 1:SEG11
6	LC2SL6	SEG10/P15 selection 0:P15 1:SEG10
5	LC2SL5	SEG9/P16 selection 0:P16 1:SEG9
4	LC2SL4	SEG8/P17 selection 0:P17 1:SEG8
3	LC2SL3	SEG7/P70 selection 0:P70 1:SEG7
2	LC2SL2	SEG6/P71 selection 0:P71 1:SEG6
1	LC2SL1	SEG5/P72 selection 0:P72 1:SEG5
0	LC2SL0	SEG4/P73 selection 0:P73 1:SEG4

■ Serial Input/output pin switching Control Register (SCSEL:0x03F90)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	-	TEMPSC 2	TEMPSC 1	SC4SL	-	SC1SL	SC0SL
At reset	-	-	0	0	0	-	0	0
Access	-	-	R/W	R/W	R/W	-	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7-6	-	-
5-4	TEMPSC 2 TEMPSC 1	Timer 2 output dividing switch 00:Timer 2 output 01:Timer2 output/2 10:Reserved 11:Timer 2 output/8
3	SC4SL	Serial port 4 I/O pin switch 0:A (Port A) 1:B (Port 3)
2	-	-
1	SC1SL	Serial port 1 I/O pin switch 0:A (Port A) 1:B (Port 1)
0	SC0SL	Serial port 0 I/O pin switch 0:A (Port A) 1:B (Port 7)

4.2.3 Block Diagram

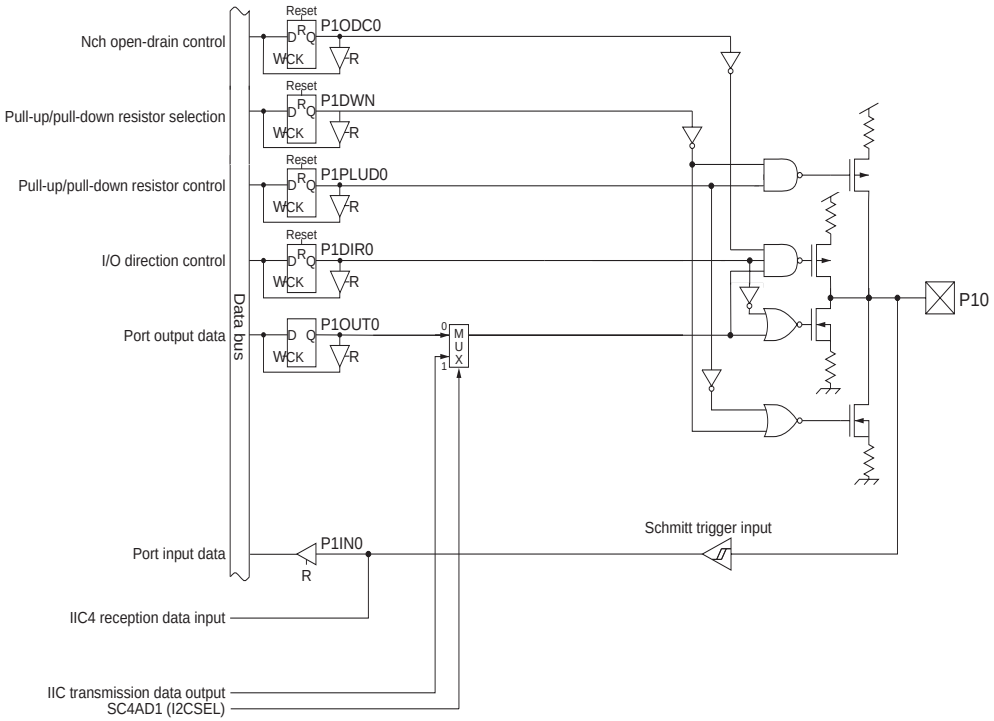


Figure:4.2.1 Block Diagram (P10)

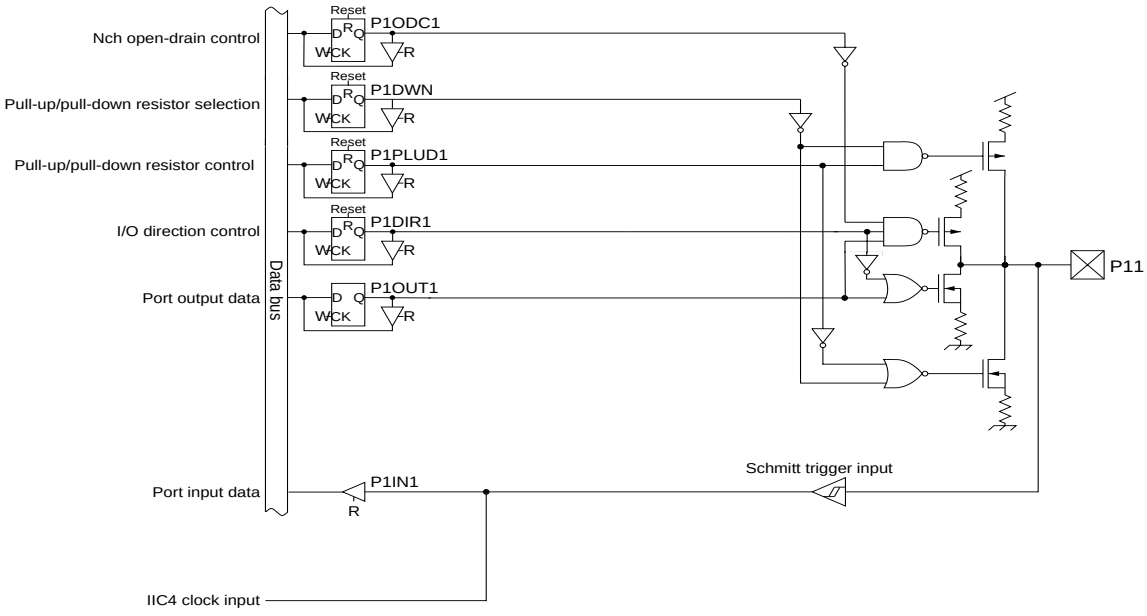


Figure:4.2.2 Block Diagram (P11)

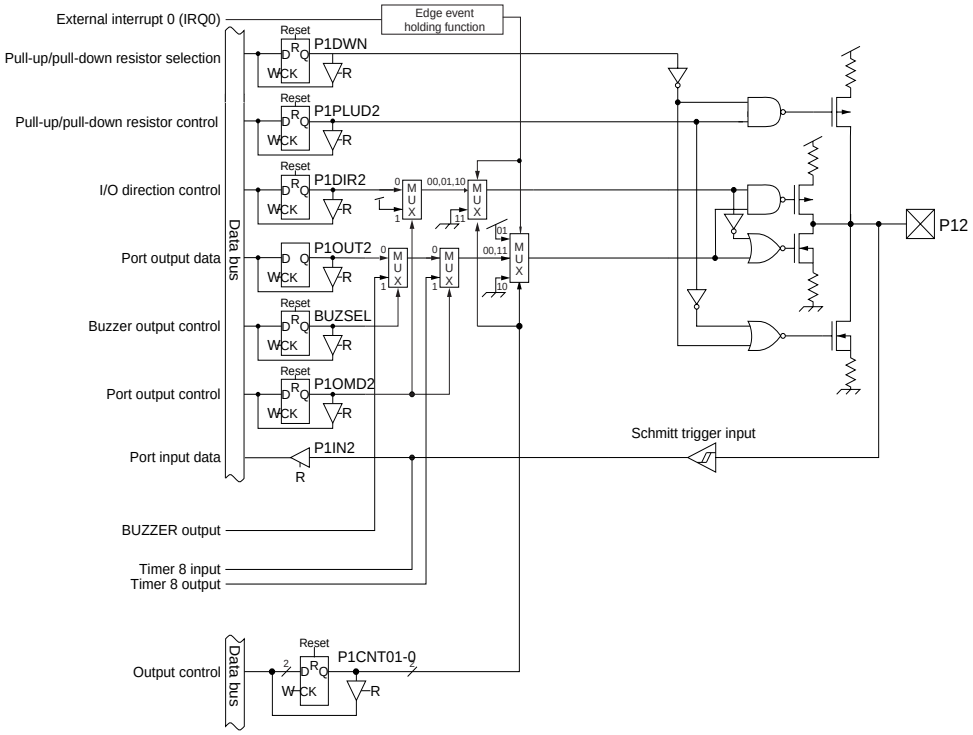


Figure:4.2.3 Block Diagram (P12)

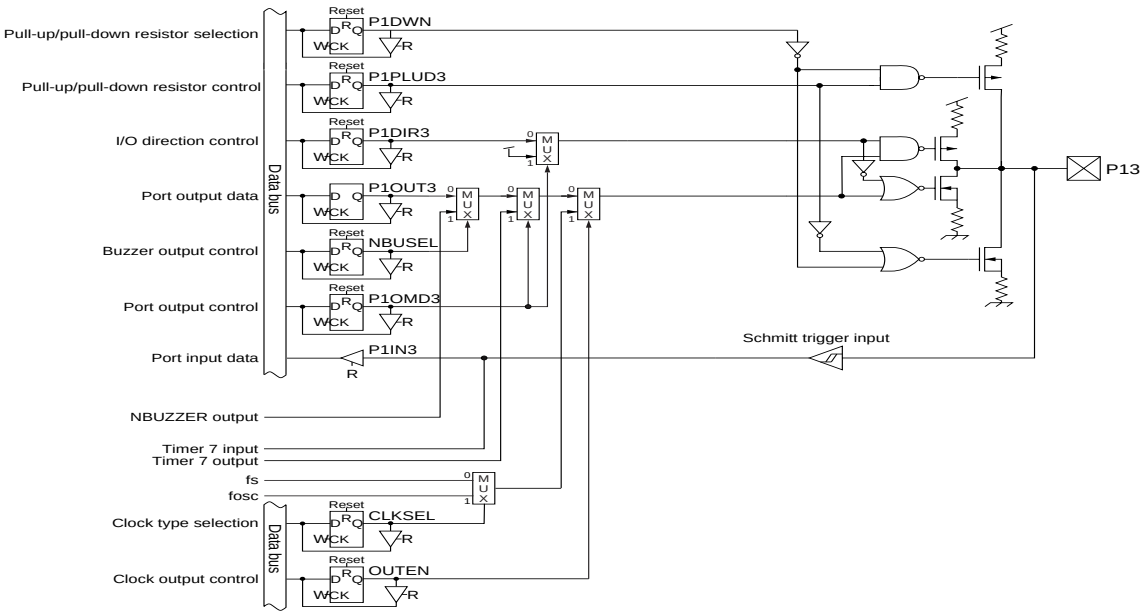


Figure:4.2.4 Block Diagram (P13)

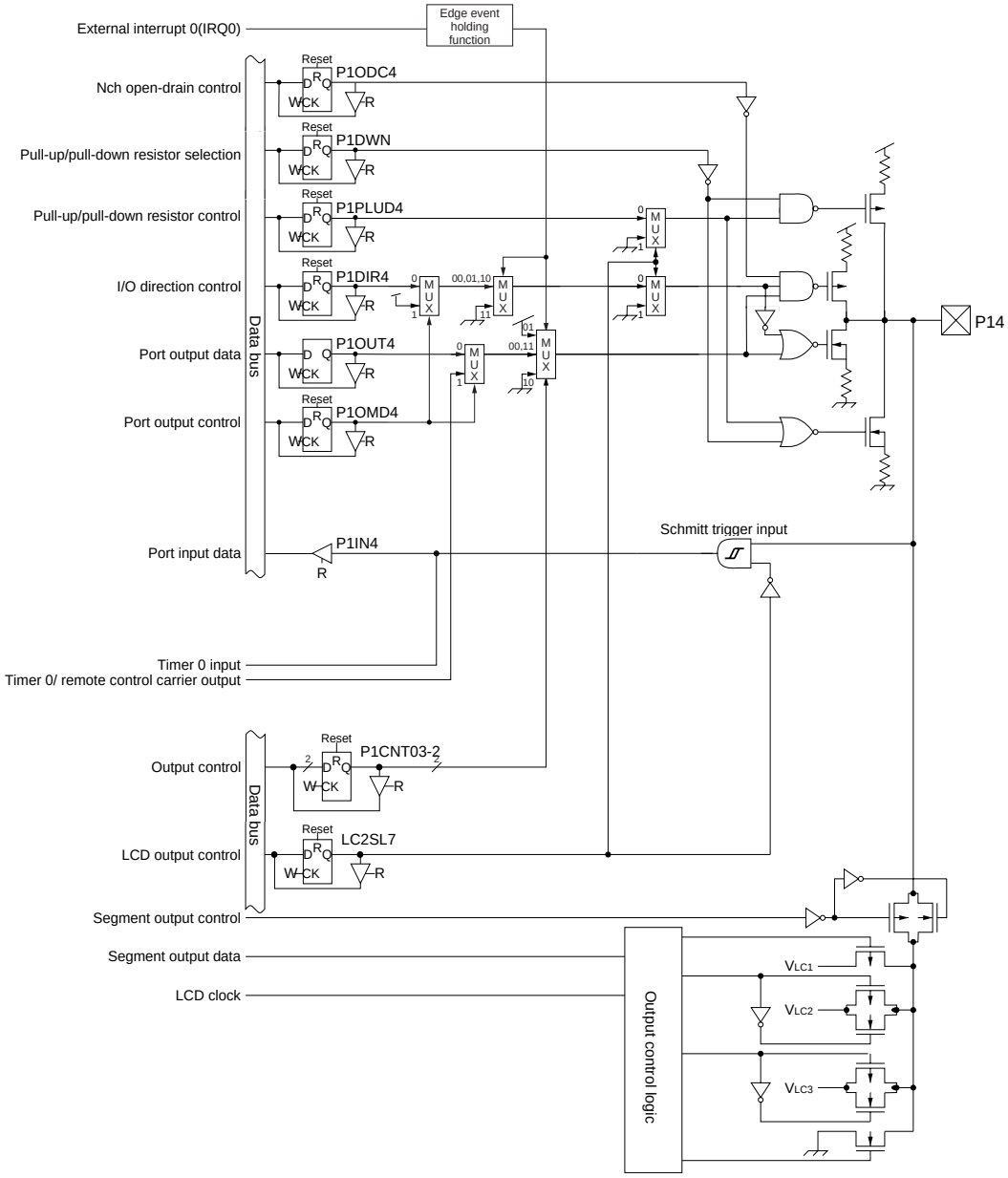


Figure:4.2.5 Block Diagram (P14)

* At segment output, port I/O direction control is forcefully set to input mode, pull-up resistor is disabled and segment output is executed by the segment output control.

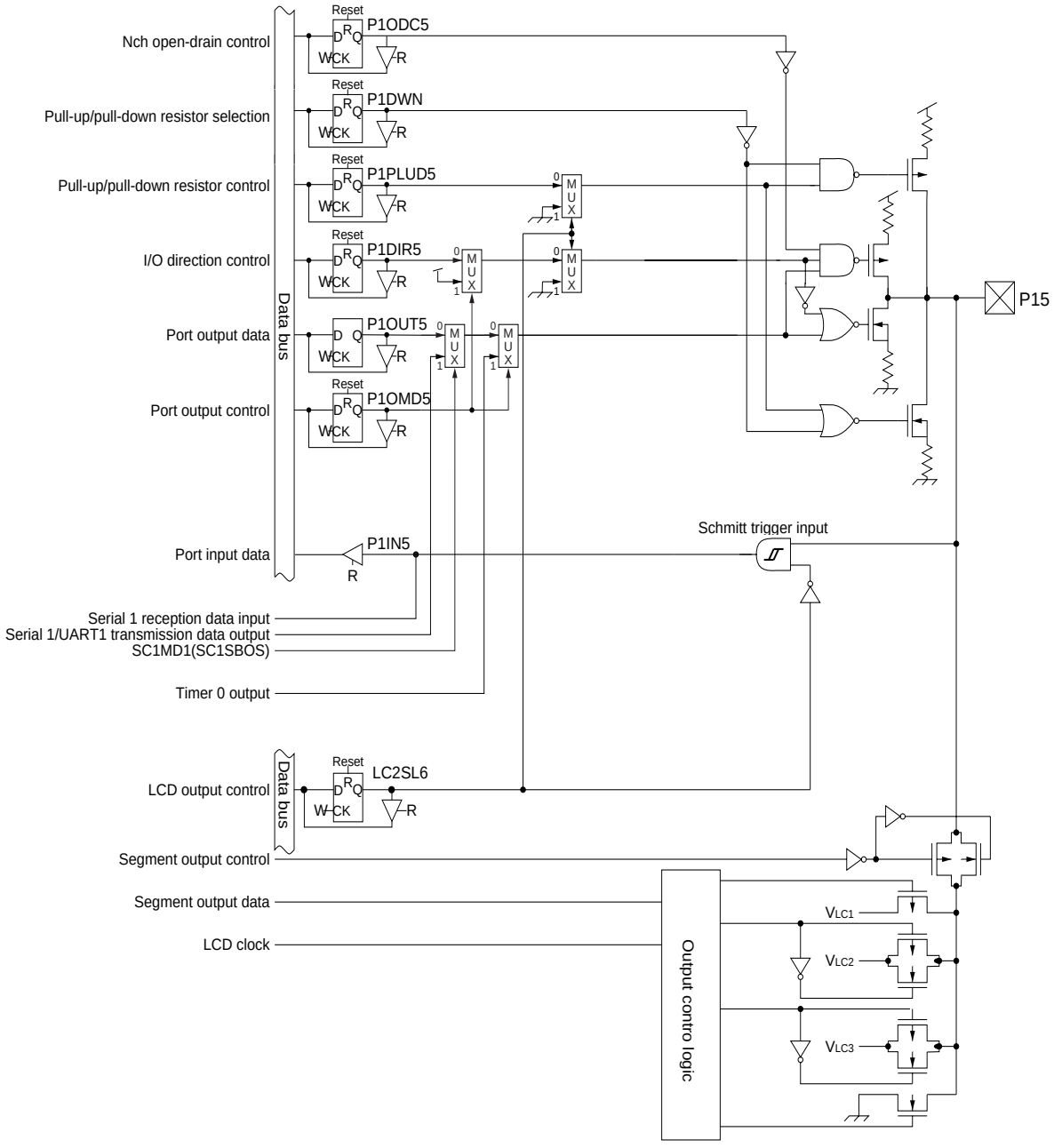


Figure:4.2.6 Block Diagram (P15)

* At segment output, port I/O direction control is forcefully set to input mode, pull-up resistor is disabled and segment output is executed by the segment output control.

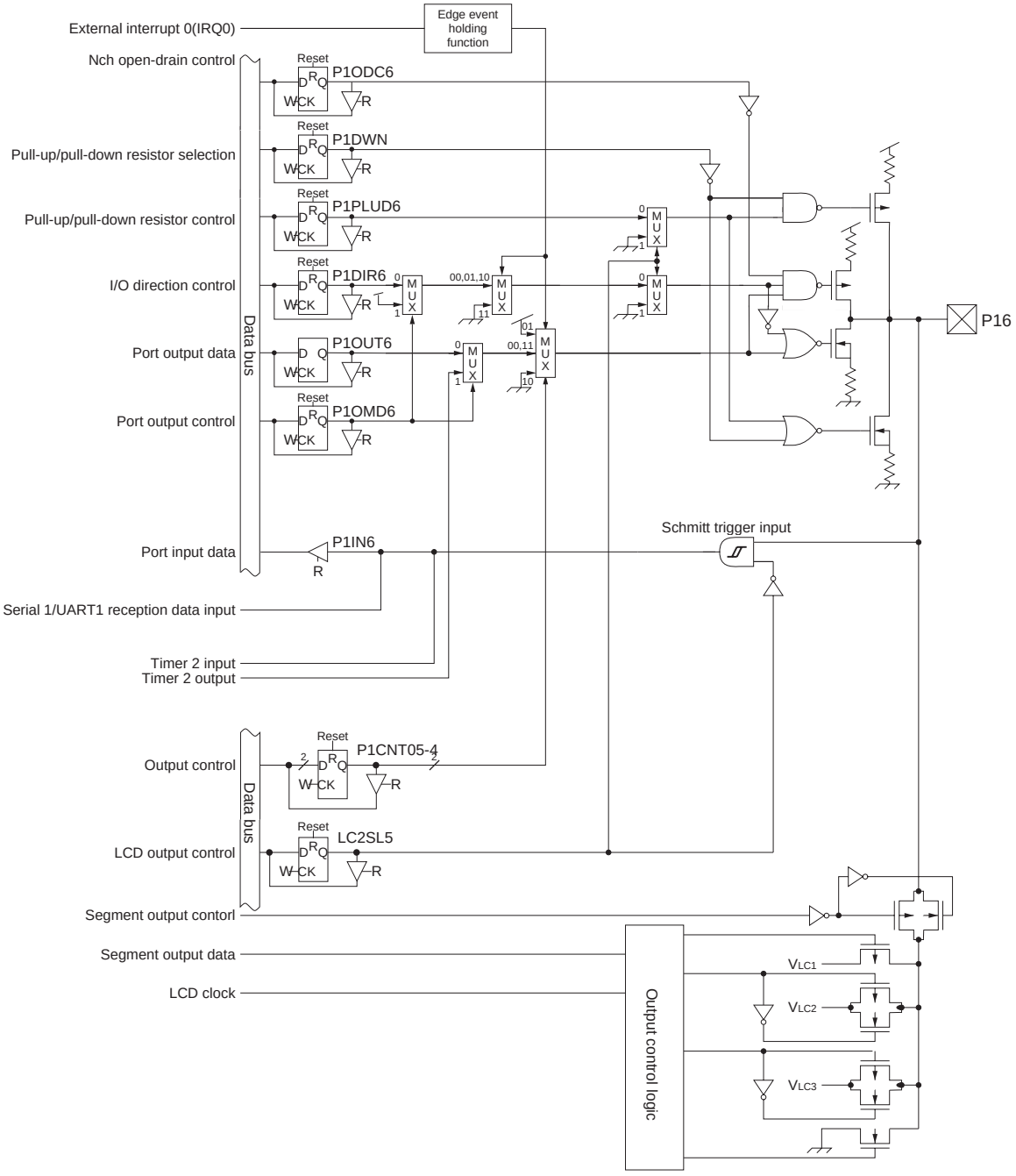


Figure:4.2.7 Block Diagram (P16)

* At segment output, port I/O direction control is forcefully set to input mode, pull-up resistor is disabled and segment output is executed by the segment output control.

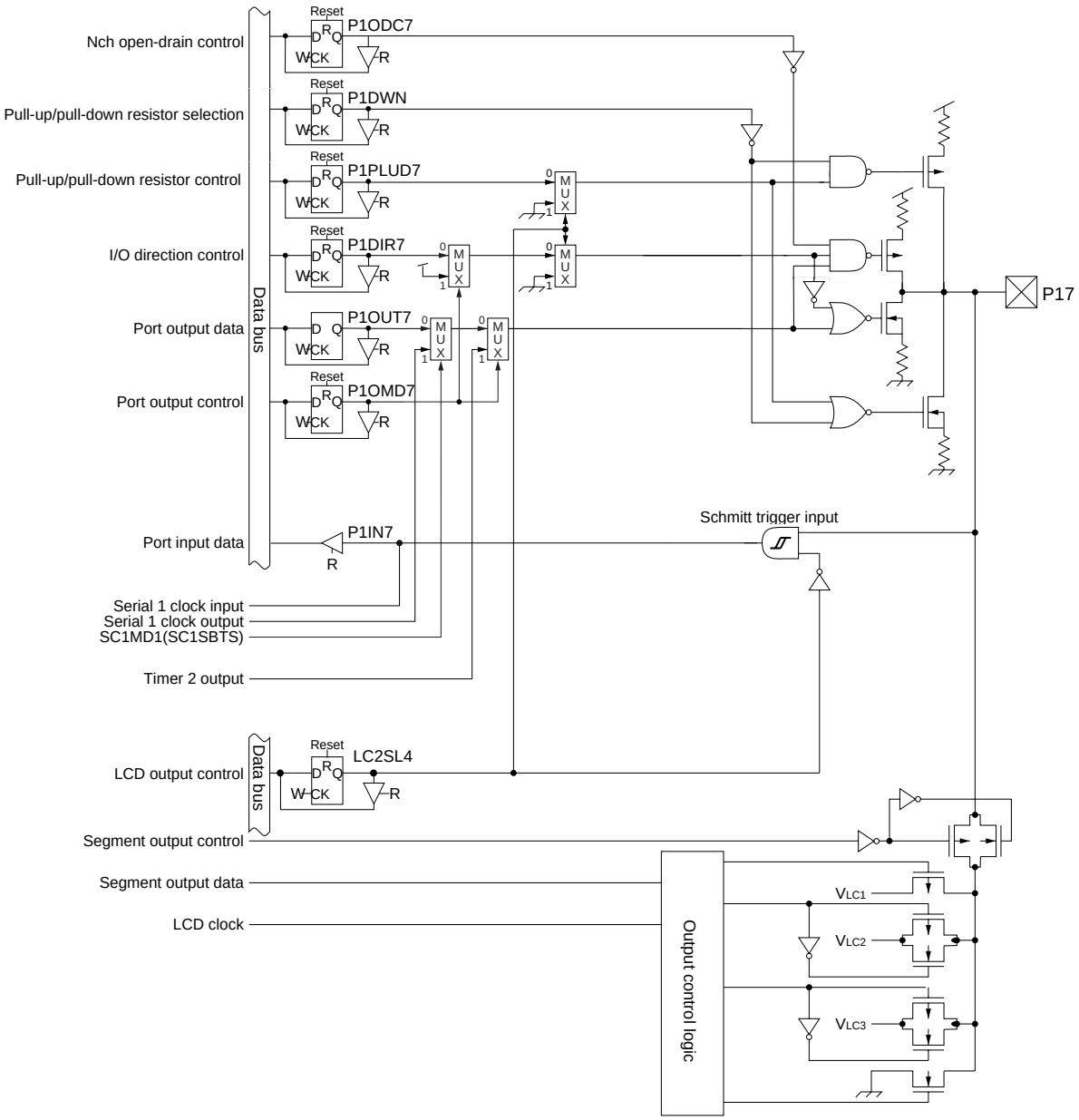


Figure:4.2.8 Block Diagram (P17)

* At segment output, port I/O direction control is forcefully set to input mode, pull-up resistor is disabled and segment output is executed by the segment output control.

4.3 Port 2

4.3.1 Description

■ General Port Setup

P27 is reset pin. When the software is reset, write “0” to the bp7 of the port 2 output register (P2OUT). Also, P27 is always added pull-up resistor.

4.3.2 Registers

Table:4.3.1 shows the registers that control the port 2.

Table:4.3.1 Port 2 Control Register

Registers	Address	R/W	Function	Page
P2OUT	0x03F12	R/W	Port 2 output register	IV-22

R/W:Readable/Writable

■ Port 2 Output Register (P2OUT:0x03F12)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	P2OUT7	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
At reset	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Access	R/W	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

bp	Flag	Description
7	P2OUT7	
6	-	
5	-	
4	-	Output data 0:Output L(VSS level) 1:Output H(VDD level)
3	-	
2	-	
1	-	
0	-	

4.3.3 Block Diagram

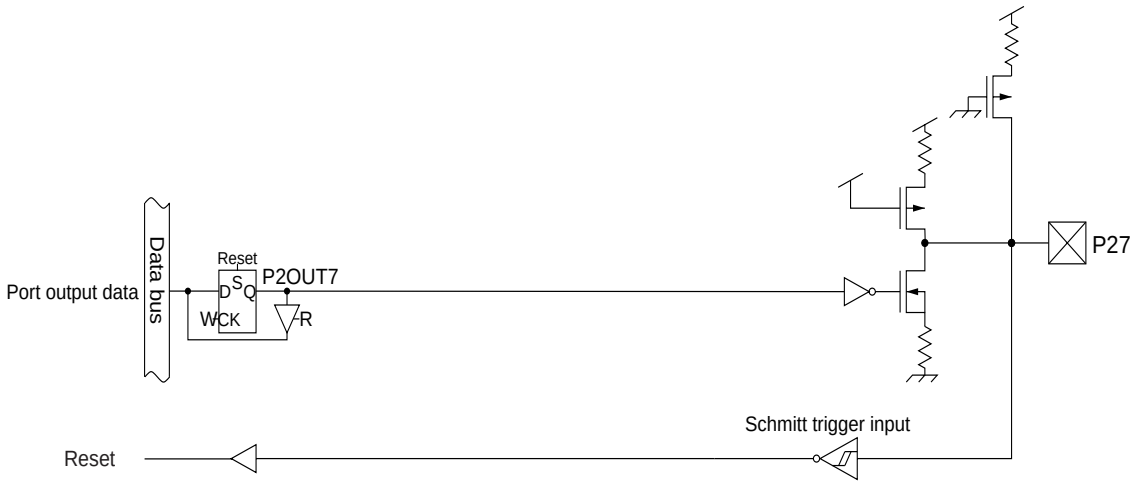


Figure:4.3.1 Block Diagram (P27)

4.4 Port 3

4.4.1 Description

■ General Port Setup

To output data to pin, set the control flag of the port 3 direction control register (P3DIR) to “1” and write the value of the port 3 output register (P3OUT).

To read input data of pin, set the control flag of the port 3 direction control register (P3DIR) to “0” and read the value of the port 3 input register (P3IN).

Each bit can be set individually as either an input or output by the port 3 I/O direction control register (P3DIR). The control flag of the port 3 direction control register (P3DIR) is set to “1” for output mode, and “0” for input mode.

Each bit can be set individually if pull-up/pull-down resistor is added or not, by the port 3 pull-up/pull-down resistor control register (P3PLUD). Set the control flag of the port 3 pull-up/pull-down resistor control register (P3PLUD) to “1” to add pull-up resistor.

Port 3 can be selected to add pull-up resistor or pull-down resistor by bp3 of the pull-up/pull-down resistor selection register (SELUD).

For P32 and P33, each bit can be selected individually as Nch open-drain output by the port 3 Nch open-drain control register (P3ODC). The control flag of the port 3 Nch open-drain control register (P3ODC) is set to “1” for Nch open-drain output, and “0” for push-pull output.

■ Special Function Setup

P31 is used as the serial 3 reception data input pin and IIC3 reception data input pin, as well.

P32 is used as the serial 3 clock I/O pin, as well. When SC3SBTS flag of the serial interface 3 mode register 1 (SC3MD1) is “1”, P32 is the serial clock output pin. Push-pull output or Nch open-drain output can be selected by setting the Port 3 Nch open-drain control register (P3ODC).

P33 is used as the output pin of the serial 3 transmission data and IIC3 transmission data, as well. When SC3SBTS flag of the serial interface 3 mode register 1 (SC3MD1) is “1”, P32 is the serial data output pin. Push-pull output or Nch open-drain output can be selected by setting the Port 3 Nch open-drain control register (P3ODC).

P30 is used as the LCD common output pin COM0, as well. The COM0 pin selection can be done by setting the bit 0 flag (COMSL0) flag of the LCD output control register 1 (LCCTR1) to “1”. At common output, it is forcefully set to input mode and pull-up resistor is disabled.

P31 is used as the LCD common output pin COM1, as well. The COM1 pin selection can be done by setting the bit 1 flag (COMSL1) flag of the LCD output control register 1 (LCCTR1) to “1”. At common output, it is forcefully set to input mode and pull-up resistor is disabled.

P32 is used as the LCD common output pin COM2, as well. The COM2 pin selection can be done by setting the bit 2 flag (COMSL0) flag of the LCD output control register 1 (LCCTR1) to “1”. At common output, it is forcefully set to input mode and pull-up resistor is disabled.

P33 is used as the LCD common output pin COM3, as well. The COM3 pin selection can be done by setting the bit 3 flag (COMSL0) flag of the LCD output control register 1 (LCCTR1) to “1”. At common output, it is forcefully set to input mode and pull-up resistor is disabled.

P34 is used as voltage pin of the LCD driver circuit and VLC3, as well. The VLC3 pin selection can be done by setting the bit 2 flag (VLC3SL) of the LCD output control register 3 (LCCTR3) to “1”.

P35 is used as voltage pin of the LCD driver circuit and VLC3, as well. The VLC2 pin selection can be done by setting the bit 1 flag (VLC2SL) of the LCD output control register 3 (LCCTR3) to “1”.

P36 is used as voltage pin of the LCD driver circuit and VLC1, as well. The VLC1 pin selection can be done by setting the bit 0 flag (VLC1SL) of the LCD output control register 3 (LCCTR3) to “1”.

4.4.2 Registers

Table:4.4.1 shows the registers that control the port 3.

Table:4.4.1 Port 3 Control Register

Registers	Address	R/W	Function	Page
P3OUT	0x03F13	R/W	Port 3 output register	IV-26
P3IN	0x03F23	R	Port 3 input register	IV-27
P3DIR	0x03F33	R/W	Port 3 direction control register	IV-27
P3PLUD	0x03F43	R/W	Port 3 pull-up/pull-down control register	IV-28
SELUD	0x03F4B	R/W	Pull-up/pull-down resistor selection register	IV-29
P3ODC	0x03F3B	R/W	Port 3 Nch open-drain control register	IV-30
LCCTR1	0x03FC2	R/W	LCD output control register 1	IV-31
LCCTR3	0x03FC4	R/W	LCD output control register 3	IV-32

R/W:Readable/Writable

■ Port 3 Output Register (P3OUT:0x03F13)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	P3OUT7	P3OUT6	P3OUT5	P3OUT4	P3OUT3	P3OUT2	P3OUT1	P3OUT0
At reset	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0	P3OUT7 P3OUT6 P3OUT5 P3OUT4 P3OUT3 P3OUT2 P3OUT1 P3OUT0	Output data 0:Output L(VSS level) 1:Output H(VDD level)

■ Port 3 Input Register (P3IN:0x03F23)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	P3IN7	P3IN6	P3IN5	P3IN4	P3IN3	P3IN2	P3IN1	P3IN0
At reset	1	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

bp	Flag	Description
7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0	P3IN7 P3IN6 P3IN5 P3IN4 P3IN3 P3IN2 P3IN1 P3IN0	Input data 0:Pin is L(VSS level) 1:Pin is H(VDD level)

■ Port 3 Direction Control Register (P3DIR:0x03F33)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	P3DIR7	P3DIR6	P3DIR5	P3DIR4	P3DIR3	P3DIR2	P3DIR1	P3DIR0
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0	P3DIR7 P3DIR6 P3DIR5 P3DIR4 P3DIR3 P3DIR2 P3DIR1 P3DIR0	I/O mode selection 0:Input mode 1:Output mode

■ Port 3 Pull-up Resistor Control Register (P3PLU:0x03F43)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	P3PLUD7	P3PLUD6	P3PLUD5	P3PLUD4	P3PLUD3	P3PLUD2	P3PLUD1	P3PLUD0
At reset	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0	P3PLUD7 P3PLUD6 P3PLUD5 P3PLUD4 P3PLUD3 P3PLUD2 P3PLUD1 P3PLUD0	Pull-up/pull-down resistor selection 0:Not added 1:Added

■ Pull-up/pull-down Resistor Selection Register (SELUD:0x03F4B)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	-	-	PADWN	P3DWN	P9DWN	P7DWN	P1DWN
At reset	-	-	-	1	1	1	0	0
Access	-	-	-	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7	-	-
6	-	-
5	-	-
4	PADWN	Port A Pull-up/pull-down selection 0:Pull-up 1:Pull-downd
3	P3DWN	Port 3 Pull-up/pull-down selection 0:Pull-up 1:Pull-downd
2	P9DWN	Port 9 Pull-up/pull-down selection 0:Pull-up 1:Pull-downd
1	P7DWN	Port 7 Pull-up/pull-down selection 0:Pull-up 1:Pull-downd
0	P1DWN	Port 1 Pull-up/pull-down selection 0:Pull-up 1:Pull-downd

■ Port 3 Nch Open-drain Control Register (P3ODC:0x03F3B)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	-	-	-	P33ODC	P32ODC	-	-
At reset	-	-	-	-	0	0	-	-
Access	-	-	-	-	R/W	R/W	-	-

bp	Flag	Description
7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0	- - - - P33ODC P32ODC - -	Nch open-drain output selection 0:Push/pull output 1:Nch open drain output

■ LCD output Control Register (LCCTR1:X'3FC2', R/W)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	LC1SL3	LC1SL2	LC1SL1	LC1SL0	COMSL3	COMSL2	COMSL1	COMSL0
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7	LC1SL3	SEG3/P74 0:P74 1:SEG3
6	LC1SL2	SEG2/P75 0:P75 1:SEG2
5	LC1SL1	SEG1/P76 0:P74 1:SEG1
4	LC1SL0	SEG0/P77 0:P77 1:SEG3
3	COMSL3	COM3/P33 0:P33 1:COM3
2	COMSL2	COM2/P32 0:P32 1:COM2
1	COMSL1	COM1/P31 0:P31 1:COM1
0	COMSL0	COM0/P30 0:P30 1:COM0

■ LCD Output Control Register 3 (LCCTR3:X'3FC4', R/W)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	-	-	-	-	LC3SL2	LC3SL1	LC3SL0
At reset	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	0
Access	-	-	-	-	-	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7-3	-	-
2	LC3SL2	VLC3/P34 0:P34 1:VLC3
1	LC3SL1	VLC2/P35 0:P35 1:VLC2
0	LC3SL0	VLC1/P36 0:P36 1:VLC1

4.4.3 Block Diagram

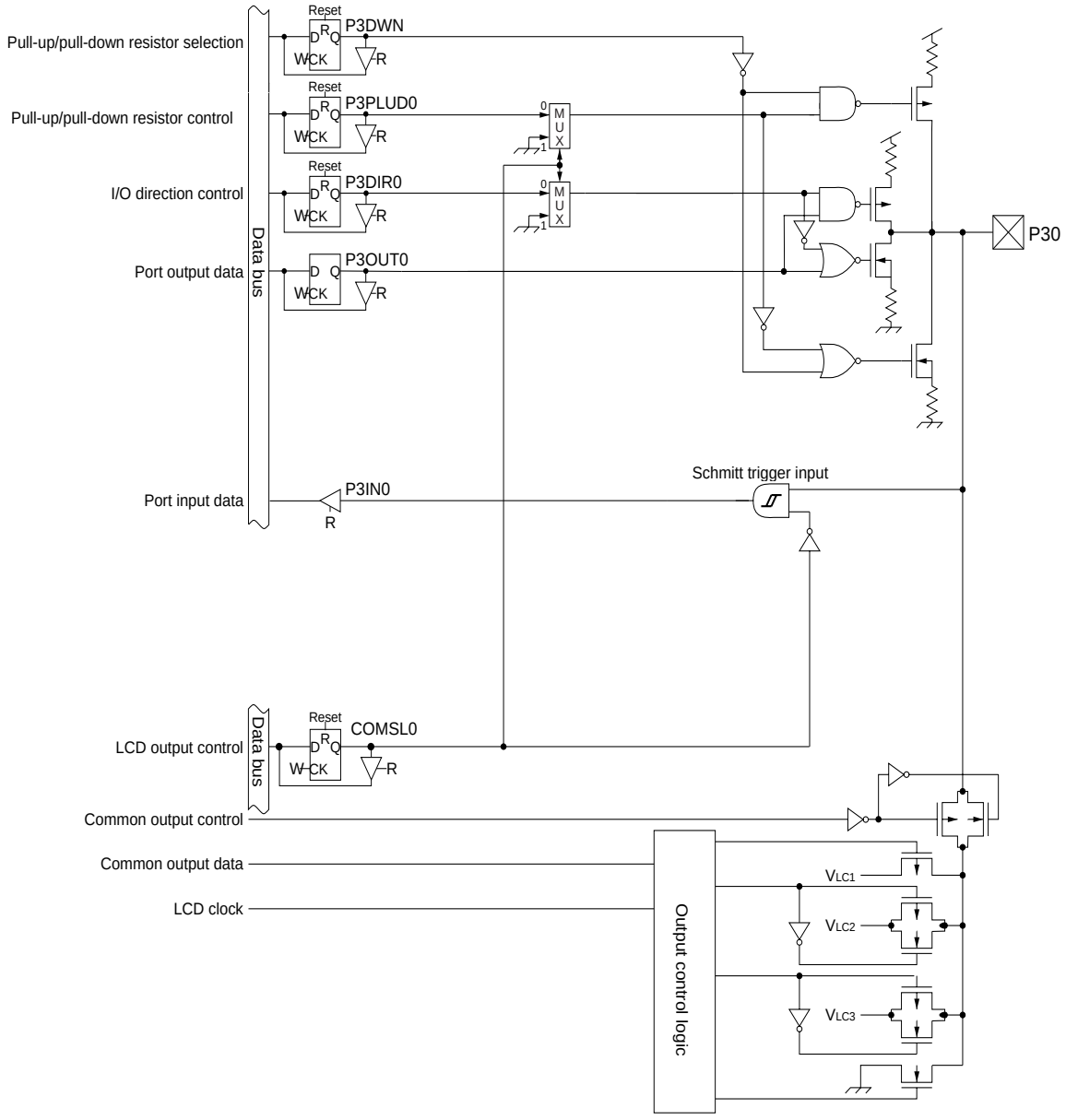


Figure:4.4.1 Block Diagram (P30)

* At common output, port I/O direction control is forcefully set to input mode, pull-up resistor is disabled and common output is executed by the common output control.

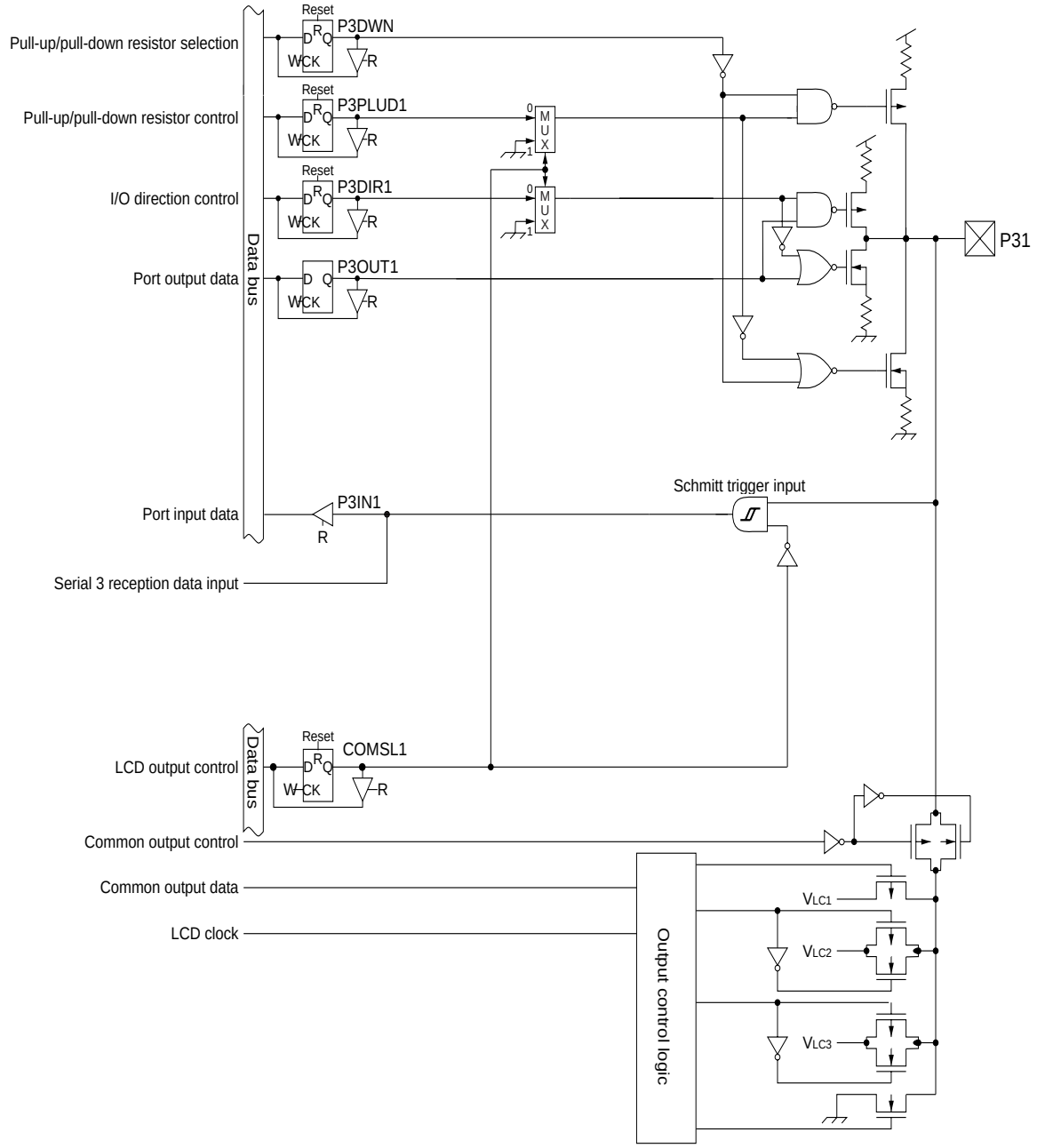


Figure:4.4.2 Block Diagram (P31)

* At common output, port I/O direction control is forcefully set to input mode, pull-up resistor is disabled and common output is executed by the common output control.

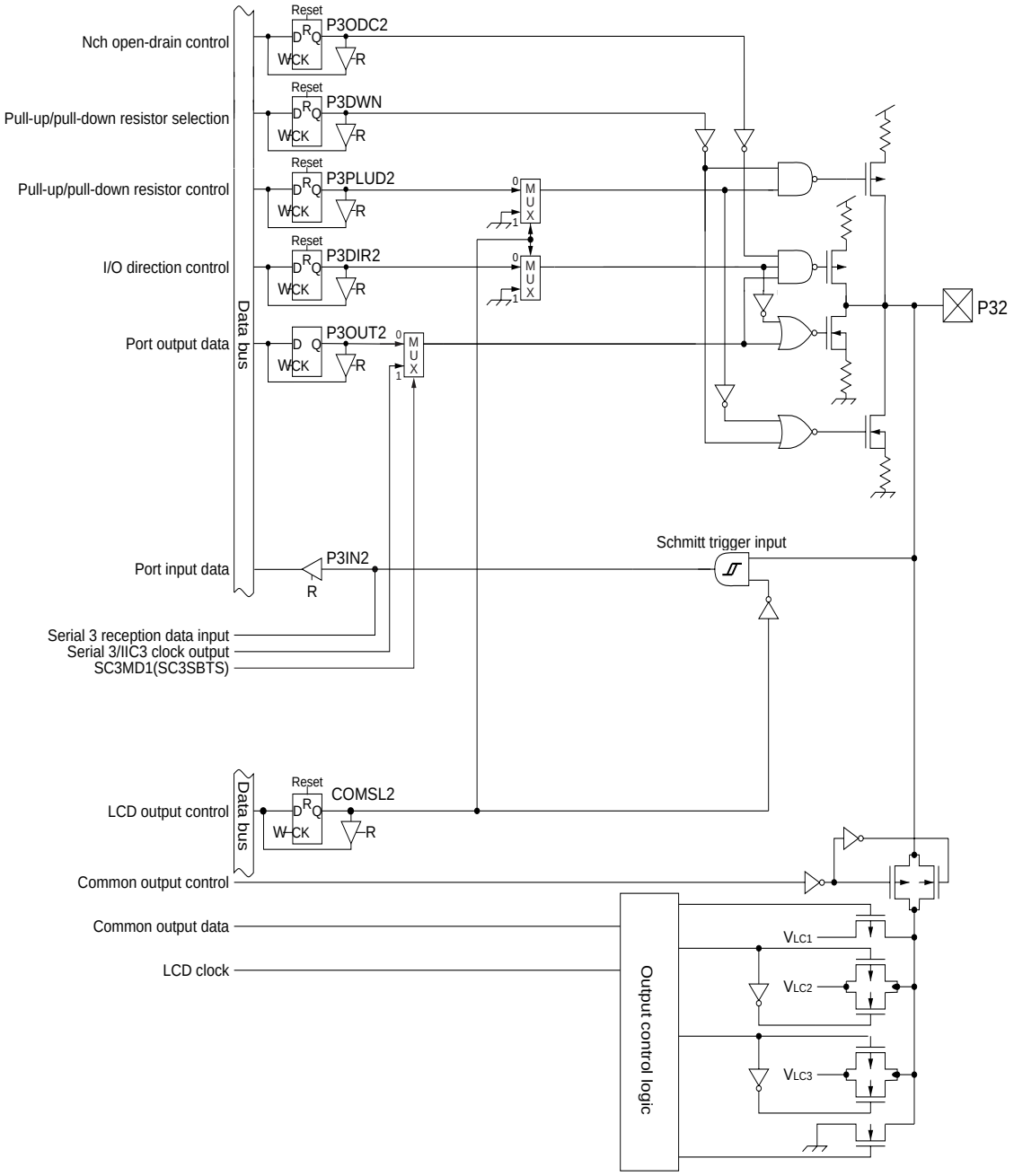


Figure:4.4.3 Block Diagram (P32)

* At common output, port I/O direction control is forcefully set to input mode, pull-up resistor is disabled and common output is executed by the common output control.

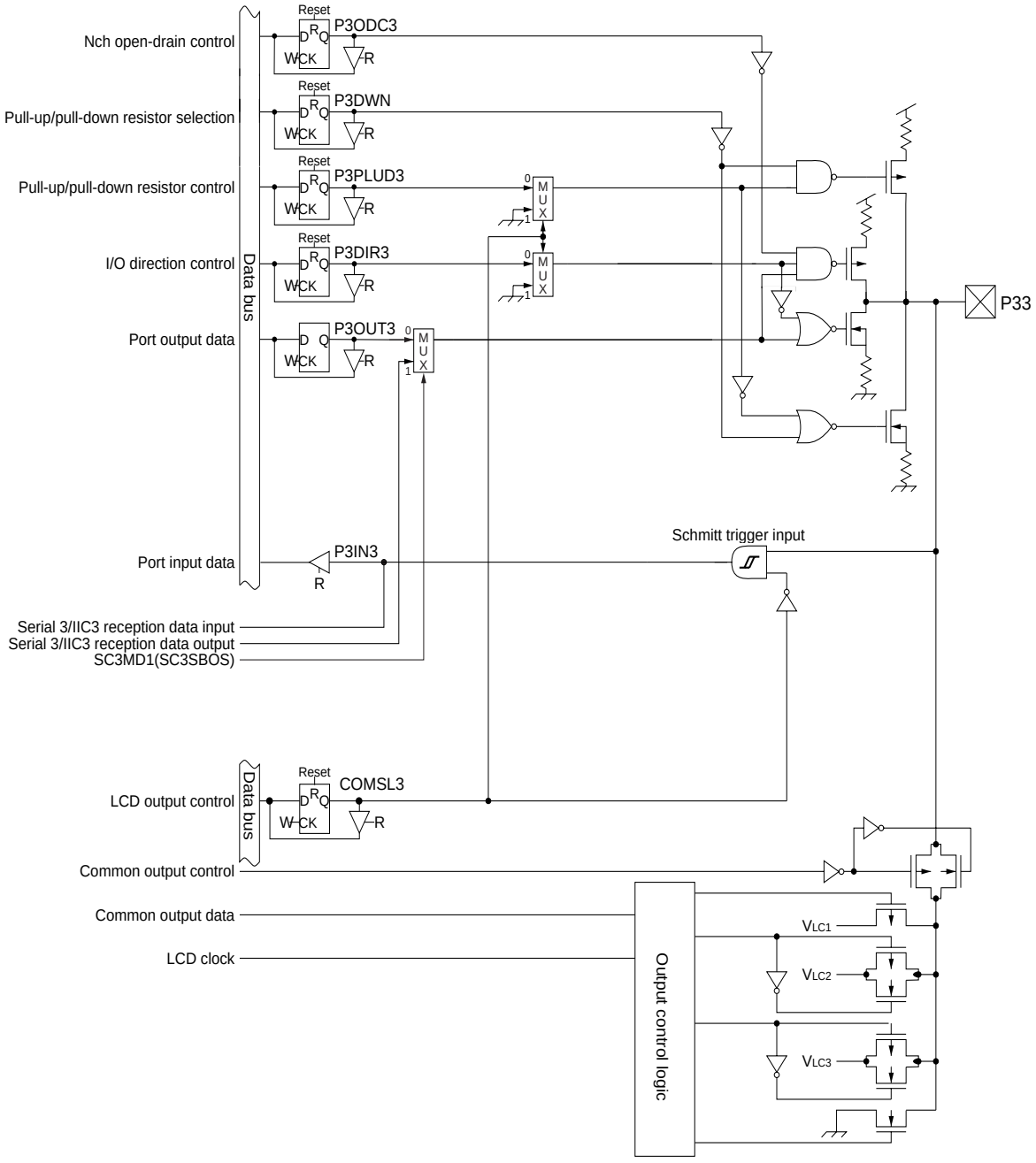


Figure:4.4.4 Block Diagram (P33)

* At common output, port I/O direction control is forcefully set to input mode, pull-up resistor is disabled and common output is executed by the common output control.

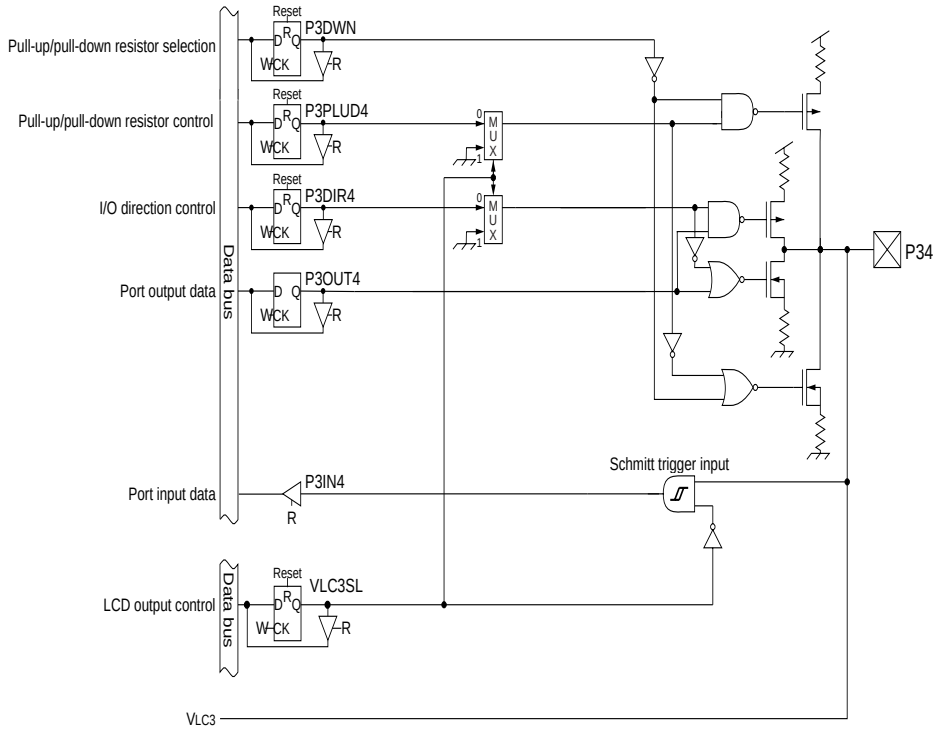


Figure:4.4.5 Block Diagram (P34)

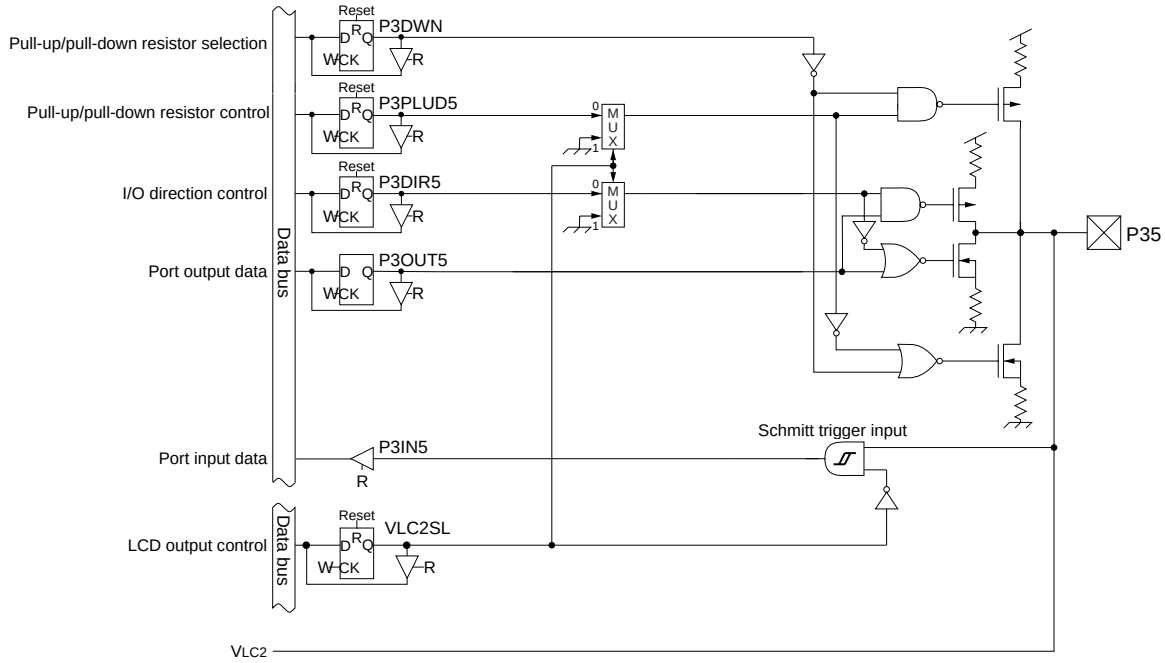


Figure:4.4.6 Block Diagram (P35)

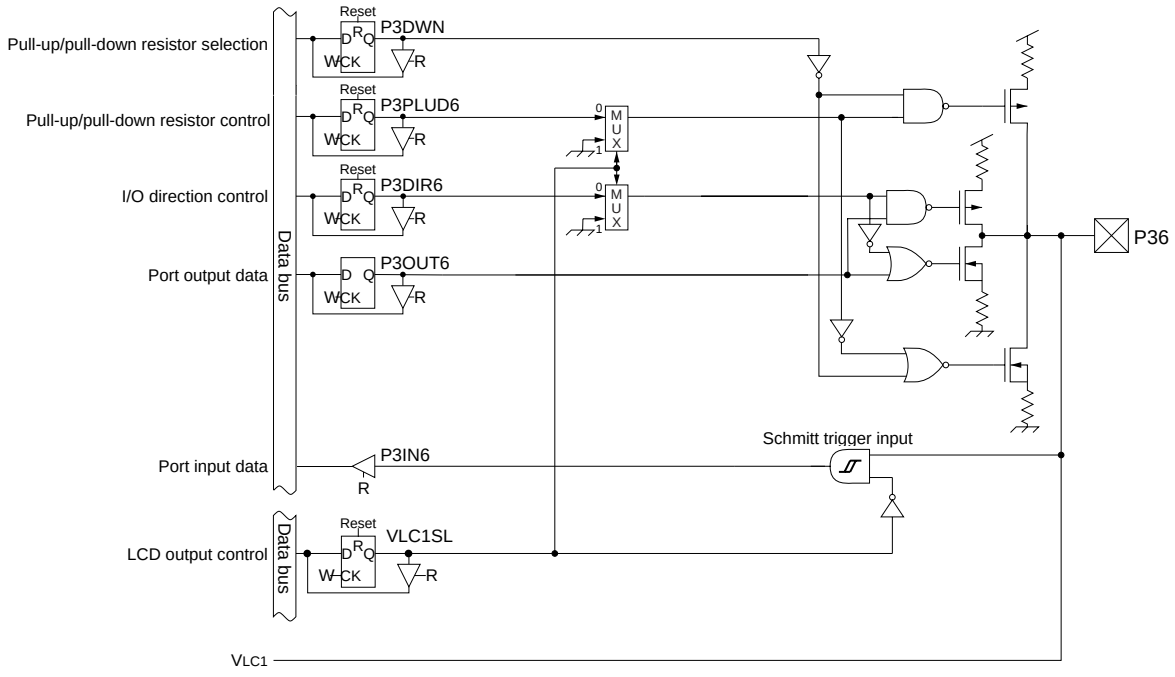


Figure:4.4.7 Block Diagram (P36)

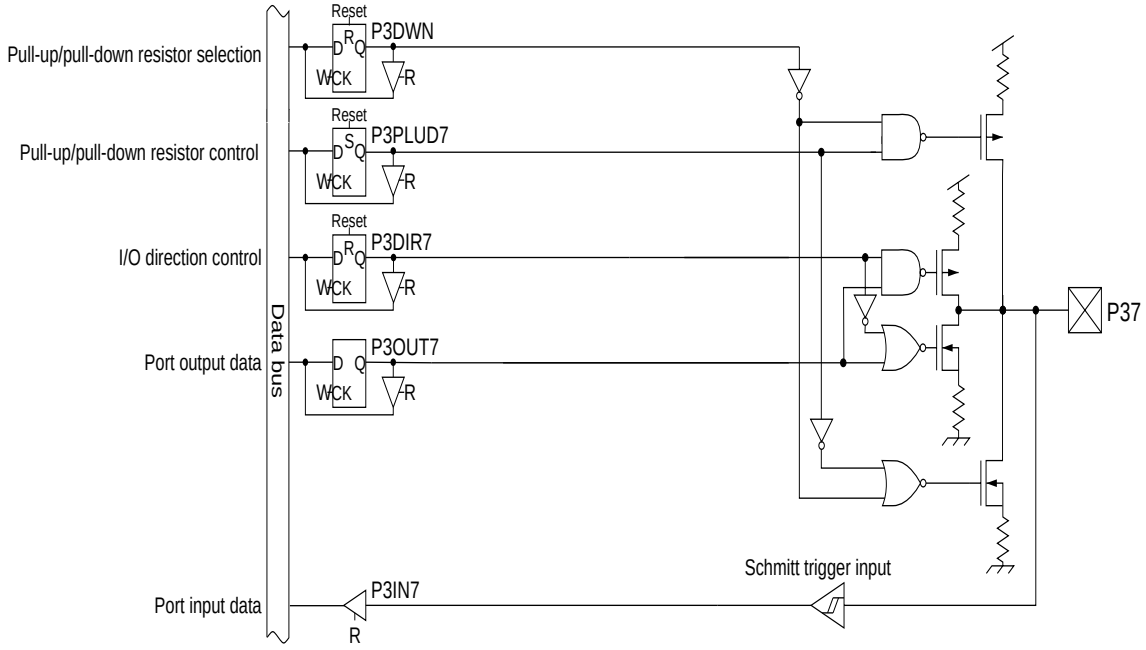


Figure:4.4.8 Block Diagram (P37)

4.5 Port 5

4.5.1 Description

■ General Port Setup

To output data to pin, set the control flag of the port 5 direction control register (P5DIR) to “1” and write the value of the port 5 output register (P5OUT).

To read input data of pin, set the control flag of the port 5 direction control register (P5DIR) to “0” and read the value of the port 5 input register (P5IN).

Each bit can be set individually as either an input or output by the port 5 I/O direction control register (P5DIR). The control flag of the port 5 direction control register (P5DIR) is set to “1” for output mode, and “0” for input mode.

Each bit can be set individually if pull-up resistor is added or not, by the port 5 pull-up resistor control register (P5PLU). Set the control flag of the port 5 pull-up resistor control register (P5PLU) to “1” to add pull-up resistor.

Each bit can be selected individually as output mode by the port 5 output mode regiser (P5OMD). The port 5 output mode register (P5OMD) is set to “1” to output the special function data, and “0” for the general port.

■ Special Function Pin Setup

P50 is uses as output pin of the timer 0. The output mode can be selected by each bit by bp0 of the port 5 output mode register (P5OMD). The port 5 output mode register (P5OMD) is set to “1” to output the special function data, and “0” for general port.

P51 is uses as output pin of the timer 7. The output mode can be selected by each bit by bp1 of the port 5 output mode register (P5OMD). The port 5 output mode register (P5OMD) is set to “1” to output the special function data, and “0” for general port.

P52 is uses as output pin of the timer 2. The output mode can be selected by each bit by bp2 of the port 5 output mode register (P5OMD). The port 5 output mode register (P5OMD) is set to “1” to output the special function data, and “0” for general port.

P53 is uses as output pin of the timer 8. The output mode can be selected by each bit by bp3 of the port 5 output mode register (P5OMD). The port 5 output mode register (P5OMD) is set to “1” to output the special function data, and “0” for general port.

P54 is used as the external interrupt pin, as well.

P55 is used as the external interrupt pin, as well.

P56 is used as the external interrupt pin, as well.

P54 is used as input pin of the AC zero-cross 0, as well. To read out the data of AC zero-cross, set the bp3 of the noise filter control register (NFCTR) to “1”, and read out the value of port 5 input register (P5IN).

P55 is used as input pin of the AC zero-cross 1, as well. To read out the data of AC zero-cross, set the bp7 of the noise filter control register (NFCTR) to “1”, and read out the value of port 5 input register (P5IN).

P50 is used as output pin of LED0, as well. Each bit can be selected as output mode by bp4 of the port 5 output mode register (P5OMD). The port 5 output mode register (P5OMD) is set to “1” for output pin of large current (Nch-Tr.), and “0” to use as output pin of general current. The timer 0 output or the general port output can be set to large current with the combination of bp0 of the port 5 output mode register (P5OMD).

P51 is used as output pin of LED1, as well. Each bit can be selected as output mode by bp5 of the port 5 output mode register (P5OMD). The port 5 output mode register (P5OMD) is set to “1” for output pin of large current (Nch-Tr.), and “0” to use as output pin of general current. The timer 0 output or the general port output can be set to large current with the combination of bp1 of the port 5 output mode register (P5OMD).

P52 is used as output pin of LED2, as well. Each bit can be selected as output mode by bp6 of the port 5 output mode register (P5OMD). The port 5 output mode register (P5OMD) is set to “1” for output pin of large current (Nch-Tr.), and “0” to use as output pin of general current. The timer 0 output or the general port output can be set to large current with the combination of bp2 of the port 5 output mode register (P5OMD).

P53 is used as output pin of LED3, as well. Each bit can be selected as output mode by bp7 of the port 5 output mode register (P5OMD). The port 5 output mode register (P5OMD) is set to “1” for output pin of large current (Nch-Tr.), and “0” to use as output pin of general current. The timer 0 output or the general port output can be set to large current with the combination of bp3 of the port 5 output mode register (P5OMD).

4.5.2 Registers

Table:4.5.1 shows the registers that control the port 5.

Table:4.5.1 Port 5 Control Register

Registers	Address	R/W	Function	Page
P5OUT	0x03F15	R/W	Port 5 output register	IV-41
P5IN	0x03F25	R	Port 5 input register	IV-42
P5DIR	0x03F35	R/W	Port 5 direction control register	IV-42
P5PLU	0x03F45	R/W	Port 5 pull-up resistor control register	IV-43
P5OMD	0x03F2C	R/W	Port 5 output mode register	IV-44

R/W:Readable/Writable

■ Port 5 output register (P5OUT:0x03F15)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	P5OUT6	P5OUT5	P5OUT4	P5OUT3	P5OUT2	P5OUT1	P5OUT0
At reset	-	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Access	-	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0	- P5OUT6 P5OUT5 P5OUT4 P5OUT3 P5OUT2 P5OUT1 P5OUT0	Output data 0:Output L(VSS level) 1:Output H(VDD level)

■ Port 5 Input Register (P5IN:0x03F25)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	P5IN6	P5IN5	P5IN4	P5IN3	P5IN2	P5IN1	P5IN0
At reset	-	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Access	-	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

bp	Flag	Description
7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0	- P5IN6 P5IN5 P5IN4 P5IN3 P5IN2 P5IN1 P5IN0	Input data 0:Pin is L(VSS level) 1:Pin is H(VDD level)s

■ Port 5 Direction Control Register (P5DIR:0x03F35)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	P5DIR6	P5DIR5	P5DIR4	P5DIR3	P5DIR2	P5DIR1	P5DIR0
At reset	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	-	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0	- P5DIR6 P5DIR5 P5DIR4 P5DIR3 P5DIR2 P5DIR1 P5DIR0	I/O mode selection 0:Input mode 1:Output mode

■ Port 5 Pull-up Resistor Control Register (P5PLU:0x03F45)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	P5PLU6	P5PLU5	P5PLU4	P5PLU3	P5PLU2	P5PLU1	P5PLU0
At reset	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	-	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7	-	
6	P5PLU6	
5	P5PLU5	
4	P5PLU4	Pull-up/pull-down resistor selection 0:Not added 1:Added
3	P5PLU3	
2	P5PLU2	
1	P5PLU1	
0	P5PLU0	

■ Port 5 Output Mode Register (P5OMD:0x03F2C)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	P5LED3	P5LED2	P5LED1	P5LED0	P5OMD3	P5OMD2	P5OMD1	P5OMD0
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7	P5LED3	I/O port, LED3 selection 0:I/O port 1:LED3 (large current output)
6	P5LED2	I/O port, LED2 selection 0:I/O port 1:LED2 (large current output)
5	P5LED1	I/O port, LED1 selection 0:I/O port 1:LED1 (large current output)
4	P5LED0	I/O port, LED0 selection 0:I/O port 1:LED0 (large current output)
3	P5OMD3	I/O port, TM8O selection 0:I/O port 1:TM8O
2	P5OMD2	I/O port, TM2O selection 0:I/O port 1:TM2O
1	P5OMD1	I/O port, TM7O selection 0:I/O port 1:TM7O
0	P5OMD0	I/O port, TM0O selection 0:I/O port 1:TM0O

4.5.3 Block Diagram

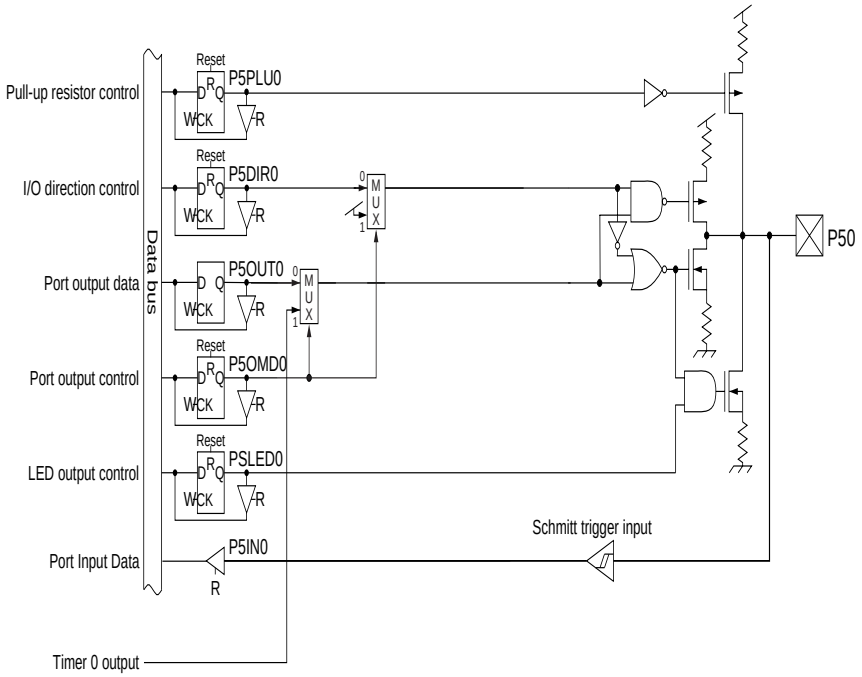


Figure:4.5.1 Block Diagram (P50)

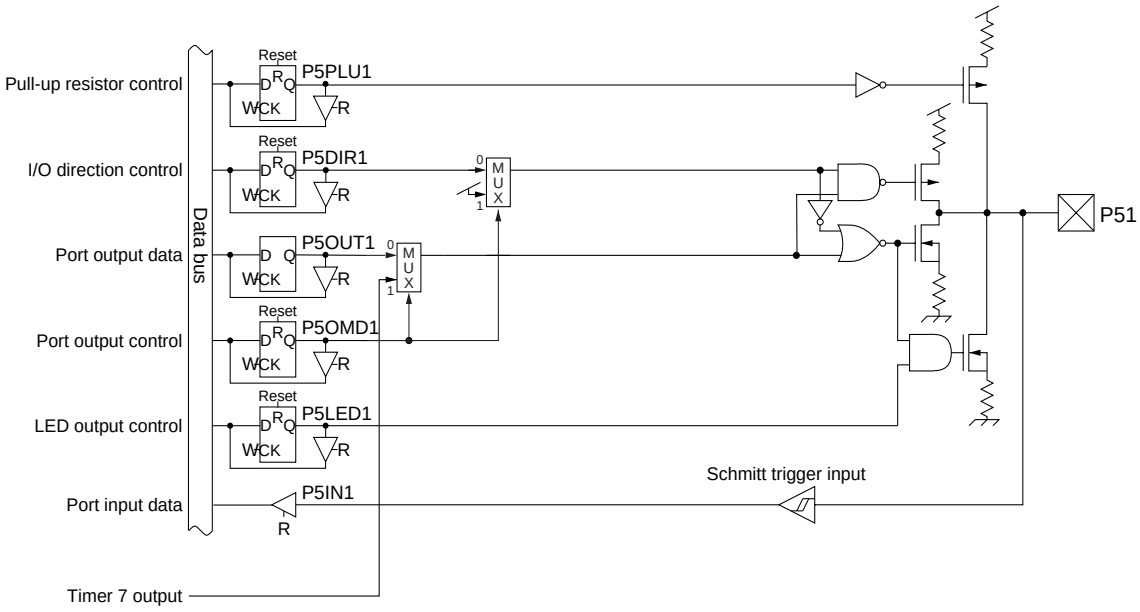


Figure:4.5.2 Block Diagram (P51)

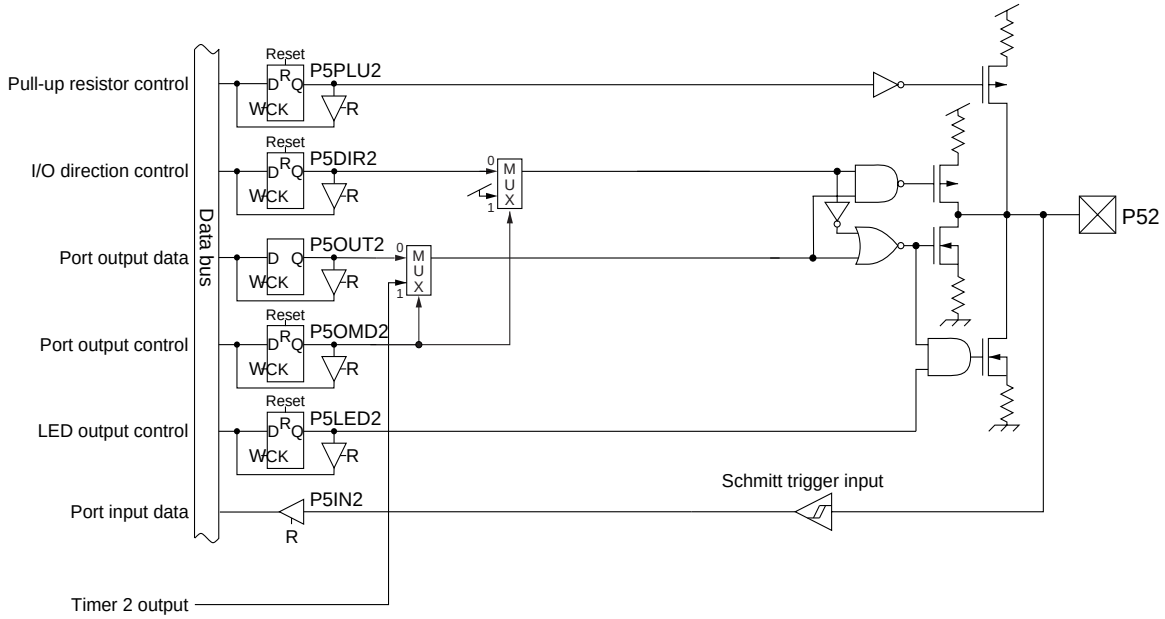


Figure:4.5.3 Block Diagram (P52)

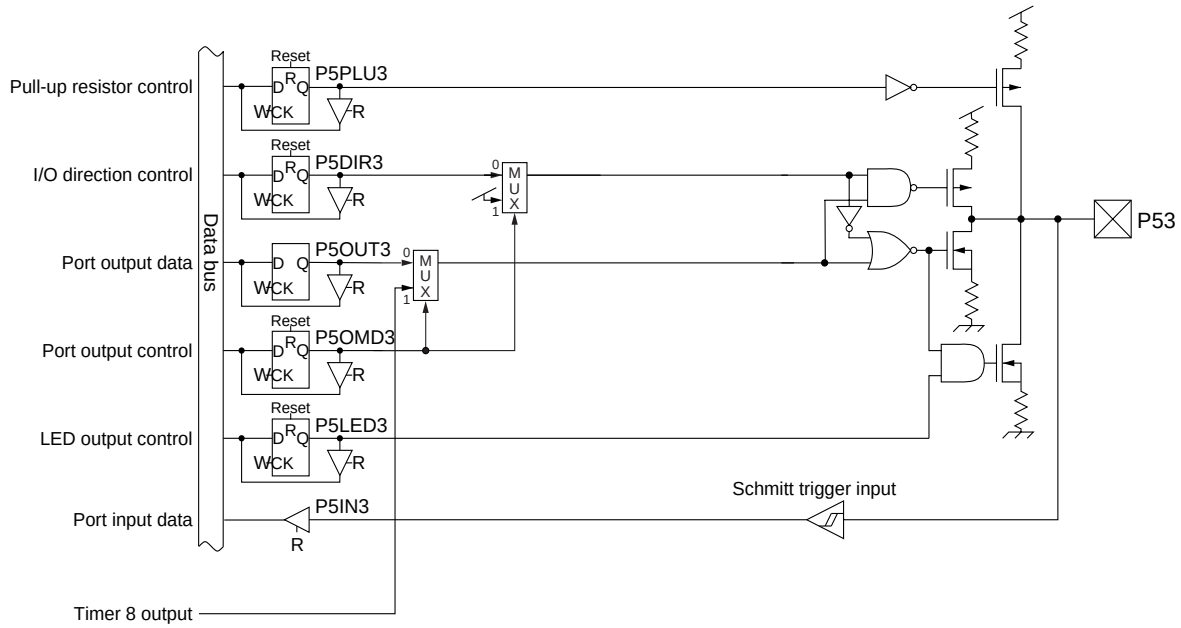


Figure:4.5.4 Block Diagram (P53)

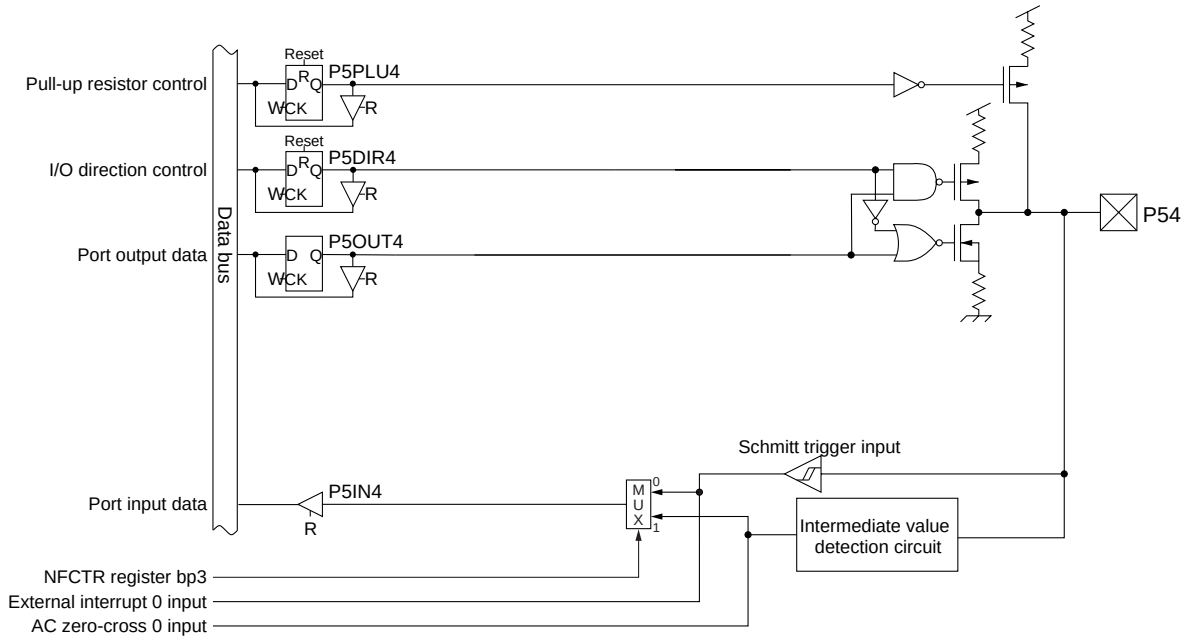


Figure:4.5.5 Block Diagram (P54)

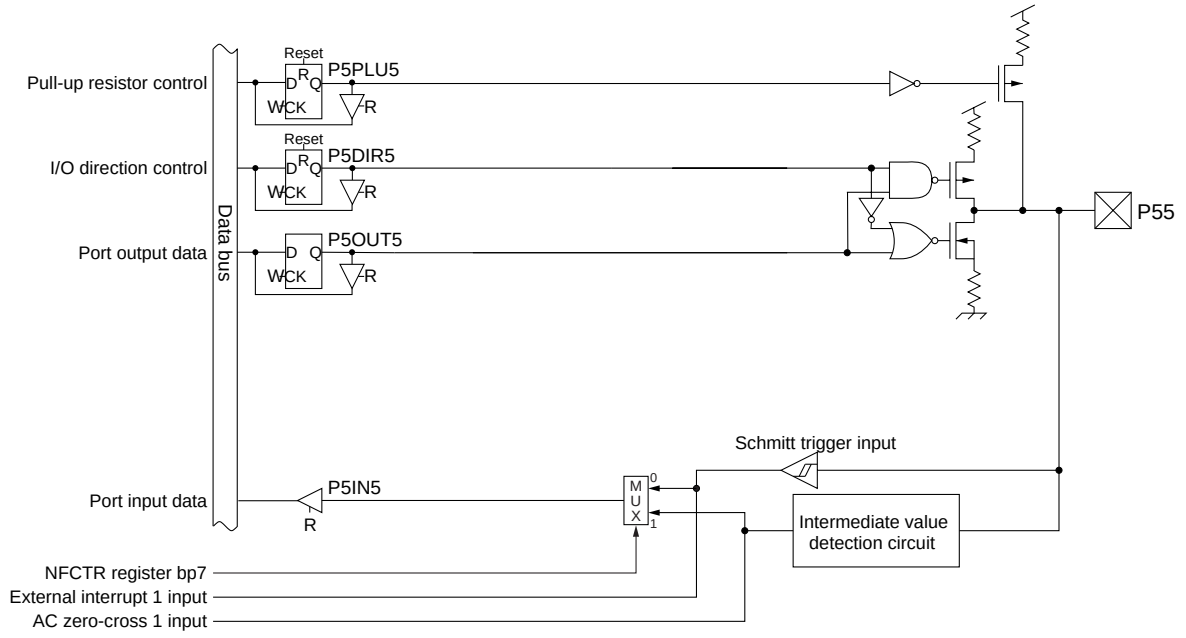


Figure:4.5.6 Block Diagram (P55)

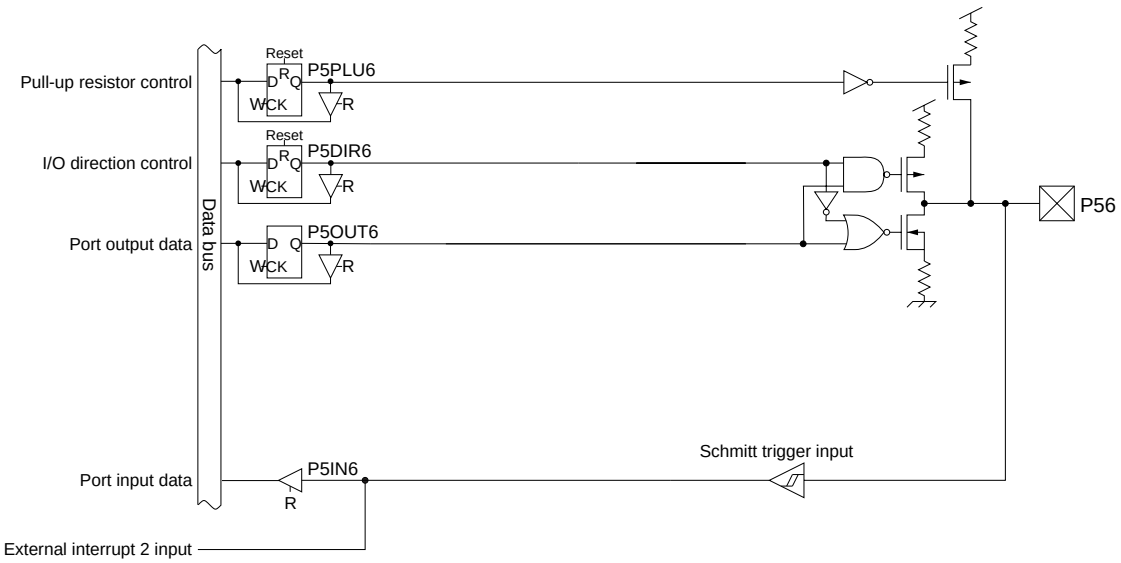


Figure:4.5.7 Block Diagram (P56)

4.6 Port 7

4.6.1 Description

■ General Port Setup

To output data to pin, set the control flag of the port 7 direction control register (P7DIR) to “1” and write data to the port 7 output register (P7OUT).

To read input data of pin, set the control flag of the port 7 direction control register (P7DIR) to “0” and read the value of the port 7 input register (P7IN).

Each bit can be set individually to either an input or output by the port 7 direction control register (P7DIR). The control flag of the port 7 direction control register (P7DIR) is set to “1” for ouput mode, and “0” for input mode.

Each bit can be set individually if pull-up/pull-down resistor is added or not, by the port 7 pull-up/pull-down resistor control register (P7PLUD). Set the control flag of the port 7 pull-up/pull-down resistor control register (P7PLUD) to “1” to add pull-up resistor.

Port 7 can be selected to add pull-up resistor or pull-down resistor by bp1 of the pull-up/pull-down resistor selection register (SELUD).

Each bit can be selected individually as output mode by the port 7 output mode register (P7OMD). The control flag of the port 7 output mode register (P7OMD) is set to “1” to output the special function data, and “0” to use as the general port.

For P75, P76 and P77, each bit can be selected individually as Nch open-drain output by the port 7 Nch open-drain control register (P7ODC). The control flag of the port 7 Nch open-drain control register (P7ODC) is set to “1” for Nch open-drain output, and “0” for push-pull output.

■ Special Function Pin Setup

P70 can be used as the timer 1 I/O pin, as well. Each bit can be selected individually as output mode by the bp0 of the port 7 output mode register (P7OMD). When the bp0 of the port 7 output mode register (P7OMD) is set to “1” for the special function data output, and “0” to use as the general port.

P71 can be used as the timer 3 I/O pin, as well. Each bit can be selected individually as output mode by the bp1 of the port 7 output mode register (P7OMD). When the bp1 of the port 7 output mode register (P7OMD) is set to “1” for the special function data output, and “0” to use as the general port.

P75 can be used as output pin of the serial 0 transmission data and UART0 transmission data, as well. When SC0SBOS flag of the serial interface 0 mode register 1 (SC0MD1) is set to “1”, P75 is the serial data output pin. Push-pull output or Nch open-drain output can be selected by setting the port 7 Nch open-drain control register (P7ODC).

P76 can be used as input pin of the serial 0 reception data and UART0 reception data, as well.

P77 can be used as the serial 0 clock input pin, as well. When the SC0SBTS flag of the serial interface 0 mode register 1 (SC0MD1) is set to “1”, P77 is the serial clock output pin. Push-pull output or Nch open-drain output can be selected by setting the port 7 Nch open-drain control register (P7ODC).

P70 can be used as the key interrupt input pin, as well.

P71 can be used as the key interrupt input pin, as well.

P72 can be used as the key interrupt input pin, as well.

P73 can be used as the key interrupt input pin, as well.

P74 can be used as the key interrupt input pin, as well.

P75 can be used as the key interrupt input pin, as well.

P76 can be used as the key interrupt input pin, as well.

P77 can be used as the key interrupt input pin, as well.

P70 can be used as the LCD segment output pin, as well. The SEG7 pin selection can be done by setting the bp3 flag (LC2SL3) of the LCD output control register 2 (LCCTR2) to “1”. Port/segment switching can be selected by 2 bits. At segment output, it is forcefully set to input mode and pull-up resistor is disabled.

P71 can be used as the LCD segment output pin, as well. The SEG6 pin selection can be done by setting the bp2 flag (LC2SL2) of the LCD output control register 2 (LCCTR2) to “1”. Port/segment switching can be selected by 2 bits. At segment output, it is forcefully set to input mode and pull-up resistor is disabled.

P72 can be used as the LCD segment output pin, as well. The SEG5 pin selection can be done by setting the bp1 flag (LC2SL1) of the LCD output control register 2 (LCCTR2) to “1”. Port/segment switching can be selected by 2 bits. At segment output, it is forcefully set to input mode and pull-up resistor is disabled.

P73 can be used as the LCD segment output pin, as well. The SEG4 pin selection can be done by setting the bp0 flag (LC2SL0) of the LCD output control register 2 (LCCTR2) to “1”. Port/segment switching can be selected by 2 bits. At segment output, it is forcefully set to input mode and pull-up resistor is disabled.

P74 can be used as the LCD segment output pin, as well. The SEG3 pin selection can be done by setting the bp7 flag (LC1SL3) of the LCD output control register 2 (LCCTR2) to “1”. Port/segment switching can be selected by 2 bits. At segment output, it is forcefully set to input mode and pull-up resistor is disabled.

P75 can be used as the LCD segment output pin, as well. The SEG2 pin selection can be done by setting the bp6 flag (LC1SL2) of the LCD output control register 2 (LCCTR2) to “1”. Port/segment switching can be selected by 2 bits. At segment output, it is forcefully set to input mode and pull-up resistor is disabled.

P76 can be used as the LCD segment output pin, as well. The SEG1 pin selection can be done by setting the bp5 flag (LC1SL1) of the LCD output control register 2 (LCCTR2) to “1”. Port/segment switching can be selected by 2 bits. At segment output, it is forcefully set to input mode and pull-up resistor is disabled.

P77 can be used as the LCD segment output pin, as well. The SEG0 pin selection can be done by setting the bp4 flag (LC1SL0) of the LCD output control register 2 (LCCTR2) to “1”. Port/segment switching can be selected by 2 bits. At segment output, it is forcefully set to input mode and pull-up resistor is disabled.

P76 can be used as the IIC4 transmission/reception data I/O pin, as well. When SELI2C flag of the serial interface 4 addressing register 1 is set to “1”, P76 is the serial data I/O pin. Push-pull output or Nch open-drain output can be selected by setting the port 7 Nch open-drain control register (P7ODC).

P77 can be used as the serial 4 clock I/O pin, as well. When SELI2C flag of the serial interface 4 addressing register 1 (SC4AD1) is set to “1”, P77 is the serial clock I/O pin. Push-pull output or Nch open-drain output can be selected by setting the port 7 Nch open-drain control register (P7ODC).

Serial 0 I/O pin can be selected as PA0 to PA2, or P75 to P77 by setting the serial selection register (SCSEL). When the SC0SL flag of the serial selection register (SCSEL) is set to “0”, PA0 to PA2 are selected, to “1”, P75 to P77 are selected. For serial 4 I/O pin, when the serial selection register (SCSEL) is “0” for P10, P11, “1” for P76, P77.

4.6.2 Registers

Table:4.6.1 shows the registers that control the port 7.

Table:4.6.1 Port 7 Control Register

Registers	Address	R/W	Function	Page
P7OUT	0x03F17	R/W	Port 7output register	IV-51
P7IN	0x03F27	R	Port 7 input register	IV-52
P7DIR	0x03F37	R/W	Port 7 direction control register	IV-52
P7PLUD	0x03F47	R/W	Port 7 pull-up/pull-down resistor control register	IV-53
P7OMD	0x03F3C	R/W	Port 7 output mode register	IV-53
P7ODC	0x03F1D	R/W	Port 7 Nch open-drain control register	IV-54
SELUD	0x03F4B	R/W	Pull-up/pull-down resistor control register	IV-54
SCSEL	0x03F90	R/W	Serial I/O pin switching control register	IV-55
LCCTR1	0x03FC2	R/W	LCD output control register 1	IV-56
LCCTR2	0x03FC3	R/W	LCD output control register 2	IV-57

R/W:Readable/Writable

■ Port 7 output register (P7OUT:0x03F17)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	P7OUT7	P7OUT6	P7OUT5	P7OUT4	P7OUT3	P7OUT2	P7OUT1	P7OUT0
At reset	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0	P7OUT7 P7OUT6 P7OUT5 P7OUT4 P7OUT3 P7OUT2 P7OUT1 P7OUT0	Output data 0:Output L(VSS level) 1:Output H(VDD level)

■ Port 7 Input Register (P7IN:0x03F27)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	P7IN7	P7IN6	P7IN5	P7IN4	P7IN3	P7IN2	P7IN1	P7IN0
At reset	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

bp	Flag	Description
7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0	P7IN7 P7IN6 P7IN5 P7IN4 P7IN3 P7IN2 P7IN1 P7IN0	Input data 0:Pin is L(VSS level) 1:Pin is H(VDD level)

■ Port 7 Direction Control Register (P7DIR:0x03F37)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	P7DIR7	P7DIR6	P7DIR5	P7DIR4	P7DIR3	P7DIR2	P7DIR1	P7DIR0
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0	P7DIR7 P7DIR6 P7DIR5 P7DIR4 P7DIR3 P7DIR2 P7DIR1 P7DIR0	I/O mode selection 0:Input mode 1:Output mode

■ Port 7 Pull-up/pull-down Resistor Control Register (P7PLUD:0x03F47)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	P7PLUD7	P7PLUD6	P7PLUD5	P7PLUD4	P7PLUD3	P7PLUD2	P7PLUD1	P7PLUD0
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0	P7PLUD7 P7PLUD6 P7PLUD5 P7PLUD4 P7PLUD3 P7PLUD2 P7PLUD1 P7PLUD0	Pull-up/pull-down resistor selection 0:Not added 1:Added

■ Port 7 Output Mode Register (P7OMD:0x03F3C)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	-	-	-	-	-	P7OMD1	P7OMD0
At reset	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	0
Access	-	-	-	-	-	-	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7-2	-	-
1	P7OMD1	I/O port, TM3IO selection 0:I/O port 1:TM3IO
0	P7OMD0	I/O port, TM1IO selection 0:I/O port 1:TM1IO

■ Port 7 Nch Open-drain Control Register (P7ODC:0x03F1D)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	P77ODC	P76ODC	P75ODC	-	-	-	-	-
At reset	0	0	0	-	-	-	-	-
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	-	-	-	-	-

bp	Flag	Description
7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0	P7PLUD7 P7PLUD6 P7PLUD5 - - - - -	Nch open-drain output selection 0:Push-pull output 1:Nch open-drain output

■ Pull-up/pull-down Resistor Selection Register (SELUD:0x03F4B)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	-	-	PADWN	P3DWN	P9DWN	P7DWN	P1DWN
At reset	-	-	-	1	1	1	0	0
Access	-	-	-	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7	-	-
6	-	-
5	-	-
4	PADWN	Port A pull-up/pull-down selection 0:Pull-up 1:Pull-down
3	P3DWN	Port 3 pull-up/pull-down selection 0:Pull-up 1:Pull-down
2	P9DWN	Port 9 pull-up/pull-down selection 0:Pull-up 1:Pull-down
1	P7DWN	Port 7 pull-up/pull-down selection 0:Pull-up 1:Pull-down
0	P1DWN	Port 1 pull-up/pull-down selection 0:Pull-up 1:Pull-down

■ Serial I/O Pin Switching Control Register (SCSEL:0x03F90)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TMPSC12	TMPSC11	TMPSC02	TMPSC01	SC4SL	-	SC1SL	SC0SL
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7-6	TMPSC12 TMPSC11	Serial 1 used timer 2 output dividing switching selection X0:Timer 2 output 01:Timer 2 output/2 11:Timer 2 output/8
5-4	TMPSC02 TMPSC01	Serial 0 used timer 2 output dividing switching selection X0:Timer 2 output 01:Timer 2 output/2 11:Timer 2 output/8
3	SC4SL	Serial 4 I/O pin switching selection 0:P10, P11 1:P76, P77
2	-	-
1	SC1SL	Serial 1 I/O pin switching selection 0:P15 to P17 1:PA4 to PA6
0	SC0SL	Serial 0 I/O pin switching selection 0:PA0 to PA2 1:P75 to P77

■ LCD Output Control Register 1 (LCCTR1:X'3FC2', R/W)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	LC1SL3	LC1SL2	LC1SL1	LC1SL0	COMSL3	COMSL2	COMSL1	COMSL0
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7	LC1SL3	SEG3/P74 selection 0:P74 1:SEG3
6	LC1SL2	SEG2/P75 selection 0:P75 1:SEG2
5	LC1SL1	SEG1/P76 selection 0:P76 1:SEG1
4	LC1SL0	SEG0/P77 selection 0:P77 1:SEG0
3	COMSL3	COM3/P33 selection 0:P33 1:COM3
2	COMSL2	COM2/P32 selection 0:P32 1:COM2
1	COMSL1	COM1/P31 selection 0:P31 1:COM1
0	COMSL0	COM0/P30 selection 0:P30 1:COM0

■ LCD Output Control Register 2 (LCCTR2:X'3FC3', R/W)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	LC2SL7	LC2SL6	LC2SL5	LC2SL4	LC2SL3	LC2SL2	LC2SL1	LC2SL0
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7	LC2SL7	SEG11/P14 selection 0:P14 1:SEG11
6	LC2SL6	SEG10/P15 selection 0:P15 1:SEG10
5	LC2SL5	SEG9/P16 selection 0:P16 1:SEG9
4	LC2SL4	SEG8/P17 selection 0:P17 1:SEG8
3	LC2SL3	SEG7/P70 selection 0:P70 1:SEG7
2	LC2SL2	SEG6/P71 selection 0:P71 1:SEG6
1	LC2SL1	SEG5/P72 selection 0:P72 1:SEG5
0	LC2SL0	SEG4/P73 selection 0:P73 1:SEG4

4.6.3 Block Diagram

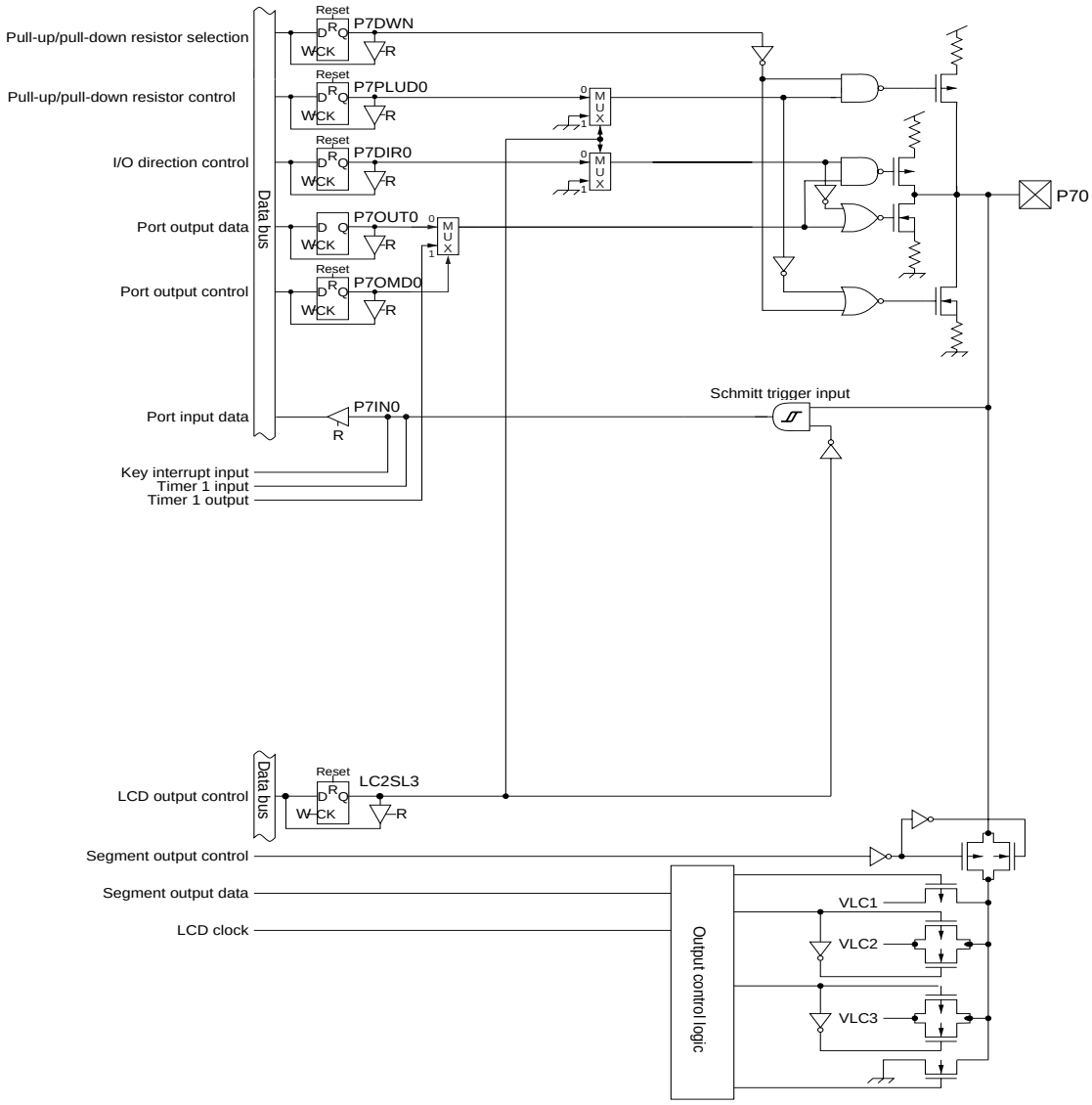


Figure:4.6.1 Block Diagram (P70)

* At segment output, port I/O direction control is forcefully set to input mode, pull-up resistor is disabled and segment output is executed by the segment output control.

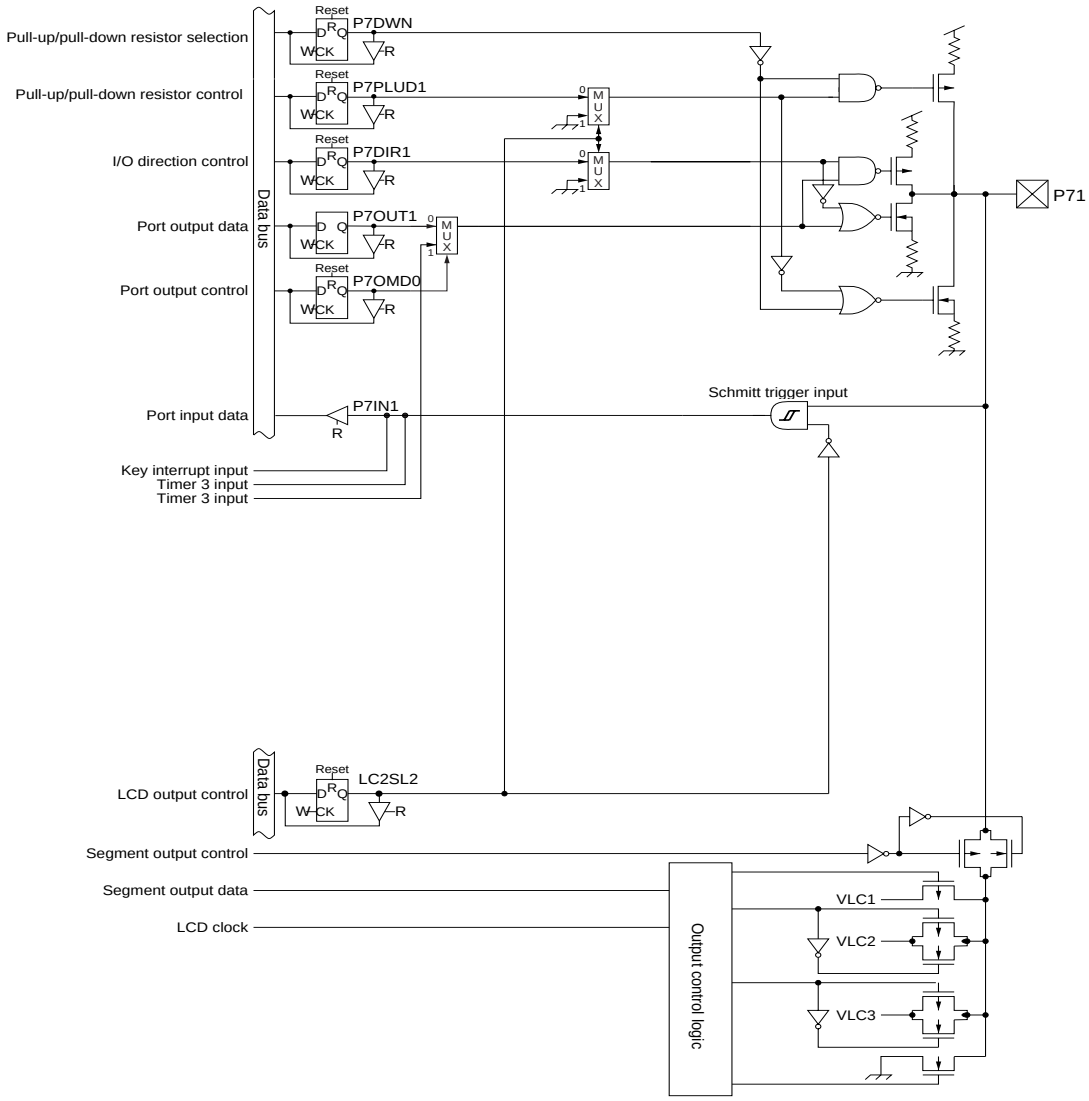


Figure:4.6.2 Block Diagram (P71)

* At segment output, port I/O direction control is forcefully set to input mode, pull-up resistor is disabled and segment output is executed by the segment output control.

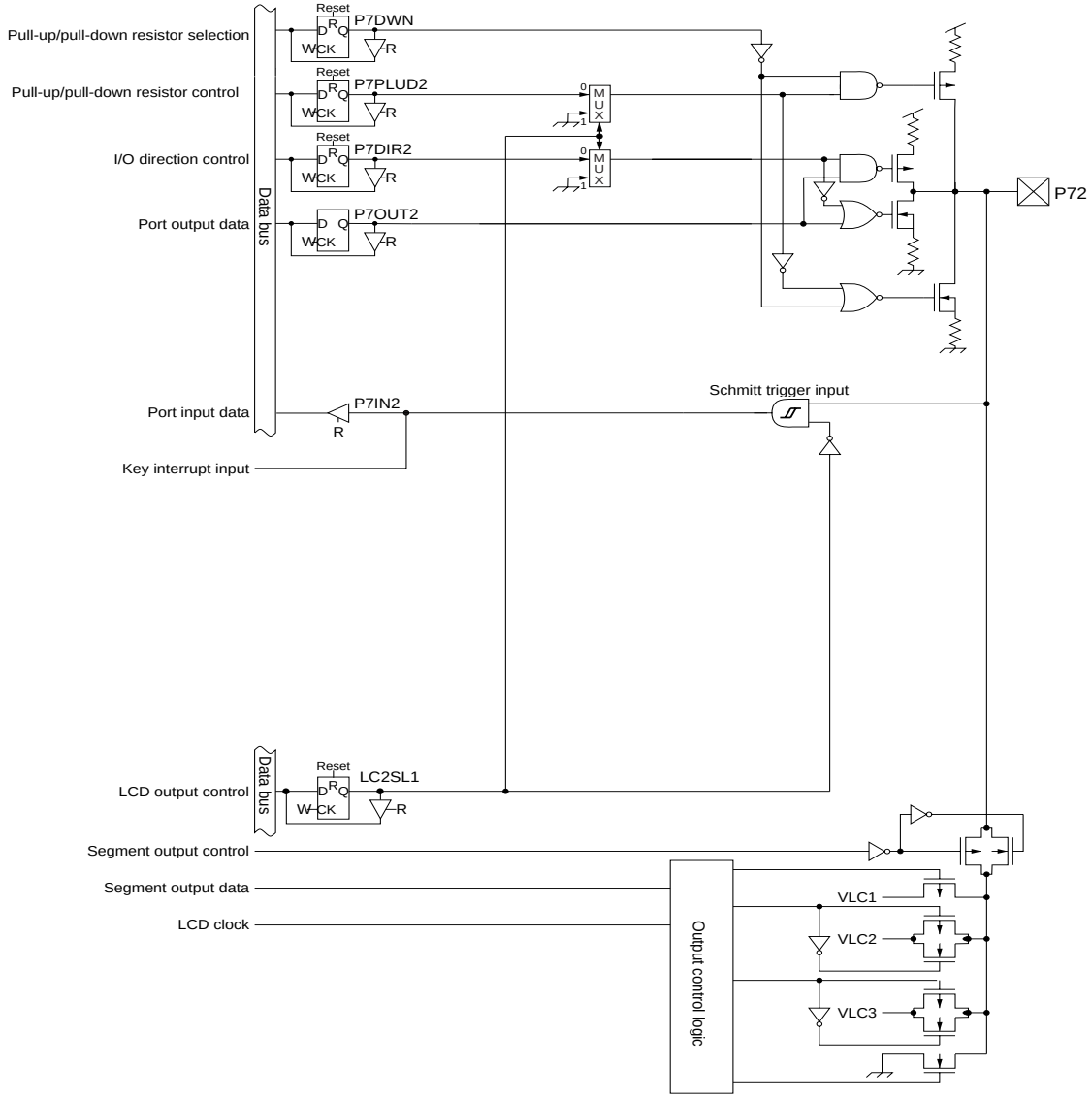


Figure:4.6.3 Block Diagram (P72)

* At segment output, port I/O direction control is forcefully set to input mode, pull-up resistor is disabled and segment output is executed by the segment output control.

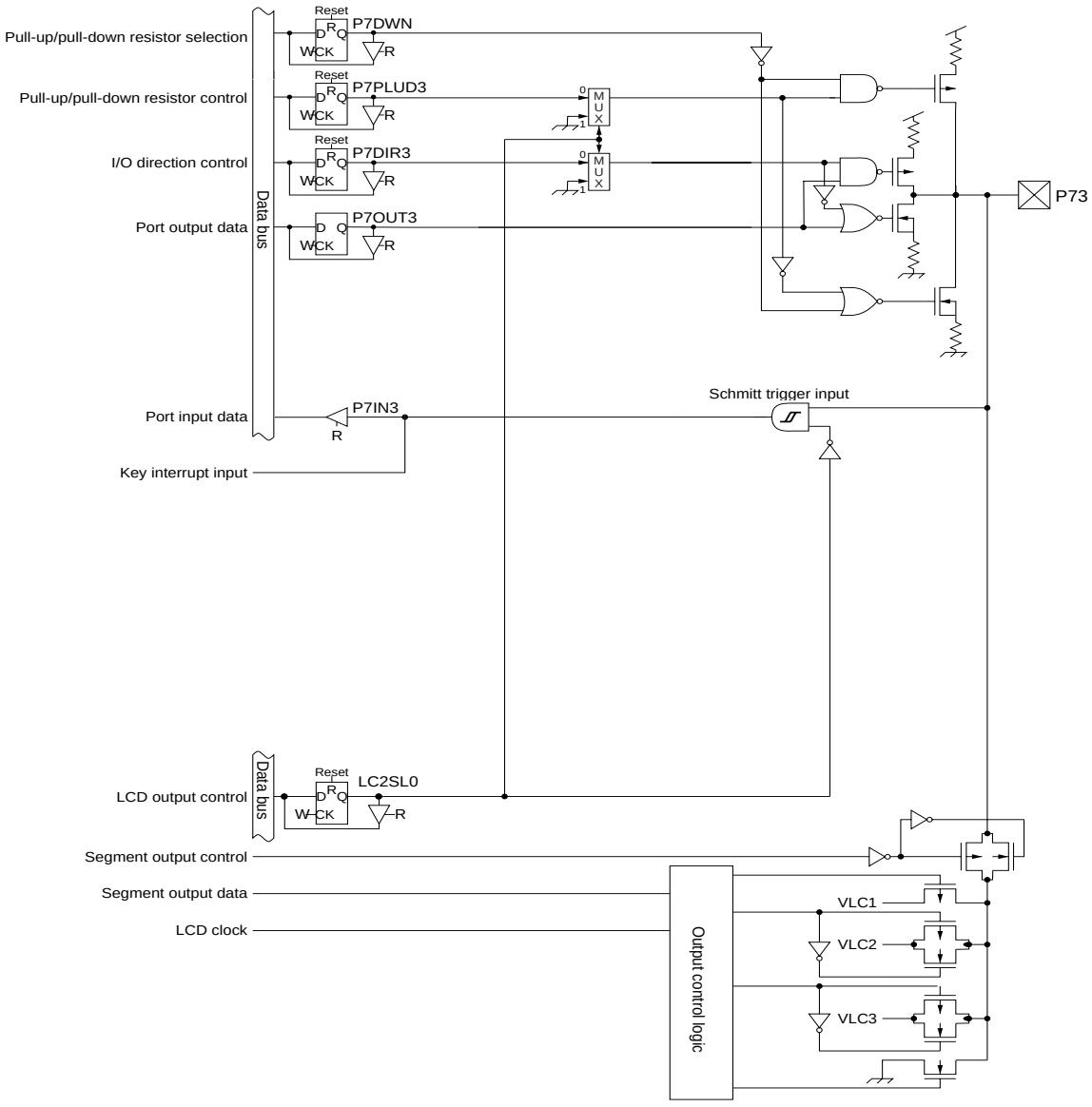


Figure:4.6.4 Block Diagram (P73)

* At segment output, port I/O direction control is forcefully set to input mode, pull-up resistor is disabled and segment output is executed by the segment output control.

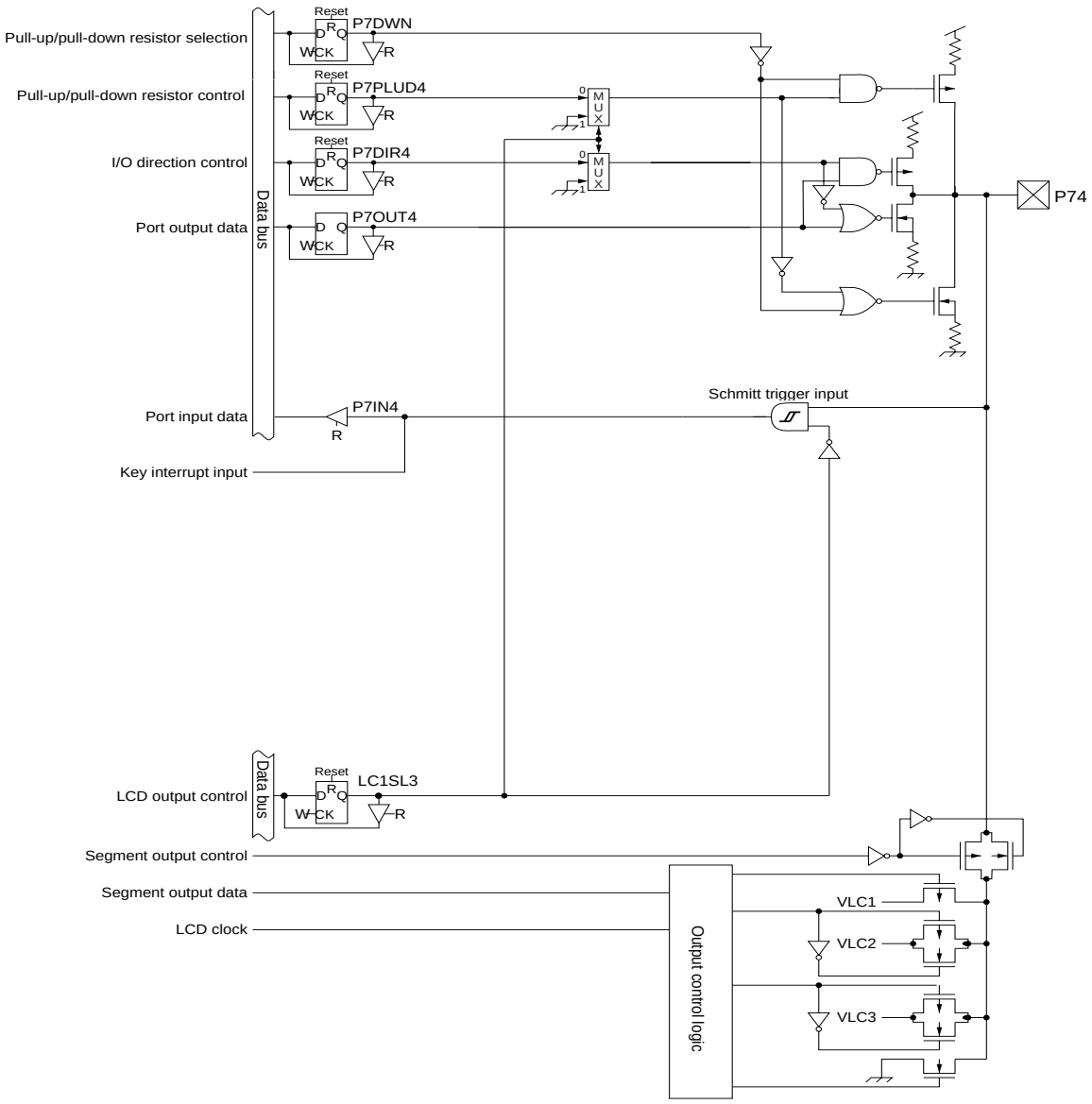


Figure:4.6.5 Block Diagram (P74)

* At segment output, port I/O direction control is forcefully set to input mode, pull-up resistor is disabled and segment output is executed by the segment output control.

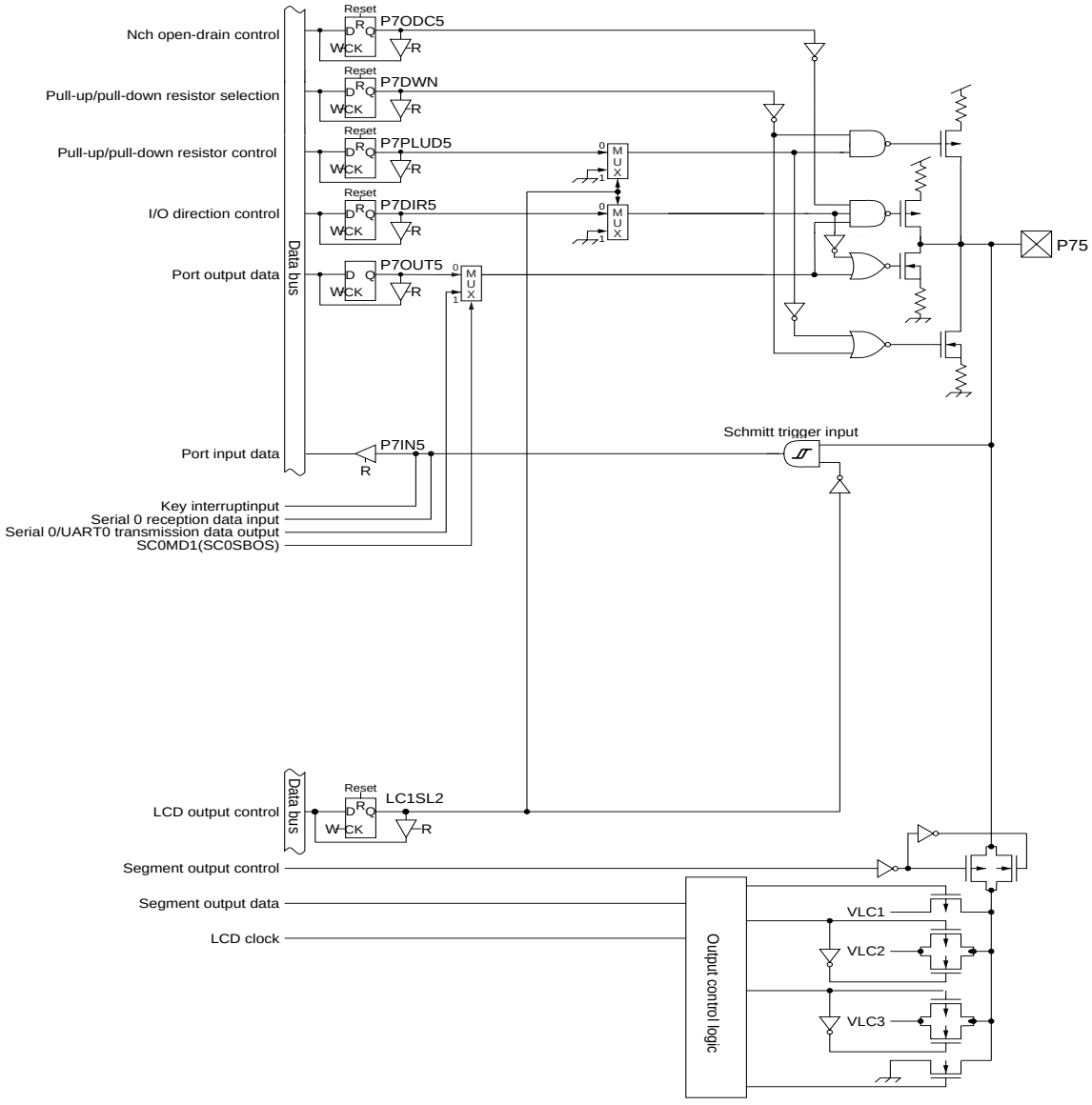


Figure:4.6.6 Block Diagram (P75)

* At segment output, port I/O direction control is forcefully set to input mode, pull-up resistor is disabled and segment output is executed by the segment output control.

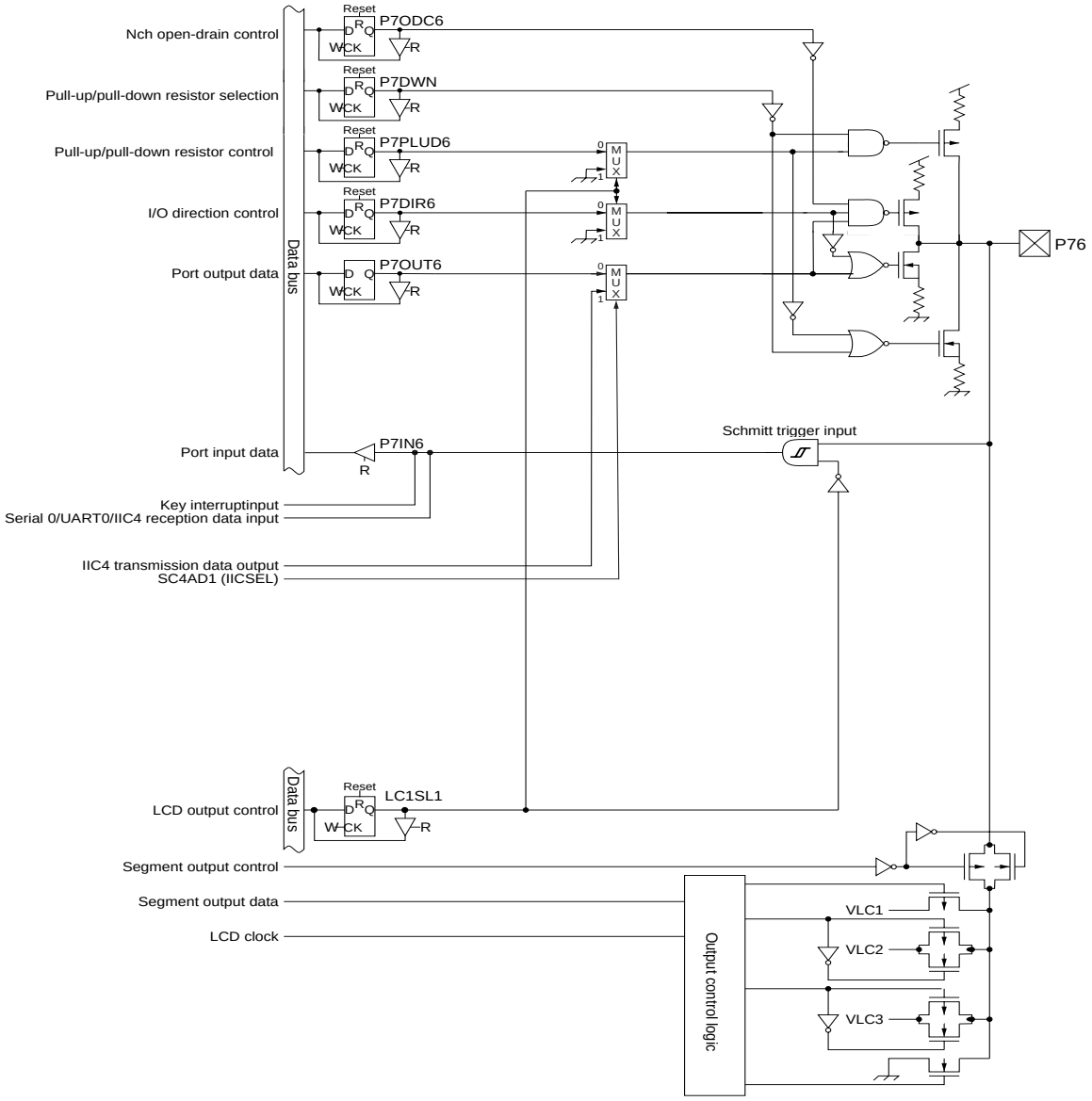


Figure:4.6.7 Block Diagram (P76)

* At segment output, port I/O direction control is forcefully set to input mode, pull-up resistor is disabled and segment output is executed by the segment output control.

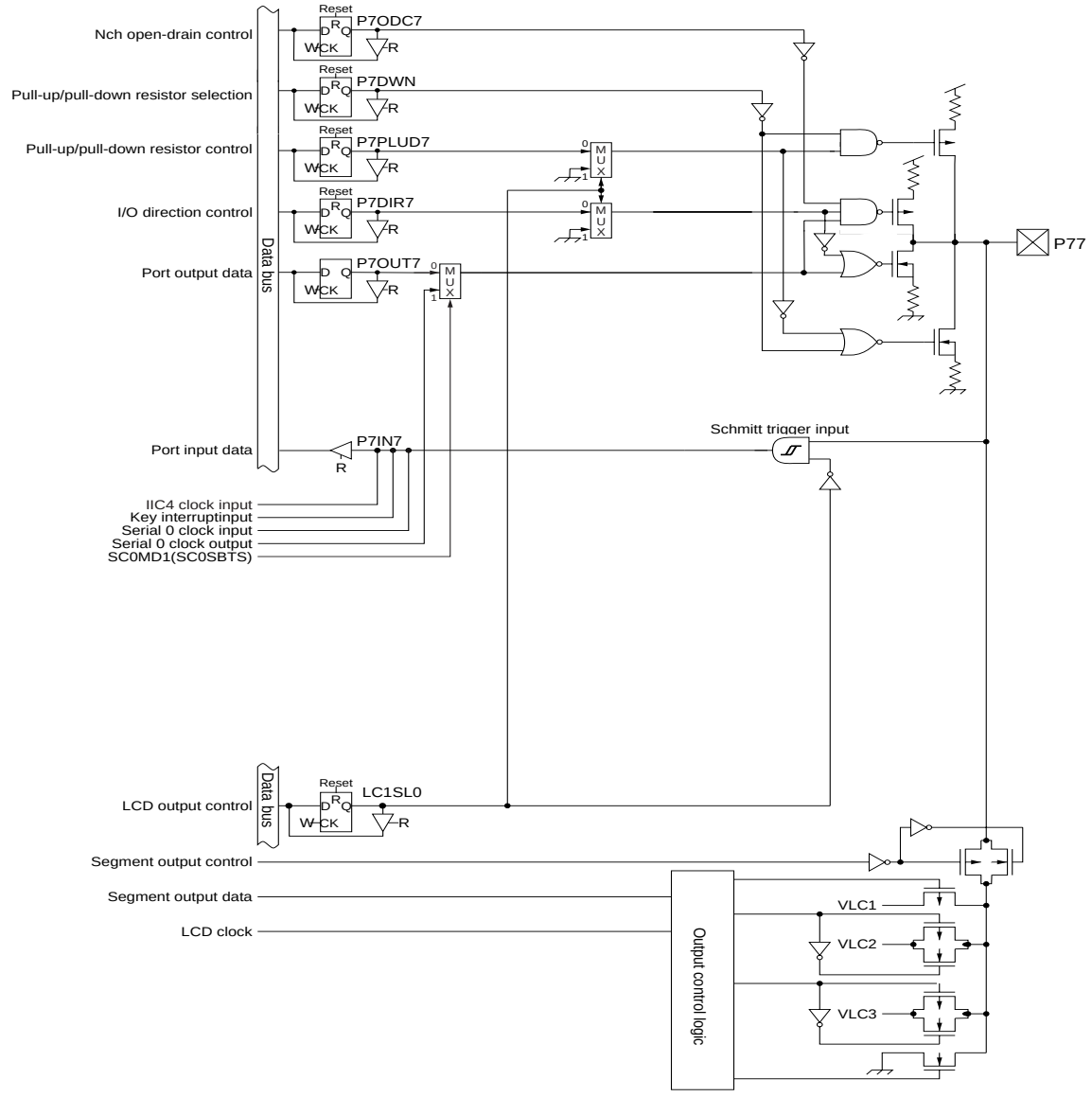


Figure:4.6.8 Block Diagram (P77)

* At segment output, port I/O direction control is forcefully set to input mode, pull-up resistor is disabled and segment output is executed by the segment output control.

4.7 Port 9

4.7.1 Description

■ General Port Setup

To output data to pin, set the control flag of the port 9 direction control register (P9DIR) to “1” and write data to the port 9 output register (P9OUT).

To read input data of pin, set the control flag of the port 9 direction control register (P9DIR) to “0” and read the value of the port 9 input register (P9IN).

Each bit can be set individually to either an input or output by the port 9 direction control register (P9DIR). The control flag of the port 9 direction control register (P9DIR) is set to “1” for ouput mode, and “0” for input mode.

Each bit can be set individually if pull-up/pull-down resistor is added or not, by the port 9 pull-up/pull-down resistor control register (P9PLU). Set the control flag of the port 9 pull-up/pull-down resistor control register (P9PLU) to “1” to add pull-up resistor.

Pull-up resistor or pull-down resistor can be added to port 9 by setting the bp2 flag of the pull-up/pull-down resistor selection resister (SELUD).

■ Special Function Pin Setup

P90 can be used as low-speed oscillation, as well. When the XISEL flag of the low-speed oscillation selection register (XSEL) is set to “1”, P90 can be used as low-speed oscillation.

4.7.2 Registers

Table:4.7.1 shows the registers that control the port 9.

Table:4.7.1 Port 9 Control Register

Registers	Address	R/W	Function	Page
P9OUT	0x03F19	R/W	Port 9 output register	IV-67
P9IN	0x03F29	R	Port 9 input register	IV-68
P9DIR	0x03F39	R/W	Port 9 direction control register	IV-68
P9PLUD	0x03F49	R/W	Port 9 pull-up/pull-down resistor control register	IV-69
SELUD	0x03F4B	R/W	Pull-up/pull-down resistor selection register	IV-69
XSEL	0x03F4C	R/W	Port 9 oscillation switching register	IV-70

R/W:Readable/Writable

■ Port 9 output register (P9OUT:0x03F19)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	P9OUT0
At reset	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	x
Access	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0	- - - - - - - P9OUT0	Output data 0:Output L(VSS level) 1:Output H(VDD level)

■ Port 9 Input Register (P9IN:0x03F29)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	P9IN0
At reset	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0
Access	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	R//W

bp	Flag	Description
7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0	- - - - - - - P9IN0	Input data 0:Pin is L(VSS level) 1:Pin is H(VDD level)

■ Port 9 Direction Control Register (P9DIR:0x03F39)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	P9DIR0
At reset	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0
Access	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0	- - - - - - - P9DIR0	I/O mode selection 0:Input mode 1:Output mode

■ Port 9 Pull-up/pull-down Resistor Control Register (P9PLUD:0x03F49)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	P9PLUD0
At reset	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1
Access	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0	- - - - - - - P9PLUD0	Pull-up/pull-down resistor selection 0:Not added 1:Added

■ Pull-up/pull-down Resistor Selection Register (SELUD:0x03F4B)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	-	-	PADWN	P3DWN	P9DWN	P7DWN	P1DWN
At reset	-	-	-	1	1	1	0	0
Access	-	-	-	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7	-	-
6	-	-
5	-	-
4	PADWN	Port A pull-up/pull-down selection 0:Pull-up 1:Pull-down
3	P3DWN	Port 3 pull-up/pull-down selection 0:Pull-up 1:Pull-down
2	P9DWN	Port 9 pull-up/pull-down selection 0:Pull-up 1:Pull-down
1	P7DWN	Port 7 pull-up/pull-down selection 0:Pull-up 1:Pull-down
0	P1DWN	Port 1 pull-up/pull-down selection 0:Pull-up 1:Pull-down

■ Port 9 Oscillation Switching Register (XSEL:0x03F4C)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	XSEL
At reset	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0
Access	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7-1	-	-
0	-	XI dual-purpose selection 0:P90 1:low-speed oscillation input XI

4.7.3 Block Diagram

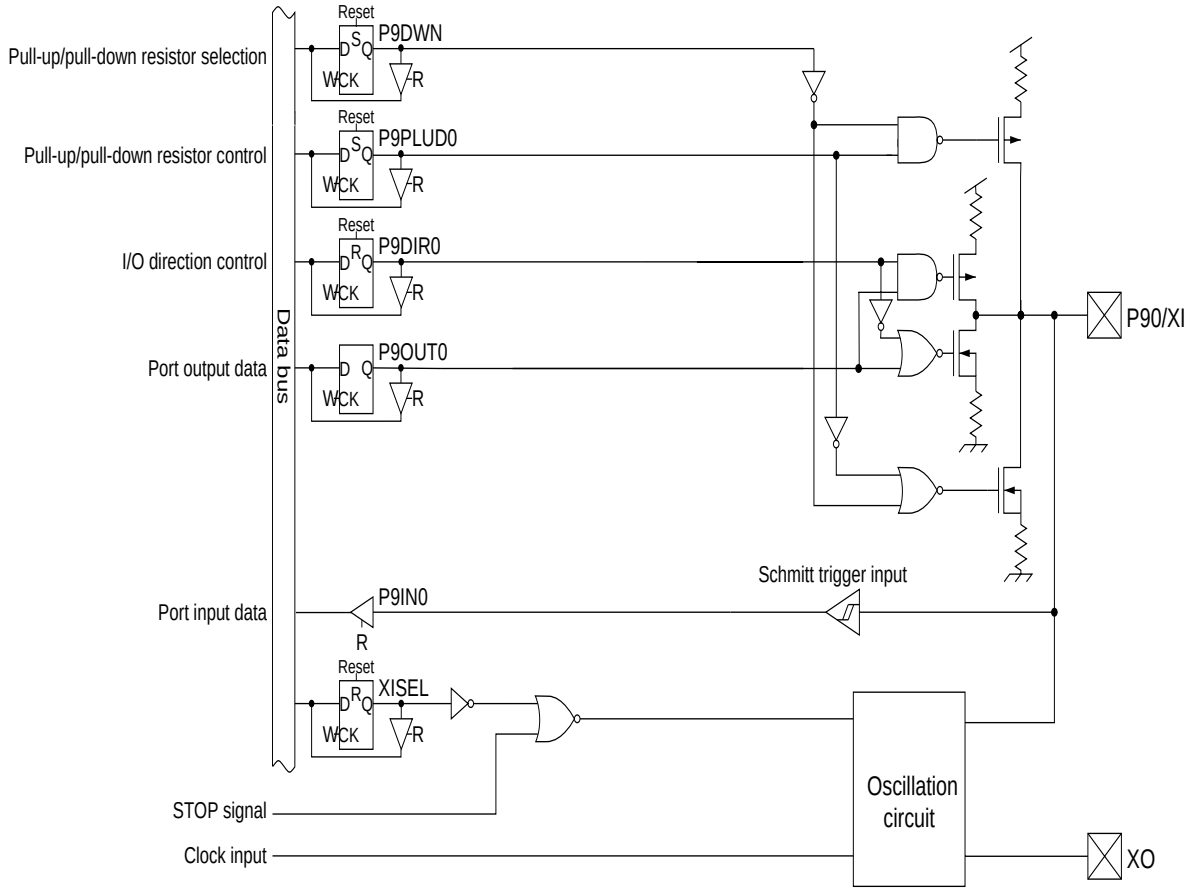


Figure:4.7.1 Block Diagram (P90)

4.8 Port A

4.8.1 Description

■ General Pin Setup

To output data to pin, set the control flag of the port A direction control register (PADIR) to “1” and write data to the port 8 output register (PAOUT).

To read input data of pin, set the control flag of the port A direction control register (PADIR) to “0” and read the value of the port A input register (PAIN).

Each bit can be set individually to either an input or output by the port A direction control register (PADIR). The control flag of the port A direction control register (PADIR) is set to “1” for ouput mode, and “0” for input mode.

Each bit can be set individually if pull-up/pull-down resistor is added or not, by the port A pull-up/pull-down resistor control register (PAPLUD). Set the control flag of the port A pull-up/pull-down resistor control register (PAPLUD) to “1” to add pull-up/pull-down resistor.

The bp4 of the pull-up/pull-down resistor selection register (SELUD) select if pull-up resistor or pull-down resistor is added.

Each bit can be selected individually as input mode by the portA input mode register (PAIMD). The control flag of the portA input mode register (PAIMD) is set to "1" to input the special function data and 1 is read out from the portA input register (PAIN), and "0" to use as the general port.

For PA0, PA2, PA5 and PA6, each bit can be selected individually as Nch open-drain output by the port A Nch open-drain control register (PAODC). When the port A Nch open-drain control register (PAODC) is set to “1” for Nch open-drain output and to “0” for push-pull output.

■ Special Function Pin Setup

PA0 is used as ouput pin of the serial 0 transmission data and UART0 transmission data, as well. When the SC0SBOS flag of the serial interface 0 mode register 1 (SC0MD1) is set to “1”, PA0 is the serial data output pin. Push-pull output or Nch open-drain output can be selected by setting the port A Nch open-drain control register (PAODC).

PA1 can be used as input pin of the serial 0 reception data and UART0 reception data, as well.

PA2 can be used as the serial 0 clock I/O pin, as well. When the SC0SBTS flag of the serial interface 0 mode register 1 (SC0MD1) is set to “1”, PA2 is the serial clock output pin. Push-pull output or Nch open-drain output can be selected by setting the port A Nch open-drain control register (PAODC).

PA4 can be used as input pin of the serial 1 reception data and UART1 reception data, as well.

PA5 is used as ouput pin of the serial 1 transmission data and UART1 transmission data, as well. When the SC1SBOS flag of the serial interface 1 mode register 1 (SC1MD1) is set to “1”, PA5 is the serial data output pin. Push-pull output or Nch open-drain output can be selected by setting the port A Nch open-drain control register (PAODC).

PA6 can be used as the serial 1 clock I/O pin, as well. When the SC1SBOS flag of the serial interface1 mode register 1 (SC1MD1) is set to “1”, PA2 is the serial clock output pin. Push-pull output or Nch open-drain output can be selected by setting the port A Nch open-drain control register (PAODC).

PA0 is used as input pin for analog, as well. Each bit can be set individually as an input by the port A input mode register (PAIMD). When it is used as analog input pin, set the port A input mode register to “1”. Then, the value of the port A input register is read to be “1”.

PA1 is used as input pin for analog, as well. Each bit can be set individually as an input by the port A input mode register (PAIMD). When it is used as analog input pin, set the port A input mode register to “1”. Then, the value of the port A input register is read to be “1”.

PA2 is used as input pin for analog, as well. Each bit can be set individually as an input by the port A input mode register (PAIMD). When it is used as analog input pin, set the port A input mode register to “1”. Then, the value of the port A input register is read to be “1”.

PA3 is used as input pin for analog, as well. Each bit can be set individually as an input by the port A input mode register (PAIMD). When it is used as analog input pin, set the port A input mode register to “1”. Then, the value of the port A input register is read to be “1”.

PA4 is used as input pin for analog, as well. Each bit can be set individually as an input by the port A input mode register (PAIMD). When it is used as analog input pin, set the port A input mode register to “1”. Then, the value of the port A input register is read to be “1”.

PA5 is used as input pin for analog, as well. Each bit can be set individually as an input by the port A input mode register (PAIMD). When it is used as analog input pin, set the port A input mode register to “1”. Then, the value of the port A input register is read to be “1”.

PA6 is used as input pin for analog, as well. Each bit can be set individually as an input by the port A input mode register (PAIMD). When it is used as analog input pin, set the port A input mode register to “1”. Then, the value of the port A input register is read to be “1”.

Serial 0 I/O pin can be selected to either PA0 to PA2 or P75 to P77. When the SC0SL flag of the serial selection register (SCSEL) is set to “0”, PA0 to PA2 are selected, to “1”, P75 to P77 are selected. For serial 1 I/O pin, either P15 to P17 or PA4 to PA6 can be selected by setting the serial selection register (SCSEL). When the SC1SL flag of the serial selection register (SCSEL) is set to “0” for P15 to P17, to “1” for PA4 to PA6.

4.8.2 Registers

Table:4.8.1 shows the registers that control the port A.

Table:4.8.1 Port A Output Control Register

Registers	Address	R/W	Function	Page
PAOUT	0x03F1A	R/W	Port A output register	IV-74
PAIN	0x03F2A	R	Port A input register	IV-75
PADIR	0x03F3A	R/W	Port A direction control register	IV-75
PAPLUD	0x03F4A	R/W	Port A pull-up/pull-down resistor control register	IV-76
SELUD	0x03F4B	R/W	Pull-up/pull-down resistor selection register	IV-77
PAIMD	0x03F4E	R/W	Port A input mode register	IV-76
PAODC	0x03F2D	R/W	Port A Nch open-drain control register	IV-77

R/W:Readable/Writable

■ Port A output register (PAOUT:0x03F1A)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	PAOUT6	PAOUT5	PAOUT4	PAOUT3	PAOUT2	PAOUT1	PAOUT0
At reset	-	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Access	-	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0	- PAOUT6 PAOUT5 PAOUT4 PAOUT3 PAOUT2 PAOUT1 PAOUT0	Output data 0:Output L(VSS level) 1:Output H(VDD level)

■ Port A Input Register (PAIN:0x03F2A)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	PAIN6	PAIN5	PAIN4	PAIN3	PAIN2	PAIN1	PAIN0
At reset	-	1	1	1	x	x	x	x
Access	-	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

bp	Flag	Description
7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0	- PAIN6 PAIN5 PAIN4 PAIN3 PAIN2 PAIN1 PAIN0	Input data 0:Pin is L(VSS level) 1:Pin is H(VDD level)

■ Port A Direction Control Register (PADIR:0x03F3A)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	PADIR6	PADIR5	PADIR4	PADIR3	PADIR2	PADIR1	PADIR0
At reset	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	-	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0	- PADIR6 PADIR5 PADIR4 PADIR3 PADIR2 PADIR1 PADIR0	I/O mode selection 0:Input mode 1:Output mode

■ Port A Pull-up/pull-down Resistor Control Register (PAPLUD:0x03F4A)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	PAPLUD6	PAPLUD5	PAPLUD4	PAPLUD3	PAPLUD2	PAPLUD1	PAPLUD0
At reset	-	1	1	1	0	0	0	0
Access	-	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0	- PAPLUD6 PAPLUD5 PAPLUD4 PAPLUD3 PAPLUD2 PAPLUD1 PAPLUD0	Pull-up/pull-down resistor selection 0:Not added 1:Added

■ Port A Input Mode Register (PAIMD:0x03F4E)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	PAIMD6	PAIMD5	PAIMD4	PAIMD3	PAIMD2	PAIMD1	PAIMD0
At reset	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	-	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0	- PAIMD6 PAIMD5 PAIMD4 PAIMD3 PAIMD2 PAIMD1 PAIMD0	Analog input selection 0:I/O port 1:Analog input

■ Port A Nch Open-drain Control Register (PAODC:0x03F2D)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	PAODC6	PAODC5	-	-	PAODC2	-	PAODC0
At reset	-	0	0	-	-	0	-	0
Access	-	R/W	R/W	-	-	R/W	-	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0	- PAODC6 PAODC5 - - PAODC2 - PAODC0	Nch open-drain output selection 0:Push-pull output 1:Nch open-drain output

■ Pull-up/pull-down Resistor Selection Register (SELUD:0x03F4B)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	-	-	PADWN	P3DWN	P9DWN	P7DWN	P1DWN
At reset	-	-	-	1	1	1	0	0
Access	-	-	-	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7	-	-
6	-	-
5	-	-
4	PADWN	Port A pull-up/pull-down selection 0:Pull-up 1:Pull-down
3	P3DWN	Port 3 pull-up/pull-down selection 0:Pull-up 1:Pull-down
2	P9DWN	Port 9 pull-up/pull-down selection 0:Pull-up 1:Pull-down
1	P7DWN	Port 7 pull-up/pull-down selection 0:Pull-up 1:Pull-down
0	P1DWN	Port 1 pull-up/pull-down selection 0:Pull-up 1:Pull-down

4.8.3 Block Diagram

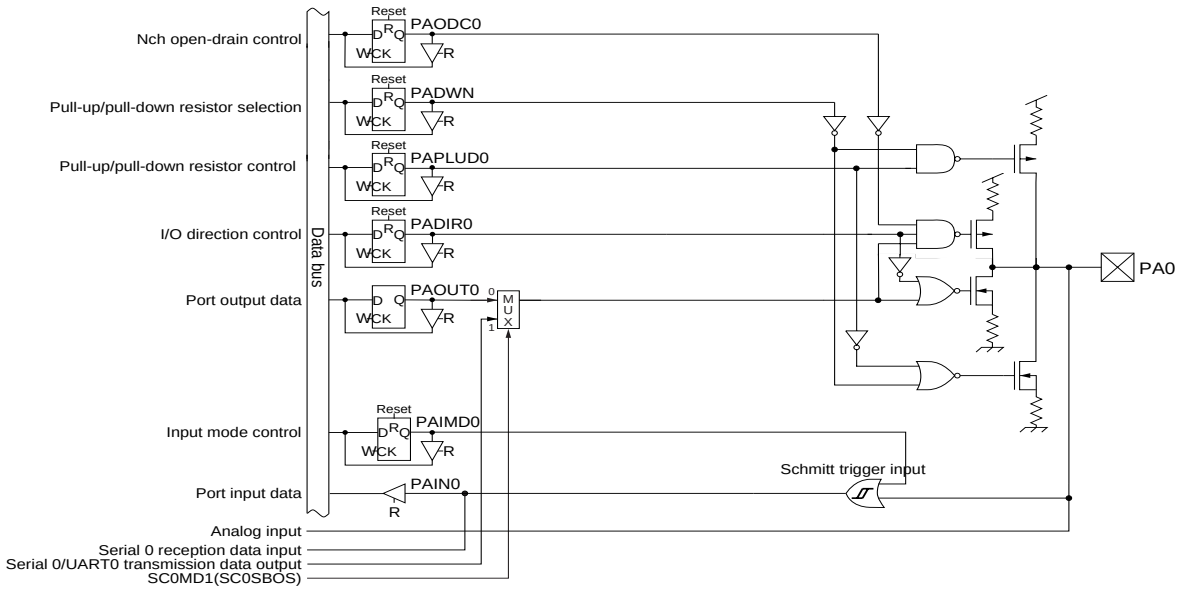


Figure:4.8.1 Block Diagram (PA0)

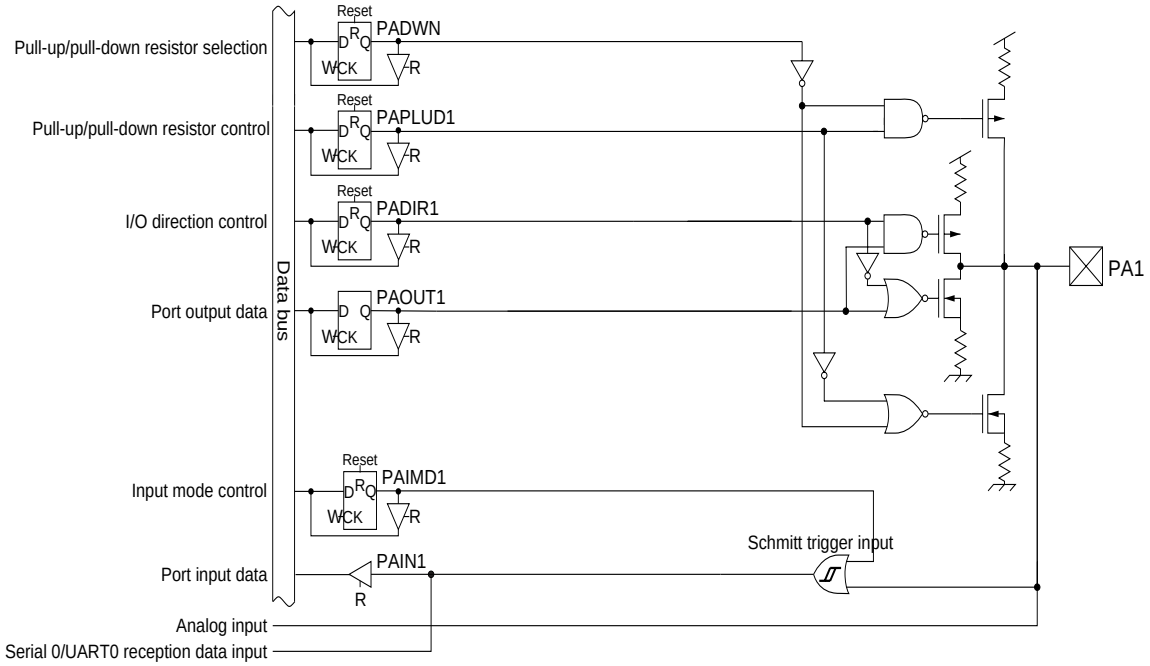


Figure:4.8.2 Block Diagram (PA1)

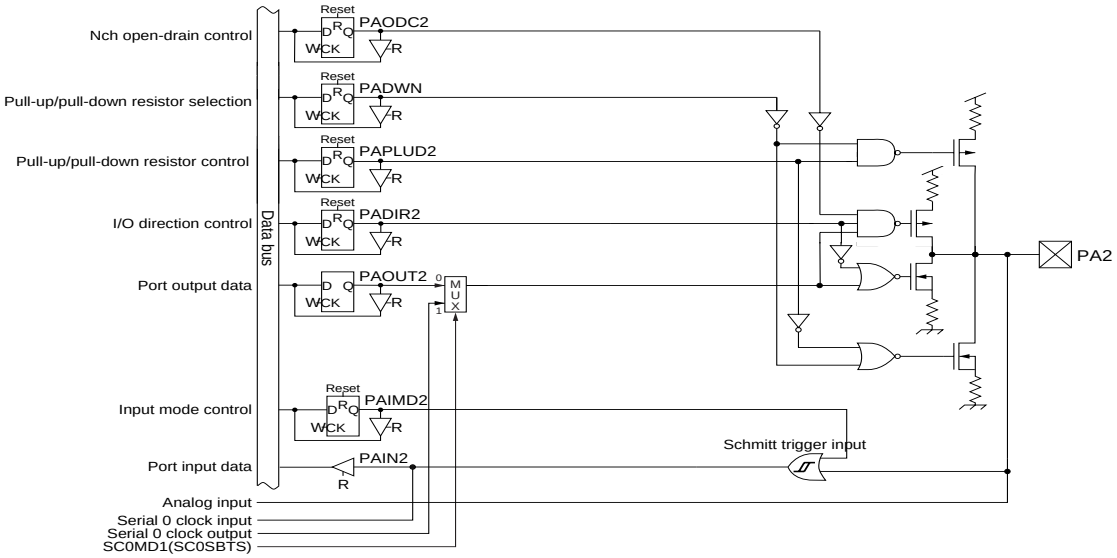


Figure:4.8.3 Block Diagram (PA2)

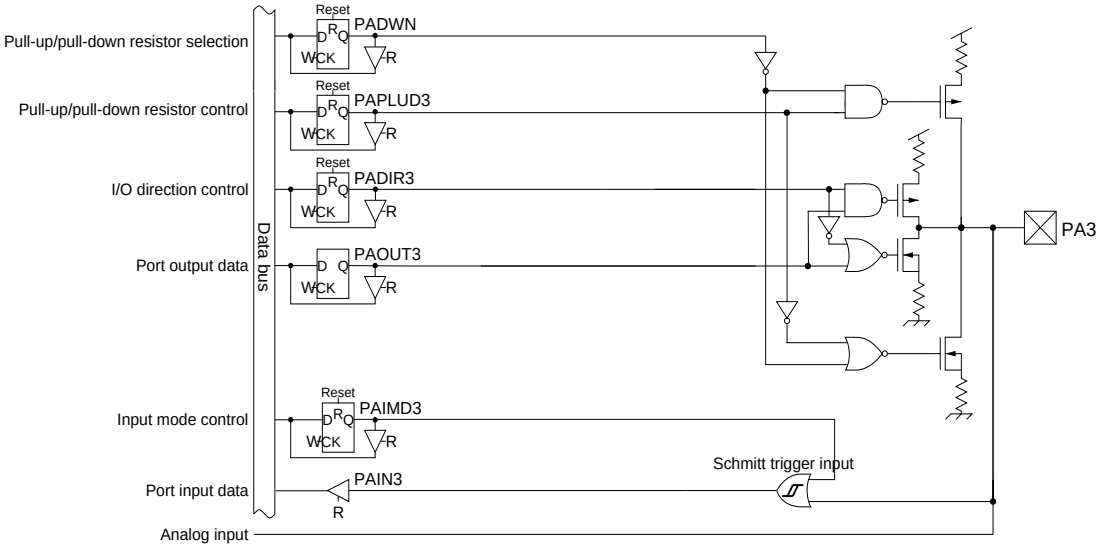


Figure:4.8.4 Block Diagram (PA3)

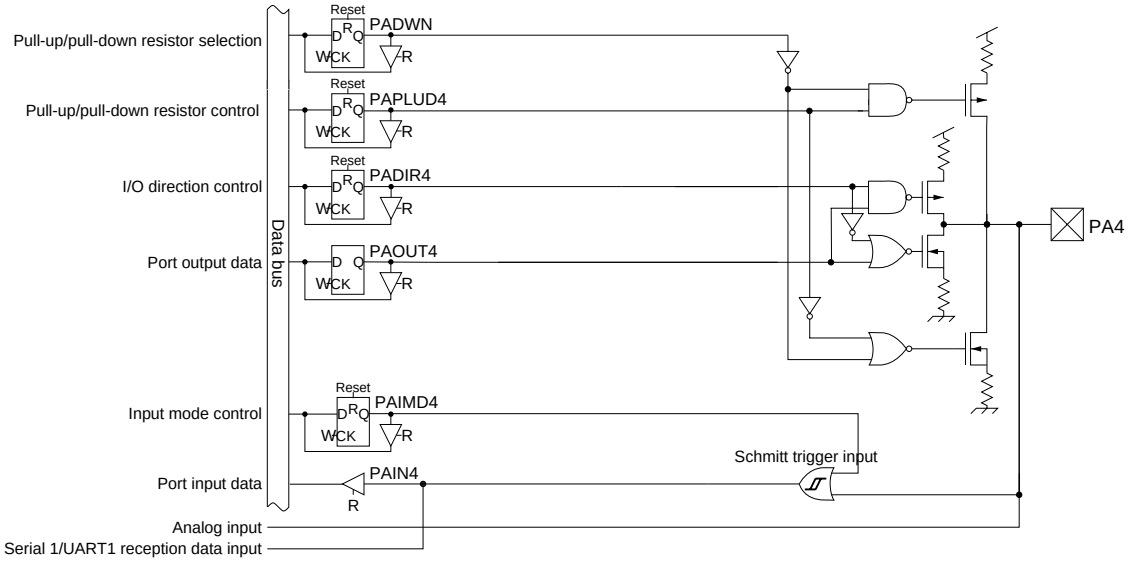


Figure:4.8.5 Block Diagram (PA4)

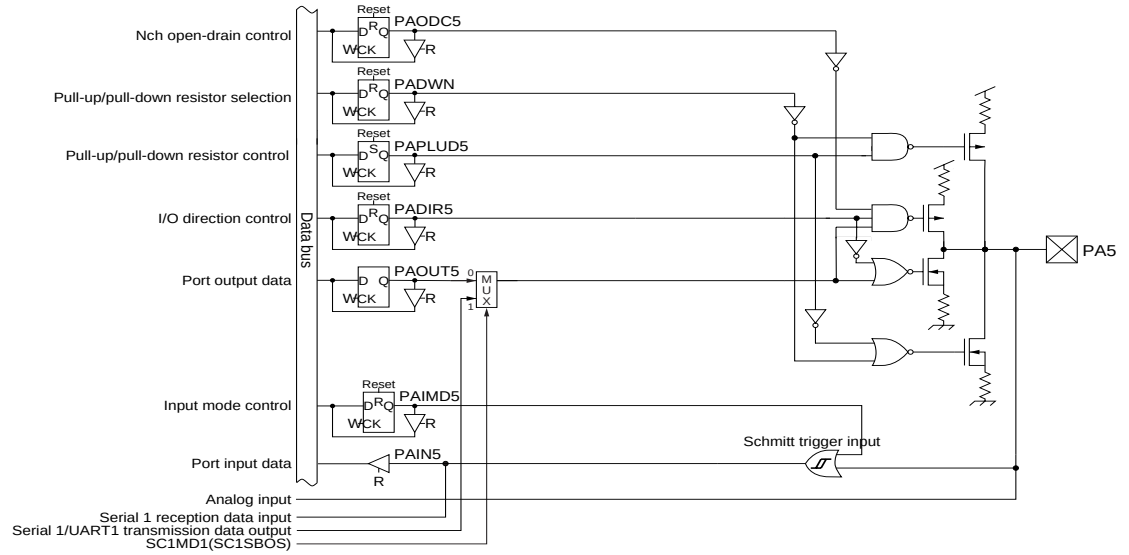


Figure:4.8.6 Block Diagram (PA5)

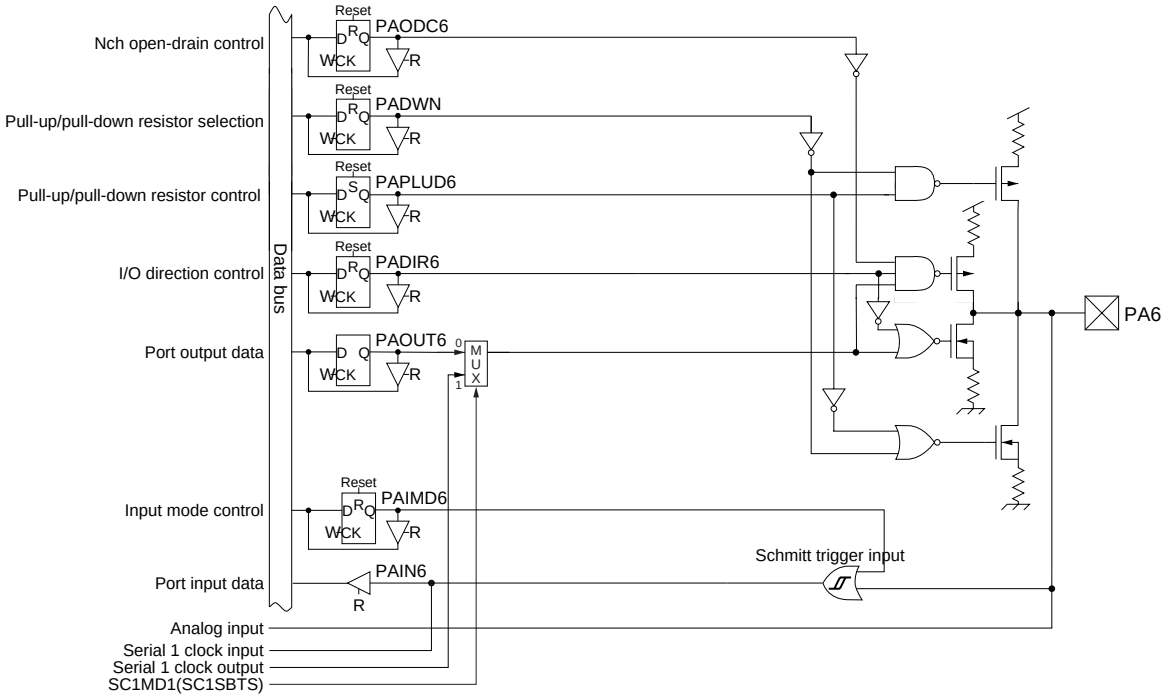


Figure:4.8.7 Block Diagram (PA6)

4.9 Real Time Output Control

P12, P14, P16 have the real time output function that can switch pin output at the falling edge event of the external interrupt 0 pin (P54/IRQ0).
The real time control is the function that can change the timer output signal (PWM output, timer pulse output, remote control career output) synchronized with the external event without the interposition. Switchable output values at the event generation are “0”, “1”, “Hi-impedance (Hi-z)”.

4.9.1 Registers

Table:4.9.1 shows the real time output control registers of port 1.

Table:4.9.1 Real Time Output Control Registers

	Register	Address	R/W	Function	Page
Port 1	P1OUT	0x03F11	R/W	Port 1 output register	IV-7
	P1DIR	0x03F31	R/W	Port 1 direction control register	IV-8
	P1PLUD	0x03F41	R/W	Port 1 pull-up/pull-down resistor control register	IV-9
	P1OMD	0x03F39	R/W	Pull-up/pull-down resistor selection register	IV-9
	P1CNT0	0x03F3D	R/W	Port 1 real time output control register	IV-11

4.9.2 Operation

■ Real Time Output Pin Setup

The real time output pin setup should be done at the port 1 output control register (P1CNTO). Selectable pins are P12, P14, P16 and each of them can be specified by each bit. The output mode should be selected at the port 1 direction control register (P1DIR).
The pin output that is switched at the falling edge event of the external interrupt 0 pin (P54/IRQ0) is “0”, “1”, “Hi-impedance”. Port is input mode at the hi-impedance.

The real time control is the function that changes the timer output signal (PWM output, timer pulse output remote control career output) synchronized with the external event. It is also available to normal port output.
When I/O port (real time control disabled) is selected at the port 1 output control register (P1CNT0), if switching event is generated, the value is not be changed. Set this mode when it is used as the general port.

■ Real Time Output Control Operation

After the setup of the port 1 output control register (P1CNT0), selected function at the port 1 output mode register (P1OMD) is output to the pin until the falling edge is generated at the external interrupt 0 pin (P54/IRQ0). When the falling edge is generated, pin output is switched to the set value. The falling edge event is taken in the edge event hold function that is shown below and the setup value of the port 1 output control register (P1CNT0) is held until that information is cleared.

■ Real Time Output Release (Clearance of edge event hold function)

After the event generation, when the write operation is done to the port 1 output register (P1OUT), the information of the edge event hold function is cleared and all output pins are reset to the output data before the event generation. The event is generated again, it is switched to the setup value of the port 1 output control register (P1CNT0). When the real time control is canceled, set the port 1 output control register (P1CNT0) to I/O port (real time control disabled).

Regardless of the setup at the external interrupt 0 control register (IRQ0ICR), valid edge of IRQ0 is only the falling edge.

When the real time output control function is used, writing operation should be done to the port 1 output register (P1OUT) in advance and clear the information of the edge event hold function.

■ Timing of Real Time Output Control

P1CNT0 setvalue:”0” (Low) output

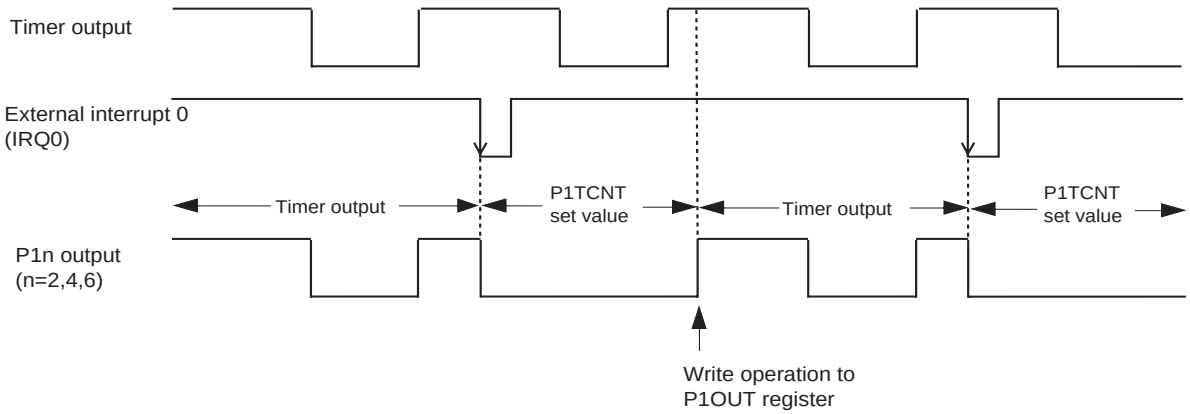


Figure:4.9.1 Timing of Real Time Output Control

Chapter 5 8-bit Timers

5

5.1 Overview

This LSI contains one general purpose 8-bit timers (Timer 0) and three 8-bit timers combined baud rate timers (Timer 1, Timer 2, Timer 3). Timer 0 and timer 1 or timer 2 and timer 3 can be used as 16-bit timer with cascade connection. In a cascade connection, timer o and timer 2 form the “timer 0”, or the lower 8 bits of 16-bit counter, and timer 1 and timer 3 form the “timer 1”, or the upper 8 bits.

8-bit timer contains two prescalers which can use at the same time. Each prescaler counts fosc, fs as the base clock. Configurations of hard ware are shown below.

Prescaler 0 (fosc base) 7 bits Prescaler

Prescaler 1 (fs base) 3 bits Prescaler

Prescaler 0 outputs fosc/4, fosc/16, fosc/32, fosc/64, fosc/128.

Prescaler 1 outputs fs/2, fs/4, fs/8.

Fosc or fs can be selected as the clock source for each timer by using the prescaler.

5.1.1 Functions

Table:5.1.1 shows functions that can be used with each timer.

Table:5.1.1 Timer Functions

	Timer 0 (8-bit)	Timer 1 (8-bit)	Timer 2 (8-bit)	Timer 3 (8-bit)
Interrupt source	TM0IRQ	TM1IRQ	TM2IRQ	TM3IRQ
Timer operation	O	O	O	O
Event count	TM0IO input (P14)	TM1IO input (P70)	TM2IO input (P16)	TM3IO input (P71)
Timer pulse output	TM0IO output (P14)	TM1IO output (P70)	TM2IO output (P16)	TM3IO output (P71)
PWM output	TM0IO output pin (P14)	-	TM2IO output pin (P16)	-
Additional pulse method PWM output	O	-	O	-
Timer output to large current pin	TM0OA output pin (P50I	-	TM2OA output pin (P52)	-
Serial transfer clock output	-	Serial 0	Serial 0, 2	Serial 2
Pulse width measurement	External interrupt 0 (P54/IRQ0)	-	External interrupt 2 (P56/IRQ2)	-
Cascade connection	O		O	
Clock source	fosc fosc/4 fosc/16 fosc/32 fosc/64 fs/2 fs/4 fx TM0IO input	fosc fosc/4 fosc/16 fosc/64 fosc/128 fs/2 fs/8 fx TM1IO input	fosc fosc/4 fosc/16 fosc/32 fosc/64 fs/2 fs/4 fx TM2IO input	fosc fosc/4 fosc/16 fosc/64 fosc/128 fs/2 fs/8 fx TM3IO input

fosc:Machine clock (High frequency oscillation)
fx:Machine clock (Low frequency oscillation)
fs:System clock [Chapter 2. 2.5 Clock Switching]
-When timer 3 is used as a baud rate timer for serial function, it cannot be uses as a general timer.
-Pulse width measurement function is not available at cascade connection (16-bit counter).
-At cascade connection (16-bit counter), when the clock source is fx and TMnIO input is selected, set the synchronous fx and synchronous TMnIO input.
This function is not available when clock source is fx and TMnIO input is selected at cascade connection.

5.1.2 Block Diagram

■ Prescaler Block Diagram

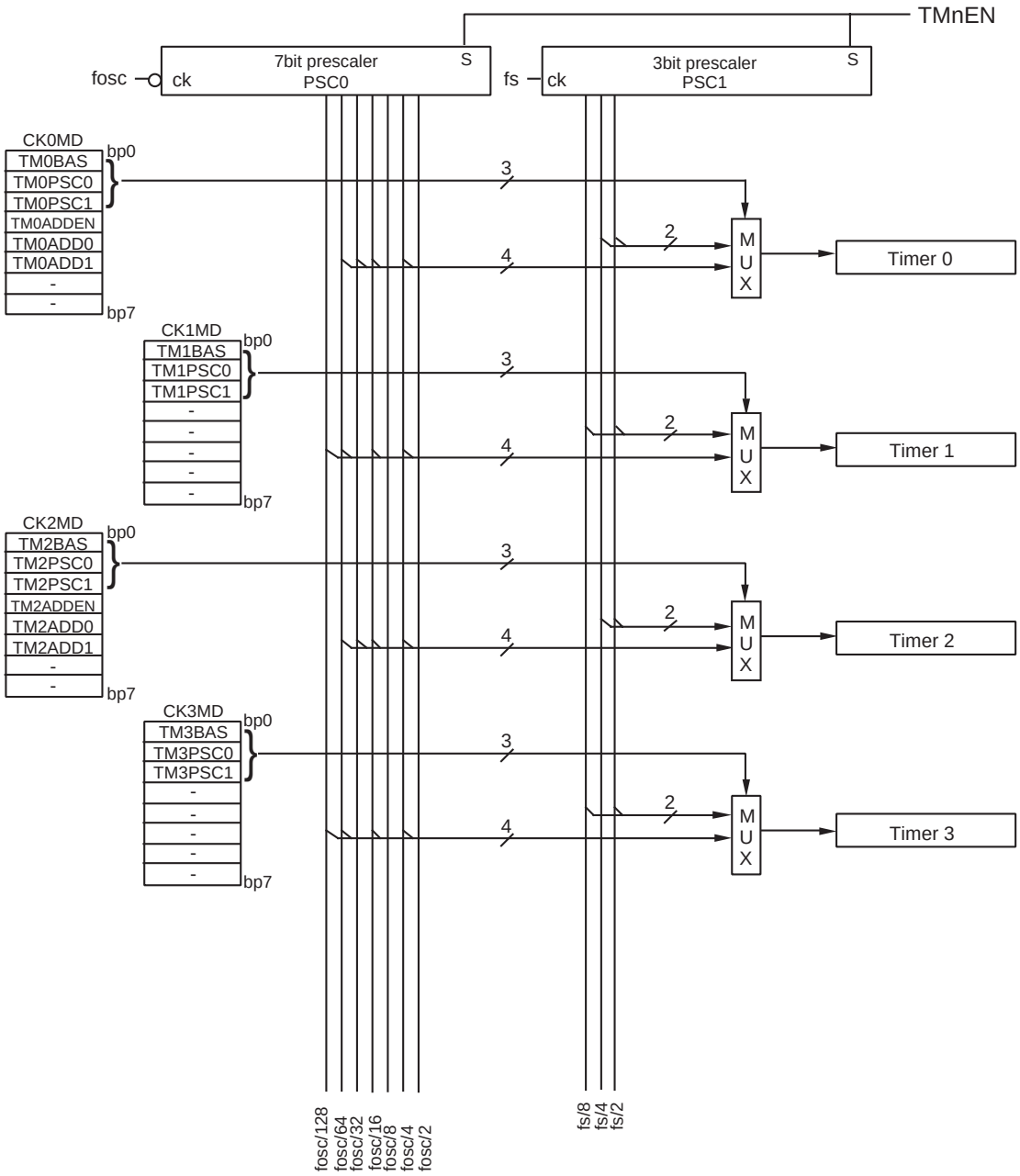


Figure:5.1.1 Prescaler Block Diagram

■ Timer 0 and 1 Block Diagram

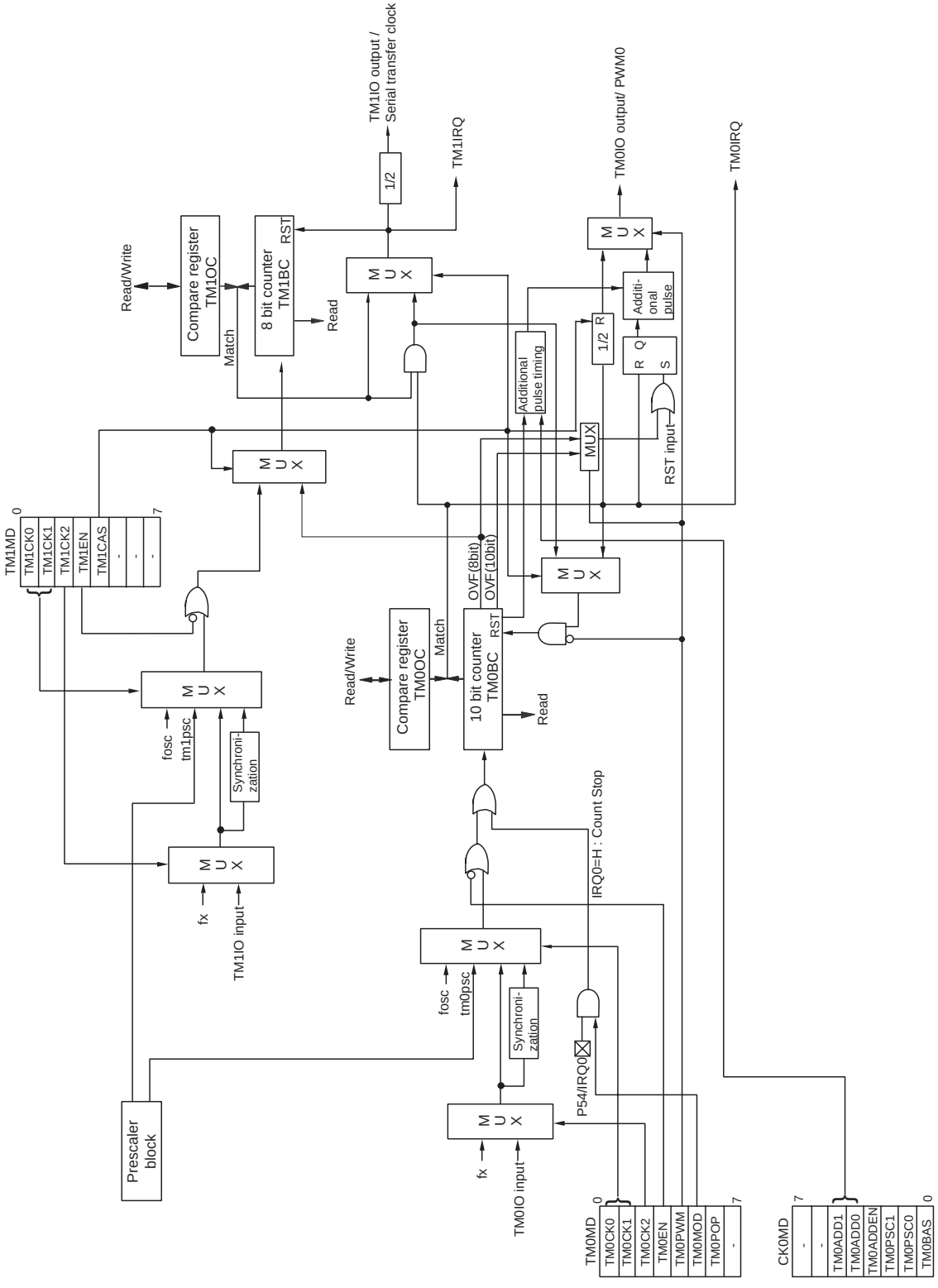


Figure:5.1.2 Timer 0 and 1 Block Diagram

■ Timer 2 and 3 Block Diagram

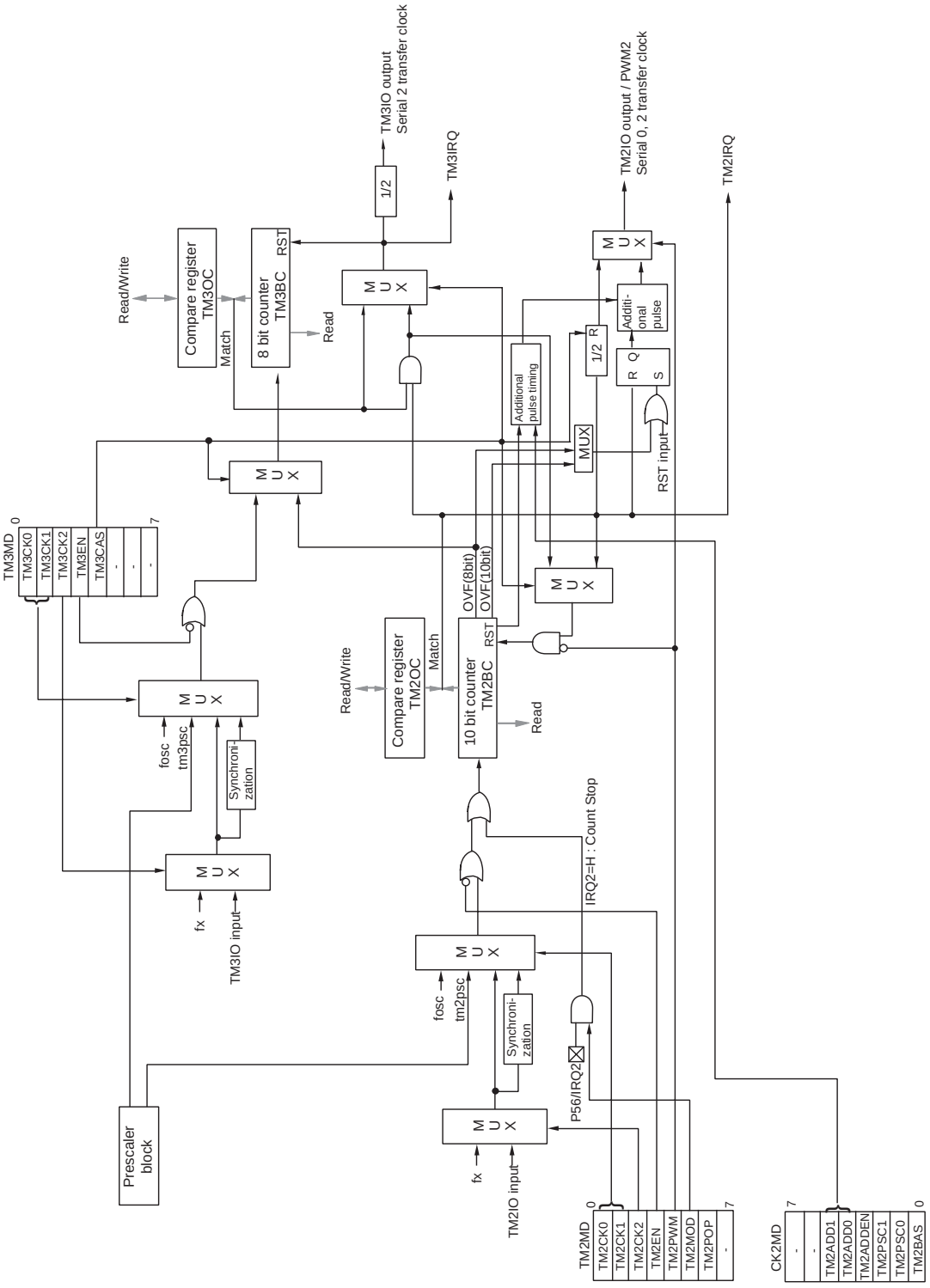


Figure:5.1.3 Timer 2 and 3 Block Diagram

5.2 Control Registers

Timer 0 to 3 consist of the binary counter (TMnBC) and the compare register (TMnOC). And they are controlled by the mode register (TMnMD).

When the prescaler output is selected as the count clock source of timer 0 to 3, they should be controlled by the prescaler selection register (CKnMD).

5.2.1 Registers

Table:5.2.1 shows registers that control timer 0 to timer 3.

Table:5.2.1 8-bit Timer Control Registers

	Register	Address	R/W	Function	Page
Timer 0	TM0BC	0x03F50	R	Timer 0 binary counter	V-13
	TM0OC	0x03F52	R/W	Timer 0 compare register	V-12
	TM0MD	0x03F54	R/W	Timer 0 mode register	V-14
	CK0MD	0x03F56	R/W	Timer 0 prescaler selection register	V-9
	TM0ICR	0x03FE7	R/W	Timer 0 interrupt control register	III-24
	P1OMD	0x03F1C	R/W	Port 1 output mode register	IV-10
	P1DIR	0x03F31	R/W	Port 1 direction control register	IV-8
	P5OMD	0x03F2C	R/W	Port 5 output mode register	IV-44
	P5DIR	0x03F35	R/W	Port 5 direction control register	IV-42
Timer 1	TM1BC	0x03F51	R	Timer 1 binary counter	V-13
	TM1OC	0x03F53	R/W	Timer 1 compare register	V-12
	TM1MD	0x03F55	R/W	Timer 1 mode register	V-15
	CK1MD	0x03F57	R/W	Timer 1 prescaler selection register	V-10
	TM1ICR	0x03FE8	R/W	Timer 1 interrupt control register	III-25
	P1OMD	0x03F1C	R/W	Port 1 output mode register	IV-10
	P1DIR	0x03F31	R/W	Port 1 direction control register	IV-8
	P7OMD	0x03F3C	R/W	Port 7 output mode register	IV-53
	P7DIR	0x03F37	R/W	Port 7 direction control register	IV-52

	Register	Address	R/W	Function	Page
Timer 2	TM2BC	0x03F58	R	Timer 2 binary counter	V-13
	TM2OC	0x03F5A	R/W	Timer 2 compare register	V-12
	TM2MD	0x03F5C	R/W	Timer 2 mode register	V-16
	CK2MD	0x03F5E	R/W	Timer 2 prescaler selection register	V-11
	TM2ICR	0x03FE9	R/W	Timer 2 interrupt control register	III-17
	P1OMD	0x03F1C	R/W	Port 1 output mode register	IV-10
	P1DIR	0x03F31	R/W	Port 1 direction control register	IV-8
	P5OMD	0x03F2C	R/W	Port 5 output mode register	IV-44
	P5DIR	0x03F35	R/W	Port 5 direction control register	IV-42
Timer 3	TM3BC	0x03F59	R	Timer 3 binary counter	V-13
	TM3OC	0x03F5B	R/W	Timer 3 compare register	V-12
	TM3MD	0x03F5D	R/W	Timer 3 mode register	V-17
	CK3MD	0x03F5F	R/W	Timer 3 prescaler selection register	V-11
	TM3ICR	0x03FEA	R/W	Timer 3 interrupt control register	III-27
	P1OMD	0x03F1C	R/W	Port 1 output mode register	IV-10
	P1DIR	0x03F31	R/W	Port 1 direction control register	IV-8
	P7OMD	0x03F3C	R/W	Port 7 output mode register	IV-10
	P7DIR	0x03F37	R/W	Port 7 direction control register	IV-8

R/W:Readable / Writable

R:Readable only

5.2.2 Timer Prescaler Registers

Timer prescaler selection register selects the count clock for 8-bit timer.

The register which selects prescaler output is consisted by the timer prescaler selection register (CKnMD).

■ Timer 0 prescaler selection register (CK0MD:0x03F56)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	-	TM0ADD1	TM0ADD0	TM0ADDEN	TM0PSC1	TM0PSC0	TM0BAS
At reset	-	-	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7-6	-	-
5-4	TM0ADD1 TM0ADD0	Additional pulse position (within PWM 4 periods) 00: None 01:2nd period 10:1st, 3rd periods 11:1st, 2nd, 3rd periods
3	TM0ADDEN	Additional pulse method PWM output control 0:Disabled (8-bit PWM output) 1:Enabled
2-0	TM0PSC1 TM0PSC0 TM0BAS	Clock source selection 000:fosc/4 010:fosc/16 100:fosc/32 110:fosc/64 X01:fs/2 X11:fs/4

■ Timer 1 Prescaler Selection Register (CK1MD:0x03F57)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	-	-	-	-	TM1PSC1	TM1PSC0	TM1BAS
At reset	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7-3	-	-
2-0	TM1PSC1 TM1PSC0 TM1BAS	Clock source selection 000:fosc/4 010:fosc/16 100:fosc/64 110:fosc/128 X01:fs/2 X11:fs/8

■ Timer 2 Prescaler Selection Register (CK2MD:0x03F5E)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	-	TM2ADD 1	TM2ADD 0	TM2ADDEN	TM2PSC1	TM2PSC0	TM2BAS
At reset	-	-	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7-6	-	-
5-4	TM2ADD1 TM2ADD0	Additional pulse position (within PWM 4 periods) 00: None 01:2nd period 10:1st, 3rd periods 11:1st, 2nd, 3rd periods
3	TM0ADDEN	Additional pulse method PWM output control 0:Disabled (8-bit PWM output) 1:Enabled
2-0	TM2PSC1 TM2PSC0 TM2BAS	Clock source selection 000:fosc/4 010:fosc/16 100:fosc/32 110:fosc/64 X01:fs/2 X11:fs/4

■ Timer 3 Prescaler Selection Register (CK3MD:0x03F5F)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	-	-	-	-	TM3PSC1	TM3PSC0	TM3BAS
At reset	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7-3	-	-
2-0	TM3PSC1 TM3PSC0 TM3BAS	Clock source selection 000:fosc/4 010:fosc/16 100:fosc/64 110:fosc/128 X01:fs/2 X11:fs/8

5.2.3 Programmable Timer Registers

Each of timer 0 to 3 has 8-bit programmable timer registers.

Programmable timer register consists of compare register and binary counter.

Compare register is 8-bit register which stores the value to be compared to binary counter are stocked.

■ Timer 0 Compare Register (TM0OC:0x03F52)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TM0OC7	TM0OC6	TM0OC5	TM0OC4	TM0OC3	TM0OC2	TM0OC1	TM0OC0
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

■ Timer 1 Compare Register (TM1OC:0x03F53)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TM1OC7	TM1OC6	TM1OC5	TM1OC4	T1OC3	TM1OC2	TM1OC1	TM1OC0
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

■ Timer 2 Compare Register (TM2OC:0x03F5A)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TM2OC7	TM2OC6	TM2OC5	TM2OC4	T2OC3	TM2OC2	TM2OC1	TM2OC0
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

■ Timer 3 Compare Register (TM3OC:0x03F5B)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TM3OC7	TM3OC6	TM3OC5	TM3OC4	T3OC3	TM3OC2	TM3OC1	TM3OC0
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Binary counter is 8-bit up counter. If any data is written to compare register the counting is stopped and binary counter is cleared to 0x00.

■ Timer 0 Binary Counter (TM0BC:0x03F50)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TM0BC7	TM0BC6	TM0BC5	TM0BC4	TM0BC3	TM0BC2	TM0BC1	TM0BC0
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

■ Timer 1 Binary Counter (TM1BC:0x03F51)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TM1BC7	TM1BC6	TM1BC5	TM1BC4	TM1BC3	TM1BC2	TM1BC1	TM1BC0
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

■ Timer 2 Binary Counter (TM2BC:0x03F58)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TM2BC7	TM2BC6	TM2BC5	TM2BC4	TM2BC3	TM2BC2	TM2BC1	TM2BC0
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

■ Timer 3 Binary Counter (TM3BC:0x03F59)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TM3BC7	TM3BC6	TM3BC5	TM3BC4	TM3BC3	TM3BC2	TM3BC1	TM3BC0
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

5.2.4 Timer Mode Registers

Timer mode register is readable/writable register that controls timer 0 to 3.

■ Timer 0 Mode Register (TM0MD:0x03F54)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	TM0POP	TM0MOD	TM0PWM	TM0EN	TM0CK2	TM0CK1	TM0CK0
At reset	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7	-	-
6	TM0POP	Output signal start polarity selection 0:Timer output L→H, PWM H→L 1:Timer output H→H, PWM L→H
5	TM0MOD	Pulse width measurement control 0:Normal timer operation 1:P54 pulse width measurement
4	TM0PWM	Timer 0 operation mode selection 0:Normal timer operation 1:PWM operation
3	TM0EN	Timer 0 count control 0:Halt the count 1:Operate the count
2-0	TM0CK2 TM0CK1 TM0CK0	Clock source selection X00:fosc X01:TM0PSC (Prescaler output) 010:fx 011:Synchronous fx 110:TM0IO input 111:Synchronous TM0IO output

■ Timer 1 Mode Register (TM1MD:0x03F55)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	-	-	TM1CAS	TM1EN	TM1CK2	TM1CK1	TM1CK0
At reset	-	-	-	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7-5	-	-
4	TM1CAS	Timer 1 operation mode selection 0:Normal timer operation 1:Cascade connection
3	TM1EN	Timer 1 count control 0:Halt the count 1:Operate the count
2-0	TM1CK2 TM1CK1 TM1CK0	Clock source selection X00:fosc X01:TM1PSC (Prescaler output) 010:fx 011:Synchronous fx 110:TM1IO input 111:Synchronous TM0IO input

■ Timer 2 Mode Register (TM2MD:0x03F5C)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	TM2POP	TM2MOD	TM2PWM	TM2EN	TM2CK2	TM2CK1	TM2CK0
At reset	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7	-	-
6	TM2POP	Output signal start polarity selection 0:Timer output L→H, PWM H→L 1:Timer output H→H, PWM L→H
5	TM2MOD	Pulse width measurement control 0:Normal timer operation 1:P56 pulse width measurement
4	TM2PWM	Timer 2 operation mode selection 0:Normal timer operation 1:PWM operation
3	TM2EN	Timer 2 count control 0:Halt the count 1:Operate the count
2-0	TM2CK2 TM2CK1 TM2CK0	Clock source selection X00:fosc X01:TM2PSC (Prescaler output) 010:fx 011:Synchronous fx 110:TM2IO input 111:Synchronous TM2IO output

■ Timer 3 Mode Register (TM3MD:0x03F5D)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	-	-	TM3CAS	TM3EN	TM3CK2	TM3CK1	TM3CK0
At reset	-	-	-	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7-5	-	-
4	TM3CAS	Timer 3 operation mode selection 0:Normal timer operation 1:Cascade connection
3	TM3EN	Timer 3 count control 0:Halt the count 1:Operate the count
2-0	TM3CK2 TM3CK1 TM3CK0	Clock source selection X00:fosc X01:TM3PSC (Prescaler output) 010:Synchronous fx 110:TM3IO input 111:Synchronous TM3IO input

■ Port 1 Output Mode Register (P1OMD:0x03F1C)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	P1OMD7	P1OMD6	P1OMD5	P1OMD4	P1OMD3	NBUZSEL	P1OMD2	BUZSEL
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7	P1OMD7	I/O port, TM2OB selection 0:I/O port 1:TM2OB
6	P1OMD6	I/O port, TM2IO selection 0:I/O port 1:TM2IO
5	P1OMD5	I/O port, TM0OB selection 0:I/O port 1:TM0OB
4	P1OMD4	I/O port, TM0IO/RMOUT selection 0:I/O port 1:TM0IO/RMOUT
3	P1OMD3	I/O port, TM7IO selection 0:I/O port 1:TM7IO
2	NBUZSEL	I/O port, NBUZZER selection 0:I/O port 1:NBUZZER
1	P1OMD2	I/O port, TM8IO selection 0:I/O port 1:TM8IO
0	BUZSEL	I/O port, BUZZER selection 0:I/O port 1:BUZZER

5.3 Prescaler

5.3.1 Prescaler Operation

■ Prescaler Operation (Prescaler 0 to 1)

Prescaler 0, prescaler 1 are each free-run counter of 7 bits, 3 bits and output the dividing clock of the reference clock. This count up operation starts automatically when any TMnEN flags of 8-bit timer are set to “1” and operate the timer n counting. Also, it stops automatically when all TMnEN flags of 8-bit timer are set to “0” and stop all timer counting.

■ Count Timing of Prescaler Operation (Prescaler 0 to 1)

Prescaler 0 counts up at the falling edge of fosc.

Prescaler 1 counts up at the rising edge of fs.

■ Peripheral Functions

Peripheral functions which can use the prescaler output dividing clock, or registers which control the dividing clock selections are shown below.

Timer 0 Count Clock	CK0MD
Timer 1 Count Clock	CK1MD
Timer 2 Count Clock	CK2MD
Timer 3 Count Clock	CK3MD

Start the timer operation after the prescaler setup. Also, at the timer, the prescaler output should be set up by the timer mode register. The prescaler starts counting at the start of the timer operation.

5.3.2 Setup Example

■ Prescaler Operation Setup Example

fs/2 clock which is output from the prescaler 1 is selected to the count clock of the timer 0.

A setup procedure example, with a description of each step in shown below:

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Select the prescaler output CK0MD(0x03F56) bp2-1 :TM0PSC1-0 =X0 bp0 :TM0BAS =1	(1) Select fs/2 to the prescaler output by the TM0PSC 1 to 0, TM0BAS flag of the timer 0 prescaler selection register.

At the timer, prescaler output selection should be set up by the timer mode register.

5.4 8-bit Timer

5.4.1 8-bit Timer Operation

Timer operation can constantly generates interrupts.

■ 8-bit Timer Operation (Timer 0, 1, 2, and 3)

The generation cycle of timer interrupts is set by the clock source selection and the setting value of the compare register (TMnOC), in advance. If the binary counter (TMnBC) reaches the setting value of the compare register, an interrupt is generated at the next count clock, then binary counter is cleared and counting is restarted from 0x00.

Table shows clock source that can be selected by timer.

Clock source	per Count	Timer 0 (8-bit)	Timer 1 (8-bit)	Timer 2 (8-bit)	Timer 3 (8-bit)
fosc	100 ns	O	O	O	O
fosc/4	400 ns	O	O	O	O
fosc/16	1.6 µs	O	O	O	O
fosc/32	3.2 µs	O	-	O	-
fosc/64	6.4 µs	O	O	O	O
fosc/128	12.8 µs	-	O	-	O
fs/2	400 ns	O	O	O	O
fs/4	800 ns	O	-	O	-
fs/8	1.6 µs	-	O	-	O
fx	30.5 µs	O	O	O	O
fosc=10 MHz fx=32.768 kHz fs=fosc/2=5 MHz					

When fs/2, fs/4, fs/8 are used as clock source, they are counted at the rising of the count clock and when others are used, they are counted at the falling of the count clock.

■ Count Timing of Timer Operation (Timer 0, 1, 2, and 3)

Binary counter counts up with selected clock source as a count clock. The basic operation of the whole function of 8-bit timer is as follows:

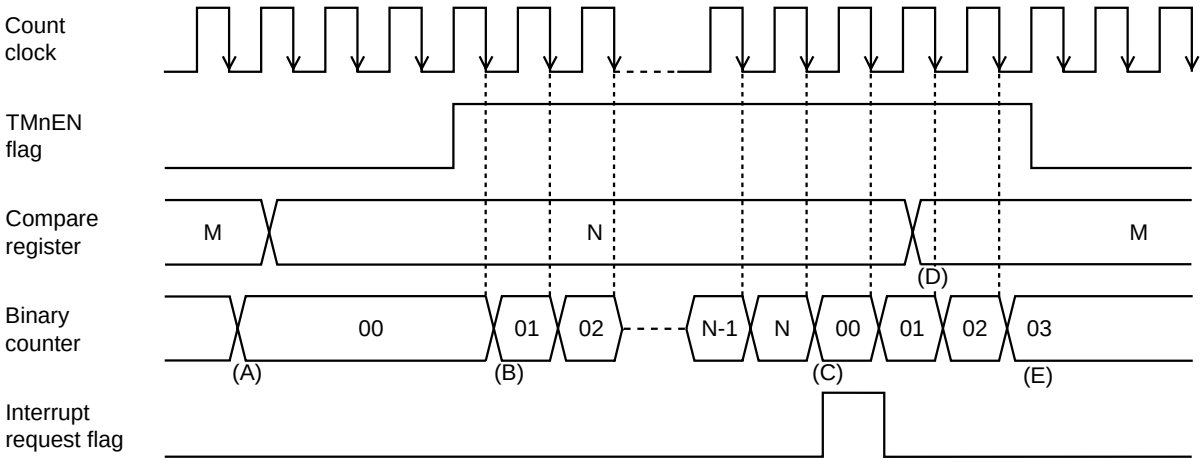


Figure:5.4.1 Count Timing of Timer Operation (Timer 0, 1, 2, and 3)

- (A)If the value is written to the compare register during the TMnEN flag is stopped (“0”), the binary counter is cleared to 0x00, at the writing cycle.
- (B)If the TMnEN flag is operated (“1”), the binary counter is started to count.
- (C)If the binary counter reaches the value of the compare register, the interrupt request flag is set at the next count clock, then the binary counter is cleared to 0x00 and the counting is restarted.
- (D)Even if the compare register is rewritten during the TMnEN flag is enabled (“1”), the binary counter is not changed.
- (E)If the TMnEN flag is stopped (“0”), the binary counter is stopped.

When the binary counter reaches the value in the compare register, the interrupt request flag is set and the binary counter is cleared, at the next count clock. So set the compare register as:

Compare register setting = (count till the interrupt request -1)

If the compare register is set to smaller than the binary counter during the count operation, the following operations occur by the values of binary counter and compare register.

1. When using as the 8-bit timer, binary counter counts up until overflow once.

2. When using as the 16-bit timer with cascade connection, if the upper 8 bit value of binary counter reaches the upper 8 bit value of compare register, binary counter counts up until overflow once.

3. When using as the 16-bit timer with cascade connection, if the upper 8 bit value of binary counter reaches the upper 8 bit value of compare register, binary counter is cleared as the lower 8 bit of binary counter overflows.

If the interrupt is enabled, the timer interrupt request flag should be cleared before timer is started.

When a timer interrupt request flag is generated, up to 3 system clock is required for the next flag generation. Even if the binary counter reaches the value in the compare register, a timer interrupt request flag is not generated.

When fx is used as the clock source, clear the binary counter before starting the timer operation. Also, when 0x00 is set to the compare register, use the synchronous fx.

When fx is used as the count clock source and the compare register is rewritten during the count operation, it may not operate properly. To prevent, use synchronous fx.

When synchronous fx is used as the count clock source, binary counter may reach to unexpected value. To prevent, select synchronous fx input.

5.4.2 Setup Example

■ Timer Operation Setup Example (Timer 0, 1, 2, and 3)

Timer function can be set by using timer 0 that generates the constant interrupt. Interrupt is generated every 250 cycles (200 μs) by selecting fs/2 (at fs=2.5 MHz operation) as a clock source.

A setup procedure example, with a description of each step is shown below.

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Stop the counter TM0MD(0x03F54) bp3 :TM0EN =0	(1) Set the TM0EN flag of the timer 0 mode register (TM0MD) to “0” to stop the counting of the timer 0.
(2) Disable the interrupt TM0ICR(0x03FE7) bp1 :TM0IE =0	(2) Set the TM0IE flag of the TM0ICR register to “0” to disable the interrupt.
(3) Select the normal timer operation TM0MD(0x03F54) bp4 :TM0PWM =0 bp5 :TM0MOD =0	(3) Set the TM0PWM flag and the TM0MOD flag of the TM0MD register to “0” to select the normal timer operation.
(4) Select the count clock source TM0MD(0x03F54) bp2-0 :TM0CK2-0 =X01	(4) Select the prescaler output to the clock source by the TM0CK2 to 0 flag of the TM0MD register.
(5) Select and enable the prescaler output CK0MD(0x03F56) bp2-1 :TM0PSC1-0 =X0 bp0 :TM0BAS =1	(5) Select fs/2 to the prescaler output by the TM0PSC 1 to 0 flag and TM0BAS flag of the timer 0 prescaler selection register (CK0MD).
(6) Set the cycle of the interrupt generation TM0OC (0x03F52) =0xF9	(6) Set the value of the interrupt generation cycle to the timer 0 compare register (TM0OC). The cycle is 250, so that the setting value is set to 249 (0x49). At that time, the timer 0 binary counter (TM0BC) is initialized to 0x00.
(7) Set the interrupt level TM0ICR(0x03FE7) bp7-6 :TM0LV1-0 =10	(7) Set the interrupt level by the TM0LV1 to 0 flag of the timer 0 interrupt control register (TM0ICR). If the interrupt request flag may be already set, clear the request flag. [Chapter 3 3.1.4. Interrupt Flag Setup]
(8) Enable the interrupt TM0ICR (0x03FE7) bp1 :TM0IE =1	(8) Set the TM0IE flag of the TM0ICR register to “1” to enable the interrupt.
(9) Start the timer operation TM0MD(0x03F54) bp3 :TM0EN =1	(9) Set the TM0EN flag of the TM0MD register to “1” to operate the timer 0.

The TM0BC starts to count up from 0x00. When the TM0BC reaches the setting value of the TM0OC register, the timer 0 interrupt request flag is set at the next count clock, then the value of the TM0BC becomes 0x00 and restart to count up.

When the TMnEN flag of the TMnMD register is changed at the same time to other bit, binary counter may start to count up by the switching operation.

Do not operate the TMnEN flag and the TMnCK 2 to 0 flag of the TMnMD register at the same time. That may lead the malfunction.

Count clock source should be changed when the timer interrupt is disabled.

5.5 8-bit Event Count

5.5.1 Operation

Event count operation has 2 types;TMnIO input and synchronous TMnIO input, according to the clock source selection.

■ 8-bit Event Count Operation (Timer 0, 1, 2, and 3)

Event count operation means that the binary counter (TMnBC) counts the input signal from external to the TMnIO pin. If the value of the binary counter reaches the setting value of the compare register (TMnOC), interrupts can be generated at the next count clock.

Table:5.5.1 Event Count Input Clock

	Timer 0	Timer 1	Timer 2	Timer 3
Event input	TM0IO input (P14)	TM1IO input (P70)	TM2IO input (P16)	TM3IO input (P71)
	Synchronous TM0IO input	Synchronous TM1IO input	Synchronous TM2IO input	Synchronous TM3IO input

■ Count Timing of TMnIO Input (Timer 0, 1, 2, and 3)

When TMnIO input is selected, TMnIO is input to the count clock of the timer n.

The binary counter is started to count up at the falling edge of the TMnIO input signal.

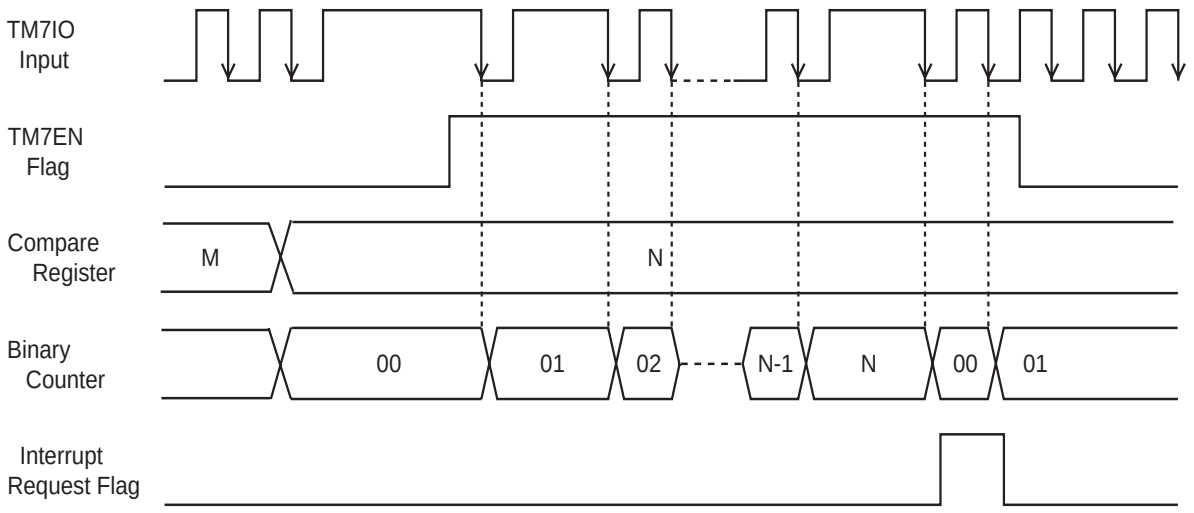


Figure:5.5.1 Count Timing of TMnIO Input (Timer 0, 1, 2, and 3)

When the TMnIO input is used as the count clock source, the value of the binary counter may reach to an unexpected value. To prevent, select synchronous TM0IO input.

When TMnIO is used as the count clock source and the compare register is rewritten during the count operation, it may not operate properly. To prevent, use synchronous TMnIO.

When the TMnIO input is selected for count clock source and the value of the timer n binary counter is read out during operation, incorrect value at count up may be read out. To prevent this, use the event count by synchronous TMnIO input, as the following page.

When the event input (TMnIO input) is used, clear the binary count before the timer operation. Also, when 0x00 is set to the compare register, use the event count by the synchronous TMnIO input, as the following page.

Timer can be recovered from STOP mode only at the TMnIO input. When TMnIO input is used at STOP mode, fs should be selected for the count clock and set the value to TMnOC, then select TMnIO input.

When the event input (TMnIO) is selected as the count clock source, and the compare register is rewritten during the timer operation, the operation of the corresponding cycle to the value cannot be guaranteed during the transition period. For proper timer operation with an expected cycle, stop the timer, rewrite the compare register, then start the timer operation.

■ Count Timing of Synchronous TMnIO Input (Timer 0, 1, 2, and 3)

If the synchronous TMnIO input is selected, the synchronous circuit output signal is inputted to the timer n count clock. The synchronous circuit output signal is synchronization with the falling edge of the system clock derived the TMnIO input signal.

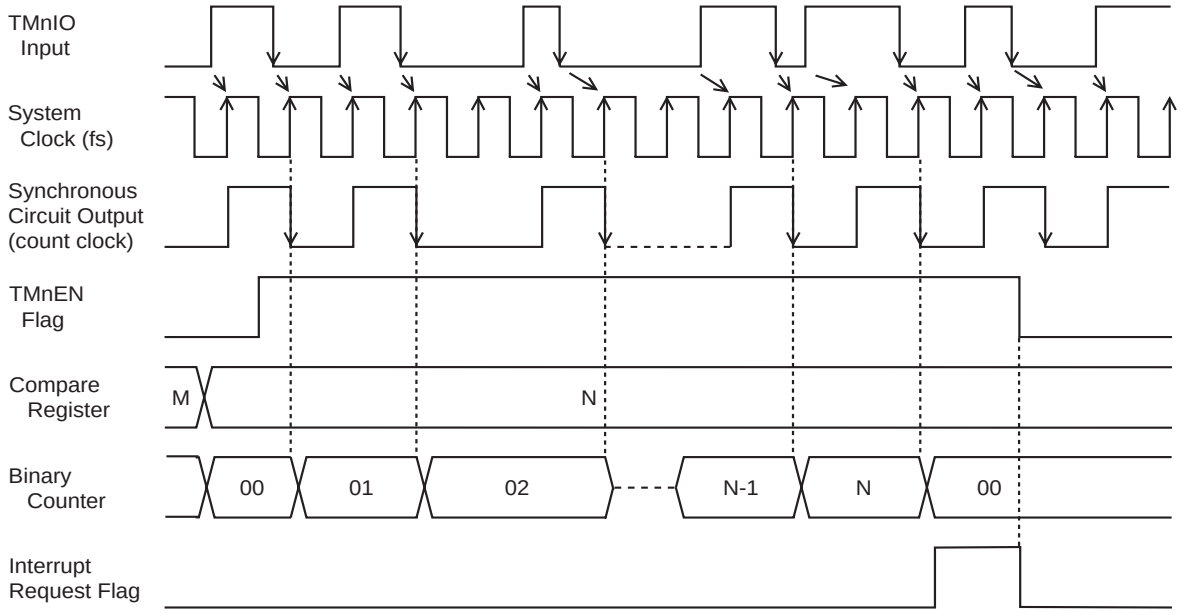


Figure:5.5.2 Count Timing of Synchronous TMnIO Input (Timer 0, 1, 2, and 3)

When the synchronous TMnIO input is selected as the count clock source, the timer n counter counts up in synchronization with system clock, therefore the correct value is always read out.

5.5.2 Setup Example

■ Event Count Setup Example (Timer 0, 1, 2, and 3)

If the falling edge of the TMnIO input pin signal is detected 5 times, an interrupt is generated.

A setup procedure example, with a description of each step is shown below.

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Stop the counter TM0MD(0x03F54) bp3 :TM0EN =0	(1) Set the TM0EN flag of the timer 0 mode register to “0” to stop timer 0 counting.
(2) Enable the interrupt TM0ICR(0x03FE7) bp1 :TM0IE =0	(2) Set the TM0IE flag of the TM0ICR register to “0” to disable the interrupt.
(3) _Set the special function pin to input P1DIR(0x03F31) bp0 :P1DIR0 =0	(3) Set the P1DIR0 flag of the port 1 direction control register (P1DIR) to “0” to set P10 pin to input mode. [Chapter 4. I/O Port Function]
(4) Select the count clock source TM0MD(0x03F54) bp2-0 :TM0CK2-0 =X01	(4) Select the prescaler output to the clock source by the TM0CK2 to 0 flag of the TM0MD register.
(5) Select and enable the prescaler output CK0MD(0x03F56) bp2-1 :TM0PSC1-0 =X0 bp0 :TM0BAS =1	(5) Select the fs/2 to the prescaler output by the TM0PSC1 to 0 flag and the TM0BAS flag of the timer 0 prescaler selection register (CK0MD).
(6) set the interrupt generation cycle TM0OC (0x03F52) =0x04	(6) Set the interrupt generation cycle to the timer 0 compare register (TM0OC). Counting is 5, so the setting value should be 4. At the time, the timer 0 binary counter (TM0BC) is initializes to 0x00.
(7) Select the normal timer operation TM0MD(0x03F54) bp4 :TM0PWM =0 bp5 :TM0MOD =0	(7) Set the TM0PWM flag and the TM0MOD flag of the TM0MD register to “0” to select the normal timer operation.
(8) Select the count clock source TM0MD(0x03F54) bp2-0 :TM0CK2-0 =110	(8) Select the TM0IO input to the clock source by the TM0CK2 to 0 flag of the TM0MD register.
(9) Set the interrupt level TM0ICR(0x03FE7) bp7-6 :TM0LV1-0 =10	(9) Set the interrupt level by the TM0LV1 to 0 flag of the timer 0 interrupt control register (TM0ICR). If the interrupt request flag may be already set, clear the request flag. [Chapter 3 3.1.4. Interrupt Flag Setup]

Setup Procedure	Description
(10) Enable the interrupt TM0ICR(0x03FE7) bp1 :TM0IE =1	(10) Set the TM0IE flag of the TM0ICR register to “1” to enable the interrupt.
(11) Start the event count TM0MD(0x03F54) bp3 :TM0EN =1	(11) Set the TM0EN flag of the TM0MD register to “1” to operate the timer 0.

Every time TM0BC detects the falling edge of TM0IO input, TM0BC counts up from 0x00. When TM0BC reaches the setting value of TM0OC register, the timer 0 interrupt request flag is set at the next count clock, then the value of TM0BC becomes 0x00 and counting up is restarted.

5.6 8-bit Timer Pulse Output

5.6.1 Operation

The TMnIO pin can output a pulse signal at any frequency.

■ Operation of Timer Pulse Output (Timer 0, 1, 2, and 3)

The timers can output signals of 2 × cycle of the setup value in the compare register (TMnOC). Output pins are as follows;

Table:5.6.1 Timer Pulse Output Pin

	Timer 0	Timer 1	Timer 2	Timer 3
Pulse output pin	TM0IO output (P14)	TM1IO output (P70)	TM2IO output (P16)	TM3IO output (P71)

■ Count Timing of Timer Pulse Output (Timer 0, 1, 2, and 3)

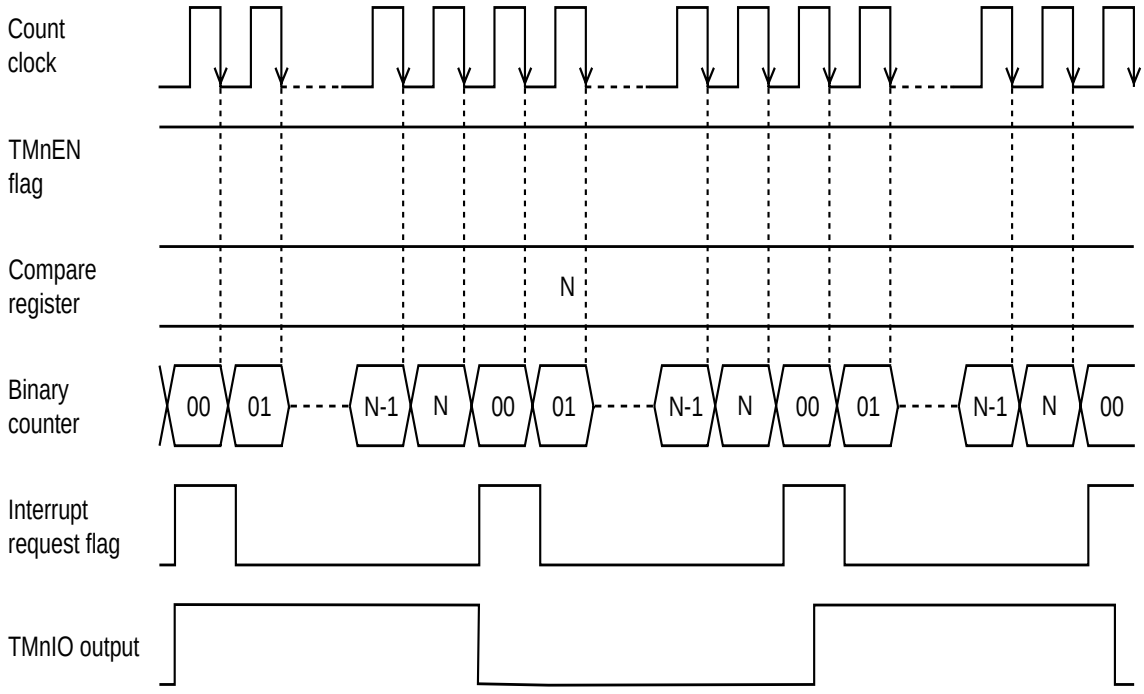


Figure:5.6.1 Count Timing of Timer Pulse Output (Timer 0, 1, 2, and 3)

- The TMnIO pin outputs signals of 2 × cycle of the setup value in the compare register. If the binary counter reaches the compare register, and the binary counter is cleared to 0x00, TMnIO output (timer output) is inverted.

5.6.2 Setup Example

■ Timer Pulse Output Setup Example (Timer 0, 1, 2, and 3)

TM0IO pin outputs 50 kHz pulse by using timer 0. For this, select fs/2 for clock source, and set a 1/2 cycle (100 kHz) for the timer 0 compare register (at fs = 10 MHz).

An example setup procedure, with a description of each step is shown below.

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Stop the counter TM0MD(0x03F54) bp3 :TM0EN =0	(1) Set the TM0EN flag of the timer 0 mode register (TM0MD) to “0” to stop timer 0 counting.
(2) Set the special function pin to the output mode P1OMD(0x03F1C) bp0 :P1OMD0 =1 P1DIR (0x03F31) bp0 :P1DIR0 =1	(2) Set the P10MD0 flag of the port 1 output mode register (P10MD) to “0” to set P10 pin to the special function pin. Set the TM0MOD flag of the port 1 direction control register (P1DIR) to “1” to set the output mode. [Chapter 4. I/O Port Function]
(3) Select the normal timer operation TM0MD(0x03F54) bp4 :TM0PWM =0 bp5 :TM0MOD =0	(3) Set the TM0MOD flag of the TM0MD register to “0” to select the normal timer operation.
(4) Select the count clock source TM0MD(0x03F54) bp2-0 :TM0CK2-0 =X01	(4) Select the prescaler output to the clock source by the TM0CK2 to 0 flag of the TM0MD register.
(5) Select and enable the prescaler output CK0MD(0x03F56) bp2-1 :TM0PSC1-0 =X0 bp0 :TM0BAS =1	(5) Select fs/2 to the prescaler output by the TM0PSC 1 to 0 flag and TM0BAS flag of the timer 0 prescaler selection register (CK0MD).
(6) Set the timer pulse output cycle TM0OC (0x03F52) =0x31	(6) Set the timer 0 compare register (TM0OC) to the 1/2 of the timer pulse output cycle. The setting value should be 50-1=49 (0x31), for 100 kHz to be divided by 5 MHz. At that time, the timer 0 binary counter (TM0BC) is initialized to 0x00.
(7) Start the timer operation TM0MD(0x03F54) bp3 :TM0EN =1	(7) Set the TM0EN flag of the TM0MD register to “1” to operate the timer 0.

TM0BC counts up from 0x00. If TM0BC reaches the setting value of the TM0OC register, then TM0BC is cleared to 0x00, TM0IO output signal is inverted and TM0BC restarts to count up from 0x00.

If any data is written to compare register when the binary counter is stopped, timer output is reset to “L”.

If any data is written to compare register when the binary counter is stopped, timer output is reset to “L”.

[Compare register] Compare register=Timer pulse output / (Selection clock cycle $\times 2)-1$

5.7 8-bit PWM Output

The TMnIO pin outputs the PWM waveform, which is determined by the match timing for the compare register and the overflow timing of the binary counter.

5.7.1 Operation

■ Operation of 8-bit PWM Output (Timer 0 and 2)

The PWM waveform with an arbitrary duty cycle is generated by setting the duty cycle of PWM period to the compare register (TMnOC). The cycle is the period from the full count to the overflow of the 8-bit timer.

Table:5.7.1 shows PWM output pins;

Table:5.7.1 Output Pins of PWM Output

	Timer 0	Timer 2
PWM output pin	TM0IO output pin (P14)	TM2IO output pin (P16)

■ Count Timing of PWM Output (at Normal) (Timer 0 and 2)

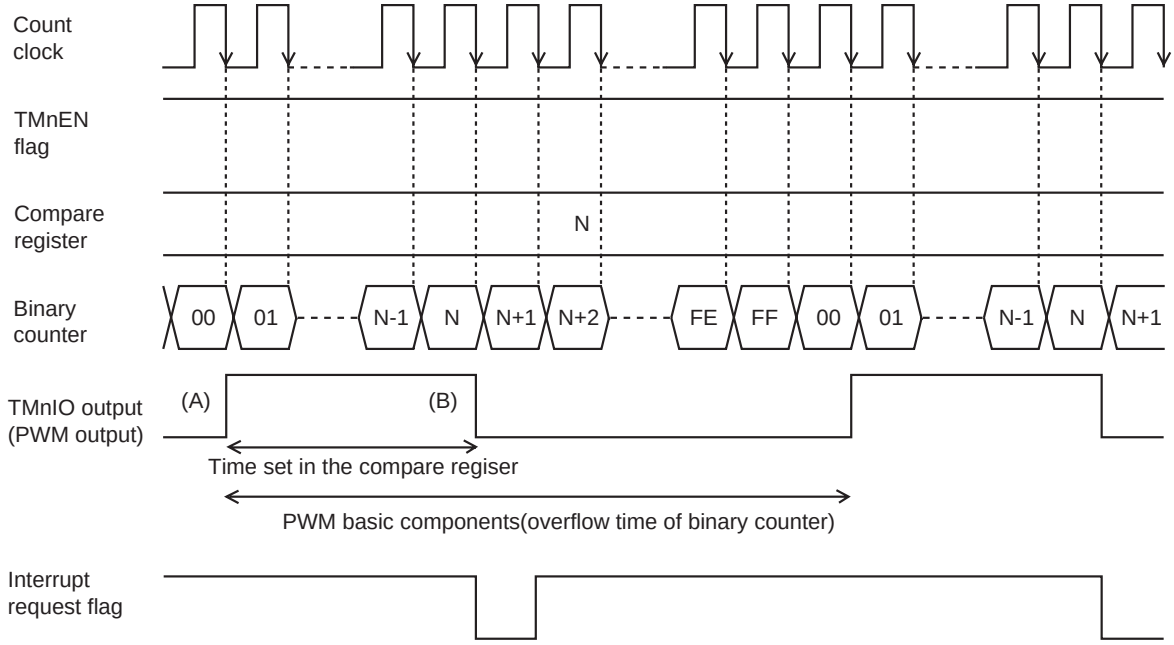


Figure:5.7.1 Count Timing of PWM Output (at Normal)

PWM source waveform when TMnPOP flag is set to “0”

- (A) is “H” while counting up from 0x00 to the value stored in the compare register.
- (B) is “L” after the match to the value in the compare register, then the binary counter continues counting up till the overflow.

■ Count Timing of PWM Output (when the compare register is 0x00) (Timer 0 and 2)

Here is the count timing when the compare register is set to 0x00.

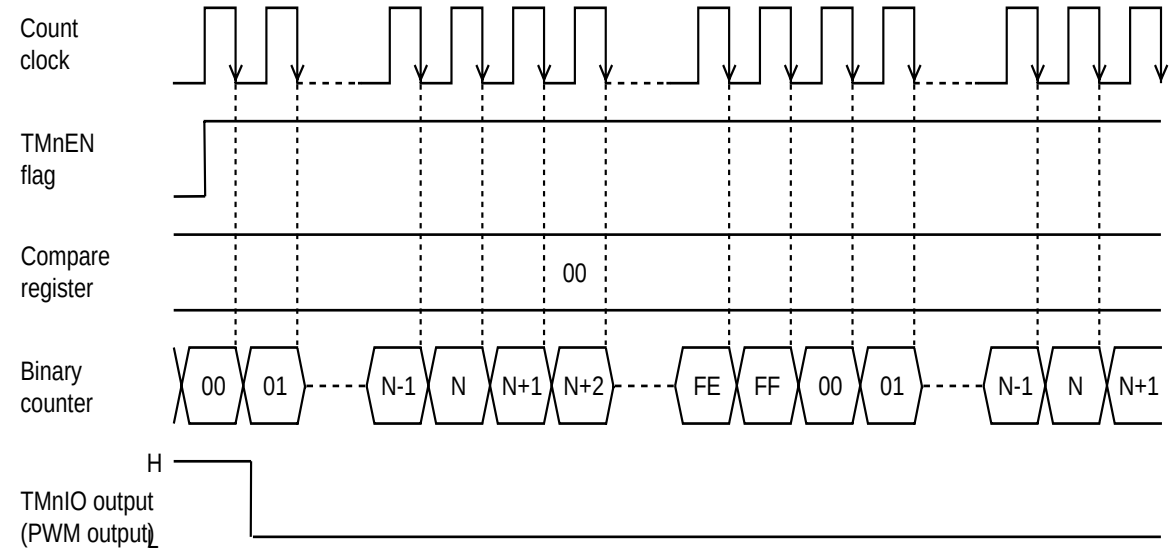


Figure:5.7.2 Count Timing of PWM Output (when compare register is 0x00)

When TMnEN flag is stopped (“0”), PWM output is “H”.

■ Count Timing of PWM Output (when the compare register is 0xFF) (Timer 0 and 2)

Here is the count timing when the compare register is set to 0xFF.

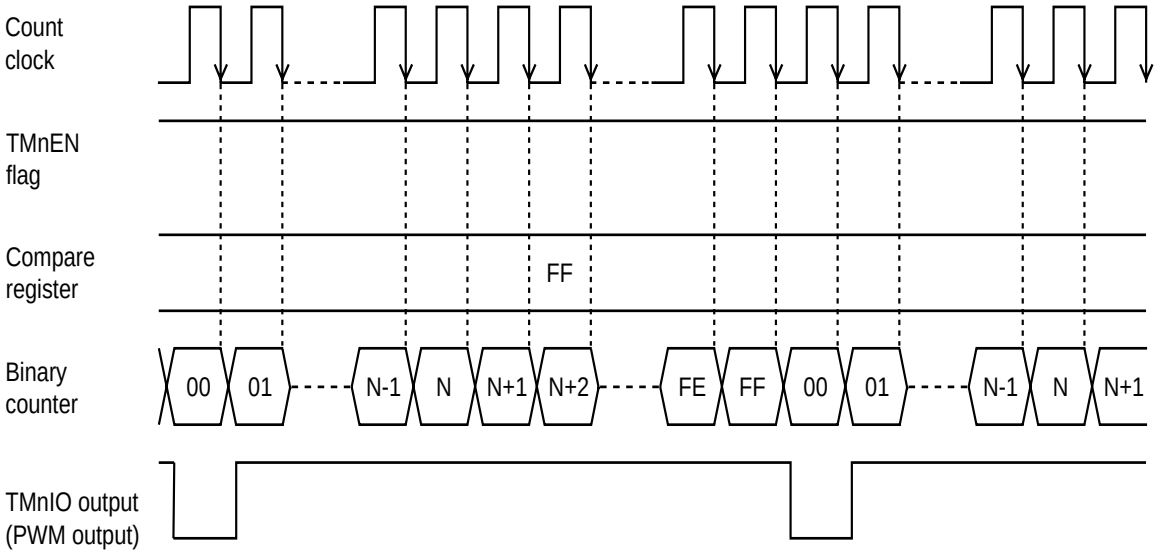


Figure:5.7.3 Count Timing of PWM Output (when compare register is 0xFF)

5.7.2 PWM Output with Additional Pulse

■ PWM Output with Additional Pulse Method (Timer 0 and 2)

In the additional pulse method, an additional bit is added to the 8-bit basic PWM output.
The bit0 to 3 can be added during 4 cycle of basic PWM output.
Whether or not, and to which the additional bit is added during 4 cycles of basic PWM output can be controlled with the timer 0 mode register (TM0MD bit 6, 7) and the timer 2 mode register (TM2MD bit 6, 7).

■ Setting the position of the Additional Pulses

The positions of the additional pulse is set in the timer 0 prescaler selection register (CK0MD)and the timer 2 prescaler selection register (CK2MD) at the bit 5, 4. When the CK0MD and the CK2MD register bit 5 and 4 are set as ‘00’, no additional pulse is added to the basic PWM cycle. When set as ‘11’, 3 out of the 4 periods in the basic PWM cycle are each added with an additional bit pulse.
Table:5.7.2 shows the relationship between values of CK0MD and CK2MD bits 5 and 4, and the additional pulses.
Figure:5.7.4 shows the relationship between values of CK0MD and CK2MD bits 6 and 7, and the position of the additional pulses.

Table:5.7.2

CKnMD register set value		Additional pulse position PWM basic wave form (4-periods)
bit7	bit6	
0	0	No additional pulse
0	1	2 period
1	0	1 and 3 period
1	1	1, 2 and 3 period

Interrupt generates at the 4th cycles of the basic waveform.

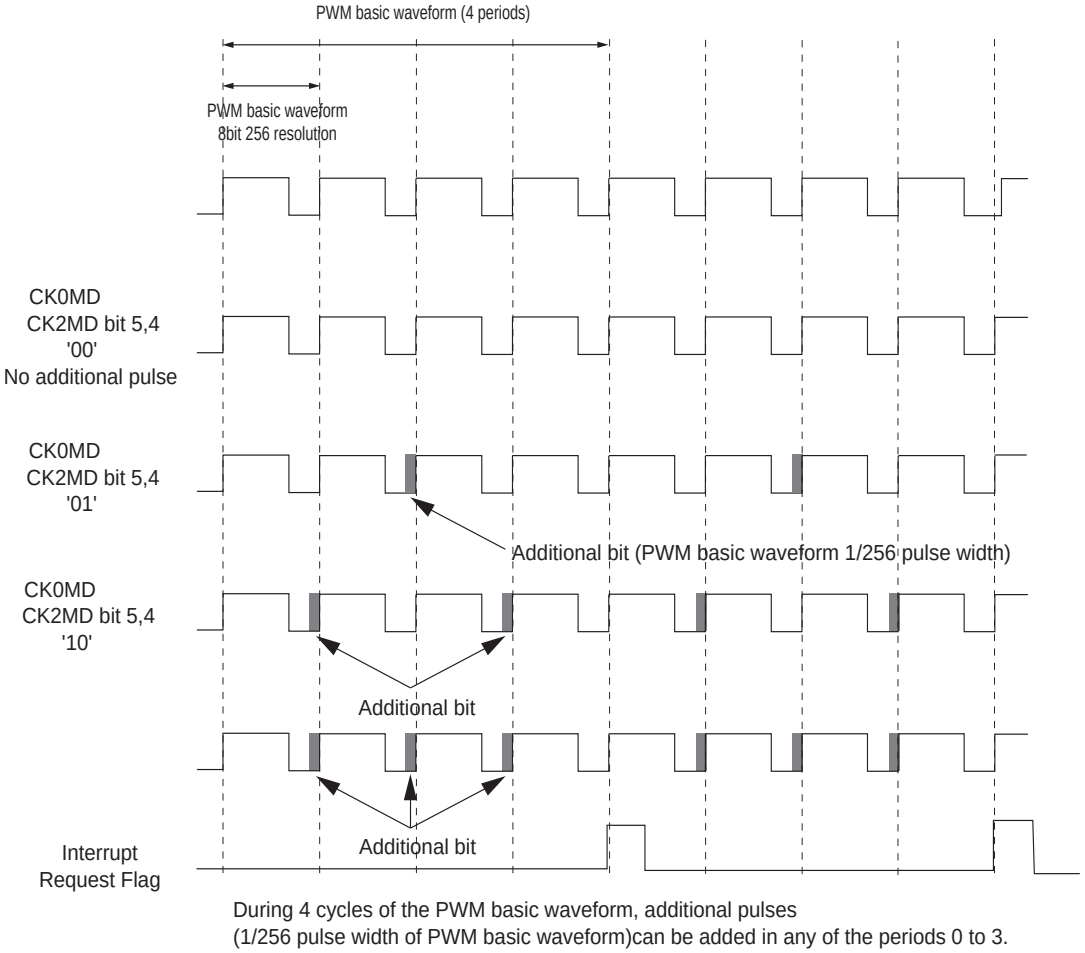

PWM basic waveform (4 periods)
PWM basic waveform
8bit 256 resolution
CK0MD
CK2MD bit 5,4
'00'
No additional pulse
CK0MD
CK2MD bit 5,4
'01'
Additional bit (PWM basic waveform 1/256 pulse width)
CK0MD
CK2MD bit 5,4
'10'
Additional bit
Additional bit
Interrupt
Request Flag
During 4 cycles of the PWM basic waveform, additional pulses
(1/256 pulse width of PWM basic waveform)can be added in any of the periods 0 to 3.

Figure:5.7.4

5.7.3 Setup Example

■ PWM Output Setup Example (Timer 0 and 2)

The 1/4 duty cycle PWM output waveform is output from the TM0IO output pin at 19.53 Hz by using the timer 0. Fs/2 oscillates at 5 MHz. Cycle period of PWM output waveform is decided by the overflow of the binary counter. "H" period of the PWM output waveform is decided by the setting value of the compare register.

An example setup procedure, with a description of each step is shown below.

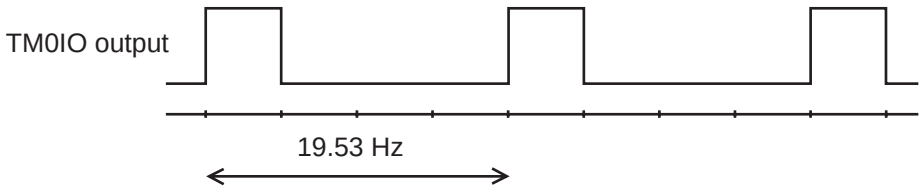


Figure:5.7.5 Output Waveform of TM0IO Output Pin

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Stop the counter TM0MD(0x03F54) bp3 :TM0EN =0	(1) Set the TM0EN flag of the timer 0 mode register (TM0MD) to "0" to stop the timer 0 counting.
(2) ìSelect the special function pin to output P1OMD(0x03F1C) bp0 :P1OMD0 =1 P1DIR(0x03F31) bp0 :P1DIR0 =1	(2) Set the P10MDO flag of the port 1 output mode register (P10MD) to "1" to set P10 pin to the special function pin. Set the P1DIR0 flag of the port 1 direction control register (P1DIR) to "1" for the output mode. [Chapter 4. I/O Ports]
(3) Select the PWM operation TM0MD(0x03F54) bp4 :TM0PWM =1 bp5 :TM0MOD =0 bp6 :TM0POP =0	(3) Set the TM0PWM flag of the TM0MD register to "1" and the TM0MOD flag to "0" to select the PWM operation.
(4) Select the count clock source TM0MD(0x03F54) bp2-0 :TM0CK2-0 =X01	(4) Select the prescaler output to the clock source by the TM0CK2 to 0 flag of the TM0MD register.
(5) Select and enable the prescaler output CK0MD(0x03F56) bp2-1 :TM0PSC1-0 =X0 bp0 :TM0BAS =1	(5) Select fs/2 to the prescaler output by the TM0PSC1 to 0 and TM0BAS flag of the timer 0 prescaler selection register.

Setup Procedure	Description
(6) Set the period of PWM “H” output TM0OC (0x03F52) =0x40	(6) Set the “H” period of PWM output to the timer 0 compare register (TM0OC). The setting value is set to 256/4=64 (0x40), because it should be the 1/4 duty of the full count (256). At that time, the timer 0 binary counter (TM0BC) is initialized to 0x00.
(7) Start the timer operation TM0MD(0x03F54) bp3 :TM0EN =1	(7) Set the TM0EN flag of the TM0MD register to “1” to operate the timer 0.

The initial setting of PWM output is changed from “L” output to “H” output at the selection of PWM operation by the TMnPWM flag of the TMnMD register.

5.8 Serial Transfer Clock Output

5.8.1 Operation

Serial transfer clock can be created by using the timer output signal.

Serial transfer clock operation by 8-bit timer (Timer 1, 2, and 3)

- Timer 1:Serial 0
- Timer 2:Serial 0, Serial 2
- Timer 3:Serial 2

■ Timing of Serial Transfer Clock (Timer 1, 2, and 3)

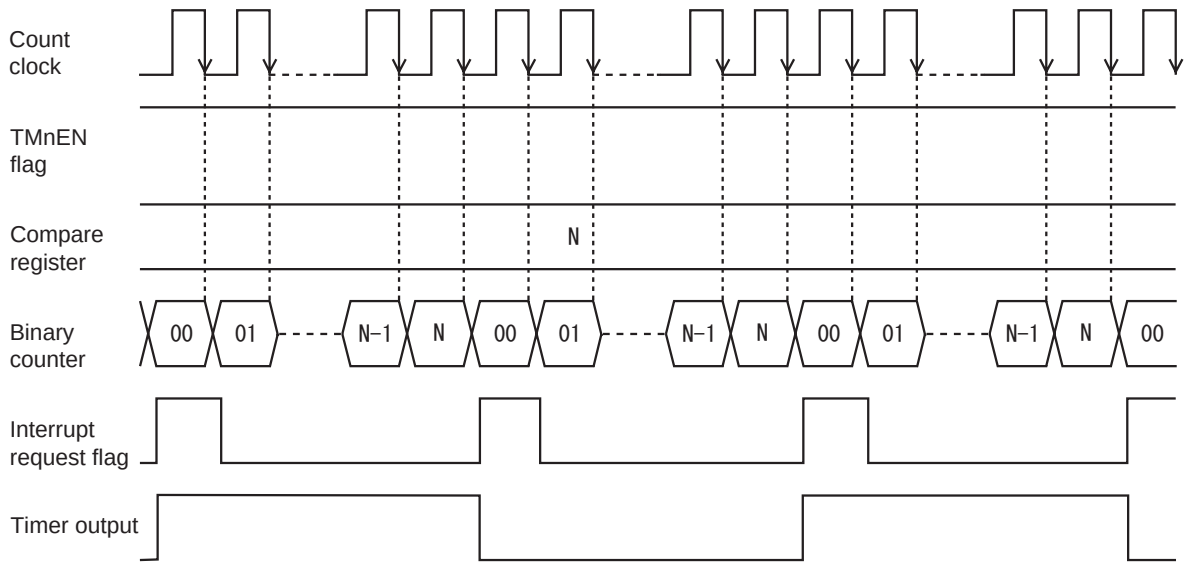


Figure:5.8.1 Timing of Serial Transfer Clock (Timer 1, 2, and 3)

- The serial transfer clock is the 1/2 of the frequency set to the compare register.
- For the baud rate calculation and the serial interface setup, refer to chapters for Serial Interface.

5.8.2 Setup Example

■ Serial Transfer Clock Setup Example (Timer 2)

How to create a transfer clock for half duplex UART (Serial 0) using with the timer 2 is shown below. The baud rate is selected to be 300 bps, the source clock of timer 2 is selected to be fs/2 (at fs=2 MHz).

An example setup procedure, with a description of each step is shown below.

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Stop the counter TM2MD(0x03F5C) bp3 :TM2EN =0	(1) Set the TM2EN flag of the timer 2 mode register (TM2MD) to “0” to stop the timer 2 counting.
(2) Select the normal timer operation TM2MD(0x03F5C) bp4 :TM2PWM =0 bp5 :TM2MOD =0	(2) Set the TM2PWM flag and the TM2MOD flag of the TM2MD register to “0” to select the normal timer operation.
(3) Select the count clock source TM2MD(0x0F5C) bp2-0 :TM2CK2-0 =X01	(3) Select the prescaler output to the clock source by the TM2CK2 to 0 flag of the TM2MD register.
(4) Select and enable the prescaler output CK2MD(0x0F5E) bp2-1 :TM2PSC1-0 =X0 bp0 :TM2BAS =1	(4) Select fs/2 to the prescaler output by the TM2PSC1 to 0 flag and the TM2BAS flag of the timer 2 prescaler selection register.
(5) Set the baud rate TM2OC (0x0F5A) =0xCF	(5) Set the timer 2 compare register (TM2OC) such a value that the baud rate comes to 300 bps. At that time, the timer 2 binary counter (TM2BC) is initialized to 0x00.
(6) Start the timer operation TM2MD(0x0F5C) bp3 :TM2EN =1	(6) Set the TM2EN flag of the TM2MD register to “1” to operate the timer 2.

- TM2BC counts up from 0x00. Timer 2 output is the clock of the serial interface 0 at transmission and reception.
- For the setup value of the compare register and the setup of the serial interface operation, refer to Chapter 11 Serial interface 0.

5.9 Simple Pulse Width Measurement

5.9.1 Operation

Timer measures the “L” duration of the pulse signal input from the external interrupt pin.

■ Simple Pulse Width Measurement Operation by 8-bit Timer (Timer 0, 2)

When the input signal of the external interrupt pin (simple pulse width) is “L”, the binary counter of the timer counts up. Pulse width “L” period can be measured by reading the count of timer. 8-bit timers that have the simple pulse width measurement function are the timer 0, and 2.

Table:5.9.1 Simple Pulse Width Measurement Able Pins

	Timer 0	Timer 2
Simple pulse width measurement enable pin	External interrupt 0 (P54/IRQ0)	External interrupt 2 (P56/IRQ2)

■ Count Timing of Simple Pulse Width Measurement (Timer 0, 2)

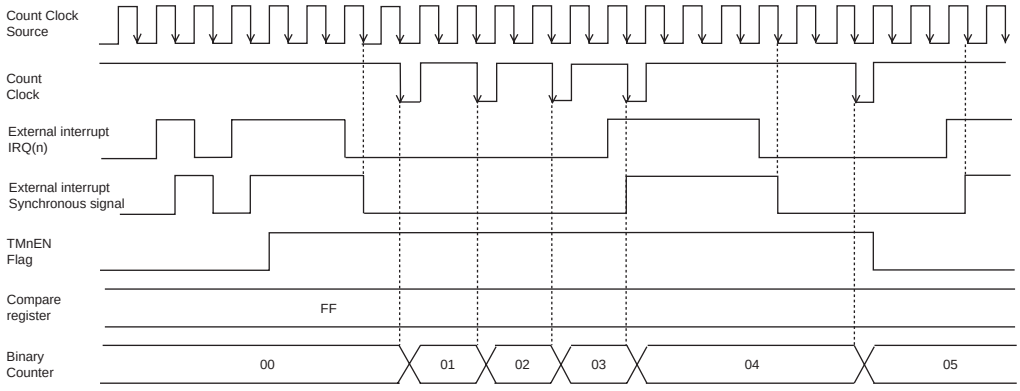


Figure:5.9.1 Count Timing of Measurement of Simple Pulse Width

- External interrupt IRQ(n) is synchronized by the count clock source.
- After the external interrupt IRQ(n) is set to “H”, count operation continues until the falling edge of the next count clock source.

When the low speed clock (fx) and the event count (TMnIO) are selected as the clock source, the value of the binary counter cannot be guaranteed. When measuring pulse width, do not select fx and TMnIO as the clock source.

5.9.2 Setup Example

■ Setup Example of Simple Width Measurement by 8-bit Timer (Timer 0, 2)

The pulse width of “L” period of the external interrupt 0 (IRQ0) input signal is measured by the timer 0. The clock source of the timer 0 is selected to fs/2.

A setup procedure example, with a description of each step is shown below.

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Stop the counter TM0MD(0x03F54) bp3 :TM0EN =0	(1) Set the TM0EN flag of the timer 0 mode register (TM0MD) to “0” to stop the timer 0 counting.
(2) Set the pulse width measurement operation TM0MD(0x03F54) bp4 :TM0PWM =0 bp5 :TM0MOD =1	(2) Set the TM0PWM flag of the TM0MD register to “0” and TM0MOD flag to “1” to enable the timer operation during “L” period to be measured.
(3) Select the count clock source TM0MD(0x03F54) bp2-0 :TM0CK2-0 =X01	(3) Select the prescaler output to the clock source by the TM0CK2 to 0 flag of the TM0MD register.
(4) Select and enable the prescaler output CK0MD(0x03F56) bp2-1 :TM0PSC1-0 =X0 bp0 :TM0BAS =1	(4) Select fs/2 to the prescaler output by the TM0PSC1 to 0 flag and the TM0BAS flag of the timer 0 prescaler selection register (CK0MD).
(5) Set the compare register TM0OC (0x03F52) =x'FF'	(5) Set the timer 0 compare register (TM0OC) to the bigger value than the cycle of fs/2 / “L” period of measured pulse width. At that time, the timer 0 binary counter (TM0BC) is initialized to 0x00.
(6) Set the interrupt level IRQ0ICR(0x03FE2) bp7-6 :IRQ0LV1-0 ="XX"	(6) Set the interrupt level by the IRQ0LV1 to 0 flag of the external interrupt 0 control register (IRQ0ICR). If the interrupt request flag is already set, clear all interrupt request flags. [Chapter 3. 3.1.4 Interrupt Flag Setup]
(7) Set the interrupt valid edge IRQ0ICR(0x03FE2) bp5 :REDG0 =1	(7) Set the REDG0 flag of the IRQ0ICR register to “1” to specify the interrupt valid edge to the rising edge.
(8) Enable the interrupt IRQ0ICR(0x03FE2) bp1 :IRQ0IE =1	(8) Set the IRQ0IE flag of the IRQ0ICR register to “1” to enable the interrupt.
(9) Enable the timer operation TM0MD(0x03F54) bp3 :TM0EN =1	(9) Set the TM0EN flag of the TM0MD register to “1” to enable the timer 0 operation.

- TM0BC starts to count up with negative edge of the external interrupt 0 (IRQ0) input as a trigger. Timer 0 continues to count up during “L” period of IRQ0 input, then stop the counting with positive edge of IRQ0 input as a trigger. At the same time, reading the value of TM0BC by interrupt handling can detects “L” period.

When using TMnIO input or fx as the count clock source, the value of the binary counter may be wrong at the count stop. To prevent this, use the clock source that is synchronized with fosc or fx.

5.10 Cascade Connection

5.10.1 Operation

Cascading timers 0 and 1, or timers 2 and 3 forms a 16-bit timer.

■ 8-bit Timer Cascade Connection Operation (Timer 0+1, Timer 2+3)

Timer 0 and timer 1, or timer 2 and timer 3 are combined to be a 16-bit timer. Cascading timer is operated at the clock source of timer 0 or timer 2 which are lower 8 bits.

Table:5.10.1 Timer Functions at Cascade Connection

	Timer 0+Timer1 (16-bit)	Timer 2+Timer 3 (16-bit)
Interrupt source	TM1IRQ	TM3IRQ
Timer operation	O	O
Event count	O TM0IO input	O TM2IO input
PWM output	-	-
Clock source	fosc fosc/4 fosc/16 fosc/32 fosc/64 fs/2 fs/4 fx TM0IO input	fosc fosc/4 fosc/16 fosc/32 fosc/64 fs/2 fs/4 fx TM2IO input
fosc:Machine clock (High frequency oscillation) fx:Machine clock (Low frequency oscillation) fs:System clock [Chapter 2. 2.5 Clock Switching]		

- At cascade connection, the binary counter and the compare register are operated as a 16-bit register. At operation, set the TMnEN flag of the upper and lower 8-bit timers to “1” to be operated.

  Also, select the clock source by the lower 8-bit timer.

  Other setup and count timing is the same to the 8-bit timer at independently operation.

When timer 0 and timer 1 are used in cascade connection, timer 1 is used as an interrupt request flag. Timer pulse output of timer 0 is “L” fixed output.
An interrupt request of timer 0 is not generated, but the timer 0 interrupt should be disabled.

When timer 2 and timer 3 are used in cascade connection, timer 3 is used as an interrupt request flag. Timer pulse output of timer 2 is “L” fixed output.
An interrupt request of timer 2 is not generated, but the timer 2 interrupt should be disabled.

At cascade connection, when the clear of the binary counter is needed by rewriting the compare register, set the TMnEM flag of both the upper 8-bit timer and the lower 8-bit timer to “0” to stop counting.

To read out the binary counter during the timer operation, the correct value may not be read out if it changes from lower 8 bit of upper 8 bit as it is treated as 8-bits of data in LSI internally. Stop the timer and read out to get the correct value.

5.10.2 Setup Example

■ Cascade Connection Timer Setup Example (Timer 0 + Timer 1)

Setting example of timer function that an interrupt is constantly generated by cascade connection of the timer 0 and the timer 1, as a 16-bit timer is shown. An interrupt is generated 2500 times every 1 ms by selecting source clock fs/2 (fs=5 MHz at operation).

An example setup procedure, with a description of each step is shown below.

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Stop the counter TM0MD(0x03F54) bp3 :TM0EN =0 TM1MD(0x03F55) bp3 :TM1EN =0	(1) Set the TM0EN flag of the timer 0 mode register (TM0MD) to “0”, the TM1EN flag of the timer 1 mode register to “0” to stop the timer 0 and the timer 1 counting.
(2) Select the normal lower timer operation TM0MD(0x03F54) bp4 :TM0PWM =0 bp5 :TM0MOD =0	(2) Set the TM0PWM flag and the TM0MOD flag of the TM0MD register to “0” to select the normal timer 0 operation.
(3) Set the cascade connection TM1MD(0x03F55) bp4 :TM1CAS =1	(3) Set the TM1CAS flag of the TM1MD register to “0” to connect the timer 1 and the timer 0 to the cascade.
(4) Select the count clock source TM0MD(0x03F54) bp2-0 :TM0CK2-0 =X01	(4) Select the prescaler to the clock source by the TM0CK2 to 0 flag of the TM0MD register.
(5) Select and enable the prescaler output CK0MD(0x03F56) bp2-1 :TM0PSC1-0 =X0 bp0 :TM0BAS =1	(5) Select fs/2 to the prescaler output by the TM0PSC1 to 0 flag and the TM0BAS flag of the timer 0 prescaler selection register (CK0MD).
(6) Set the interrupt generation cycle TMnOC(0x03F52,0x03F53) =0x09C3	(6) Set the timer 1 compare register + timer 0 compare register (TM1OC + TM0OC) to the interrupt generation cycle (0x09C3:2500 cycles -1). At that time, timer 1 binary counter + timer 0 binary counter (TM1BC + TM0BC) are initialized to 0x000.
(7) Disable the lower timer interrupt TM0ICR(0x03FE7) bp1 :TM0IE =0	(7) Set the TM0IE flag of the timer 0 interrupt control register (TM0ICR) to “0” to disable the interrupt.
(8) Set the level of the upper timer interrupt TM1ICR(0x03FE8) bp7-6 :TM1LV1-0 =10	(8) Set the interrupt level by the TM1LV1 to 0 flag of the timer 1 interrupt control register (TM1ICR). If any interrupt request flag may be already set, clear all request flags. [Chapter 3. 3.1.4 Interrupt Flag Setup]

Setup Procedure	Description
(9) Enable the upper timer interrupt TM1ICR(0x03FE8) bp1 :TM1IE =1	(9) Set the TM1IE flag of the TM1ICR register to “1” to enable the interrupt.
(10) Start the upper timer operation TM1MD(0x03F55) bp3 :TM1EN =1	(10) Set the TM1EN flag of the TM1MD register to “1” to operate the timer 1.
(11) Start the lower timer operation TM0MD(0x03F54) bp3 :TM0EN =1	(11) Set the TM0EN flag of the TM0MD register to “1” to operate the timer 0.

- TM1BC + TM0BC counts up from 0x0000 as a 16-bit timer.

  When TM1BC + TM0BC reaches the set value of TM1BC + TM0BC register, the timer 1 interrupt request flag is set at the next count clock, and the value of TM1BC + TM0BC becomes 0x0000 and restarts count up.

Use a 16-bit access instruction to set the (TM1OC + TM0OC) register.

Start the upper timer operation before the lower timer operation.

Chapter 6 16-bit Timers

6

6.1 Overview

This LSI contains two general-purpose 16-bit timers (Timer 7, Timer 8). The 16-bit timer has compare register with double buffer. Timer 7 (High precision 16-bit timer) contains 2 sets of compare registers with double buffering and 2 sets of independent interrupt functions such as Timer 7 interrupt and Timer 7 compare register 2-match interrupt. Timer 8 (High precision 16-bit timer) contains 2 sets of compare registers with double buffering and 2 sets of independent interrupt functions such as Timer 8 interrupt and Timer 8 compare register 2-match interrupt.

6.1.1 Functions

Table:6.1.1 shows the functions of each timer.

Table:6.1.1 16-bit Timer functions

	Timer 7 (High precision 16-bit timer)	Timer 8 (High precision 16-bit timer)
Input source	TM7IRQ T70C2IRQ	TM8IRQ T8OC2IRQ
Timer operation	O	O
Event count	O TM7IO input	OTM8IO input
Timer pulse output	O TM7IO output / TM7O output	O TM8IO output / TM8O output
PWM output (duty is changeable)	O TM7IO output / TM7O output	O TM8IO output / TM8O output
High precision PWM output (duty/ cycle are changeable)	O TM7IO output / TM7O output	O TM8IO output / TM8O output
IGBT output (duty is changeable)	O TM7IO output / TM7O output, TM8IO output / TM8O output	×
High precision IGBT output (duty/ cycle are changeable)	O TM7IO output / TM7O output, TM8IO output / TM8O output	×
Capture function	O	O
Pulse width measurement	O	O
32-bit cascade connection Timer operation, Event count, PWM output, High precision PWM output, Capture function	O	

Clock source	fosc fosc/2 fosc/4 fosc/16 fs fs/2 fs/4 fs/16 TM7IO input TM7IO input/2 TM7IO input/4 TM7IO input/16 synchronous TM7IO input synchronous TM7IO input/2 synchronous TM7IO input/4 synchronous TM7IO input/16	fosc fosc/2 fosc/4 fosc/16 fs fs/2 fs/4 fs/16 TM8IO input TM8IO input/2 TM8IO input/4 TM8IO input/16 synchronous TM8IO input synchronous TM8IO input/2 synchronous TM8IO input/4 synchronous TM8IO input/16
fosc:Machine clock (High frequency oscillation) fs:System clock [Chapter 2. 2.5 Clock Switching]		

6.1.2 Block Diagram

■ Timer 7 Block Diagram

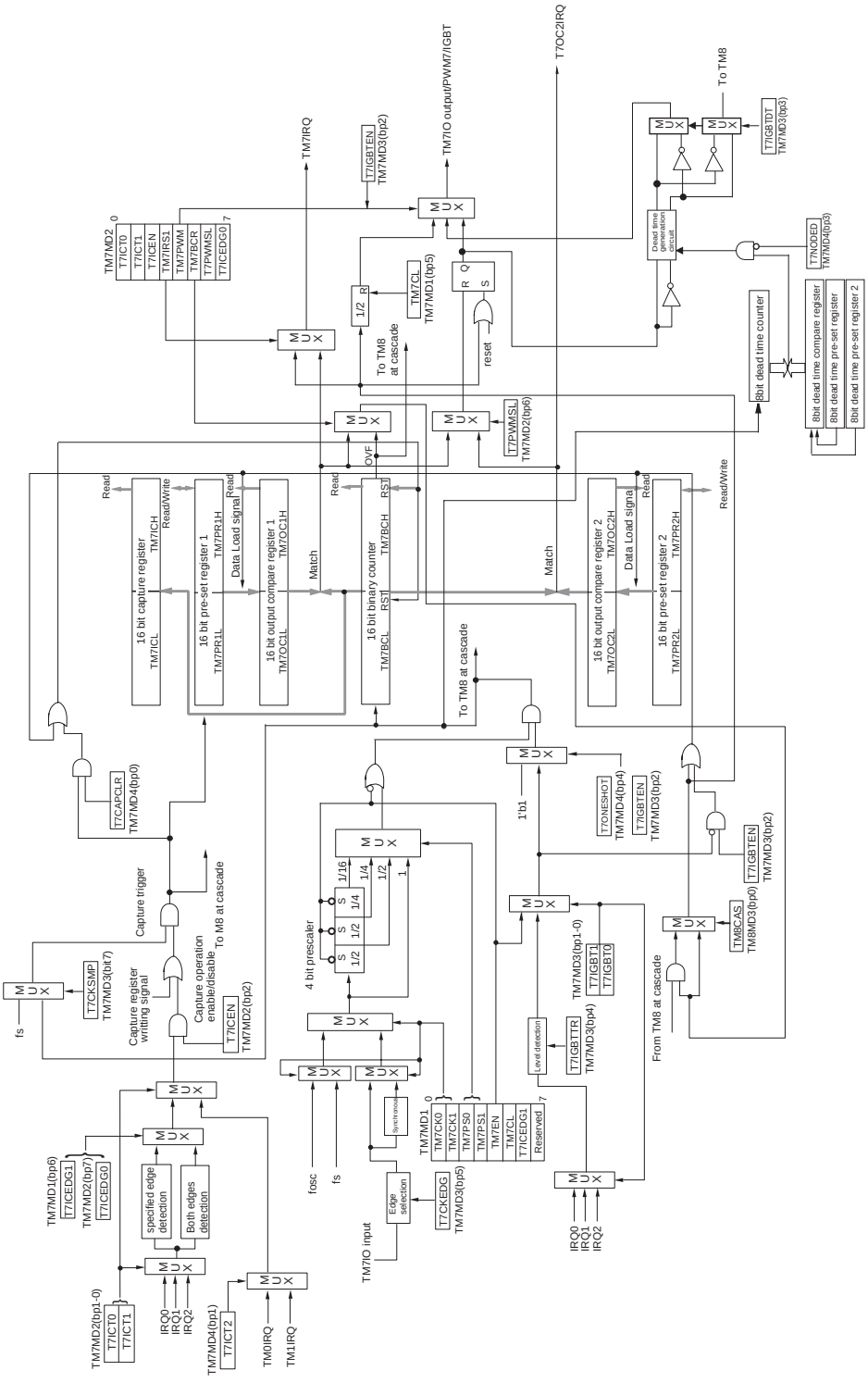


Figure:6.1.1 Timer 7 Block Diagram

■ Timer 8 Block Diagram

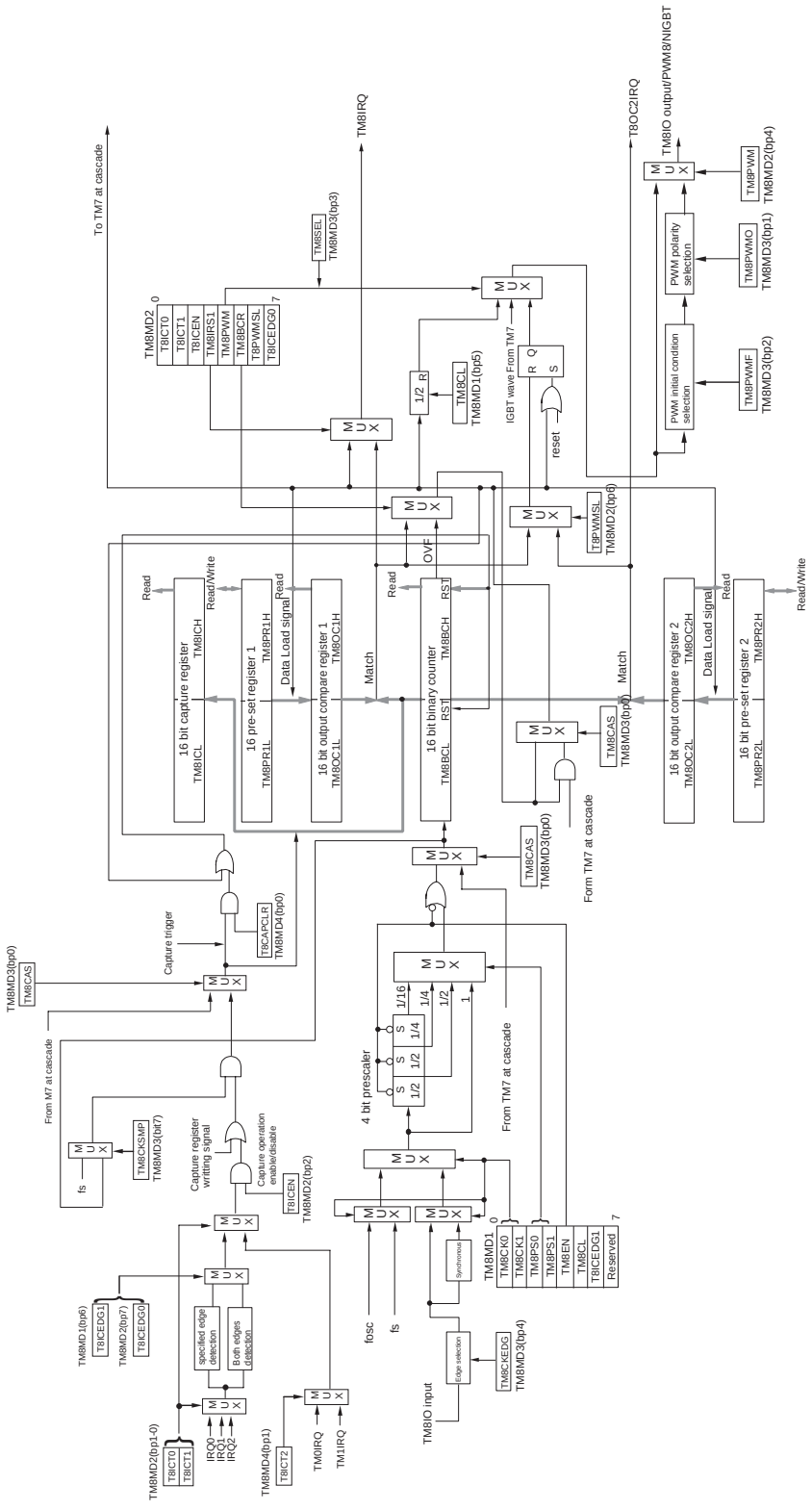


Figure:6.1.2 Timer 8 Block Diagram

6.2 Control Registers

Timer 7 contains the binary counter (TM7BC), the compare register 1 (TM7OC1) with its double buffer preset register 1 (TM7PR1), the compare register 2 (TM7OC2) with its double buffer preset register 2 (TM7PR2), the capture register (TM7IC), the dead time preset register 1 (TM7DPR1) and the dead time preset register 2 (TM7DPR2). Timer 7 is controlled by the mode register 1 (TM7MD1), the mode register 2 (TM7MD2), the mode register 3 (TM7MD3), and the mode register 4 (TM7MD4). Timer 8 contains the binary counter (TM8BC), the compare register 1 (TM8OC1) with its double buffer preset register 1 (TM8PR1), the compare register 2 (TM8OC2) with its double buffer preset register 2 (TM8PR2) and the capture register (TM8IC). Timer 8 is controlled by the mode register 1 (TM8MD1), the mode register 2 (TM8MD2), the mode register 3 (TM8MD3) and and the mode register 4 (TM8MD4).

6.2.1 Registers

Table:6.2.1 shows the registers that control timer 7.

Table:6.2.1 16-bit Timer Control Registers (1/2)

	Register	Address	R/W	Function	Page
Timer 7	TM7BCL	0x03F70	R	Timer 7 binary counter (lower 8 bits)	VI-11
	TM7BCH	0x03F71	R	Timer 7 binary counter (upper 8 bits)	VI-11
	TM7OC1L	0x03F72	R	Timer 7 compare register 1 (lower 8 bits)	VI-9
	TM7OC1H	0x03F73	R	Timer 7 compare register 1 (upper 8 bits)	VI-9
	TM7PR1L	0x03F74	R/W	Timer 7 preset register 1 (lower 8 bits)	VI-10
	TM7PR1H	0x03F75	R/W	Timer 7 preset register 1 (upper 8 bits)	VI-10
	TM7ICL	0x03F76	R	Timer 7 capture register 1 (lower 8 bits)	VI-11
	TM7ICH	0x03F77	R	Timer 7 capture register 1 (upper 8 bits)	VI-11
	TM7MD1	0x03F78	R/W	Timer 7 mode register 1	VI-16
	TM7MD2	0x03F79	R/W	Timer 7 mode register 2	VI-17
	TM7OC2L	0x03F7A	R	Timer 7 compare register 2 (lower 8 bits)	VI-9
	TM7OC2H	0x03F7B	R	Timer 7 compare register 2 (upper 8 bits)	VI-9
	TM7PR2L	0x03F7C	R/W	Timer 7 preset register 2 (lower 8 bits)	VI-10
	TM7PR2H	0x03F7D	R/W	Timer 7 preset register 2 (upper 8 bits)	VI-10
	TM7MD3	0x03F8E	R/W	Timer 7 mode register 3	VI-18
	TM7MD4	0x03F6E	R/W	Timer 7 mode register 4	VI-19
	TM7ICR	0x03FED	R/W	Timer 7 interrupt control register	III-30
	T7OC2ICR	0x03FEE	R/W	Timer 7 compare register 2 match interrupt control register	III-31
	P1OMD	0x03FIC	R/W	Port 1 output mode register	IV-10
	P1DIR	0x03F31	R/W	Port 1 direction control register	IV-8
	P5OMD	0x03F2C	R/W	Port 5 output mode register	IV-44
	P5DIR	0x03F35	R/W	Port 5 direction control register	IV-42
	TM7DPR1	0x03F7E	R/W	Dead time preset register 1	VI-12
	TM7DPR2	0x03F7F	R/W	Dead time preset register 2	VI-12

Table:6.2.2 shows the registers that control timer 8.

Table:6.2.2 16-bit Timer Control Registers (2/2)

	Register	Address	R/W	Function	Page
Timer 8	TM8BCL	0x03F80	R	Timer 8 binary counter (lower 8 bits)	VI-15
	TM8BCH	0x03F81	R	Timer 8 binary counter (upper 8 bits)	VI-15
	TM8OC1L	0x03F82	R	Timer 8 compare register 1 (lower 8 bits)	VI-13
	TM8OC1H	0x03F83	R	Timer 8 compare register 1 (upper 8 bits)	VI-13
	TM8PR1L	0x03F84	R/W	Timer 8 preset register 1 (lower 8 bits)	VI-14
	TM8PR1H	0x03F85	R/W	Timer 8 preset register 1 (upper 8 bits)	VI-14
	TM8ICL	0x03F86	R	Timer 8 capture register 1 (lower 8 bits)	VI-15
	TM8ICH	0x03F87	R	Timer 8 capture register 1 (upper 8 bits)	VI-15
	TM8MD1	0x03F88	R/W	Timer 8 mode register 1	VI-20
	TM8MD2	0x03F89	R/W	Timer 8 mode register 2	VI-21
	TM8OC2L	0x03F8A	R	Timer 8 compare register 2 (lower 8 bits)	VI-13
	TM8OC2H	0x03F8B	R	Timer 8 compare register 2 (upper 8 bits)	VI-13
	TM8PR2L	0x03F8C	R/W	Timer 8 preset register 2 (lower 8 bits)	VI-14
	TM8PR2H	0x03F8D	R/W	Timer 8 preset register 2 (upper 8 bits)	VI-14
	TM8MD3	0x03F8F	R/W	Timer 8 mode register 3	VI-22
	TM8MD4	0x03F6F	R/W	Timer 8 mode register 4	VI-23
	TM8ICR	0x03FF6	R/W	Timer 8 interrupt control register	III-39
	T8OC2ICR	0x03FF7	R/W	Timer 8 compare register 2 match interrupt control register	III-40
	P1OMD	0x03F1C	R/W	Port 1 output mode register	IV-10
	P1DIR	0x03F31	R/W	Port 1 direction control register	IV-8
	P5OMD	0x03F2C	R/W	Port 5 output mode register	IV-44
	P5DIR	0x03F35	R/W	Port 5 direction control register	IV-42

6.2.2 Programmable Timer Registers

Timer 7 has a set of 16-bit programmable timer registers, which contains a compare register, a preset register, a binary counter and a capture register. Each register has 2 sets of 8-bit register. Operate these registers by 16-bit access.

A compare register is a 16-bit register which stores comparative value of the compare register and the binary counter.

■ Timer 7 Compare Register 1 (TM7OC1)

Table:6.2.3 Timer 7 Compare Register 1 Lower 8 bits (TM7OC1L:0x03F72)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TM7OC1L7	TM7OC1L6	TM7OC1L5	TM7OC1L4	TM7OC1L3	TM7OC1L2	TM7OC1L1	TM7OC1L0
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R							

Table:6.2.4 Timer 7 Compare Register 1 Upper 8 bits (TM7OC1H:0x03F73)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TM7OC1H7	TM7OC1H6	TM7OC1H5	TM7OC1H4	TM7OC1H3	TM7OC1H2	TM7OC1H1	TM7OC1H0
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R							

■ Timer 7 Compare Register 2 Lower 8 bits (TM7OC2)

Table:6.2.5 Timer 7 Compare Register 2 Lower 8 bits (TM7OCS2L:0x03F7A)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TM7OC2L7	TM7OC2L6	TM7OC2L5	TM7OC2L4	TM7OC2L3	TM7OC2L2	TM7OC2L1	TM7OC2L0
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R							

Table:6.2.6 Timer 7 Compare Register 2 Upper 8 bits (TM7OCS2H:0x03F7B)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TM7OC2H7	TM7OC2H6	TM7OC2H5	TM7OC2H4	TM7OC2H3	TM7OC2H2	TM7OC2H1	TM7OC2H0
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R							

Timer 7 preset register 1 and 2 are buffer registers of the compare registers 1, 2 of timer 7. If the set value is written to the timer 7 preset registers 1, 2 when the counting is stopped, the same set value is loaded to the timer 7 compare register. If set value is written to the timer 7 preset registers 1, 2 during counting, the set value of the timer 7 preset registers 1, 2 is loaded to the timer 7 compare registers 1, 2 at the timing that the timer 7 binary counter is cleared. Also, If the set value is written to the timer 7 preset register 1 and 2 during IGBT operation, the set value of the timer 7 preset register is loaded to the timer 7 compare register at the timing that the IGBT is disabled.

■ Timer 7 Preset Register 1 (TM7PR1)

Table:6.2.7 Timer 7 Preset Register 1 Lower 8 bits (TM7PR1L:0x03F74)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TM7PR1L7	TM7PR1L6	TM7PR1L5	TM7PR1L4	TM7PR1L3	TM7PR1L2	TM7PR1L1	TM7PR1L0
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R/W							

Table:6.2.8 Timer 7 Preset Register 1 Upper 8 bits (TM7PR1H:0x03F75)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TM7PR1H7	TM7PR1H6	TM7PR1H5	TM7PR1H4	TM7PR1H3	TM7PR1H2	TM7PR1H1	TM7PR1H0
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R/W							

■ Timer 7 Preset Register 2 (TM7PR2)

Table:6.2.9 Timer 7 Preset Register 2 Lower 8 bits (TM7PR2L:0x03F7C)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TM7PR2L7	TM7PR2L6	TM7PR2L5	TM7PR2L4	TM7PR2L3	TM7PR2L2	TM7PR2L1	TM7PR2L0
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R/W							

Table:6.2.10 Timer 7 Preset Register 2 Upper 8 bits (TM7PR1H:0x03F7D)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TM7PR2H7	TM7PR2H6	TM7PR2H5	TM7PR2H4	TM7PR2H3	TM7PR2H2	TM7PR2H1	TM7PR2H0
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R/W							

Binary counter is a 16-bit up counter. If any data is written to a preset register when the counting is stopped, the binary counter is cleared to 0x0000. At IGBT setting, when IGBT operation is stopped, the binary counter is cleared to 0x0000. Also, by setting the register, the binary counter is cleared to 0x0000 at capture.

■ Timer 7 Binary Counter (TM7BC)

Table:6.2.11 Timer 7 Binary Counter Lower 8 bits (TM7BCL:0x03F70)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TM7BCL7	TM7BCL6	TM7BCL5	TM7BCL4	TM7BCL3	TM7BCL2	TM7BCL1	TM7BCL0
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R							

Table:6.2.12 Timer 7 Binary Counter Upper 8 bits (TM7BCH:0x03F71)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TM7BCH7	TM7BCH6	TM7BCH5	TM7BCH4	TM7BCH3	TM7BCH2	TM7BCH1	TM7BCH0
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R							

Input capture register is a register that holds the value loaded from a binary counter by a capture trigger. A capture trigger is generated by an input signal from an external interrupt pin, the timer 0 interrupt, the timer 1 interrupt and when an arbitrary value is written to an input capture register (Directly writing to the register by program is disabled.).

■ Timer 7 Input Capture Register (TM7IC)

Table:6.2.13 Timer 7 Input Capture Register Lower 8 bits (TM7ICL;0x03F76)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TM7ICL7	TM7ICL6	TM7ICL5	TM7ICL4	TM7ICL3	TM7ICL2	TM7ICL1	TM7ICL0
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R							

Table:6.2.14 Timer 7 Input Capture Register Upper 8 bits (TM7ICH;0x03F77)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TM7ICH7	TM7ICH6	TM7ICH5	TM7ICH4	TM7ICH3	TM7ICH2	TM7ICH1	TM7ICH0
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R							

■ Timer 7 Dead Time Preset Register 1 (TM7DPR1)

Table:6.2.15 Timer 7 Dead Time Preset Register 1 (TM7DPR1:0x03F7E)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TM7DPR17	TM7DPR16	TM7DPR15	TM7DPR14	TM7DPR13	TM7DPR12	TM7DPR11	TM7DPR10
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R/W							

■ Timer 7 Dead Time Preset Register 2 (TM7DPR2)

Table:6.2.16 Timer 7 Dead Time Preset Register 2 (TM7DPR2:0x03F7F)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TM7IDPR27	TM7IDPR26	TM7IDPR25	TM7IDPR24	TM7IDPR23	TM7IDPR22	TM7IDPR21	TM7IDPR20
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R/W							

Timer 8 has a set of 16-bit programmable timer registers, which contains a compare register, a preset register, a binary counter and a capture register. Each register has 2 sets of 8-bit register. Operate these registers by 16-bit access.

A compare register is a 16-bit register which stores comparative value of the compare register and the binary counter.

■ Timer 8 Compare register 1 (TM8OC1)

Table:6.2.17 Timer 8 Compare register 1 Lower 8 bits (TM8OC1L:0x03F82)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TM8OC1L7	TM8OC1L6	TM8OC1L5	TM8OC1L4	TM8OC1L3	TM8OC1L2	TM8OC1L1	TM8OC1L0
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R							

Table:6.2.18 Timer 8 Compare register 1 Upper 8 bits (TM8OC1H:0x03F83)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TM8OC1H7	TM8OC1H6	TM8OC1H5	TM8OC1H4	TM8OC1H3	TM8OC1H2	TM8OC1H1	TM8OC1H0
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R							

■ Timer 8 Compare Register 2 (TM8OC2)

Table:6.2.19 Timer 8 Compare Register 2 Lower 8bits (TM8OC2L:0x03F8A)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TM8OC2L7	TM8OC2L6	TM8OC2L5	TM8OC2L4	TM8OC2L3	TM8OC2L2	TM8OC2L1	TM8OC2L0
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R							

Table:6.2.20 Timer 8 Compare Register 2 Upper 8bits (TM8OC2H:0x03F8B)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TM7OC2H7	TM7OC2H6	TM7OC2H5	TM7OC2H4	TM7OC2H3	TM7OC2H2	TM7OC2H1	TM7OC2H0
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R							

Timer 8 preset register 1 and 2 are buffer registers of the compare registers 1, 2 of timer 8. If the set value is written to the timer 8 preset registers 1, 2 when the counting is stopped, the same set value is loaded to the timer 7 compare register. If set value is written to the timer 8 preset registers 1, 2 during counting, the set value of the timer 8 preset registers 1, 2 is loaded to the timer 8 compare registers 1, 2 at the timing that the timer 8 binary counter is cleared.

■ Timer 8 Preset Register 1 (TM8PR1)

Table:6.2.21 Timer 8 Preset Register 1 Lower 8 bits (TM8PR1L:0x03F84)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TM8PR1L7	TM8PR1L6	TM8PR1L5	TM8PR1L4	TM8PR1L3	TM8PR1L2	TM8PR1L1	TM8PR1L0
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R/W							

Table:6.2.22 Timer 8 Preset Register 1 Upper 8 bits (TM8PR1H:0x03F85)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TM8PR1H7	TM8PR1H6	TM8PR1H5	TM8PR1H4	TM8PR1H3	TM8PR1H2	TM8PR1H1	TM8PR1H0
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R/W							

■ Timer 8 Preset Register 2 (TM8PR2)

Table:6.2.23 Timer 8 Preset Register 2 Lower 8 bits (TM8PR2L:0x03F8C)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TM8PR2L7	TM8PR2L6	TM8PR2L5	TM8PR2L4	TM8PR2L3	TM8PR2L2	TM8PR2L1	TM8PR2L0
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R/W							

Table:6.2.24 Timer 8 Preset Register 2 Upper 8 bits (TM8PR2H:0x03F8D)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TM8PR2H7	TM8PR2H6	TM8PR2H5	TM8PR2H4	TM8PR2H3	TM8PR2H2	TM8PR2H1	TM8PR2H0
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R/W							

Binary counter is a 16-bit up counter. If any data is written to a preset register when the counting is stopped, the binary counter is cleared to 0x0000. During the timer counting, the binary counter is cleared to 0x0000 at capture by setting the register.

■ Timer 8 Binary Counter (TM8BC)

Table:6.2.25 Timer 8 Binary Counter Lower 8 bits (TM8BCL:0x03F80)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TM8BCL7	TM8BCL6	TM8BCL5	TM8BCL4	TM8BCL3	TM8BCL2	TM8BCL1	TM8BCL0
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R							

Table:6.2.26 Timer 8 Binary Counter Upper 8 bits (TM8BCH:0x03F81)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TM8BCH7	TM8BCH6	TM8BCH5	TM8BCH4	TM8BCH3	TM8BCH2	TM8BCH1	TM8BCH0
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R							

Input capture register is a register that holds the value loaded from a binary counter by a capture trigger. A capture trigger is generated by an input signal from an external interrupt pin, the timer 0 interrupt, the timer 1 interrupt and when an arbitrary value is written to an input capture register (Directly writing to the register by program is disabled.).

■ Timer 8 Input Capture Register (TM8IC)

Table:6.2.27 Timer 8 Input Capture Register Lower 8 bits (TM8ICL:0x03F86)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TM8ICL7	TM8ICL6	TM8ICL5	TM8ICL4	TM8ICL3	TM8ICL2	TM8ICL1	TM8ICL0
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R							

Table:6.2.28 Timer 8 Input Capture Register Upper 8 bits (TM8ICH:0x03F87)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TM8ICH7	TM8ICH6	TM8ICH5	TM8ICH4	TM8ICH3	TM8ICH2	TM8ICH1	TM8ICH0
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R							

6.2.3 Timer Mode Registers

This is a readable/writable register that controls timer 7.

■ Timer 7 Mode Register 1(TM7MD1)

Table:6.2.29 Timer 7 Mode Register 1(TM7MD1:0x03F78)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	Reserved	T7ICEDG1	TM7CL	TM7EN	TM7PS1	TM7PS0	TM7CK1	TM7CK0
At reset	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W							

bp	Flag	Description
7	Reserved	Set always “0”.
6	T7ICEDG1	Capture trigger edge selection 0:Falling edge 1:Rising edge
5	TM7CL	Timer output reset signal 0:Operate timer output 1:Disable timer output
4	TM7EN	Timer 7 count control 0:Halt the count 1:Operate the count
3-2	TM7PS1 TM7PS0	Count clock selection 00:1/1 of clock 01:1/2 of clock 10:1/4 of clock 11:1/16 of clock
1-0	TM7CK1 TM7CK0	Clock source selection 00:fosc 01:fs 10:TM7IO input 11:Synchronous TM7IO input

■ Timer 7 Mode Register 2 (TM7MD2)

Table:6.2.30 Timer 7 Mode Register 2 (TM7MD2:0x03F79)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	T7ICEDG0	T7PWMSL	TM7BCR	TM7PWM	TM7IRS1	T7ICEN	T7ICT1	T7ICT0
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W							

bp	Flag	Description
7	T7ICEDG0	Capture trigger edge selection 0:Select the both edges 1:Select the specified edge
6	T7PWMSL	PWM mode selection 0:Set duty by OC1 1:Set duty by OC2
5	TM7BCR	Timer 7 count clear factor selection 0:Full count OVF 1:Match of BC and OC1
4	TM7PWM	Timer output waveform selection 0:Output timer 1:Output PWM
3	TM7IRS1	Timer 7 interrupt factor selection 0:Counter clear 1:Match of BC and OC1
2	T7ICEN	Input capture operation enable flag 0:Disable capture operation 1:Enable capture operation
1-0	T7ICT1 T7ICT0	Capture trigger selection 00:External interrupt 0 input signal 01:External interrupt 1 input signal 10:External interrupt 2 input signal 11:Disable

■ Timer 7 Mode Register 3 (TM7MD3)

Table:6.2.31 Timer 7 Mode Register 3 (TM7MD3:0x03F8E)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TM7CKSMP	Reserved	TM7CKEDG	T7IGBTTR	T7IGBTDT	T7IGBTEN	T7IGBT1	T7IGBT0
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W							

bp	Flag	Description
7	TM7CKSMP	Capture sampling selection 0:Count clock 1:fs
6	Reserved	Set always “0”.
5	TM7CKEDG	TM7IO count edge selection 0:Rising edge 1:Both edges
4	T7IGBTTR	IGBT trigger level selection 0:H 1:L
3	T7IGBTDT	IGBT dead timer insert timing 0:Falling edge standard 1:Rising edge standard
2	T7IGBTEN	IGBT operation enable 0:Disable 1:Enable
1-0	T7IGBT1 T7IGBT0	IGBT/timer startup factor selection 01:External interrupt 0 input signal 10:Externa interrupt 1 input signal 11:External interrupt 2 input signal 00:Timer 7 count operation

When IGBT is not selected, set as
T7IGBTEN=0
T7IGBT1-0=00

■ Timer 7 Mode Register 4 (TM7MD4)

Table:6.2.32 Timer 7 Mode Register 4 (TM7MD4:0x03F6E)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	-	-	T7ONESHOT	T7NODED	-	T7ICT2	T7CAPCLR
At reset	-	-	-	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W							

bp	Flag	Description
7-5	-	-
4	T7ONESHOT	One shot pulse selection 0:Continuous pulse 1:One shot pulse
3	T7NODED	Dead time selection 0:With dead time 1:Without dead time
2	-	-
1	T7ICT2	Capture trigger selection 0:Timer 0 interrupt 1:Timer 1 interrupt
0	T7CAPCLR	BC clearance at capture 0:Clear 1:Unclear

T7CAPCLR flag is effective when timer is operating. The binary counter is uncleared when capturing at timer stop.

This is a readable/writable register that controls timer 8.

■ Timer 8 Mode Register 1(TM8MD1)

Table:6.2.33 Timer 8 Mode Register 1(TM8MD1:0x03F88)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	Reserved	T8ICEDG1	TM8CL	TM8EN	TM8PS1	TM8PS0	TM8CK1	TM8CK0
At reset	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W							

bp	Flag	Description
7	Reserved	Set always “0”
6	T8ICEDG1	Capture trigger edge selection 0:Falling edge 1:Rising edge
5	TM8CL	Timer output reset signal 0:Operate timer output 1:Disable timer output (Reset)
4	TM8EN	Timer 8 count control 0:Halt the count 1:Operate the count
3-2	TM8PS1 TM8PS0	Count clock selection 00:1/1 of clock 01:1/2 of clock 10:1/4 of clock 11:1/16 of clock
1-0	TM8CK1 TM8CK0	Clock source selection 00:fosc 01:fs 10:TM8IO input 11:Synchronous TM8IO input

■ Timer 8 Mode Register 2 (TM8MD2)

Table:6.2.34 Timer 8 Mode Register 2 (TM8MD2:0x03F89)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	T8ICEDG0	TM8PWMSL	TM8BCR	TM8PWM	TM8IRS1	TM8ICEN	TM8ICT1	TM8ICT0
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W							

bp	Flag	Description
7	T8ICEDG0	Capture trigger edge selection 0:Select the both edges 1:Select the specified edge
6	TM8PWMSL	PWM mode selection 0:Set duty by OC1 1:Set duty by OC2
5	TM8BCR	Timer 8 count clear factor selection 0:Full count OVF 1:Match of BC and OC1
4	TM8PWM	Timer output waveform selection 0:Output timer 1:Output PWM
3	TM8IRS1	Timer 8 interrupt factor selection 0:Counter clear 1:Match of BC and OC1
2	TM8ICEN	Input capture operation enable flag 0:Disable capture operation 1:Enable capture operation
1-0	TM8ICT1 TM8ICT0	Capture trigger selection 00:External interrupt 0 input signal 01:External interrupt 1 input signal 10:External interrupt 2 input signal 11:Timer interrupt

■ Timer 8 Mode Register 3 (TM8MD3)

Table:6.2.35 Timer 8 Mode Register 3 (TM8MD3:0x03F8F)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TM8CKSMP	-	-	TM8CKEDG	TM8SEL	TM8PWMF	TM8PWMO	TM8CAS
At reset	0	-	-	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W							

bp	Flag	Description
7	TM8CKSMP	Capture sampling selection 0:Count clock 1:fs
6	-	-
5	-	-
4	TM8CKEDG	TM8IO count edge selection 0:Falling edge 1:Both edges
3	TM8SEL	Timer 8 output selection 0:Timer 8 output 1:IGBT output
2	TM8PWMF	PWM output selection at timer 8 stopped 0:L 1:H
1	TM8PWMO	Timer 8 PWM output polarity selection 0:Normal turn 1:Reverse turn
0	TM8CAS	Cascade selection 0:Timer 7, Timer 8 independence 1:Timer 7, Timer 8 cascade

■ Timer 8 Mode Register 4 (TM8MD4)

Table:6.2.36 Timer 8 Mode Register 4 (TM8MD4:0x03F6F)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	-	-	-	-	-	T8ICT2	T8CAPCLR
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W							

bp	Flag	Description
7-2	-	-
1	T8ICT2	Capture trigger selection 0:Timer 0 interrupt 1:Timer 1 interrupt
0	T8CAPCLR	BC clearance at capture 0:Cleart 1:Unclear

T7CAPCLR flag is effective when timer is operating. The binary counter is uncleared when capturing at timer stop.

6.3 Operation

6.3.1 Operation

The timer operation can constantly generate interrupts.

■ 16-bit Timer Operation (Timer 7, Timer 8)

The generation cycle of an timer interrupt is set by the clock source selection and the set value of the compare register 1 (TMnOC1), in advance. When the binary counter (TMnBC) reaches the set value of the compare register 1, an interrupt is generated at the next count clock. There are 2 sources to be selected to clear the binary counter; the TMnOC1 compare match and the full count overflow. After the binary counter is cleared, the counting up is restarted from 0x0000.

Table:6.3.1 16-bit Timer Interrupt Source and Binary Counter Clear Source (Timer 7, Timer 8)

TM7MD2 register		Interrupt source	Binary counter clear source
TM7IRS1 flag	TM7BCR flag		
1	1	TM7OC1 compare match	TM7OC1 compare match
0	1	TM7OC1 compare match	TM7OC1 compare match
1	0	TM7OC1 compare match	Full count overflow
0	0	Full count overflow	Full count overflow
TM8MD2 register		Interrupt source	Binary counter clear source
TM8IRS1 flag	TM8BCR flag		
1	1	TM8OC1 compare match	TM8OC1 compare match
0	1	TM8OC1 compare match	TM8OC1 compare match
1	0	TM8OC1 compare match	Full count overflow
0	0	Full count overflow	Full count overflow

Timer n can generate another set of an independent interrupt (timer n compare register 2 match interrupt) by the set value of the timer n compare register 2 (TMnOC2). At the time of the interrupt, the binary counter is cleared as the above setup.

The compare register is double buffer type. So, when the value of the preset registers is changed during the counting, the changed value is stored to the compare register when the binary counter is cleared. This function can change the compare register value constantly, without disturbing the cycle during timer operation (Reload function).

When the CPU reads the 16-bit binary counter (TMnBC), the read data is handled in 8-bits units even if it is a 16-bit MOVW instruction. As a result, it will read the data incorrectly if a carry from the lower 8 bits to the upper 8 bits occurs during counting operation.
To read the correct value of the 16-bit counting (TMnBC), use the writing program function to the input capture register (TMnIC). By writing to the TMnIC, the counting data of TMnBC can be stored to TMnIC to read out the correct counting value during timer operation.
[Chapter 6.8.1. Operation]

To count properly, do not switch the count clock on the timer operation. To switch the count clock, stop the timer operation.

Table:6.3.2shows the clock source that can be selected.

Table:6.3.2 Clock Source at Timer Operation (Timer 7, Timer 8)

Clock source	1 count time
fosc	100 ns
fosc/2	200 ns
fosc/4	400 ns
fosc/16	1.6 µs
fs	200 ns
fs/2	400 ns
fs/4	800 ns
fs/16	1.6 µs
fosc=10 MHz fs=fosc/2=5 MHz	

■ Count Timing of Timer Operation (Timer 7, Timer 8)

The binary counter counts up with the selected clock source as the count clock. The basic operation of whole 16-bit timer functions is as below.

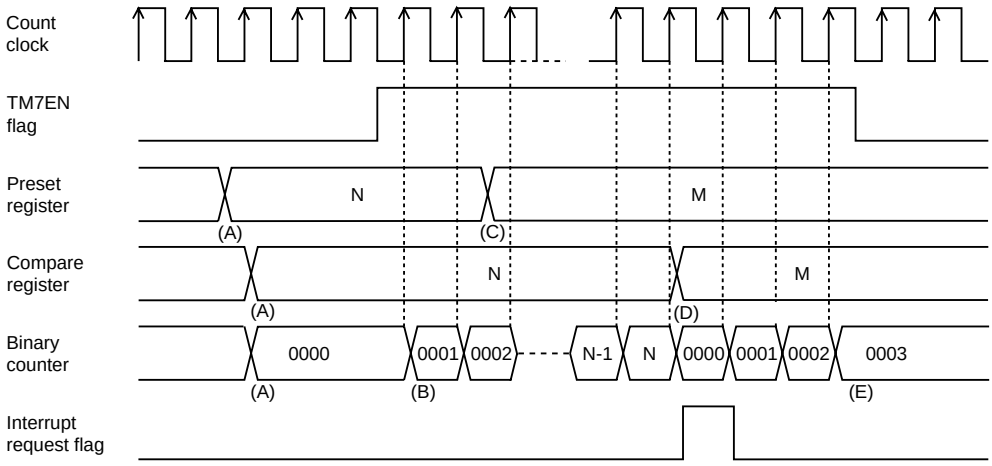


Figure:6.3.1 Count Timing of Timer Operation (Timer 7, Timer 8)

(A)When a data is written to the preset register while the TMnEN flag is stopped (“0”), the same value is loaded during the writing cycle and the binary counter is cleared to 0x0000.

(B)When TMnEN flag is (“1”), the binary counter starts counting. The counting starts at the rising edge of the count clock.

(C)Even if the preset register is rewritten when the TMnEN flag is (“1”), the binary counter is not changed.

(D)When the binary counter reaches value of compare register 1, the set value of the preset register is loaded to the compare register at the next count clock. And the interrupt request flag is set at the next count clock, and the binary counter is cleared to 0x0000 to restart counting up.

(E)When the TMnEN flag is (“0”), the binary counter is stopped.

When the binary counter reaches the value of the compare register, the interrupt request flag is set to the next count clock, and the binary counter is cleared. So, set the compare register as:
(the set value of the compare register) = (the counts till the interrupt generation-1)

When the timer n compare register 2 match interrupt is generated and TMnOC1 compare match is selected as a binary counter clear source, the set value of the compare register 2 should be smaller than the set value of the compare register.

On the interrupt service routine, clear the timer interrupt request flag before the timer is started.

When the binary counter is used as a free-counter that counts 0x0000 to 0xFFFF, set 0xFFFF to the compare register or set the TM7BCR flag of the TM7MD2 register to “0”.

When the TMnEN flag of the TMnMD register is changed with other bits, the binary counter may count up by switching operation.

Set up 16-bit timer counter clock should be done when the timer interrupt is disabled.

When the binary counter is read out on the timer operation, it is regarded as the data by 8 bits unit in LSI. So, when the digit is raised from lower 8 bits to upper 8 bits, correct value cannot be read out.
Stop the timer to read out the correct value.

6.3.2 Setup Example

■ Timer Operation Setup Example

Timer 7 generates an interrupt constantly for timer function. Fosc/2 (fosc=10 MHz at operation) is selected as a clock source to generate an interrupt every 1000 cycles (200 ms).
An example setup procedure, with a description of each step is shown below.

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Stop the counter TM7MD1(0x03F78) bp4:TM7EN =0	(1) Set the TM7EN flag of the timer 7 mode register 1 (TM7MD) to “0” to stop the timer 7 counting.
(2) Disable the interrupt TM7ICR(0x03FED) bp1:TM7IE =0	(2) Set the TM7IE flag of the TM7CIR register to “0” to disable the interrupt.
(3) Select the timer clear source TM7MD2(0x03F79) bp5:TM7BCR =1	(3) Set the TM7BCR flag of the timer 7 mode register 2 (TM7MD2) to “1” to select the compare match to the binary counter clear source.
(4) Select the count clock source TM7MD1 (0x03F78) bp1-0:TM7CK1-0 =00 bp3-2:TM7PS1-0 =01	(4) Select fosc to the clock source by the TM7CK1 to 0 flag of the TM7MD1 register. Besides, select 1/2 fosc to the count clock source by the TM7PS1 to 0 flag.
(5) Select IGBT/timer startup factor TM7MD3(0x03F8E) bp1-0:T7IGBT1-0=00	(5) Set IGBT/timer startup factor to timer 7 count operation.
(6) Set the interrupt generation cycle TM7PR1(0x03F75,0x03F74) =0x03E7	(6) Set the interrupt generation cycle to the timer 7 preset register 1 (TM7PR1). The cycle is 1000. The set value should be 1000-1=999 (0x03E7). At the time, the same value is loaded to the timer 7 compare register 1 (TM7OC1), and the timer 7 binary counter (TM7BC) is initialized to 0x0000.
(7) Set the interrupt level TM7ICR(0x03FED) bp7-6:TM7LV1-0 =10	(7) Set the interrupt level by the TM7LV1 to 0 flag of the timer 7 interrupt control register (TM7ICR). If the interrupt request flag is already set, clear the request flag. [Chapter 3 3.1.4. Interrupt Flag Setup]
(8) Enable the interrupt TM7ICR (0x03FED) bp1:TM7IE =1	(8) Set the TM7IC flag of the TM7ICR register to “1” to enable the interrupt.
(9) Start the timer operation TM7MD1 (0x03F78) bp4:TM7EN =1	(9) Set the TM7EN flag of the TM7MD1 register to “1” to operate the timer 7.

TM7BC counts up from 0x0000. When TM7BC reaches the set value of the TM7OC1 register, the timer 7 interrupt request flag is set at the next count clock and the TM7BC becomes 0x0000 and counts up again.

6.4 16-bit Event Count

6.4.1 Operation

Event count operation has 2 types;TMnIO input and synchronous TMnIO input. These can be selected as the count clock. Each type can select 1/1, 1/2, 1/4, or 1/16 as a count clock source. Also, it is possible to select the count edge. (the falling edge and the both edge at the normal operation are selectable)

■ 16-bit Event Count Operation (Timer 7, Timer 8)

The binary counter (TMnBC) counts the external signal input to the TMnIO pin. If the binary counter reaches the set value of the compare register (TMnOC), an interrupt can be generated at the next count clock.

Table:6.4.1

	Timer 7	Timer 8
Event input	TM7IO input (P13)	TM8IO input (P12)
	Synchronous TM7IO input	Synchronous TM8IO input

■ Count Timing of TMnIO Input

When TMnIO input is selected, TMnIO input signal is input to the timer n count clock. The binary counter counts up at the falling edge of the TMnIO input signal or TMnIO input signal that passed the divider.

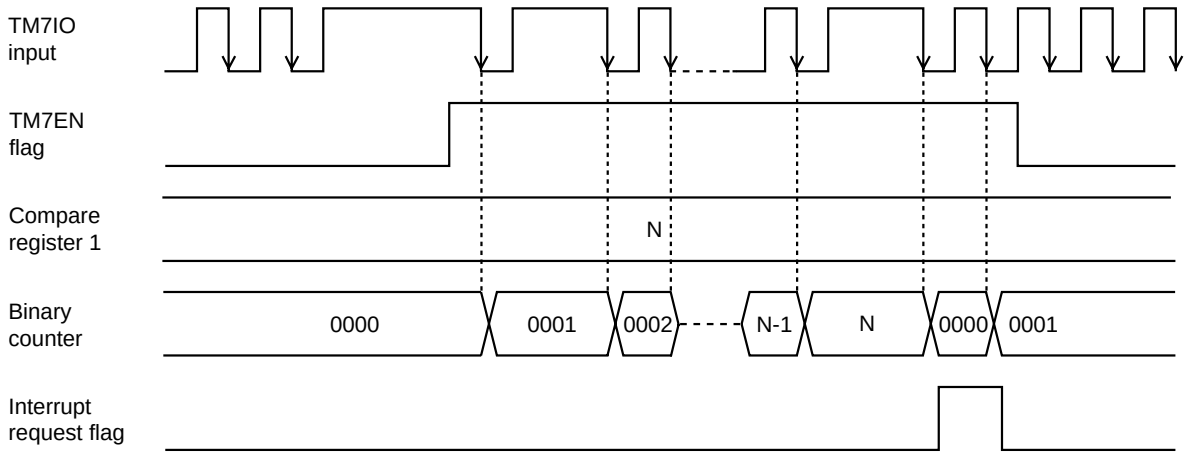


Figure:6.4.1 Count Timing TMnIO Input (Timer 7, Timer 8)

If the binary counter is read out during operation, incorrect data at counting up may be read. Also, the binary counter may have unexpected value at the timer stopped. To prevent this, use the event count by the synchronous TMnIO input, which is shown in the following page.

When using TMnIO input, after selecting fs as the count clock first, then set each mode register and preset register. After that, operate the timer on selecting TMnIO input. Do not write any data to the preset register on the operation. Only TMnIO input can recover from STOP mode in 16-bit timer.

When using the event input (TMnIO input), clear the binary counter before starting the timer operation. Also, when setting 0x0000 to the compare register, use the event count by TMnIO input which is shown below.

When the event input (TMnIO input) is selected as the count clock source, even if the set value is written to the preset register at the timer stop, the same set value may not be loaded to the compare register. To prevent this, select the system clock (fx) for the count clock source once, write the set value to the preset register, then select the event input (TMnIO) as the clock source to start the timer operation.

The binary counter should not be read out after the timer operation is stopped when setting the event input (TMnIO input) as the count clock source as the binary counter may reach to an unexpected value.

■ Count Timing of Synchronous TMnIO Input (Timer 7, Timer 8)

If the synchronous TMnIO input is selected, the synchronizing circuit output signal is input to the timer n count clock. The synchronizing circuit output signal is changed at the falling edge of the system clock after the TMnIO input signal is changed. The binary counter counts up at the falling edge of the synchronizing circuit output signal or the synchronizing circuit output signal that passed through the division circuit.

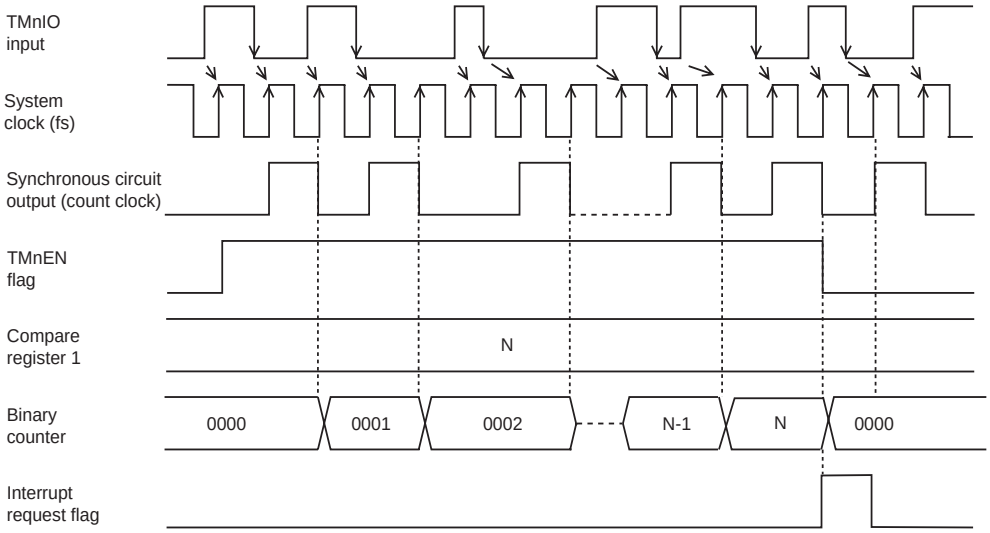


Figure:6.4.2 Count Timing of Synchronous TMnIO Input (Timer 7, Timer 8)

The timer n binary counter counts up the binary counter at the signal in synchronization with the system clock so that correct value is read out from the timer n binary counter.

■ Count Timing of TMnIO Input (Both edges selected)

When TMnIO input is selected, TMnIO input signal is input to the timer n count clock. The binary counter counts up at the falling edge of the TMnIO input signal or TMnIO input signal that passed the divider.

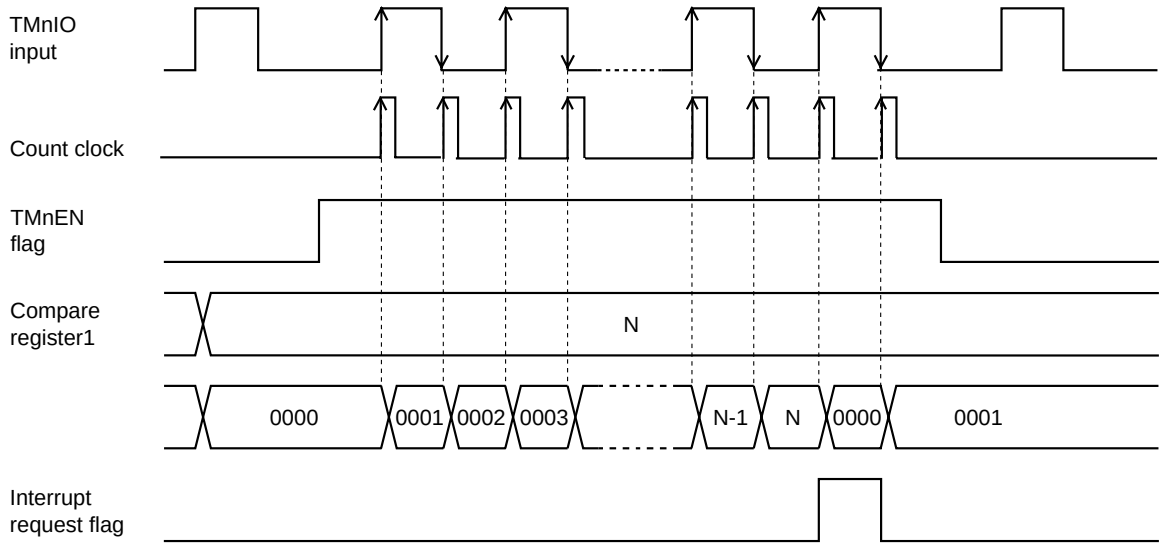


Figure:6.4.3 Count Timing TMnIO Input (Timer 7, Timer 8)

When both edges are selected, they are counted only at the normal operation (high-speed oscillation). Input from TMnIO should be done the waveform which has more than 2 times cycle than fosc (when duty ratio is 50%). If the waveform which has less cycle is input, it may not be counted correctly.

6.4.2 Setup Example

■ Event Count Setup Example

When the falling edge of the TM7IO input pin signal is detected 5 times using timer 7, an interrupt is generated.

An example setup procedure, with a description of each step is shown below.

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Stop the counter TM7MD1 (0x03F78) bp4:TM7EN =0	(1) Set the TM7EN flag of the timer 7 mode register 1 (TM7MD1) to “0” to stop the timer 7 counting.
(2) Disable the interrupt TM7ICR(0x03FED) bp1:TM7IE =0	(2) Set the TM7IE flag of the TM7ICR register to “0 “to disable the interrupt.
(3) Set the special function pin to input P1DIR (0x03F31) bp3:P1DIR3 =0	(3) Set the P1DIR3 flag of the port 1 direction control register (P1DIR) to “0” to set P13 pin to the input mode. Add pull-up/pull-down resistor, if necessary. [Chapter 4 I/O ports]
(4) Select the count clock source TM7MD1(0x03F78) bp1-0:TM7CK1-0 =01 bp3-2:TM7PS1-0 =00	(4) Select fs to the clock source by the TM7CK1 to 0 flag of the TM7MD1 register. Besides, select 1/1 to the count clock source by the TM7PS1 to 0 flag.
(5) Select IGBT/timer startup factor TM7MD3(0x03F8E) bp1-0:T7IGBT1-0=00	(5) Set IGBT/timer startup factor to timer 7 count operation.
(6) Set the interrupt generation cycle TM7PR1(0x03F75,0x03F74) =0x0004	(6) Set the interrupt generation cycle to the timer 7 preset register 1 (TM7PR1). The set value should be 4, because the counting is 5 times. At that time, the same value is loaded to the timer 7 compare register 1 (TM7OC1), and the timer 7 binary counter (TM7BC) is initialized to 0x0000.
(7) Select the timer clear source TM7MD2 (0x03F79) bp5:TM7BCR =1	(7) Set the TM7BCR flag of the timer 7 mode register 2 (TM7MD2) to “1” to select the compare match as a binary counter clear source.
(8) Select the count clock source TM7MD1 (0x03F78) bp1-0:TM7CK1-0 =10 bp3-2:TM7PS1-0 =00	(8) Select TM7IO to the clock source by the TM7CK1 to 0 flag of the TM7MD1 register. Besides, select 1/1(no dividing) to the count clock source by the TM7PS1 to 0 flag.
(9) Set the interrupt level TM7ICR (0x03FED) bp7-6:TM7LV1-0 =10	(9) Set the interrupt level by the TM7LV1 to 0 flag of the timer 7 interrupt control register (TM7ICR). If the interrupt request flag is already set, clear the request flag. [Chapter 3 3.1.4. Interrupt Flag Setup]

Setup Procedure	Description
(10) Enable the interrupt TM7ICR (0x03FED) bp1:TM7IE =1	(10) Set the TM7IE flag of the TM7ICR register to “1” to enable the interrupt.
(11) Start the event count TM7MD1 (0x03F78) bp4:TM7EN =1	(11) Set the TM7EN flag of the TM7MD1 register to “1” to operate the timer 7.

Every time TM7BC reaches the falling edge of the TM7IO input, it counts up from 0x0000. When the TM7BC reaches the set value of the TM7OC1 register, the timer 7 interrupt request flag is set at the next count clock, and the value of TM7BC becomes 0x0000 to restart counting up.

Allow the setup procedures (4) to (8) to have the correct operation.

6.5 16-bit Timer Pulse Output

6.5.1 Operation

TMnIO pin can output a pulse signal with a arbitrary frequency.

■ 16-bit Timer Pulse Output Operation (Timer 7, Timer 8)

These timers can output 2 × cycle signal, compared with the set value of the compare register 1 (TMnOC1) and the 16-bit full count. Output pins are as follows.

Table:6.5.1 Timer Pulse Output Pin

	Timer 7	Timer 8
Pulse output pin	TM7IO output (P13)	TM8IO output (P12)
	TM7O output (P51)	TM8O output (P53)

Table:6.5.2 shows the timer interrupt generation sources and the flags that control the timer pulse output cycle.

Table:6.5.2 16-bit Timer Interrupt Generation Source and Timer Pulse Output Cycle (Timer 7, Timer 8)

TM7MD2 register		Interrupt source	Timer pulse output cycle
TM7IRS1 flag	TM7BCR flag		
1	1	TM7OC1 compare match	Set value of TM7OC1 × 2
0	1	TM7OC1 compare match	Set value of TM7OC1 × 2
1	0	TM7OC1 compare match	Full count of TM7BC × 2
0	0	Full count over flow	Full count of TM7BC × 2
TM8MD2 register		Interrupt source	Timer pulse output cycle
TM8IRS1 flag	TM8BCR flag		
1	1	TM8OC1 compare match	Set value of TM8OC1 × 2
0	1	TM8OC1 compare match	Set value of TM8OC1 × 2
1	0	TM8OC1 compare match	Full count of TM8BC × 2
0	0	Full count over flow	Full count of TM8BC × 2

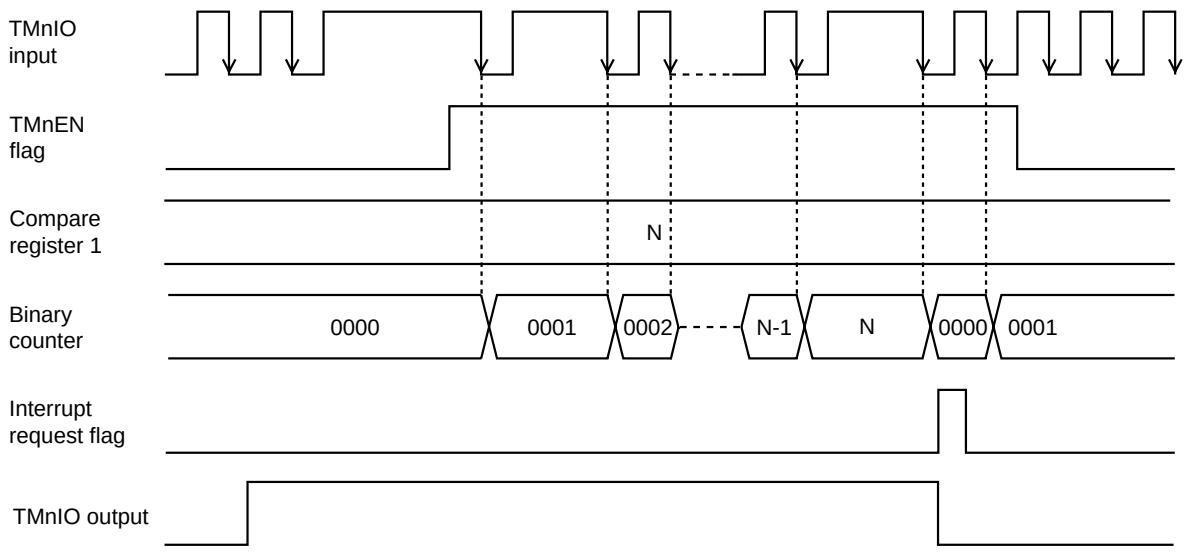


Figure:6.5.1 Count Timing of Timer Pulse Output (Timer 7, Timer 8)

TMnIO output pin outputs 2 × cycle, compared with the value of the compare register 1. If the binary counter reaches the compare value or full count overflow is occurred, the binary counter is cleared to 0x0000, and the TMnIO output (timer output) is inverted.

In the initial state after releasing reset, the timer pulse output is reset, and low output is fixed. Therefore, release the reset of the timer pulse output by setting the TMnCL flag of the TMnMD1 register to “0”.

Regardless of whether the binary counter is stopped or operated, the timer output is “L”, when the TMnCL flag of the TMnMD1 register is set to “1”.

Reset release of the timer pulse output should be done when the timer count is stopped.

When the prescaler is operated by the timer pulse output, set the prescaler dividing rate after the reset release of the timer pulse output.

6.5.2 Setup Example

■ Timer Pulse Output Setup Example

TM7IO output pin outputs a 50 kHz pulse using timer 7. For this, select fosc as the clock source and set 1/2 cycle (50 kHz) to the timer 7 compare register (at fosc=10 MHz).

An example setup procedure, with a description of each step is shown below.

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Stop the counting TM7MD1 (0x03F78) bp4:TM7EN =0	(1) Set the TM7EN flag of the timer 7 mode register 1 (TM7MD1) to “0” to stop the timer 7 counting.
(2) Set the special function pin P1OMD (0x03F1C) bp3:P1OMD3 =1 bp2:NBUZSEL=1 P1DIR (0x03F31) bp3:P1DIR3 =1	(2) Set the P1OMD3 flag of the port 1 output mode register (P1OMD) to “1”, the NBUZSEL flag to “1” to set P13 as the special function pin. Set the P1DIR3 flag of the port 1 direction control register (P1DIR) to “1” to set the output mode. [Chapter 4 I/O Ports]
(3) Set the timer pulse TM7MD2 (0x03F79) bp4:TM7PWM =0	(3) Set the TM7PWM flag of the timer 7 mode register 2 (TM7MD2) to “0” to select the timer pulse output.
(4) Select the timer clear source TM7MD2 (0x03F79) bp5:TM7BCR =1	(4) Set the TM7BCR flag of the TM7MD2 register to “1” to select the compare match as the binary counter clear source.
(5) Release the reset of the timer pulse TM7MD1 (0x03F78) bp5:TM7CL =0	(5) Set the TM7CL flag of the TM7MD1 register to “0” to enable the pulse output.
(6) Select the count clock source TM7MD1 (0x03F78) bp1-0:TM7CK1-0 =00 bp3-2:TM7PS1-0 =00	(6) Select fosc as the clock source by the TM7CK1 to 0 flag of the TM7MD1 register. Also, select 1/1 dividing as the clock source by the TM7PS1 to 0 flag.
(7) Select IGBT/timer startup factor TM7MD3(0x03F8E) bp1-0:T7IGBT1-0=00	(7) Set IGBT/timer startup factor to timer 7 count operation.
(8) Set the timer pulse output generation cycle TM7PR1(0x03F75,0x03F74) =x00C7	(8) Set 1/2 of the timer pulse output cycle to the timer 7 preset register 1 (TM7PR1). To set 50 kHz by dividing 10 MHz, set as; 200-1=199 (0xC7) At the same time, the same value is loaded to the timer 7 compare register 1 (TM7BC) and the timer 7 binary counter (TM7BC) is initialized to 0x0000.
(9) Start the timer operation TM7MD1 (0x03F78) bp4:TM7EN =1	(9) Set the TM7EN flag of the TM7MD1 register to “1” to operate the timer 7.

TM7BC counts up from 0x0000. If TM7BC reaches the set value of the TM7OC1 register and TM7BC is cleared to 0x0000, the signal of the TM7IO output is inverted and TM7BC counts up from 0x0000 again.

6.6 16-bit Standard PWM Output (Only duty can be changed consecutively)

TMnIO pin outputs the standard PWM output, which is determined by the overflow timing of the binary counter, and the match timing of the timer binary counter and the compare register.

6.6.1 Operation

■ 16-bit Standard PWM Output (Timer 7, Timer 8)

PWM waveform with an arbitrary duty is generated by setting a duty of PWM “H” period to the compare register 1 (TMnOC1). Its cycle is the time of the 16-bit timer full count overflow.
Table:6.6.1 shows the PWM output pin.

Table:6.6.1 PWM Output Pin

	Timer 7	Timer 8
Pulse out-put pin	TM7IO output (P13)	TM8IO output (P12)
	TM7O output (P51)	TM8O output (P53)

■ Count Timing of Standard PWM Output (at Normal) (Timer 7, Timer 8)

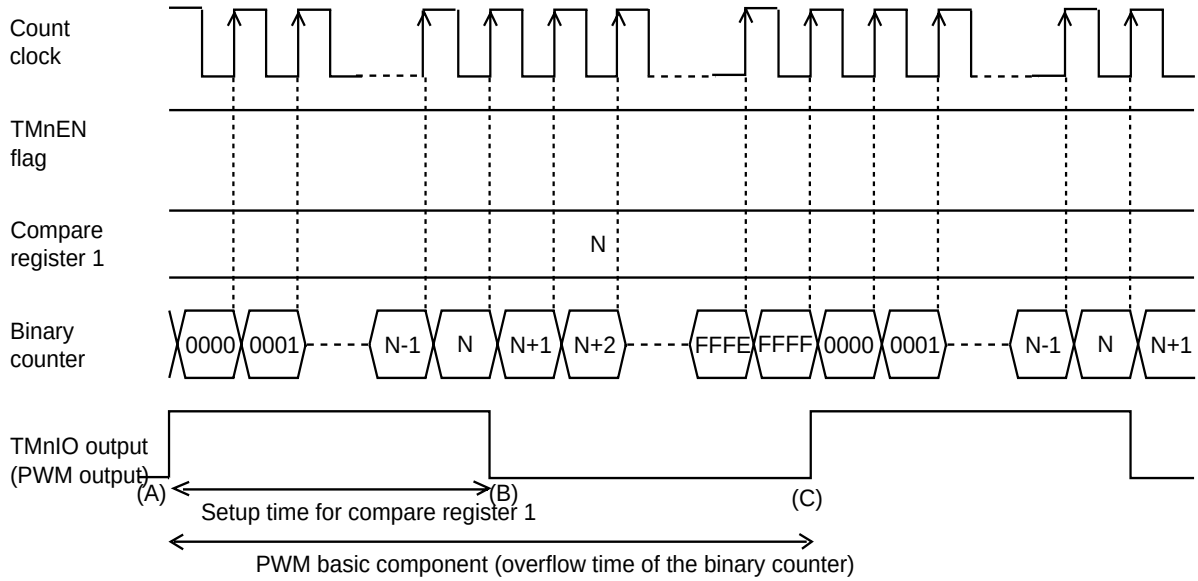


Figure:6.6.1 Count Timing of Standard PWM Output (at Normal)

■ Stop Condition of PWM Waveform, Polarity Selection (Timer 8)

Select the TM8IO/TM8O output waveform for the time when the PWM operation is stopped by the TM8PWMF of the TM8MD3 register. Select the polarity of PWM output by the TM8PWMO.

Before starting the second PWM or later, clear the BC and PWM waveform by writing to the preset register as the PWM output waveform of the first cycle cannot be guaranteed.

PWM source waveform,

- (A)shows “H” until the binary counter reaches the compare register value from 0x0000.
- (B)shows “L” after the compare match, then the binary counter counts up till the overflow.
- (C)shows “H” again if the binary counter overflow.

■ Count Timing of Standard PWM Output (when compare register 1 is 0x0000) (Timer 7, Timer 8)

Here is the count timing at setting 0x0000 to the compare register 1.

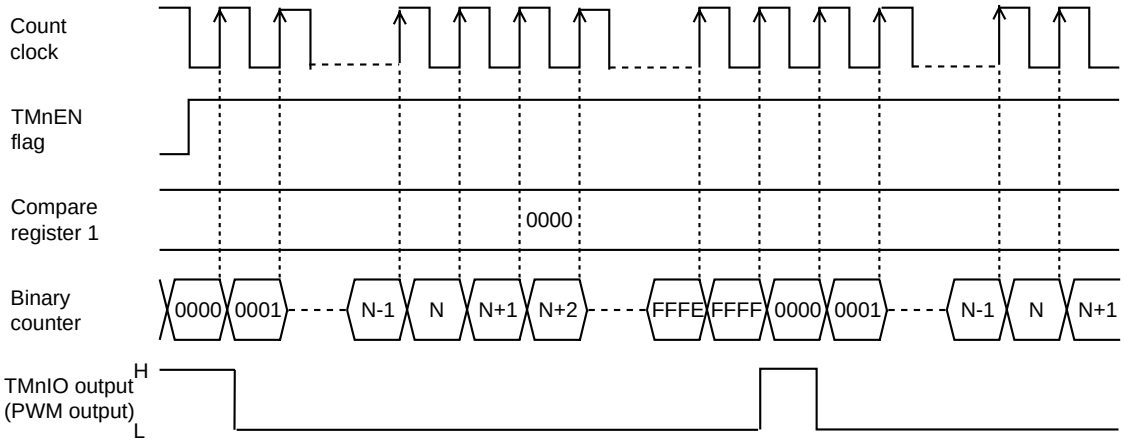


Figure:6.6.2 Count Timing of Standard PWM Output (when compare register 1 is 0x0000)

PWM output shows “H”, when TMnEN flag is stopped (at “0”).

■ Count Timing of Standard PWM Output (when compare register 1 is 0xFFFF) (Timer 7, Timer 8)

Here is the count timing at setting 0xFFFF to the compare register 1.

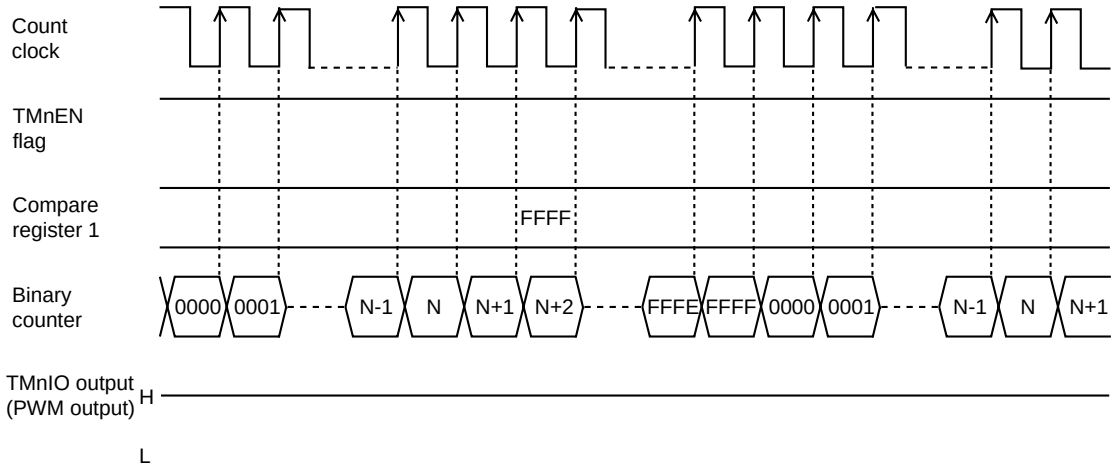


Figure:6.6.3 Count Timing of Standard PWM Output (when compare register 1 is 0xFFFF)

To output the standard PWM output, set the TMnBCR flag of the TM7MD2 or TM8MD2 register to “0” to select the full count overflow as the binary counter clear source and the PWM output set (“H” output) source.

The TMnOC1 compare match or the TMnOC2 compare match can be selected as a PWM output reset (“L” output) source with the TnPWMSL flag of the TMnMD2 register.

In the initial state of the PWM output, it is changed to “H” output from “L” output at the timing that the PWM operation is selected by the TMnPWM flag of the TMnMD2 register.

To guarantee the PWM waveform of the first cycle, after PWM operation is stopped, write to the preset register to clear the binary counter and the PWM waveform when restarting the PWM operation.

6.6.2 Setup Example

■ Standard PWM Output Setup Example

The TM7IO output pin outputs the 1/4 duty PWM output waveform at 152.6 Hz with the timer 7 (at the high frequency oscillation, fosc=10 MHz). One cycle of the PWM output waveform is decided by the overflow of the binary counter. "H" period of the PWM output waveform is decided by the set value of the compare register 1. An example setup procedure, with a description of each step is shown below.

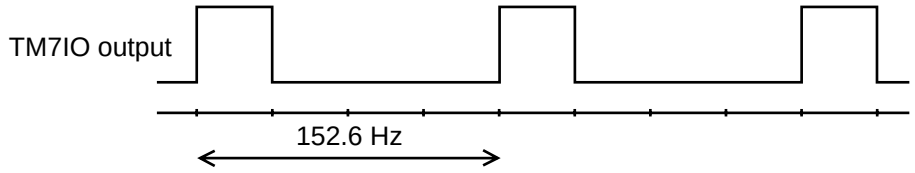


Figure:6.6.4 Output Waveform of

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Stop the counter TM7MD1 (0x03F78) bp4:TM7EN =0	(1) Set the TM7EN flag of the timer 7 mode register 1 (TM7MD1) to "0" to stop the timer 7 counting.
(2) Set the special function pin to output P1OMD (0x03F1C) bp3:P1OMD3 =1 bp2:NBUZSEL=1 P1DIR (0x03F31) bp3:P1DIR3 =1	(2) Set the P10MD3 flag of the port 1 output mode register (P10MD) to "1" , NBUZSEL flag to "1" to set the P13 pin as a special function pin. Set the P1DIR3 flag of the port 1 direction control register (P1DIR) to "1" to set the output mode. [Chapter 4 I/O Ports]
(3) Set the PWM output TM7MD2 (0x03F79) bp4:TM7PWM =1	(3) Set the TM7PWM flag of the timer 7 mode register 2 (TM7MD2) to "1" to select the PWM output.
(4) Set the standard PWM output TM7MD2 (0x03F79) bp5:TM7BCR =0	(4) Set the TM7BCR flag of the TM7MD2 register to "0" to select the full count overflow as the binary counter clear source.
(5) Select the count clock source TM7MD1 (0x03F78) bp1-0:TM7CK1-0 =00 bp3-2:TM7PS1-0 =00	(5) Select fosc as the clock source by the TM7CK1 to 0 flag of the TM7MD1 register. Also, select 1/1 dividing as the count clock source by the TM7PS1 to 0 flag.
(6) Select IGBT/timer startup factor TM7MD3(0x03F8E) bp1-0:T7IGBT1-0=00	(6) Set IGBT/timer startup factor to timer 7 count operation.

Setup Procedure	Description
(7) Set “H” period of the PWM output TM7PR1(0x03F75,0x03F74) =0x4FFF	(7) Set “H” period of the PWM output to the timer 7 preset register 1 (TM7PR1). To set 1/4 duty of the full count 65536, set as; 65536/4-1=16383 (0x03FFF) At the same time, the same value is loaded to the timer 7 compare register 1 (TM7OC1) and the timer 7 binary counter (TM7BC) is initialized to 0x0000.
(8) Start the timer operation TM7MD1 (0x03F78) bp4:TM7EN =1	(8) Set the TM7EN flag of the TM7MD1 register to “1” to operate the timer 7.

TM7BC counts up from 0x0000. The PWM source waveform outputs “H” until TM7BC reaches the set value of the TM7OC1 register, then after the match it outputs “L”. After that, TM7BC continues to count up. Once a overflow occurs, the PWM source waveform outputs “H” again, and TM7BC counts up from 0x0000, again.

6.7 16-bit High Precision PWM Output (Cycle/Duty can be changed consecutively)

The TMnIO pin outputs high precision PWM output, which is determined by the match timing of the timer binary counter and the compare register 1, and match timing of the binary counter and the compare register 2.

6.7.1 Operation

■ 16-bit High Precision PWM Output Operation (Timer 7, Timer 8)

The PWM waveform of any cycle/duty is generated by setting the cycle of PWM to the compare register 1 (TMnOC1) and setting the duty of the “H” period to the compare register 2 (TMnOC2).

■ Count Timing of High Precision PWM Output (at Normal) (Timer 7, Timer 8)

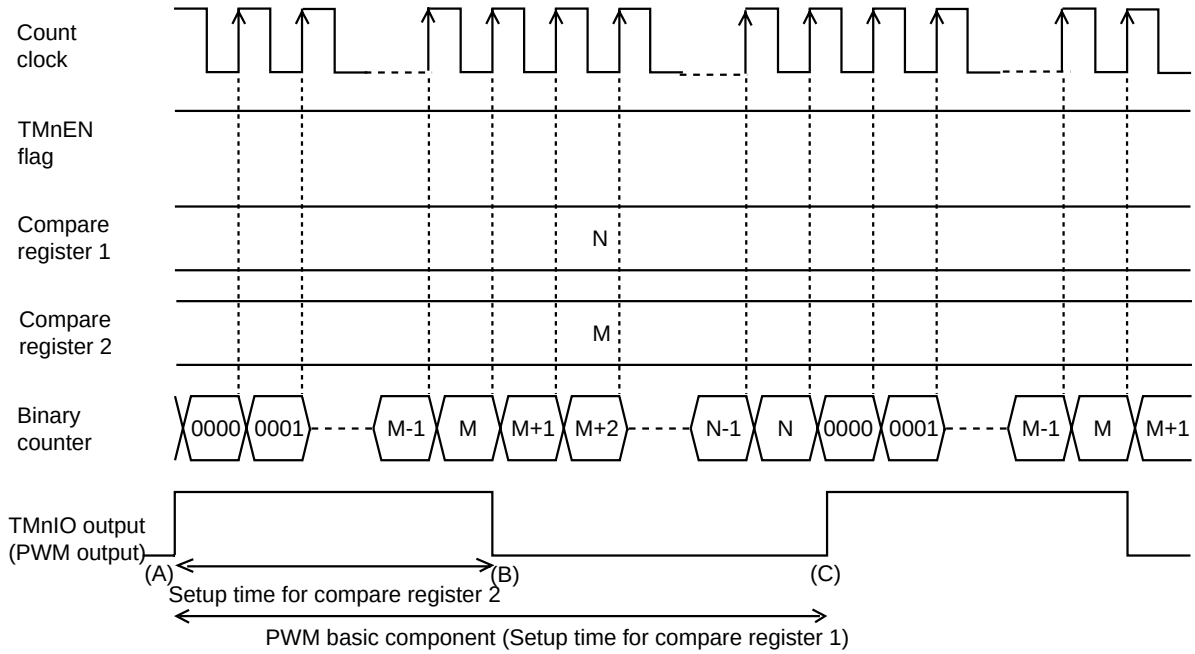


Figure:6.7.1 Count Timing of High Precision PWM Output (at Normal)

PWM source waveform,

(A)shows “H” until the binary counter reaches the compare register from 0x0000.

(B)shows “L” after the TMnOC2 compare match, the binary counter then counts up until the binary counter reaches the TMnOC1 compare register is cleared.

(C)shows “H” again, when the binary counter is cleared.

■ Count Timing of High Precision PWM Output (When the compare register 2 is 0x0000) (Timer 7, Timer 8)

Here is the count timing as the compare register 2 is set to 0x0000.

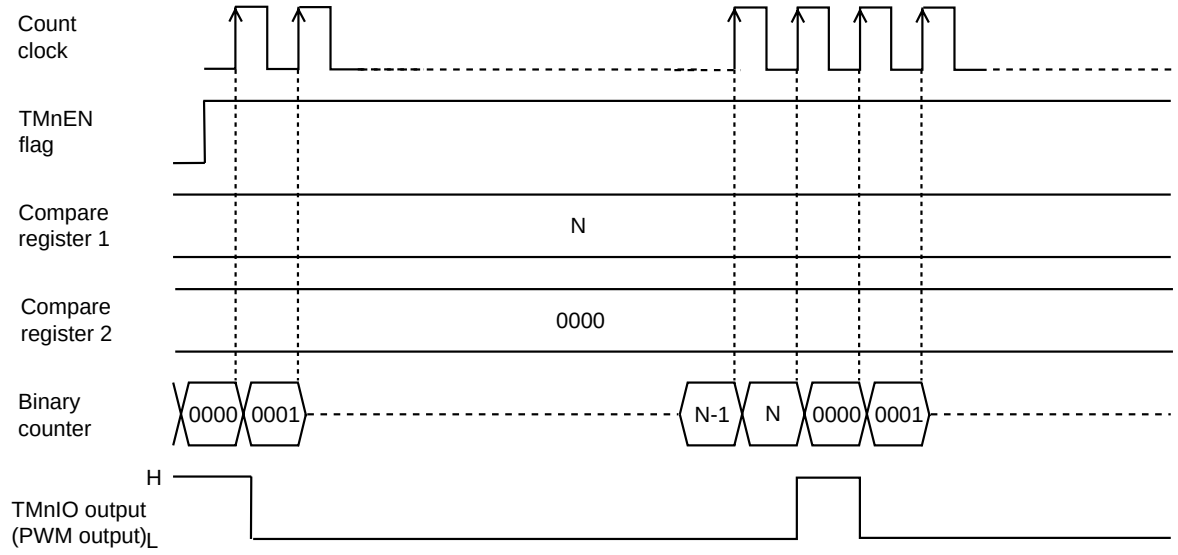


Figure:6.7.2 Count Timing of High Precision PWM Output (When the compare register 2 is 0x0000)

When the TMnEN flag is stopped (at “0”), the PWM output shows “H”.

■ Count Timing of High Precision PWM Output (At the compare register 2 = the compere register 1-1)

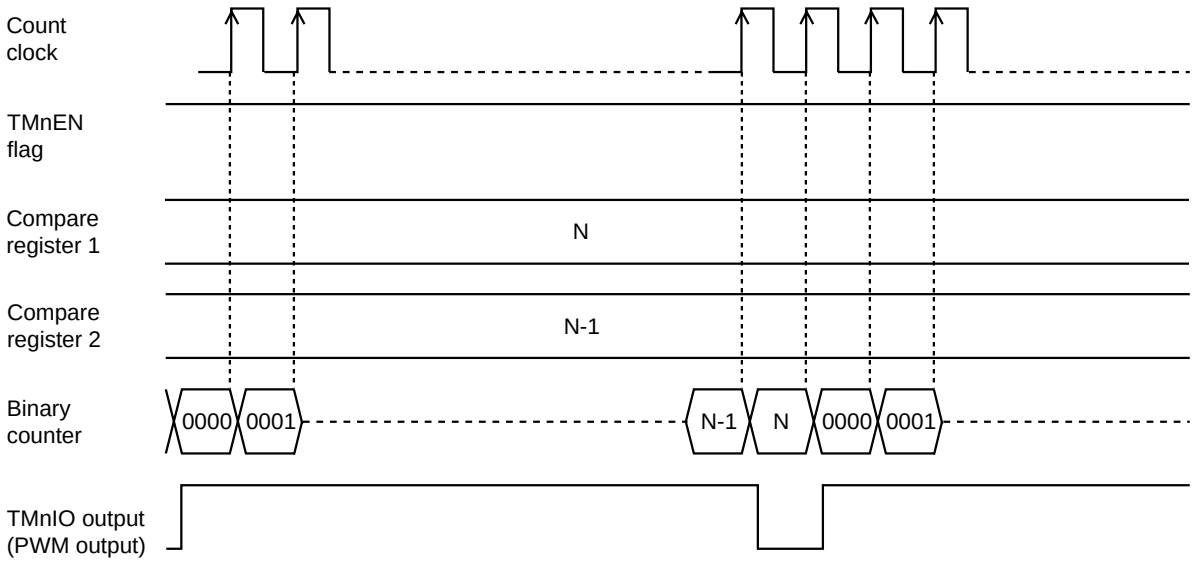


Figure:6.7.3 Count Timing of High Precision PWM Output (At the compare register 2 = the compare register 1-1)

To output the high precision PWM output, set the TMnBCR flag of the TMnMD2 register to “1” to select the TM7OC1 compare match as the clear source for the binary counter, and the set (“H” output) source of the PWM output.
Also, set the TnPWMLS flag to “1” to select the TMnOC2 compare match as the reset (“L” output) source of the PWM output.

In the initial state of the PWM output, it is changed to “H” output from “L” output at the timing that the PWM operation is selected by the TMnPWM flag of the TMnMD register.

Set as the set value of TMnOC2 < the set value of TMnOC1.
If it is set as the set value of TMnOC2 ≥ the set value of TMnOC1, the PWM output is a “H” fixed output.

6.7.2 Setup Example

■ High Precision PWM Output Setup Example (Timer 7, Timer 8)

The TM7IO output pin outputs the 1/4 duty PWM output waveform at 400 Hz with the timer 7. Select fosc/2 (at fosc=10 MHz) as the clock source. One cycle of the PWM output waveform is decided by the set value of the compare register 1. "H" period of the PWM output waveform is decided by the set value of the compare register 2.
An example setup procedure, with a description of each step is shown below.

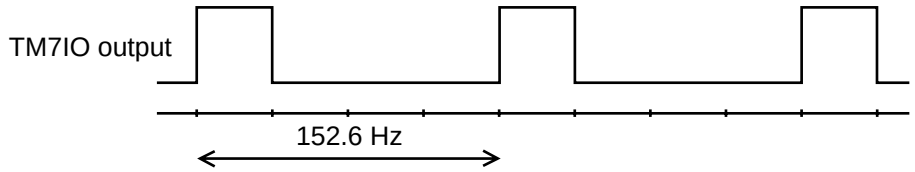


Figure:6.7.4 Output Waveform of TM7IO Output Pin

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Stop the counter TM7MD1(0x03F78) bp4:TM7EN =0	(1) Set the TM7EN flag of the timer 7 mode register 1 (TM7MD1) to "0" to stop the timer 7 counting.
(2) Set the special function pin to output P1OMD(0x03F1C) bp3:P1OMD3 =1 bp2:NBUZSEL=1 P1DIR (0x03F31) bp3:P1DIR3 =1	(2) Set the P1OMD3 flag of the port1 output mode register (P1OMD) to "1", the NBUZSEL flag to "1" to set P13 pin as the special function pin. Set the P1DIR3 flag of the port 1 direction control register (P1DIR) to "1" to set the output mode. [Chapter 4 I/O Ports]
(3) Set the PWM output TM7MD2(0x03F79) bp4:TM7PWM =1	(3) Set the TM7PWM flag of the timer 7 mode register 2 (TM7MD2) to "1" to select the PWM output.
(4) Set the high precision PWM output TM7MD2(0x03F79) bp5:TM7BCR =1 bp6:T7PWMSL =1	(4) Set the P1DIR4 flag of the port 1 direction control register (P1DIR) to "1" to select the TM7OC2 compare match as the duty decision source of the PWM output.
(5) Select the count clock source TM7MD1(0x03F78) bp1-0:TM7CK1-0 =00 bp3-2:TM7PS1-0 =00	(5) Select fosc as the clock source by the TM7CK1 to 0 flag of the TM7MD1 register. Also, select 1/1 dividing as the count clock source by theTM7PS1 to 0 flag.
(6) Select IGBT/timer startup factor TM7MD3(0x03F8E) bp1-0:T7IGBT1-0=00	(6) Set IGBT/timer startup factor to timer 7 count operation.

Setup Procedure	Description
(7) Set the PWM output cycle TM7PR1(0x03F75,0x03F74) =0x61a7	(7) Set the PWM output cycle to the timer 7 preset register 1 (TM7PR1). To set 400 Hz by dividing 10 MHz, set as; 25000-1=24999 (0x61a7) At the same time, the same value is loaded to the timer 7 compare register 1 (TM7OC1), the timer 7 binary counter is initialized to 0x0000.
(8) Set the “H” period of the PWM output TM7PR2(0x03F7D,0x03F7C) =0x1869	(8) Set “H” period of the IGBT output to the timer 7 preset register 2 (TM7PR2). To set 1/4 duty of 25000 dividing, set as; 25000/4=6250 (0x1869) At the same time, the same value is loaded the timer 7 compare register 2 (TM7OC2).
(9) Start the timer operation TM7MD1(0x03F78) bp4:TM7EN =1	(9) Set the TM7EN flag of the TM7MD1 register to “1” to operate the timer 7.

TM7BC counts up from 0x0000. The PWM source waveform outputs “H” until TM7BC matches the set value of the TM7OC2 register. Once they matches, it outputs “L”. After that, TM7BC continues to count up. Once TM7BC matches the TM7OC1 register to be cleared, the PWM output waveform outputs “H” again and TM7BC counts up from 0x0000 again.

6.8 16-bit Timer Capture

6.8.1 Operation

The value of the binary counter is read out at the timing of the external interrupt input signal which is synchronized to fosc, fs or the external event signal, at the timing of the timer 0 and timer 1 interrupts or at the timing of the writing operation with any value to the capture register.

■ Capture Operation with External Interrupt Signal as the Trigger (Timer 7, Timer 8)

Input capture trigger is generated at the external interrupt signal. The capture trigger is selected by the timer 7 mode register 1 (TMnMD1) and the timer mode register 2 (TMnMD2).
Selectable capture triggers and the interrupt flag setup are shown below.

Table:6.8.1 Capture Trigger

Capture trigger source	Timer 7 mode register 2		Timer 7 mode register 1	Timer 8 mode register 2		Timer 7 mode register 2
	T7ICT1-0	T7ICEDG0	T7ICEDG1	T8ICT1-0	T8ICEDG0	T8ICEDG1
IRQ0 falling edge	00(IRQ0)	1	0	00(IRQ0)	1	0
IRQ0 rising edge	00(IRQ0)	1	1	00(IRQ0)	1	1
IRQ0 both edges	00(IRQ0)	0	×	00(IRQ0)	0	×
IRQ1 falling edge	01(IRQ1)	1	0	01(IRQ1)	1	0
IRQ1 rising edge	01(IRQ1)	1	1	01(IRQ1)	1	1
IRQ1 both edges	01(IRQ1)	0	×	01(IRQ1)	0	×
IRQ2 falling edge	10(IRQ2)	1	0	10(IRQ2)	1	0
IRQ2 rising edge	10(IRQ2)	1	1	10(IRQ2)	1	1
IRQ2 both edges	10(IRQ2)	0	×	10(IRQ2)	0	×

If the system clock (fs) is selected as the capture clock and the capture operation is done during the TMnIO input or operation with fosc, an incomplete value at the count up of the binary counter may be written to the input capture register. To prevent this, use fx or synchronous TMnIO input as the count clock.

Capture trigger signals of the 16-bit timers 7 and 8 are generated by sampling the rising edge of the capture clock selected by the TMnCKSMP flag of the TMnMD3 register. Therefore, even capture trigger is input, the value of the binary counter is not loaded to the capture register until the rising edge of the next capture clock.
If the clock which is slower than CPU operation speed (fs) is set as the timer source clock, set the TMnCKSMP of the TMnMD3 register to fs.
Also, the interval of each capture trigger should be set more than 2 cycles of the clock which is set at the TMnCKSMP of the TMnMD3 register.

If the capture clock frequency is longer against the system clock, the value of the capture register may be read out before capturing.

■ Capture Count Timing as Both Edges of External Interrupt Signal is selected as Trigger (Timer 7, Timer 8))

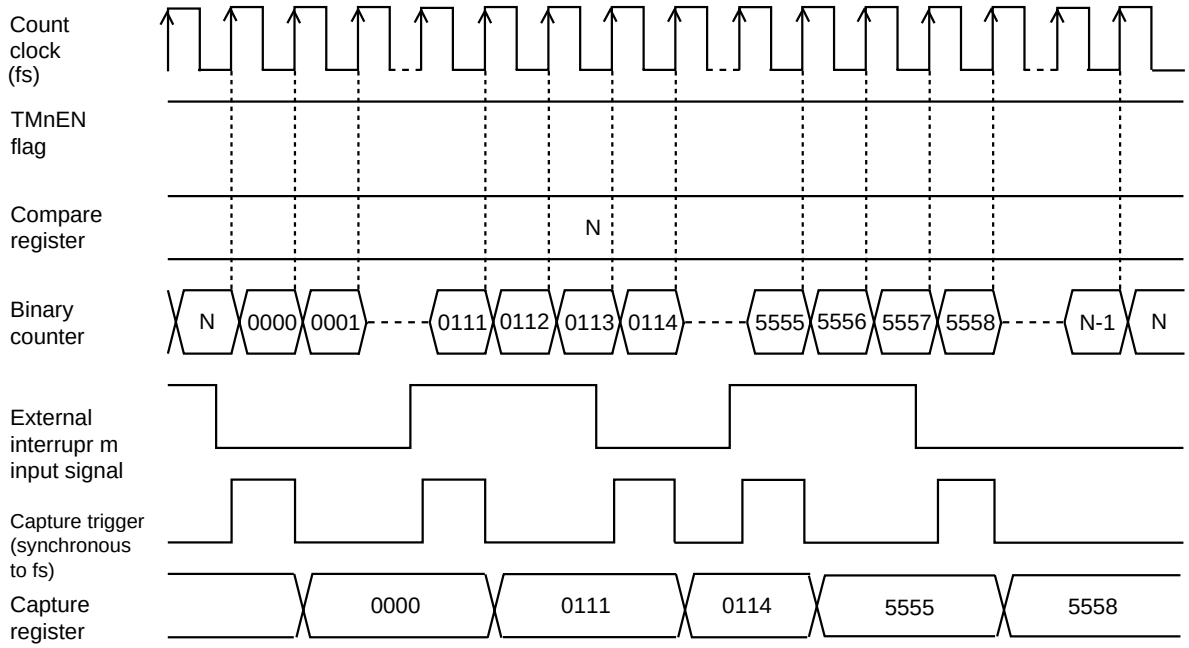


Figure:6.8.1 Capture Count Timing as External Interrupt Signal is selected as Trigger (Timer 7, Timer 8)

A capture trigger is generated at the both edges of the external interrupt m input signal. In synchronized with this capture trigger, the value of binary counter is loaded to the input capture register. The value loaded to the capture register is depending on the value of the binary counter at the falling edge of the capture trigger. When the specified edge is selected as the capture trigger source, the capture trigger is generated only at that edge. The other count timing is the same as the count timing of the timer operation.

When the binary counter is used as a free counter which counts 0x0000 to 0xFFFF set the compare register 1 to 0xFFFF, or set the TMnBCR flag of the TM7MD2 to “0”.

Even if an event is generated before the value of the input capture register is read out, the value of the input capture register can be rewritten.

In the initial state after releasing the reset, the generation of trigger by the external interrupt signal is disabled. Set the TnICEN flag of the TMnMD2 register to “1” to enable the trigger generation.

■ Capture Operation as Timer 0 and 1 interrupts are selected as Trigger (Timer 7, Timer 8)

A capture trigger of the input capture function is generated by the timer 0 and 1 interrupts signals. Select the capture trigger by the timer mode register 2 (TMnMD2) and the timer mode register 4 (TMnMD4). When the timer 0 and 1 interrupts signals are selected as the capture trigger, the edges of the capture trigger are disabled.

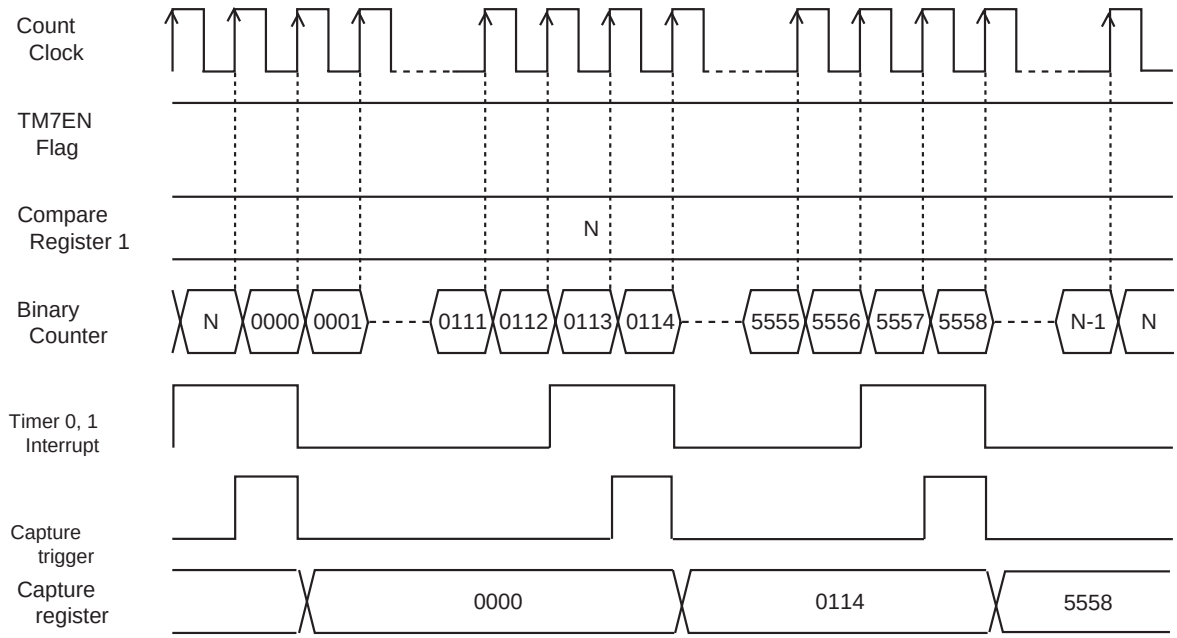


Figure:6.8.2 Capture Operation as Timer 0 and 1 interrupts are selected as Trigger (Timer 7, Timer 8)

When the T7ICT1-0 flag of the timer mode register 2 is set to x'11', a capture trigger of the input capture function is generated by the timer 0 and 1 interrupts signals. Select the capture trigger by the timer mode register 2 (TMnMD2) and the timer mode register 4 (TMnMD4). When the timer 0 and 1 interrupts signals are selected as the capture trigger, the edges of the capture trigger are disabled. When setting the capture clock as the count clock to execute the event count operation, the timer 0, 1 interrupt signal may not be recognized. To prevent this, select the synchronous TMnIO input as the clock source.

■ Binary Counter Clearance at the Timing of Capture (Timer 7, Timer 8)

When selecting the external interrupt input signal or the timer 0 and 1 interrupts as the capture trigger, the binary counter can be cleared during capture operation by setting the TnCAPCLR flag of the timer mode register 4 (TMnMD4) to “1”. The binary counter can be cleared during timer count operation only.

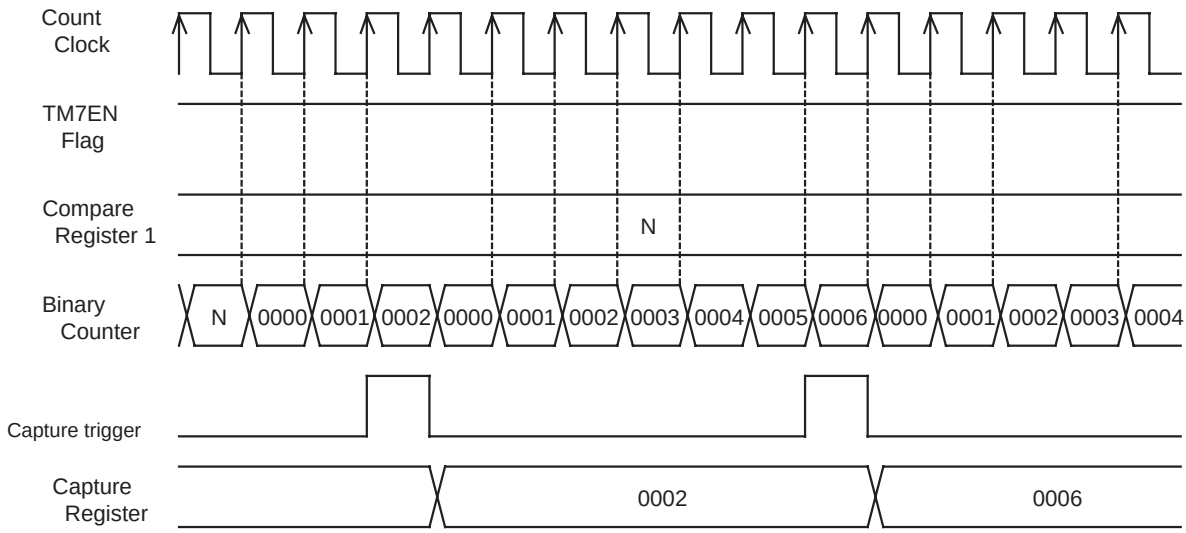


Figure:6.8.3 Binary Counter Clearance at the Timing of Capture (Timer 7, Timer 8)

■ Capture Operation Triggered by Writing Software (Timer 7, Timer 8)

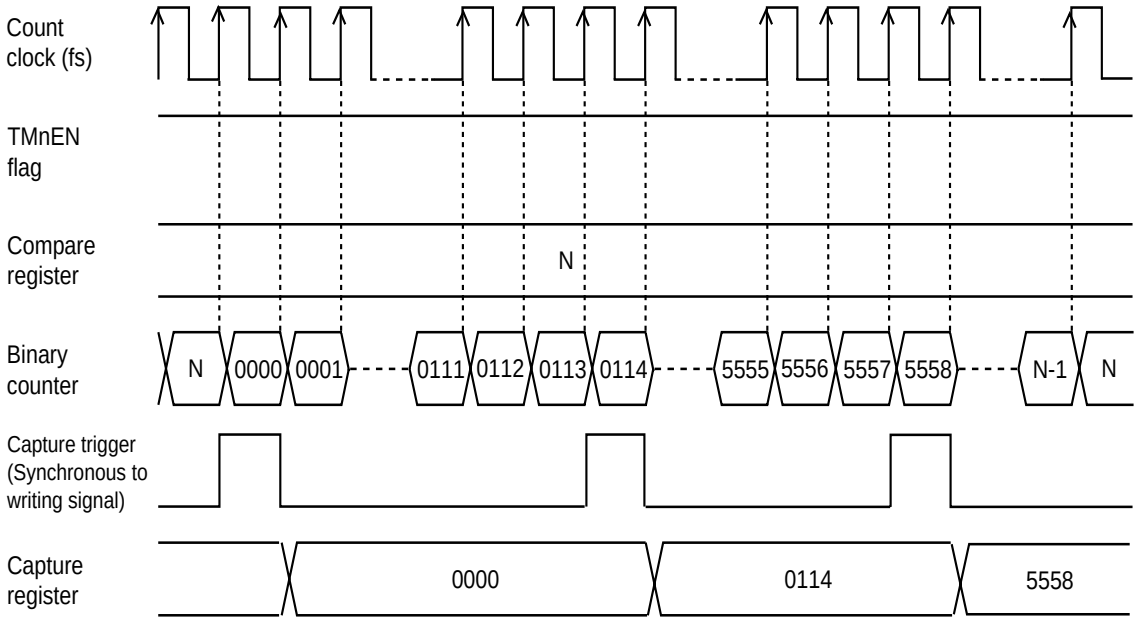


Figure:6.8.4 Capture Count Timing Triggered by Writing Software (Timer 7, Timer 8)

The capture trigger is generated at the writing signal to the input capture register. The writing signal is generated at the last cycle of the writing instruction. In synchronized with this capture trigger, the value of the binary counter is loaded to the input capture register. The value is depending on the value of the binary counter at the falling edge of the capture trigger. The other timing is the same as the timer operation.

The writing to the input capture to generate the capture trigger should be done with 8-bit access instruction of the TMnICL register or the TMnICH register.
At this time, data is not actually written to the TMnIC register.

On hardware, there is no flag to disable the capture operation triggered by writing software. Capture operation is enabled regardless of the TnICEN flag of the TMnMD2 register.

6.8.2 Setup Example

■ Capture Function Setup Example

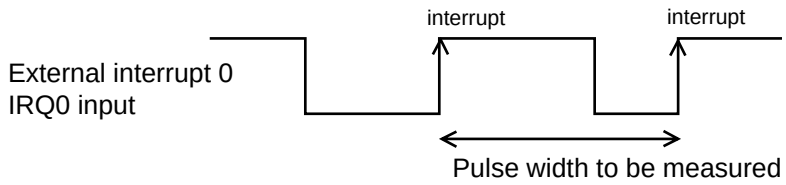


Figure:6.8.5 Pulse Width Measurement of External Interrupt 0

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Stop the counter TM7MD1(0x03F78) bp4:TM7EN =0	(1) Set the TM7EN flag of the timer 7 mode register 1 (TM7MD1) to “0” to stop the timer 7 counting.
(2) Disable the interrupt IRQ0ICR(0x03FE2) bp1:IRQ0IE =0	(2) Set the IRQIE flag of the IRQ0ICR register to “0” to disable the interrupt.
(3) Select the timer clear source TM7MD2(0x03F79) bp5:TM7BCR =1	(3) Set the TM7BCR flag of the timer 7 mode register 2 (TM7MD2) to “1” to select the compare match as the binary counter clear source.
(4) Select the count clock source TM7MD1(0x03F78) bp1-0:TM7CK1-0 =00 bp3-2:TM7PS1-0 =00	(4) Select fosc as the clock source by the TM7CK1 to 0 flag of the TM7MD1 register. Also, select 1/1 dividing of fosc as the count clock source by the TM7PS1 to 0 flag.
(5) Select IGBT/timer startup factor TM7MD3(0x03F8E) bp1-0:T7IGBT1-0=00	(5) Set IGBT/timer startup factor to timer 7 count operation.
(6) Set the compare register TM7PR1(0x03F75,0x03F74) =0xFFFF	(6) Set 0xFFFF to the timer 7 preset register 1(TM7PR1). At that time, the same value is loaded to the timer 7 compare register 1 (TM7OC1), the timer 7 binary counter (TM7BC) is initialized to 0x0000.
(7) Select the capture trigger generation interrupt source TM7MD2(0x03F79) bp1-0:T7ICT1-0 =00	(7) Select the external interrupt 0 (IRQ0) input as the capture trigger generation source by the T7ICT1 to 0 flag of the TM7MD2 register.
(8) Select the capture trigger generation edge TM7MD1(0x03F78) bp6:T7ICEDG1 =1 TM7MD2 (0x03F79) bp7:T7ICEDG0 =1	(8) Set the T7ICEDG1 flag of the TM7MD1 register to “1” to select the rising edge as the capture trigger generation edge. Also, set the T7ICEDG0 flag of the TM7MD2 register to “1” to enable the specify edge as the capture trigger generation source.

Setup Procedure	Description
(9) Select the capture sampling TM7MD3(0x03F8E) bp7:TM7CKSMP =0	(9) Select the capture sampling as the count clock.
(10) Select the interrupt generation valid edge IRQ0ICR(0x03FE2) bp5:REDG0 =1	(10) Set the REDG0 flag of the external interrupt 0 control register (IRQ0ICR) to “1” to select the rising edge as the interrupt generation valid edge.
(11) Set the interrupt level IRQ0ICR(0x03FE2) bp7-6:IRQ0LV1-0 =10	(11) Set the interrupt level by the IRQ0LV1 to 0 flag of the IRQ0ICR register. If the interrupt request flag is already set, clear the request flag. [Chapter 3 3.1.4. Interrupt Flag Setup]
(12) Enable the interrupt IRQ0ICR(0x03FE2) bp1:IRQ0IE =1	(12) Set the IRQ0IE flag of the IRQ0ICR register to “1” to enable the interrupt.
(13) Enable the capture trigger generation TM7MD2(0x03F79) bp2:T7ICEN =1	(13) Set the T7ICEN flag of the TM7MD2 register to “1” to enable the capture trigger generation.
(14) Start the timer operation TM7MD1(0x03F78) bp4:TM7EN =1	(14) Set the TM7EN flag of the TM7MD1 register to “1” to operate the timer 7.

TM7BC counts up from 0x0000. At the timing of the rising edge of the external interrupt 0 input signal, the value of TM7BC is loaded to the TM7IC register. At that time, the pulse width between rising edge of the external interrupt input signal can be measured by reading the value of the TM7IC register through interrupt service routine, and calculating the difference between the capture values.

6.9 16-bit High Precision IGBT Output (Cycle/Duty can be changed consecutively)

High precision IGBT output starts counting by the external interrupt input signal as the trigger. Startup trigger can be selected by the external interrupt 0, 1 and 2 or starting of the timer 7 count operation. When counting starts, the operation is the same as the high precision PWM output.

6.9.1 Operation

■ IGBT Trigger Selection

IGBT trigger can be selected from IRQ0, IRQ1, IRQ2 and the start of the timer 7 count operation.
Setup should be done at the T7IGBT0 and T7IGBT1 flag of the TM7MD3 register. When the startup is controlled from external of the microcontroller, one of IRQ0 to IRQ2 should be selected. This trigger detects the input level before activation. Either “H” or “L” level can be selected with the T7IGBTTR flag of the TM7MD3 register. When “1” (the rising edge) is selected, count operation continues while the trigger pin is “H”. When “0” (the falling edge) is selected, count operation continues while the trigger pin is “L”.
To control the startup by the commands, TM7EN count operation should be selected. In that case, timer count operation or IGBT output are controlled by the TM7EN flag of the TM7MD1 register. When “1” (count operation) is selected, count continues counting until “0” (count stop) is set. Make sure to set the TM7IGBT0, 1 of the TM7MD3 register before operating the TM7EN flag of the TM7MD1 register. In that case, setup of T7IGBTTR is neglected. The binary counter is cleared as the counting stops. The value is loaded from the preset register to the compare register in synchronization with the counter clock.

■ 16-bit High Precision IGBT Output (Timer 7)

The IGBT waveform of any cycle/duty is generated by setting the cycle of IGBT to the compare register 1 (TM7OC1) and setting the duty of the “H” period to the compare register 2 (TM7OC2). The 16 bit timer that can be used by high precision IGBT output is the timer 7.

■ One shot Pulse Output Setup

One shot pulse output can be done by setting the T7ONESHOT flag of the TM7MD4 register to “1”.

■ Count Timing of High Precision IGBT Output (At Normal) (Timer 7)

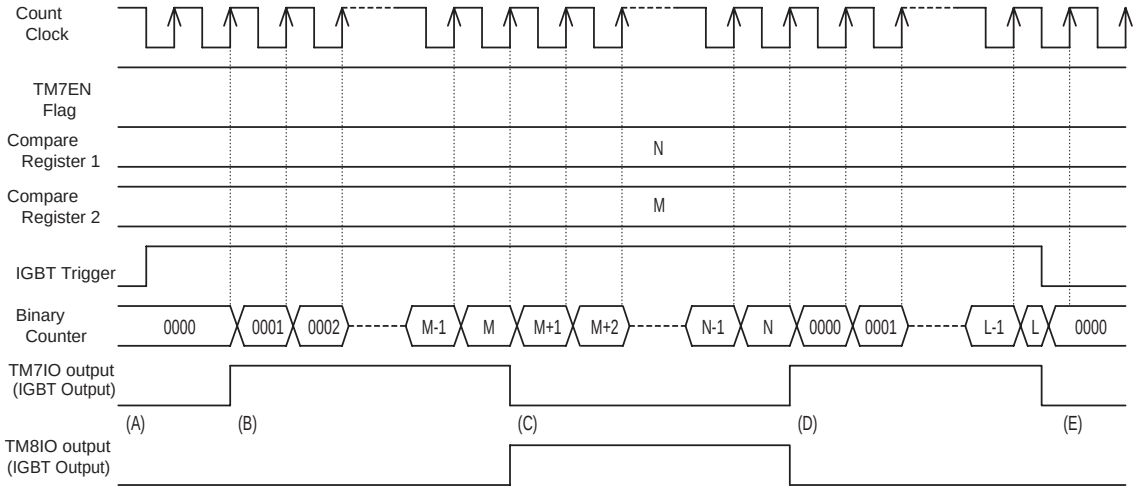


Figure:6.9.1 Count Timing of High Precision IGBT Output (At Normal)

(A) When IGBT trigger is input, IGBT operation becomes valid after 1 count clock. After IGBT output is valid, it is "L" until the next count clock.

(B) When IGBT trigger is valid, it is "H" during the period when the value of the binary counter reaches that of TM7OC2 from X'0000'. ("H" output from X'0001 at the first operation cycle)

(C) After the TM7OC2 compare match, it is "L" and the binary counter counts up until the counter reaches the TM7OC1 compare register to be cleared.

(D) When the binary counter is cleared, it becomes "H" again.

(E) When IGBT trigger becomes invalid, the timer is initialized and IGBT output forcibly becomes "L".

■ Count Timing of High Precision IGBT Output (When the compare register 2 is X'0000') (Timer 7)

The following shows the count timing as the compare register 2 is set to X'0000'.

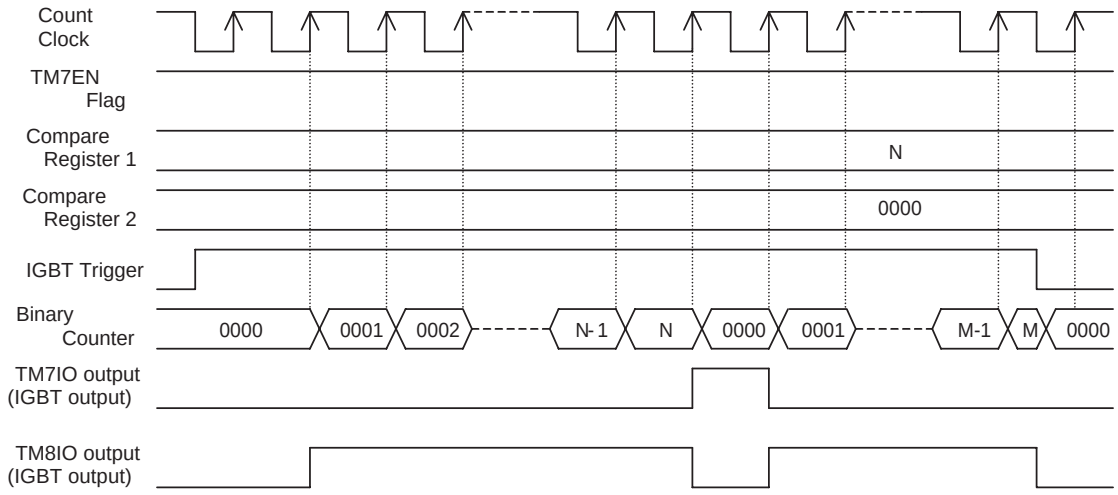


Figure:6.9.2 Count Timing of High Precision IGBT Output (When the compare register 2 is X'0000')

When the TM7EN flag is set to “0” (stop status) and the T7IGBTDT of the TM7MD3 register is set to “0”, both TM7IO and TM8IO output “L”.

■ Count Timing of High Precision IGBT Output (When compare register 2 = compare register 1) (Timer 7)

The following shows the count timing when the value of the compare register 1 is set to the compare register 2.

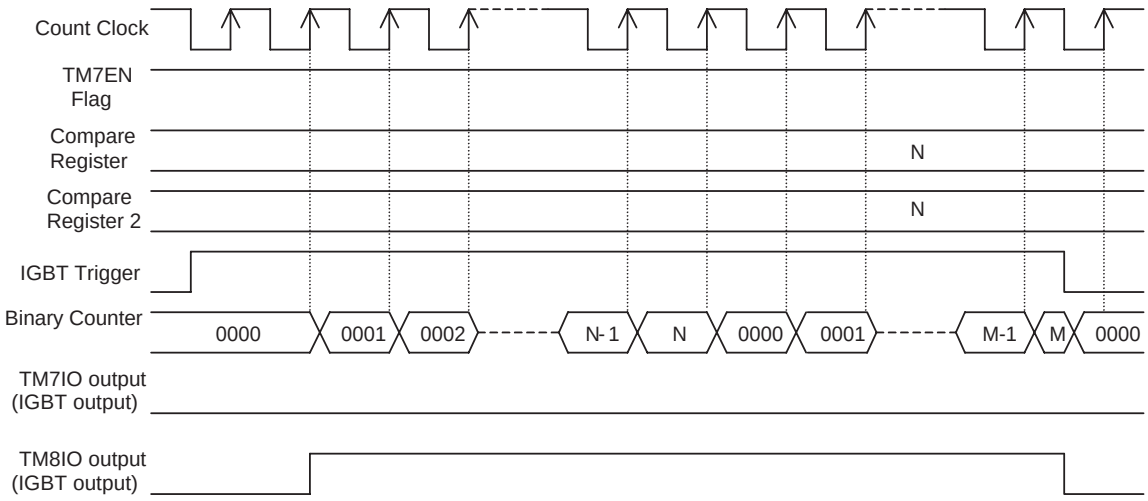


Figure:6.9.3 Count Timing of High Precision IGBT Output (When compare register 2 = compare register 1)

For high precision IGBT output, set the TM7BCR flag of the TM7MD2 register to "1" and select TM7OC1 compare match as the binary counter clear factor and IGBT output set ("H" output) factor. Also, set the T7PWMSL flag of the TM7MD2 register to "1" and select the TM7OC2 compare match as the IGBT output reset ("L" output) factor.

In the initial state of the IGBT output (TM7IO), when the IGBT output is selected by the T7IGBTEN of the TM7MD3 register, it is "L" output. After the trigger is input, it changes to "H" at the second cycle.

Set as TM7OC2 value ≤ TM7OC1 value.
When TM7OC2 value > TM7OC1 value, the IGBT output waveform is fixed to “H”.

■ One Shot Pulse Output of High Precision IGBT Output (At Normal) (Timer 7)

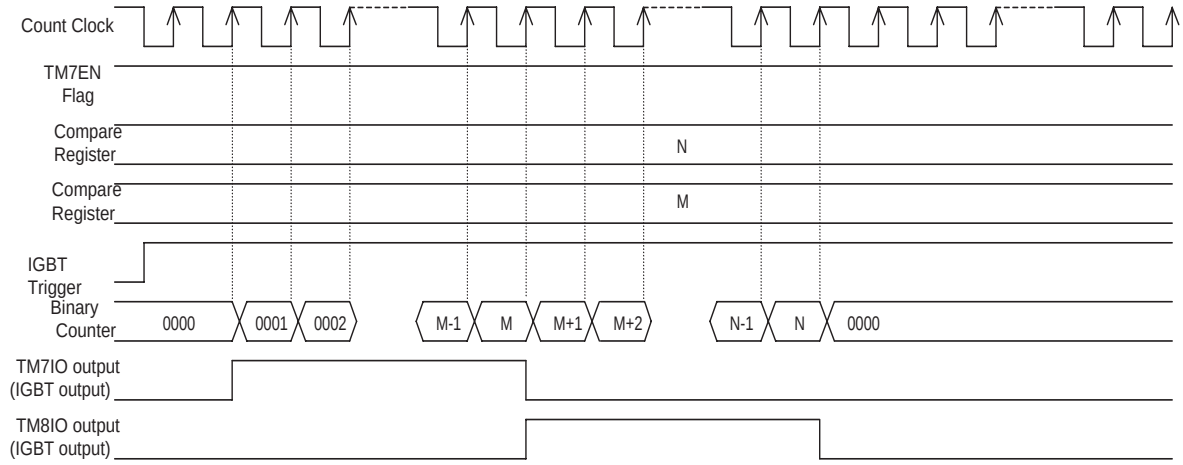


Figure:6.9.4 One Shot Pulse Output of High Precision IGBT Output (At Normal) (Timer 7)

■ One Shot Pulse Output of High Precision IGBT Output (When the compare register 2 is X'0000') (Timer 7)

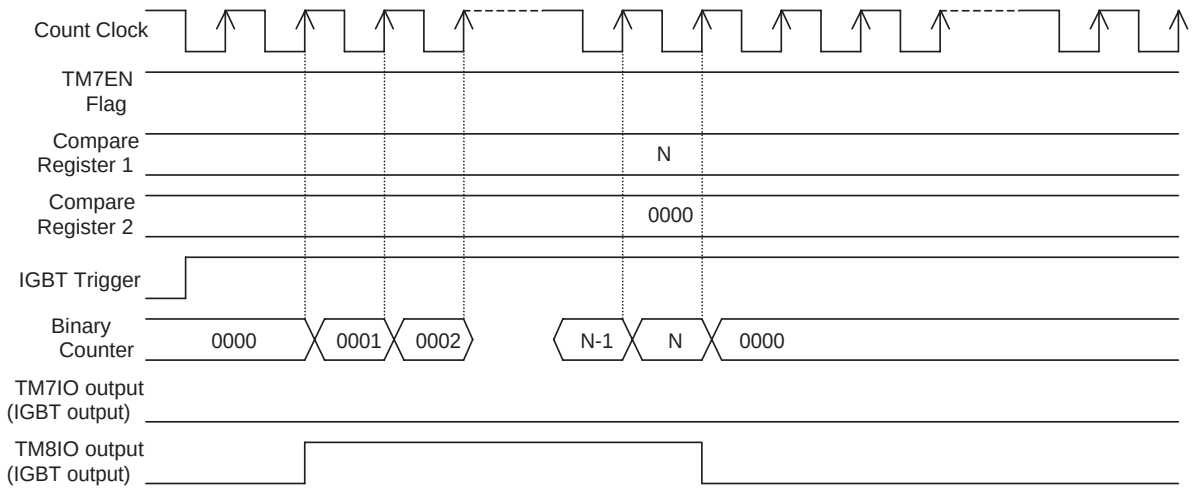


Figure:6.9.5 One Shot Pulse Output of High Precision IGBT Output (When the compare register 2 is X'0000') (Timer 7)

■ One Shot Pulse Output of High Precision IGBT Output (When compare register 2 = compare register 1) (Timer 7)

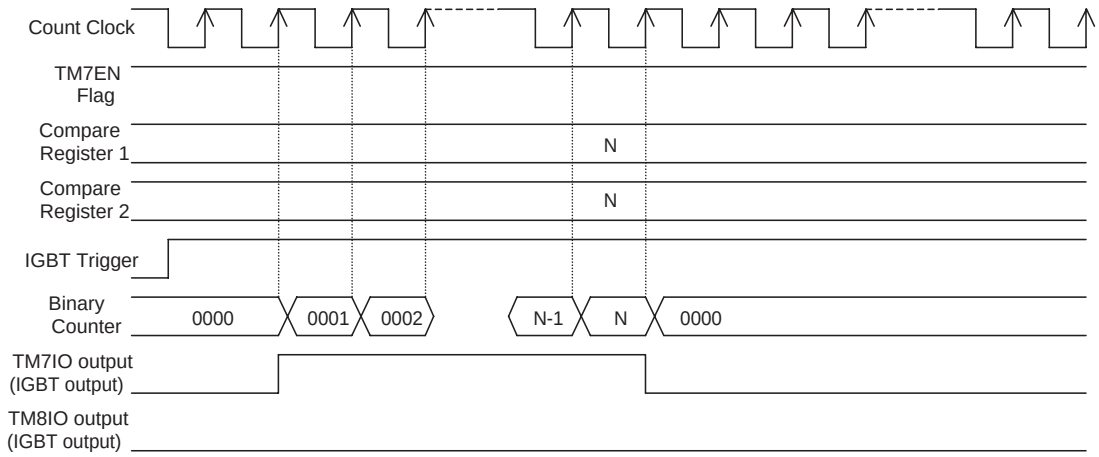


Figure:6.9.6 One Shot Pulse Output of High Precision IGBT Output (When compare register 2 = compare register 1) (Timer 7)

6.9.2 Setup Example

■ High precision IGBT Output Setup Example (Timer 7)

At the interrupt generation edge of the external interrupt 0 input signal, TM7IO output pin outputs the waveform of 1/4 duty IGBT output waveform at 400 Hz using the timer 7. Select fosc/2 (at fosc=20 MHz) as the clock source. Required period for one IGBT output waveform cycle depends on the set value of the compare register 1. "H" period of IGBT output waveform depends on the set value of the compare register 2.
An example setup procedure, with a description of each step is shown below.

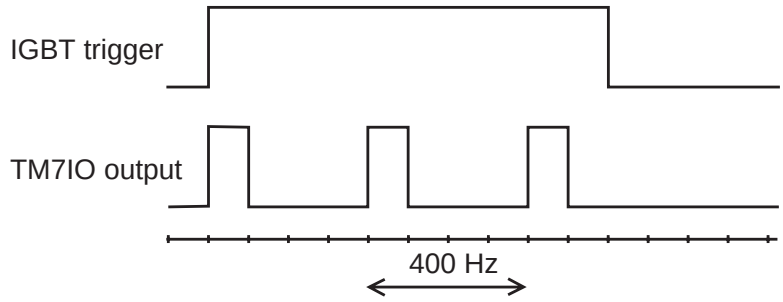


Figure:6.9.7 Output Waveform of TM7IO Output Pin

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Stop the counter TM7MD1(x'3F78) bp4:TM7EN =0	(1) Set the TM7EN flag of the timer 7 mode register 1 (TM7MD1) to "0" to stop the timer 7 counting.
(2) Set the output of special function pins P10MD(x'3F1C') bp4:P1OMD3 =1 bp3:NBUZSEL =1 bp4:P1OMD2 =1 bp3:BUZSEL =1 P1DIR(x'3F31') bp3:P1DIR3=1 bp2:P1DIR2=1	(2) Set the P1OMD3 flag of the port 1 output mode register (P1OMD) to "1", the NBUZSEL flag to "1" to set the P13 pin to the special function pin. Set the P1OMD2 flag of the port 1 output mode register to "1", the BUZSDEL flag to "1" to set the P12 pin to the special function pin. Set the P1DIR3 flag of the port 1 direction control register (P1DIR) to "1", the P1DIR2 flag to "1" to set the output mode. Add pull-up/pull-down resistor if necessary. [Chapter 4 I/O port]
(3) Set IGBT output TM7MD3(x'3F8E') bp2:TM7IGBTEN =1	(3) Set the T7IGBTEN flag of the timer 7 mode register 3 (TM7MD3) to "1" to select IGBT output.
(4) Set the high precision IGBT output operation TM7MD2(x'3F79) bp5:TM7BCR =1 bp6:T7PWMSL =1 TM7MD4(x'3F6E') bp3:T7NODED =1	(4) Set the TM7BCR flag of the TM7MD2 register to "1" to select the TM7OC1 compare match as the clear factor of the binary counter. Set the T7PWMSL flag to "1" to select the TM7OC2 compare match as the duty determination factor of IGBT output. Set the T7NODED flag of the TM7MD4 register to "1" to select the IGBT waveform without dead time.

Setup Procedure	Description
(5) Select IGBT trigger generation interrupt source TM7MD3(x'3F8E) bp1-0:T7IGBT1-0 =01	(5) Set the external interrupt 0 (IRQ0) input as IGBT trigger generation factor by the T7IGBT1-0 flag of the TM7MD3 register.
(6) Select the interrupt generation valid edge IRQ0ICR(x'3FE2) bp5:REDG0 =1	(6) Set the REDG0 flag of the external interrupt 0 control register (IRQ0ICR) to "1" to select the rising edge as the interrupt generation valid edge.
(7) Select IGBT trigger generation level TM7MD3(x'3F8E') bp4:T7IGBTTR=0	(7) Set the T7IGBTTR flag of the TM7MD3 register to "0" to set the IGBT trigger level to "H".
(8) Select IGBT trigger generation edge TM7MD2(x'3F79') bp7:T7ICEDG=1	(8) Set the T7ICEDG flag of the TM7MD2 register to "1" to select the external interrupt specified edge as the IGBT trigger generation factor.
(9) Set the interrupt level IRQ0ICR(x'3FE2') bp7-6:IRQ0LV1-0 =10	(9) Set the interrupt level by the IRQ1LV1 to 0 flag of the IRQ0ICR register. If any interrupt request flag is already set, clear it. [Chapter 3. 3.1.4 Interrupt Flag Setup]
(10) Enable the interrupt IRQ0ICR(x'3FE2') bp1:IRQ0IE =1	(10) Set the TM7EN flag of the TM7MD1 register to "1" to start the timer 7.
(11) Select the count clock source TM7MD1(x'3F78') bp1-0:TM7CK1-0 =00 bp3-2:TM7PS1-0 =01	(11) Select fosc as the clock source by the TM7CK1 to 0 flag of the TM7MD1 register. Also, select 1/2 dividing as the count clock source by the TM7PS1 to 0 flag.
(12) Set the IGBT output cycle TM7PR1(x'3F75', x'3F74') =x'61a7''	(12) Set the IGBT output cycle to the timer 7 preset register 1 (TM7PR1). To set 400 Hz by dividing MHz, set as; 25000-1=24999 (x61a7') At the same time, the same value is loaded to the timer 7 compare register 1 (TM7OC1), and the timer 7 binary counter (TM7BC) is initialized to x'0000'.
(13) Set "H" period of the IGBT output TM7PR2(x'3F7D', x'3F7C') =x'186a'	(13) Set the "H" period of the IGBT waveform to the timer 7 preset register 2 (TM7PR2). To set 1/4 duty of 25000 dividing, set as; 25000/4=6250(x'186') At the same time, the same value is loaded to the timer 7 compare register 2 (TM7OC2).
(14) Start the timer operation TM7MD1(x'3F78') bp4: TM7EN= 1	(14) Set the TM7EN flag of the TM7MD1 register to "1" to operate the timer 7.

TM7BC counts up from x'0000. The IGBT output waveform outputs "H" until TM7BC matches the set value of the TM7OC2 register. Once they match, it outputs "L". After that, TM7BC continues to count up. Once TM7BC value matches the TM7OC1 register value to be cleared, the IGBT output waveform outputs "H" and TM7BC counts up from x'0000 again.

To output the IGBT output waveform from the large current pin TM7O, set the special function pin to output mode as follows (refer to setup example (2)). Set each of P5OMD1 flag of the port 5 output mode register (P5OMD) to “1” to select P51 pin as the special function pins. Set P5DIR1 flag of the port 5 direction control register to “1” to set output mode.

6.10 16-bit Standard IGBT Output (Only duty can be changed consecutively)

Startup trigger can be selected by the external interrupt 0, 1 and 2 or starting of the timer 7 count operation. When counting starts, the operation is the same as the high precision PWM output.

6.10.1 Operation

■ IGBT Trigger Selection

IGBT trigger can be selected from IRQ0, IRQ1, IRQ2 and the start of the timer 7 count operation. Setup should be done at the T7IGBT0 and T7IGBT1 flag of the TM7MD3 register. When the startup is controlled from external of the microcontroller, one of IRQ0 to IRQ2 should be selected. This trigger detects the input level before activation. Either “H” or “L” level can be selected with the T7IGBTTR flag of the TM7MD3 register. When “1” (the rising edge) is selected, count operation continues while the trigger pin is “H”. When “0” (the falling edge) is selected, count operation continues while the trigger pin is “L”.
To control the startup by the commands, TM7EN count operation should be selected. In that case, timer count operation or IGBT output are controlled by the TM7EN flag of the TM7MD1 register. When “1” (count operation) is selected, count continues counting until “0” (count stop) is set. Make sure to set the TM7IGBT0, 1 of the TM7MD3 register before operating the TM7EN flag of the TM7MD1 register.

■ 16-bit Standard IGBT Output (Timer 7)

The IGBT waveform of any duty is generated by setting the duty of “H” period to the compare register 1 (TM7OC1) and detecting the trigger that is generated by the external interrupt after the external interrupt interface block has passed. The cycle is the full count overflow time of the 16 bit timer. The following shows IGBT output pins, types of the selectable IGBT trigger, and the setting of the interrupt flags.

Table:6.10.1 IGBT Output Pin

	Timer 7
IGBT output pin	TM7IO output (P13)
	TM7O output (P51)

Table:6.10.2 IGBT Trigger

	Timer 7 mode register 3	
	T7IGBT	T7IGBTTR
IRQ0 falling edge	01 (IRQ0)	1
IRQ0 rising edge	01 (IRQ0)	0
IRQ1 falling edge	10 (IRQ1)	1
IRQ1 rising edge	10 (IRQ1)	0
IRQ2 falling edge	11 (IRQ2)	1
IRQ2 rising edge	11 (IRQ2)	0
TM7EN count operation	00	-

■ Count Timing of Standard IGBT Output (At Normal)

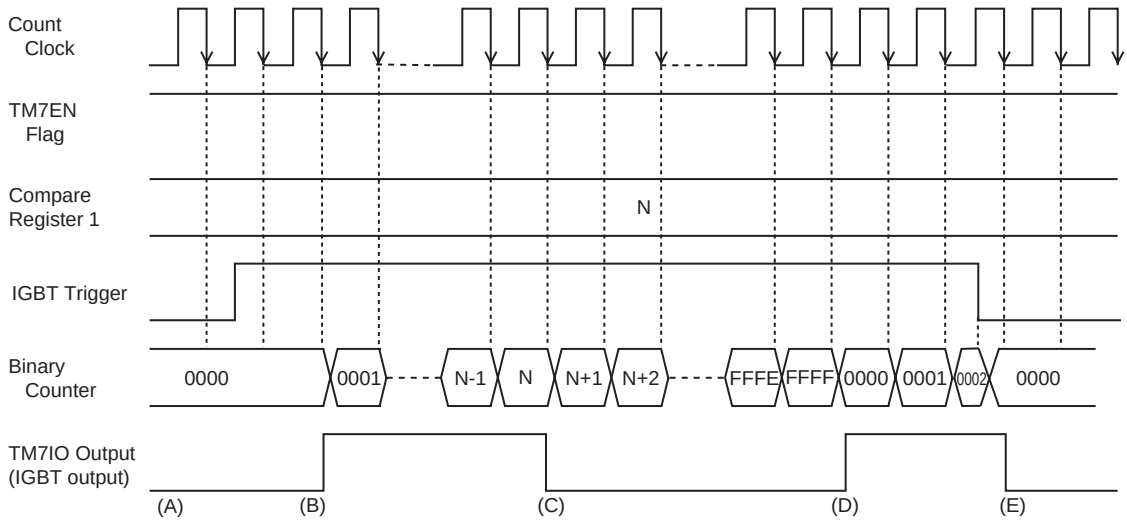


Figure:6.10.1 Count Timing of Standard IGBT Output (At Normal)

(A) When IGBT trigger is input, IGBT operation becomes valid after 1 count clock. After IGBT output is valid, it is "L" until the next count clock.

(B) When IGBT trigger is valid, it is "H" during the period when the value of the binary counter reaches that of TM7OC2 from X'0000'. ("H" output from X'0001 at the first operation cycle)

(C) After the TM7OC2 compare match, it is "L" and the binary counter counts up until the counter reaches the TM7OC1 compare register to be cleared.

(D) When the binary counter is cleared, it becomes "H" again.

(E) When IGBT trigger becomes invalid, the timer is initialized and IGBT output forcibly becomes "L".

■ Count Timing of Standard IGBT Output (When the compare register 1 is X'0000') (Timer 7)

The following shows the count timing as the compare register 1 is set to X'0000'.

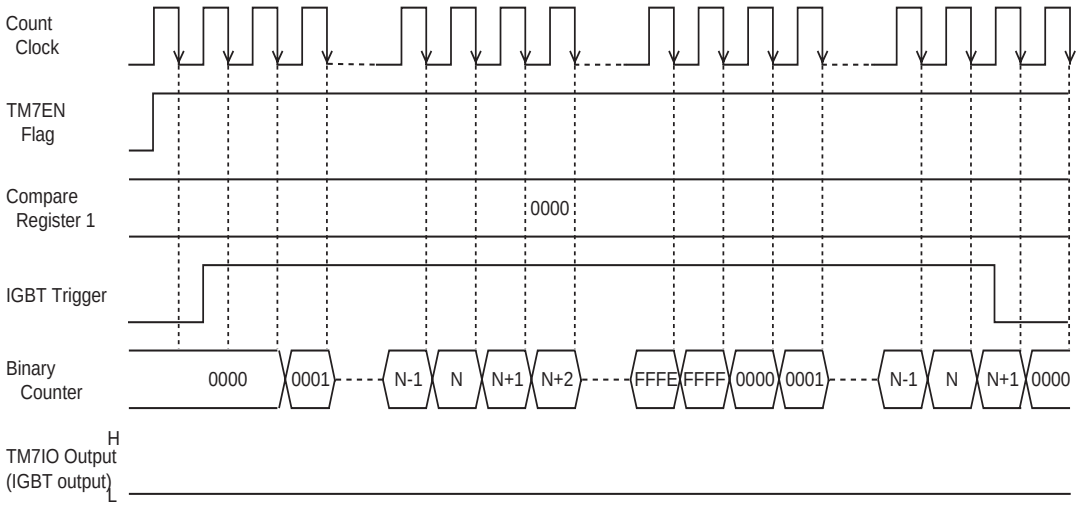


Figure:6.10.2 Count Timing of Standard IGBT Output (When the compare register 1 is X'0000')

When TM7EN flag is set to "0" (stop status), IGBT output is "L".

■ Count Timing of Standard IGBT Output (When the compare register 1 is X'FFFF') (Timer 7)

The following shows the count timing as the compare register 1 is set to X'FFFF'.

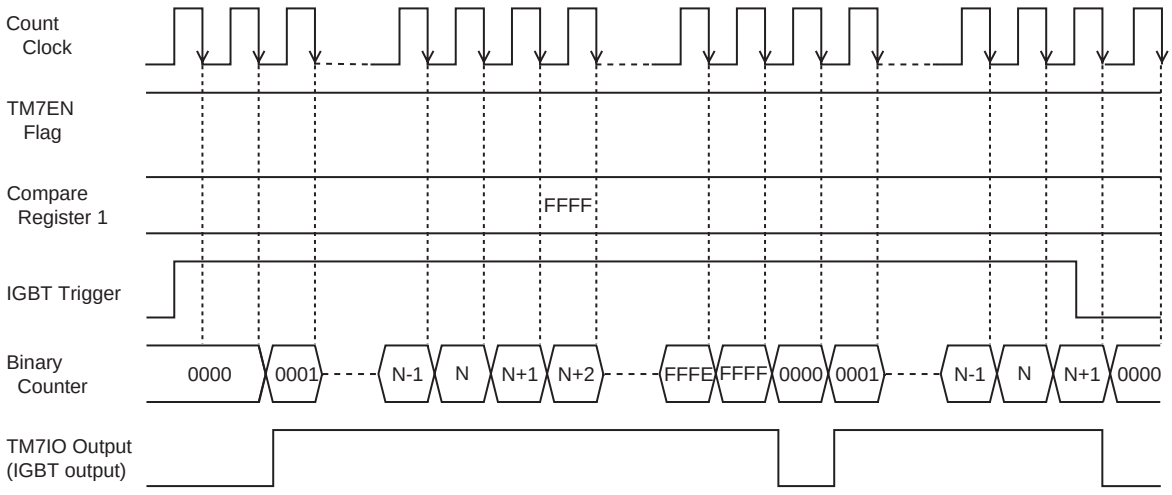


Figure:6.10.3 Count Timing of Standard IGBT Output (When the compare register 1 is X'FFFF')

For standard IGBT output, set the TM7BCR flag of the TM7MD2 register to "0" and select the full count overflow as the binary counter clear factor and the IGBT output set ("H" output) factor.

TM7OC1 compare match or TM7OC2 compare match can be selected as the IGBT output reset ("L" output) factor by the T7PWMSL flag of the TM7MD2 register.

6.10.2 Setup Example

■ Standard IGBT Output Setup Example (Timer 7)

At the interrupt generation edge of the external interrupt 0 input signal, TM7IO output pins output the waveform of 1/4 duty IGBT waveform at 305.18 Hz using the timer 7. Frequency for high speed operation (fosc) is 20 MHz. Required period for one IGBT output waveform cycle depends on the overflow time of the binary counter. "H" period of IGBT output waveform depends on the set value of the compare register 1.
An example setup procedure, with a description of each step is shown below.

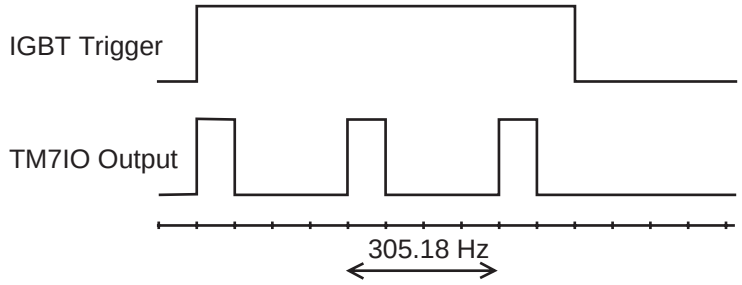


Figure:6.10.4 Output Waveform of TM7IO Output Pin and TM8IO Output Pin

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Stop the counter TM7MD1(x'3F78) bp4:TM7EN =0	(1) Set the TM7EN flag of the timer 7 mode register 1 (TM7MD1) to "0" to stop the timer 7 counting.
(2) Set the output of special function pins P1OMD(x'3F1C') bp4:P1OMD3 =1 bp3:NBUZSEL =1 P1DIR(x'3F31') bp4:P1DIR3=1	(2) Set the P1OMD3 flag of the port 1 output mode register (P1OMD) to "1", to set the P13 pin to the special function pin. Set the P1DIR3 flag of the port 1 direction control register (P1DIR) to "1" to set the output mode. Add pull-up/pull-down resistor if necessary. [Chapter 4 I/O port]
(3) Set IGBT output TM7MD3(x'3F8E') bp2:TM7IGBTEN =1 TM7MD2(x'3F79') bp4:PM7PWM =1	(3) Set the T7IGBTEN flag of the timer 7 mode register 3 (TM7MD3) to "1" , the TM7PWM flag of the timer 7 mode register 2 (TM7MD2) to "1" to select IGBT output.
(4) Set the standard IGBT output operation TM7MD2(x'3F79) bp5:TM7BCR =1	(4) Set the TM7BCR flag of the TM7MD2 register to "0" to select the full count overflow as the clear factor of the binary counter.
(5) Select IGBT trigger generation interrupt source TM7MD3(x'3F8E) bp1-0:T7IGBT1-0 =01	(5) Set the external interrupt 0 (IRQ0) input as IGBT trigger generation factor by the T7IGBT1-0 flag of the TM7MD3 register.

Setup Procedure	Description
(6) Select the trigger level TM7MD3(x'3F8E') bp4:T7IGBTTR=1	(6) Set the T7IGBTTR flag of the TM7MD3 register to "1" to set the IGBT trigger level to "H".
(7) Select the dead time TM7MD4(x'3F6E') bp3:T7NODED =1	(7) Set the T7NODED flag of the TM7MD4 register to "1" to select without dead time.
(8) Select the count clock source TM7MD1(x'3F78') bp1-0:TM7CK1-0 =00 bp3-2:TM7PS1-0 =01	(8) Select fosc as the clock source by the TM7CK1 to 0 flag of the TM7MD1 register. Also, select 1/1 dividing as the count clock source by the TM7PS1 to 0 flag.
(9) Start the timer operation TM7MD1(x'3F78') bp4: TM7EN= 1	(9) Set the TM7EN flag of the TM7MD1 register to "1" to enable the operation of the timer 7. After "H" is input to the P54, IGBT is output from the P13.

6.11 Dead Time IGBT Output

IGBT output with dead time generates the waveform, inclusive ON or OFF time delay, during the standard IGBT signal inversion. And the formed waveform is output through TM7IO and TM8IO pins. Startup trigger can be selected by the external interrupt 0, 1 and 2 or starting of the timer 7 count operation.

6.11.1 Operation

■ Dead Time IGBT Output Operation (Timer 7)

Dead time IGBT output can be selected at the T7IGBTEN of the timer 7 mode register 3 (TM7MD3). Also, dead time can be set to the dead time preset register 1 and 2 (TM7DEADPR1, 2). Only the timer 7 of 16-bit timer can use dead time IGBT output functions.

■ IGBT Trigger Selection

IGBT trigger can be selected from IRQ0, IRQ1, IRQ2 and the start of the timer 7 count operation.
Setup should be done at the T7IGBT0 and T7IGBT1 flag of the TM7MD3 register. When the startup is controlled from external of the micro controller, one of IRQ0 to IRQ2 should be selected. This trigger detects the input level before activation. Either “H” or “L” level can be selected with the T7IGBTTR flag of the TM7MD3 register. When “1” is selected, count operation continues while the trigger pin is “H”. When “0” is selected, count operation continues while the trigger pin is “L”.
To control the startup by the commands, TM7EN count operation should be selected. In that case, timer count operation or IGBT output are controlled by the TM7EN flag of the TM7MD1 register. When “1” (count operation) is selected, count continues counting until “0” (count stop) is set. Make sure to set the TM7IGBT0, 1 of the TM7MD3 register before operating the TM7EN flag of the TM7MD1 register. In that case, setup of T7IGBTTR is neglected. The binary counter is cleared as the counting stops. The value is loaded from the preset register to the compare register in synchronization with the counter clock.

■ Dead Time Count

Dead time counter counts the timer clock source. When the dead time insert is set as rising standard, set the period from the falling of TM8IO to the rising of TM7IO to the dead time preset register 1 (TM7DPR1) and the period from the falling of TM7IO to the rising of TM8IO to the dead time preset register 2 (TM7DPR2). Dead time is inserted for the period of the set value + 1. Only for the period from the IGBT output is enabled by the IGBT trigger to the first rising of TM7IO (in the case of the IGBT falling standard), the set value of the TM7DPR1 + 2 is inserted to the dead time. (1 count clock should be longer than usually.)

■ Count Timing of Dead Time IGBT Output (Timer 7)

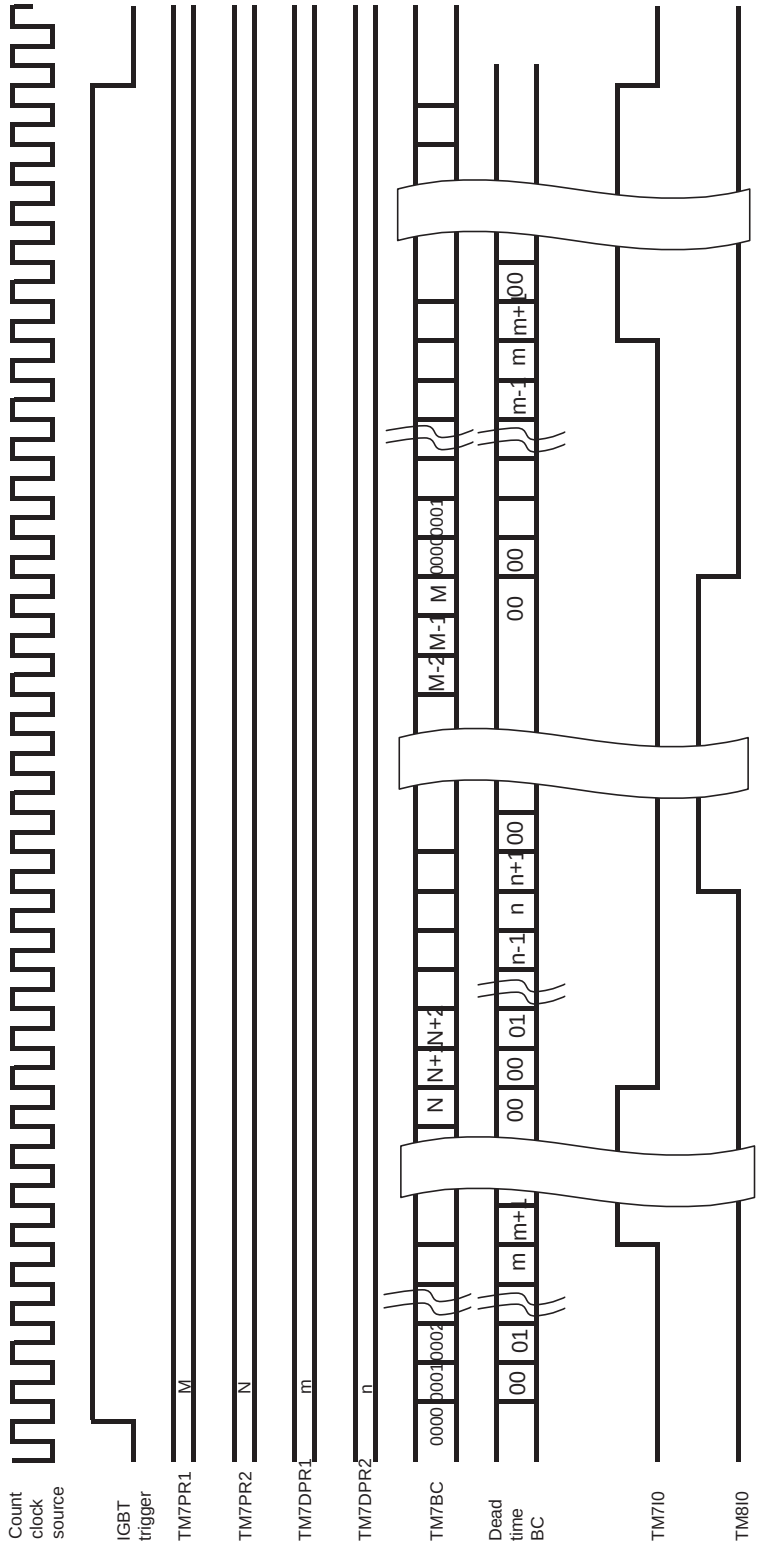


Figure:6.11.1 Count Timing of Dead Time IGBT Output (Timer 7)

Output waveform of the IGBT with dead time (at falling-edge standard)
(A)TM7IO=”L”, TM8IO=”L” until the IGBT trigger is input and become valid.
(B)After the trigger is input and after 1 count clock falling edge of the next count clock + count clock × (value of the dead time preset register 1 + 1) output voltage of TM7IO is increased.
(C)After the compare matching (the value of the binary counter matches that of TM7OC2), and after 1 count clock, output voltage of TM7IO is decreased.
(D)After TM7IO output voltage is decreased and after count clock × (value of the dead time preset register 2 + 1), output voltage of TM8IO is increased.
(E)After the compare matching (the value of the binary counter matches that of TM7OC1) and after 1 count clock, output voltage of TM8IO is decreased.
(F)After TM8IO output voltage is decreased and after count clock × (value of the dead time preset register 1 + 1), output voltage of TM7IO is increased.
(G)When IGBT trigger becomes invalid, both TM7IO and TM8IO become “L” right away.

Set as TM7OC2 value ≤ TM7OC1 value.
When TM7OC2 value > TM7OC1 value, the IGBT output waveform is fixed as P13=”L”, P12=”L” at falling edge standard.

If IGBT trigger is enabled within 2 cycles of count clock after IGBT trigger is disabled, the following cases may occur:
-the value set in the preset register during IGBT operation may not be loaded to the compare register.
-the value set in the dead time preset register during IGBT operation may not be reflected.

If the event input (TM7IO) is selected as the count clock source, the following cases may occur when IGBT trigger is disabled:
-the value set in the preset register during IGBT operation may not be loaded to the compare register.
-the value set in the dead time preset register during IGBT operation may not be reflected.

When the event input (TTMnIO) is selected as the count clock source, the value which is entered on the dead time preset register while IGBT operation halt may not be reflected. To prevent this, select the system clock (fs) as the count clock source and enter the value on the dead time preset register. Then, select the event input (TMnIO) as the count clock source and start the IGBT operation.

When IRQ0, IRQ1, or IRQ2 is selected as the IGBT trigger, the timing of IGBT operation start may delay up to 1 count clock.

■ One Shot Pulse Output Setup

One shot pulse can be output by setting the T7ONESHOT flag of the TM7MD4 register to “1”.

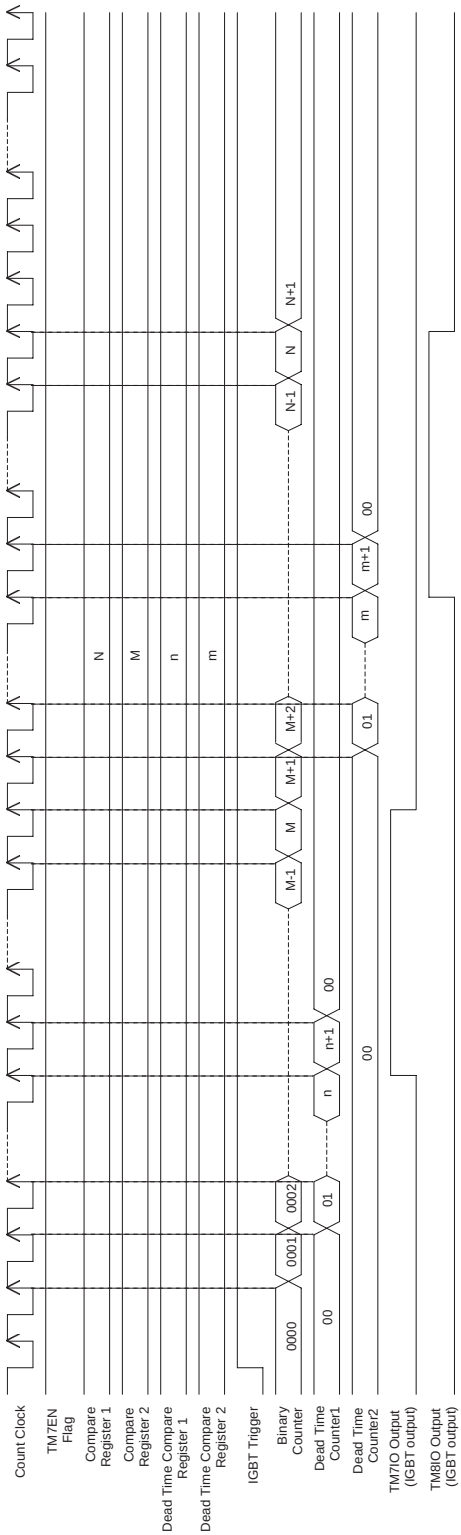


Figure:6.11.2 Count Timing of Dead Time IGBT One Shot Pulse Output (Timer 7)

6.11.2 Setup Example

■ Dead Time IGBT Output Setup Example (Timer 7)

At the interrupt generation edge of the external interrupt 0 input signal, TM7IO and TM8IO output pins output the waveform of 1/4 duty IGBT waveform at 200 Hz with 0.01 ms, 0.02 ms dead time by the falling standard using the timer 7. Select fosc/1 (at fosc=8.0 MHz) as the clock source. Required period for one IGBT output waveform cycle depends on the set value of the compare register 1. "H" period of IGBT output standard waveform depends on the set value of the compare register 2. Dead time period depends on the value of the dead time preset register 1 and 2.
An example setup procedure, with a description of each step is shown below.

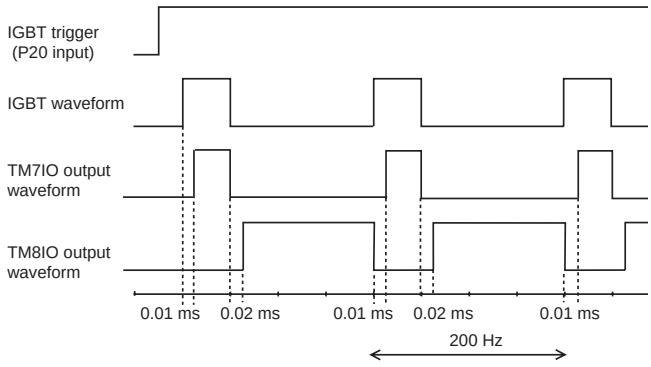


Figure:6.11.3 Output Waveform of TM7IO Output Pin and TM8IO Output Pin

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Stop the counter TM7MD1(x'3F78) bp4:TM7EN =0	(1) Set the TM7EN flag of the timer 7 mode register 1 (TM7MD1) to "0" to stop the timer 7 counting.
(2) Set the dead time IGBT output operation TM7MD2(x'3F79') bp5:TM7BCR =1 bp6:T7PWMSL =1	(2) Set the TM7BCR flag of the TM7MD2 register to "1" to select the TM7OC1 compare register match as the binary counter clear source. Also, set the T7PWMSL flag to "1" to select the TM7OC2 compare match as the duty decision source of the IGBT output.
(3) Select IGBT/timer startup factor TM7MD3(x'3F8E') bp1-0:TM7IGBT1-0 =01	(3) Select the external interrupt 0 (IRQ0) input as the IGBT/ timer startup factor by the T7IGBT1 to 0 flag of the TM7MD3 register.
(4) Select the interrupt generation valid edge TM7MD3(x'3F8E') bp4:T7IGBTTR =0	(4) Set the T7IGBTTR flag of the TM7MD3 register to "1" to select the rising edge as the interrupt generation valid edge.
(5) Set the dead time edge TM7MD3(x'3F8E') bp3:T7IGBTDT =0	(5) Set the T7IGBTDT flag of the timer 7 mode register 3 (TM7MD3) to "0" to select the falling standard as the dead time edge.

Setup Procedure	Description
(6) Set the interrupt level IRQ0ICR(x'3FE2') bp7-6:IRQ0LV1-0 =10	(6) Set the interrupt level by the IRQ1LV1 to 0 flag of the IRQ0ICR register. If any interrupt request flag is already set, clear it.
(7) Enable the interrupt IRQ0ICR(x'3FE2') bp1:IRQ1IE =1	(7) Set the IRQ0IE flag of the IRQ0ICR register to "1" to enable the interrupt.
(8) Select the count clock source TM7MD1(x'3F78') bp1-0:TM7CK1-0 =00 bp3-2:TM7PS1-0 =00	(8) Select fosc as the clock source by the TM7CK1 to 0 flag of the TM7MD1 register. Also, select 1/1 dividing as the count clock source by the TM7PS1 to 0 flag.
(9) Set the IGBT output cycle TM7PR1(x'3F75', x'3F74') =x'9C3F' bp2:T7ICEN =1	(9) Set the IGBT output cycle to the timer 7 preset register 1 (TM7PR1). To set 200 Hz by dividing 8.0 MHz, set as; 40000-1=39999 (0x9C3F') At the same time, the same value is loaded to the timer 7 compare register 1 (TM7OC1), and the timer 7 binary counter (TM7BC) is initialized to 0x0000.
(10) Set "H" period of the IGBT output TM7PR2(x'3F7D', x'3F7C') =x'2710'	(10) Set the "H" period of the IGBT waveform to the timer 7 preset register 2 (TM7PR2). To set 1/4 duty of 40000 dividing, set as; 40000/4=10000 (0x2710') At the same time, the same value is loaded to the timer 7 compare register 2 (TM7OC2).
(11) Set the dead time TM7DPR1(x'3F7E') = x'50" TM7DPR2(x'3F7F') = x'9F'	(11) Set the period from the falling of the TM8IO to the rising of the TM7IO to the timer 7 preset register 1 (TM7DEADPR1) and from the falling of the TM7IO to the rising of the TM8IO to the timer 7 preset register 2 (TM7DEADPR2). To make dead time which is from the TM7IO falling to the TM8IO rising is 0.02 ms and from the TM8IO falling to the TM7IO rising is 0.01 ms, set 0x4F to the timer 7 dead time preset register 1 and 0x9F to the timer 7 dead timer preset register 2.
(12) Set the IGBT output TM7MD2 (x'3F79') bp4:TM7PWM =1 TM7MD3 (x'3F8E') bp2:T7IGBTEN =1 TM8MD3 (x'3F8F') bp2:TM8SEL =1	(12) Set T7IGBTEN flag of the timer 7 mode register 3 (TM7MD3) to "1" to select the dead time IGBT output. Set T78SEL flag of the timer 8 mode register 3 (TM8MD3) to "1" to select the timer 7 IGBT output.
(13) Set the special function pin to output P1OMD(x'3F1C') bp3: P1OMD3=1 bp2: NBUZSEL= 1 bp1: P1OMD2=1 bp0: BUZSEL=1 P1DIR (x'3F31') bp3: P1DIR3=1 bp2: P1DIR2=1	(13) Set the P1OMD3 flag, NBUZSEL flag, P1OMD2 flag and BUZSEL flag of the port 1 output mode register (P1OMD) to "1" to set P13 and P12 as the special function pins. Set the P1DIR3 flag and P1DIR2 flag of the port 1 direction control register (P1DIR) to "1" to set the output mode. [Chapter 4 I/O Ports] Set P13, P12 as the special function pins after setup procedures (1) to (13).

Setup Procedure	Description
(14) Start the timer operation TM7MD1(x'3F78') bp4: TM7EN= 1	(14) Set the TM7EN flag of the TM7MD1 register to "1" to operate the timer 7. After "H" is input to P54 pin, IGBT is output from P13, P12.

TM7BC counts up from X'0000. The IGBT output waveform outputs "H" until TM7BC matches the set value of the TM7OC2 register. Once they match, it outputs "L". After that, TM7BC continues to count up. Once TM7BC value matches the TM7OC1 register value to be cleared, the IGBT output waveform outputs "H" and TM7BC counts up from X'0000 again. TM7IO pin outputs dead time worth of IGBT output waveform. TM8IO pin outputs dead time worth of inverted IGBT output waveform.

To output the IGBT output waveform from the large current pin TM7IO, set the special function pin to output mode as follows (refer to setup example (2)). Set each of P5OMD1 flag and P5OMD3 flag of the port 5 output mode register (P5OMD) to "1" to select P51 pin and P53 pin as the special function pins. Set P5DIR1 and P5DIR3 flag of the port 5 direction control register to "1" to set output mode.

6.12 16-bit Timer Cascade Connection

6.12.1 Operation

Cascading timers 7 and 8 forms a 32-bit timer.

■ 16-bit Timer Cascade Connection Operation (Timer 7 + Timer 8)

Timer 7 and timer 8 are combined to be a 32-bit timer. Cascading timer is operated at clock source of timer 7 which are lower 16 bits.

Table:6.12.1 Timer Function at Cascade Connection

	Timer 7+Timer 8 (32-bit)
Interrupt source	TM8IRQ1,TM8IRQ2
Timer operation	O
Timer pulse output	O (TM8IO output)
PWM output	O
Synchronous output	-
Clock source	fosc fosc/2 fosc/4 fosc/16 fs fs/2 fs/4 fs/16 TM7IO input TM7IO input/2 TM7IO input/4 TM7IOì input/16
fosc:Machine clock (High frequency oscillation) fs:System clock [Chapter 2 2.5. Clock Switching]	

*At cascade connection, timer 8 interrupt factor is only counter-clear.

At cascade connection, the binary counter and the compare register are operated as a 32-bit register. At operation, set the TM7EN flag of the lower 16-bit timers to “1” to be operated. Also, select the clock source with the lower 16-bit timer. Other setup and count timing are the same as the 16-bit timer at independently operation.

When timer 7 and timer 8 are used in the cascade connection, timer 8 is used as the interrupt request flag. Timer pulse output of timer 7 is “L” fixed output.
Timer 7 interrupt should be disabled as the interrupt request of timer 7 is generated.

The preset registers (TM7PR1 and TM8PR1, TM7PR2 and TM8PR2) cannot be written at once that if the loading timing from the preset register to the compare register occurs at the same time as the writing timing of the preset register, the correct data may not be loaded.

6.12.2 Setup Example (Timer Operation)

■ Cascade Connection Timer Setup Example (Timer 7 + Timer 8)

Setting example of timer function that the interrupt is constantly generated by cascade connection of timer 7 and timer 8, as 32-bit timer is shown. An interrupt is generated in every 100000 cycles (40 ms) by selecting source clock to fs/2 (fosc=10 MHz, fs=fosc/2).

An example setup procedure, with a description of each step is shown below.

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Stop the counter TM7MD1 (x'3F78') bp4:TM7EN= 0 TM8MD1 (x'3F88') bp7:TM8EN = 0	(1) Set the TM7EN flag of the timer 7 mode register (TM7MD1) to "0" and the TM8EN flag of the timer 8 mode register (TM8MD1) to "0" to stop the timer 7 and the timer 8 counting.
(2) Select the timer clear source TM7MD2 (x'3F88') bp5:TM7BCR =1	(2) Set the TM7BCR flag of the TM7MD2 register to "1" to select the compare match as the binary counter clear source.
(3) Select the normal lower operation TM7MD2 (x'3F79') bp2:T7ICEN= 0	(3) Set the T7ICEN flag of the TM7MD2 register to "0" to select the normal timer operation.
(4) Set the cascade connection TM8MD3 (x'3F8') bp0:TM8CAS=1	(4) Set the TM8CAS flag of the TM8MD3 register to "1" to connect the timer 7 and the timer 8 to the cascade.
(5) Select the count clock source TM7MD1 (x'3F78') bp1-0:TM7CK1-0=01 bp3-2:TM7PS1-0=01	(5) Select fs as the clock source by the TM7CK1 to 0 of the TM7MD1 register. Also, select 1/2 of fs as the count clock source by the TM7PS1 to 0 flag.
(6) Set the interrupt generation cycle TM7PR1 (x'3F75', x'3F74')=x'869F' TM8PR1 (x'3F85', x'3F84')=x'0001'	(6) Set the interrupt generation cycle to the timer 7 preset register 1 (TM7PR1) and the timer 8 preset register (TM8PR1). (100000 cycles-1). At the same time, the same values as the preset registers are loaded to the timer 7 compare register 1 (TM7OC1) and the timer 8 compare register (TM8OC1), and the binary counters (TM7BC, TM8BC) are initialized to x'0000'.
(7) Disable the lower timer interrupt TM7ICR (x'3FED') bp1:TM7IE=0	(7) Set the TM7IE flag of the timer 7 interrupt control register (TM7ICR) to "0" to disable the interrupt.
(8) Set the upper timer interrupt level TM8ICR (x'3FF6') bp7-6:TM8LV1-0=10	(8) Set the interrupt level by the TM8LS1 to 0 flag of the timer 8 interrupt control register (TM8ICR). If any interrupt request flag is already set, clear it. [Chapter 3 3.1.4. Interrupt Flag Setup]

Setup Procedure	Description
(9) Enable the upper timer interrupt TM8ICR (x'3FF3') bp1:TM8IE=1	(9) Set the TM8IE flag of the TM8ICR register to “1” to enable the interrupt.
(10) Start the lower timer operation TM7MD1 (x'3F78') bp4:TM7EN=1	(10) Set the TM7EN flag of the TM7MD1 register to “1” to operate the timer 7.

TM7BCL+TM7BCH+TM8BCL+TM8BCH counts up from X’00000000 as a 32-bit timer.

When TM7BCL+TM7BCH+TM8BCL+TM8BCH reaches the set value of TM7OC1L+TM7OC1H+TM8OC1L+TM8OC1H register, the timer 8 interrupt request flag is set at the next count clock and the value of TM7BCL+TM7BCH+TM8BCL+TM8BCH becomes X’00000000 to restart count up.

6.12.3 Setup Example (PWM Operation)

■ Cascade Connection PWM Output Setup Example (Timer 7 + Timer 8)

TM8IO output pin outputs the 1/10 duty PWM output waveform at 1/60 Hz with the cascade connection of timer 7 and timer 8, as a 32-bit timer. Select fosc/1 (fosc=8 MHz, at operation) as the clock source. One cycle of the PWM output waveform is depending on the set value of the compare register 1. "H" period of the PWM output waveform is depending of the set value of the compare register 2.
An example setup procedure, with a description of each step is shown below.

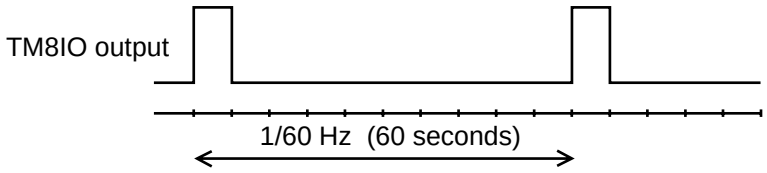


Figure:6.12.1 Output Waveform of TM8IO Output Pin

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Stop the counter TM7MD1 (x'3F78') bp4:TM7EN=0 TM8MD1 (x'3F88') bp7:TM8EN=0	(1) Set the TM7EN flag of the timer 7 mode register (TM7MD1) to "0", the TM8EN flag of the timer 8 mode register (TM8MD1) to "0" to stop the timer 7 and the timer 8 counting.
(2) Set the special function pin to output P1OMD (x'3F1C') bp1:P1OMD2=1 bp0:BUZSEL=1 P1DIR (x'3F31') bp2:P1DIR2=1	(2) Set the P10MD2, BUZSEL flags of the port 1 output mode register (P1OMD) to "1" to set the P12 pin as the special function pin. Set the P1DIR2 flag of the port 1 direction control register (P1DIR) to "1" to set the output mode. Add pull-up/pull-down register, if necessary. [Chapter 4. I/O Ports]
(3) Set the cascade connection TM8MD3 (x'3F8F') bp0:TM8CAS=1	(3) Set the TM8CAS flag of the TM8MD3 register to "1" to connect the timer 7 and the timer 8 to the cascade.
(4) Set the PWM output TM7MD2 (x'3F79') bp4:TM7PWM=1	(4) Set the TM7PWM flag of the timer 7 mode register 2 (TM7MD2) to "1" to select the PWM output.
(5) Set the high precision PWM output operation TM7MD2 (x'3F79') bp5:TM7BCR=1 bp6:T7PWMSL=1	(5) Set the TM7BCR flag of the TM7MD2 register to "1" to select the TM7OC1 compare match as the binary counter clear source. Also, set the T7PWMSL flag to "1" to select the TM7OC2 compare match as the duty of the PWM output.
(6) Select the count clock source TM7MD1 (x'3F78') bp1-0:TM7CK1-0=00 bp3-2:TM7PS1-0=00	(6) Select fosc as the clock source by the TM7CK1 to 0 flag of the TM7MD1 register. Also, select 1/1 dividing as the count clock source by the TM7PS1 to 0 flag.

Setup Procedure	Description
(7) Set the PWM output cycle TM7PR1 (x'3F75',x'3F74') = x'37FF' TM8PR1 (x'3F85',x'3F84') = x'1C9C'	(7) Set the PWM output cycle to the timer 7 preset register 1 (TM7PR1) and the timer 8 preset register 1 (TM8PR1). To set 1/60 Hz by dividing 8 MHz, set as; 480.000.000-1=479.999.999 (x'1C9C37FF') At the same time, the same values are loaded to the timer 7 compare register 1 (TM7OC1) and the timer 8 compare register 1 (TM8OC1), and the timer 7 binary counter (TM7BC) and the timer 8 binary counter (TM8BC) are initialized to x'0000.
(8) Set "H" period of the PWM output TM7PR2 (x'3F7D',x'3F7C') = x'6C00' TM8PR2 (x'3F8D',x'3F8C') = x'02DC'	(8) Set "H" period of the PWM output to the timer 7 preset register 2 (TM7PR2) and the timer 8 preset register 2 (TM8PR2). To set 1/10 duty of 480.000.000 dividing, set as; 480.000.000/10=48.000.000 (x'02DC6C00) At the same time, the same values are loaded to the timer 7 compare register 2 (TM7OC2) and the timer 8 compare register 2 (TM8OC2).
(9) Start the timer operation TM7MD1 (x'3F78') bp4:TM7EN=1	(9) Set the TM7EN flag of the TM7MD1 register to "1" to operate the timer 7 and the timer 8.

TM7BCL + TM7BCH + TM8BCL + TM8BCH counts up from X'00000000 as a 32-bit timer. The TM8IO outputs "H" until TM7BCL + TM7BCH + TM8BCL + TM8BCH reaches the set value of the TM7OC2L + TM7OC2H + TM8OC2L + TM8OC2H register. Once they mach, it outputs "L". After that, TM7BCL + TM7BCH + TM8BCL + TM8BCH continues to count up, once TM7OC1L + TM7OC1H + TM8OC1L + TM8OC1H reaches the TM7BCL + TM7BCH + TM8BCL + TM8BCH register to be cleared, the TM8IO outputs "H" again and TM7BCL + TM7BCH + TM8BCL + TM8BCH counts up from X'00000000 again.

In the initial state of the PWM output, "L" output is changed to "H" output as the PWM output is selected by the TM7PWM flag of the TM7MD2 register.

Set value should be set as;
TM7OC2L + TM7OC2H + TM8OC2L + TM8OC2H ≤
TM7OC1L + TM7OC1H + TM8OC1L + TM8OC1H.
If it is set as;
TM7OC2L + TM7OC2H + TM8OC2L + TM8OC2H ≥
TM7OC1L + TM7OC1H + TM8OC1L + TM8OC1H,
the PWM output is a "H" fixed output.

Chapter 7 Time Base Timer / Free-running Timer

7

7.1 Overview

This LSI has a time base timer and a 8-bit free-running timer (timer 6).

Time base timer is a 15-bit timer counter.

7.1.1 Functions

Table:7.1.1 shows the clock source and the interrupt generation cycle that timer 6 and time base timer 7 can use.

Table:7.1.1 Clock Source and Generation Cycle

	Time base timer	Timer 6 (8-bit free-running)
8-bit timer operation	×	O
Interrupt	TBIRQ	TM6IRQ
Clock source	fosc fx	fosc fx fs fosc × $1/2^7$ *1 fosc × $1/2^{13}$ *1 fx × $1/2^7$ *2 fx × $1/2^{13}$ *2
Interrupt generation cycle	fosc × $1/2^7$ fosc × $1/2^8$ fosc × $1/2^9$ fosc × $1/2^{10}$ fosc × $1/2^{13}$ fosc × $1/2^{15}$ fx × $1/2^7$ fx × $1/2^8$ fx × $1/2^9$ fx × $1/2^{10}$ fx × $1/2^{13}$ fx × $1/2^{15}$	The interrupt generation cycle is decided by the arbitrary value written to TM6OC.
fosc: Machine clock (High speed oscillation) fx: Machine clock (Low speed oscillation) fs: System clock [Chapter 2. 2.5 Clock Switching] *1 Can be used when a clock source of time base timer is selected to ‘fosc’. *2 Can be used when a clock source of time base timer is selected to ‘fx’.		

When ‘fs’ is used as a clock source, it counts at “rising” of the count clock and in other uses, it counts “falling” of the count clock.

Count clock source should be changed when the timer interrupt is disabled.

7.1.2 Block Diagram

■ Timer 6, Time Base Timer Block Diagram

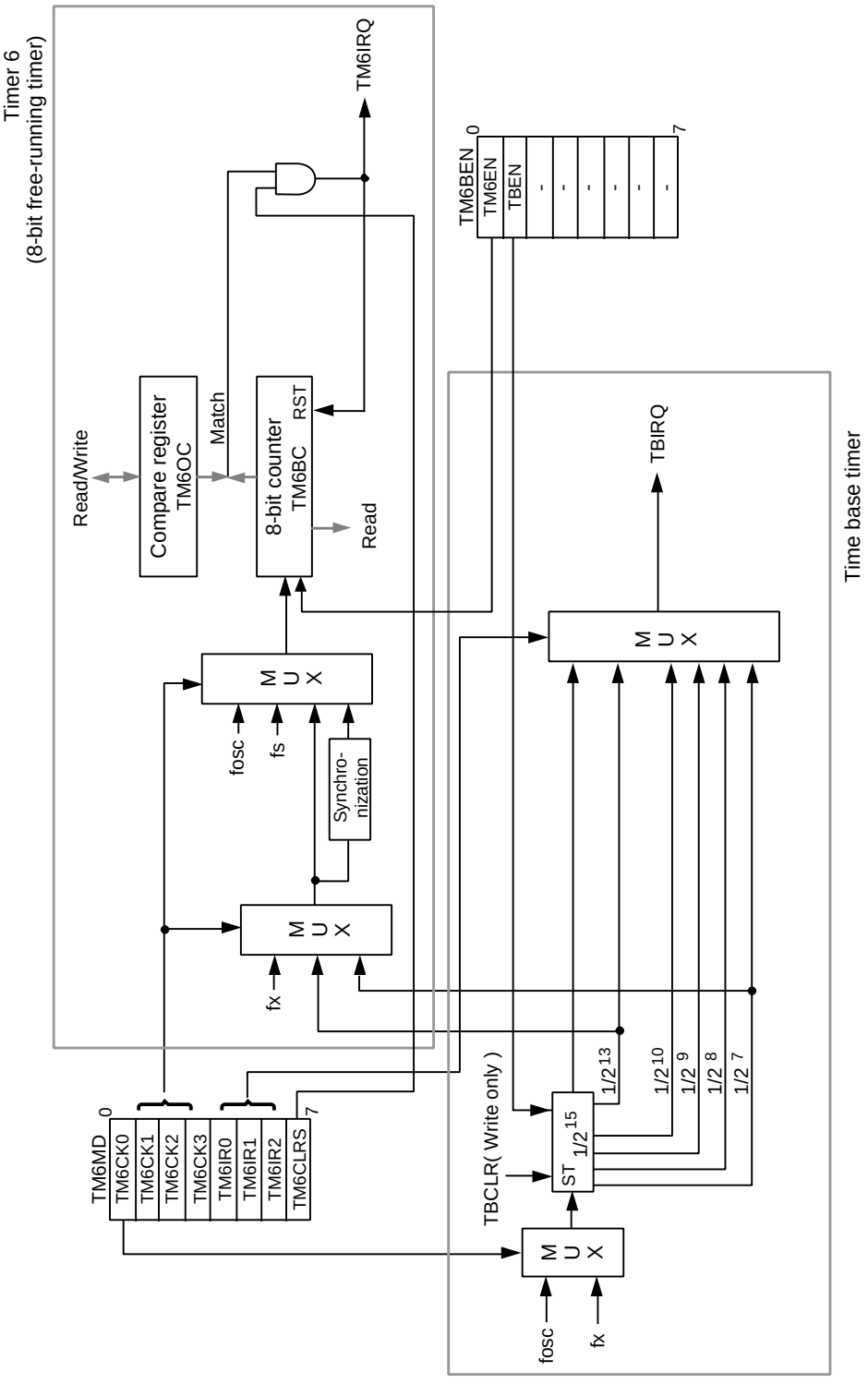


Figure:7.1.1 Block Diagram (Timer 6, Time Base Timer)

7.2 Control Registers

Timer 6 consists of binary counter (TM6BC), compare register (TM6OC), and is controlled by mode register (TM6MD). Time base timer is controlled by mode register (TM6MD) and time base timer clear register (TBCLR). Both timers are operated by the enable signal of the TM6BEN.

7.2.1 Control Registers

Table:7.2.1 shows the registers that control timer 6, time base timer.

Table:7.2.1 Control Registers

	Register	Address	R/W	Function	Page
Timer 6	TM6BC	0x03F60	R	Timer 6 binary counter	VII-6
	TM6OC	0x03F61	R/W	Timer 6 compare register	VII-6
	TM6MD	0x03F62	R/W	Timer 6 mode register	VII-8
	TM6BEN	0x03F64	R/W	Timer 6 enable register	VII-7
	TM6ICR	0x03FEB	R/W	Timer 6 interrupt control register	III-28
Time base timer	TM6MD	0x03F62	R/W	Timer 6 mode register	VII-8
	TBCLR	0x03F63	W	Time base timer clear control register	VII-6
	TBICR	0x03FEC	R/W	Time base interrupt control register	III-29

7.2.2 Programmable Timer Registers

Timer 6 is a 8-bit programmable counter.

Programmable counter consists of compare register (TM6OC) and binary counter (TM6BC).

Binary counter is a 8-bit up-counter. When the TM6CLRS flag of the timer 6 mode register (TM6MD) is “0” and the interrupt cycle data is written to the compare register (TM6OC), the timer 6 binary counter (TM6BC) is cleared to 0x00.

■ Timer 6 Binary Counter (TM6BC:0x03F60)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TM6BC7	TM6BC6	TM6BC5	TM6BC4	TM6BC3	TM6BC2	TM6BC1	TM6BC0
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

■ Timer 6 Compare Register (TM6OC:0x03F61)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TM6OC7	TM6OC6	TM6OC5	TM6OC4	TM6OC3	TM6OC2	TM6OC1	TM6OC0
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Time base timer can be reset its operation by the software. Time base timer can be cleared by writing an arbitrary value to the time base timer clear control register (TBCLR).

■ Time Base Timer Clear Control Register (TBCLR:0x03F63)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TBCLR7	TBCLR6	TBCLR5	TBCLR4	TBCLR3	TBCLR2	TBCLR1	TBCLR0
At reset	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Access	W	W	W	W	W	W	W	W

7.2.3 Timer 6 Enable Registers

This register controls the starting operation of the timer 6 and the time base timer.

■ Timer 6 Enable Registers (TM6BEN:0x03F64)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	-	-	-	-	-	TBEN	TM6EN
At reset	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7-2	-	-
1	TBEN	Time base timer operation control 0:Stop 1:Operation
0	TM6EN	Timer 6 operation control 0:Stop 1:Operation

Timer 6 does not start operating unless the TM6EN flag of the TM6BEN register is set to “1”.

Time base timer does not start operating unless the TBEN flag of the TM6BEN register is set to “1”.

7.2.4 Timer Mode Registers

This is readable / writable register that controls timer 6 and time base timer.

■ Timer 6 Mode Register (TM6MD:0x03F62)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TM6CLRS	TM6IR2	TM6IR1	TM6IR0	TM6CK3	TM6CK2	TM6CK1	TM6CK0
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7	TM6CLRS	Timer 6 binary counter clear selection flag 0:Enable the initialization of TM6BC as TM6OC is written. 1:Disable the initialization of TM6BC as TM6OC is written. * TM6IRQ is disable as TM6CLRS = 0, TM6IRQ is enable as TM6CLRS = 1.
6-4	TM6IR2 TM6IR1 TM6IR0	Time base timer interrupt cycle selection 000:Time base selection clock × $1/2^7$ 001:Time base selection clock × $1/2^8$ 010:Time base selection clock × $1/2^9$ 011:Time base selection clock × $1/2^{10}$ 10-:Time base selection clock × $1/2^{13}$ 11-:Time base selection clock × $1/2^{15}$
3-1	TM6CK3 TM6CK2 TM6CK1	Timer 6 clock source selection 000:fosc 001:fs 010:fx 011:Synchronous fx 100:Time base selection clock × $1/2^{13}$ 101:Synchronous time base selection clock × $1/2^{13}$ 110:Time base selection clock × $1/2^7$ 111:Synchronous time base selection clock × $1/2^7$
0	TM6CK0	Time base timer clock source selection 0:fosc 1:fx

7.3 8-bit Free-running Timer

7.3.1 Operation

■ 8-bit Free-running Timer (Timer 6)

The generation cycle of the timer interrupt should be set in advance, by the set value of the compare register (TM6OC) and the clock source selection. When the binary counter (TM6BC) reaches the set value of the compare register, an interrupt request is generated at the next count clock and the binary counter is cleared to restart count up from 0x00.

Table:7.3.1 shows selectable clock source.

Table:7.3.1 Clock Source at Timer Operation (Timer 6)

Clock source	One count time		
	At fosc=10 MHz	At fosc=8.39 MHz	At fosc=2 MHz
fosc	100 ns	119.1 ns	500 ns
fx	30.5 µs		
fs	200 ns	238.3 ns	1000 ns
fosc × $1/2^7$	12.8 µs	15.2 µs	64 µs
fosc × $1/2^{13}$	819.2 µs	976.4 µs	4096 µs
fx × $1/2^7$	3.9 ms		
fx × $1/2^{13}$	250 ms		
fosc = 20 MHz, 8.39 MHz, 2 MHz fx = 32.768 KHz fs = fosc/2			

■ 8-bit Free-running Timer as a 1 Minute-timer, a 1 Second-timer

Table:7.3.2 shows the clock source selection and the TM6OC register setup, when a 8-bit free-running timer is used as a 1 minute-timer, a 1 second-timer.

Table:7.3.2 1 Minute-timer, 1 Second-timer (Timer 6) Setup

Interrupt Generation Cycle	Clock source	TM6OC Register
1 min	$fx \times 1/2^{13}$	0xEF
1 s	$fx \times 1/2^{13}$	0x03
fx = 32.768 kHz		

When the 1 minute-timer (1 m.) is set on Table:7.3.2, the bp2 waveform frequency (cycle) of the TM6BC register is 1 Hz (1 s.). So, that can be used for adjusting the seconds.

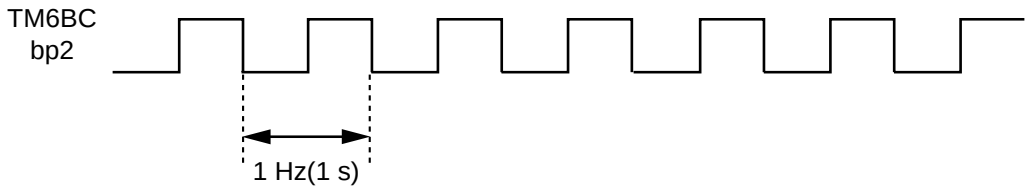


Figure:7.3.1 Waveform of TM6BC Register bp2 (Timer 6)

For proper count, count clock should be switched after the timer stops its operation.

■ Count Timing of Timer Operation (Timer 6)

Binary counter counts up with the selected clock source as a count clock.

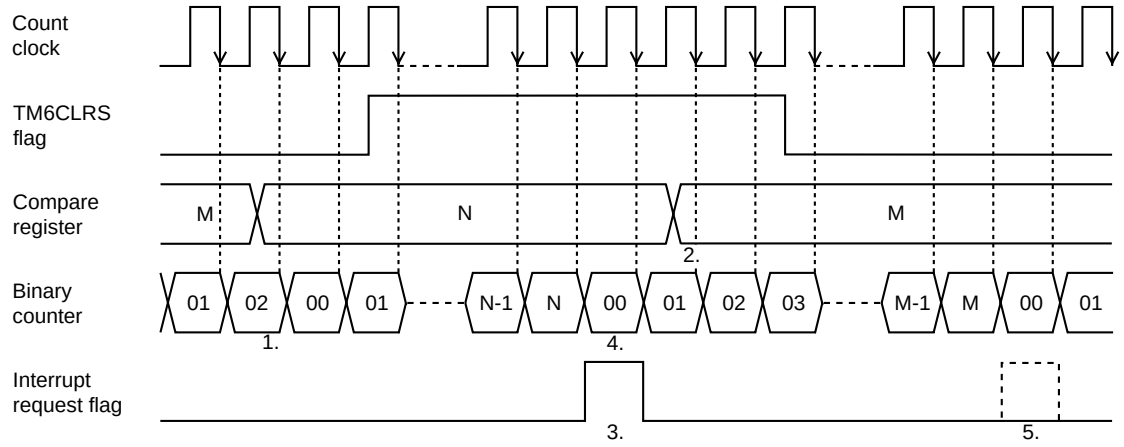


Figure:7.3.2 Count Timing of Timer Operation (Timer 6)

1. When any data is written to the compare register as the TM6CLRS flag is “0”, the binary counter is cleared to 0x00.
2. Even if any data is written to the compare register as the TM6CLRS flag is “1”, the binary counter is not changed.
3. When the binary counter reaches the value of the compare register as the TM6CLRS flag is “1”, an interrupt request flag is set at the next count clock.
4. When an interrupt request flag is set, the binary counter is cleared to 0x00 and restarts the counting.
5. Even if the binary counter reaches the value of the compare register as the TM6CLRS flag is “0”, no interrupt request flag is set.

When the binary counter reaches the value in the compare register, the interrupt request flag is set and the binary counter is cleared at the next count clock.
So set the compare register as:
Compare register setting = (count till the interrupt request -1)

If the fx input is selected as a clock source and the value of timer 6 binary counter is read out at operation, an incorrect value could be read out. To prevent this, select a synchronous fs as the count clock source.

When fx is used to the clock source, the binary counter should be cleared before starting the timer operation. Also, when 0x00 is set to the compare register, the synchronous fx should be used.

If the smaller value than the binary counter is set to the compare register at counting operation, the binary counter continues counting till overflow.

When fx and time base selection clock (at time base clock source is selected as fx) are selected as clock sources, the binary counter may not be cleared. To prevent this, select a synchronous fx and synchronous time base selection clock.

When a timer interrupt request flag is generated, up to 3 system clock is required for the next flag generation. Even if the binary counter reaches the value in the compare register, a timer interrupt request flag is not generated.

7.3.2 Setup Example

■ Timer Operation Setup (Timer 6)

Timer 6 generates interrupts constantly for timer function. Interrupts are generated in every 250 dividing (25 μs) by selecting fs (fs = 10 MHz at operation) as clock source.

An example setup procedure, with a description of each step is shown below.

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Enable the binary counter TM6MD(0x03F62) bp7 :TM6CLRS =0	(1) Set the TM6CLRS flag of the timer 6 mode register (TM6MD) to “0”. At the time, the initialization of the timer 6 binary counter (TM6BC) is enabled.
(2) Disable the interrupt TM6ICR(0x03FEB) bp1:TM6IE =0	(2) Set the TM6IE flag of the TM6ICR register to “0” to disable the interrupt.
(3) Select the clock source TM6MD(0x03F62) bp3-1 :TM6CK3-1 =001	(3) Clock source can be selected by the TM6CK3 to 1 flag of the TM6MD register. Actually, fx is selected.
(4) Set the interrupt generation cycle TM6OC(0x03F61) =0xF9	(4) Set the interrupt generation cycle to the timer 6 compare register (TM6OC). At that time, TM6BC is initialized to 0x00.
(5) Enable the interrupt request TM6MD(0x03F62) bp7 :TM6CLRS =1	(5) Set the TM6CLRS flag of the TM6MD register to “1” to enable the interrupt request generation.
(6) Set the interrupt level TM6ICR(0x03FEB) bp7-6 :TM6LV1-0 =01	(6) Set the interrupt level by the TM6LV1 to 0 flag of the timer 6 interrupt control register (TM6ICR). If the interrupt request flag may be already set, clear them. [Chapter 3. 3.1.4 Interrupt Flag Setup]
(7) Enable the interrupt TM6ICR(0x03FEB) bp1 :TM6IE =1	(7) Set the TM6IE flag of the TM6ICR register to “1” to enable the interrupt.
(8) Start the TM6 operation TM6BEN(0x03F64) bp0 :TM6EN =1	(8) Set the TM6EN flag of the TM6BEN register to “1” to start the timer 6.

As TM6OC is set, TM6BC is initialized to 0x00 to count up.

When TM6BC matches TM6OC, the timer 6 interrupt request flag is set at the next count clock and TM6BC is cleared to 0x00 to restart counting.

If the TM6CLRS flag of the TM6MD register is set to “0”, TM6BC can be initialized at every rewriting of TM6OC register, but in that state the timer 6 interrupt is disabled. If the timer 6 interrupt should be used, set the TM6CLRS flag to “1” after rewriting the TM6OC register.

On the timer 6 clock source selection, if the time base timer output or the time base timer synchronous output is selected, the clock setup of time base timer is necessary.

7.4 Time Base Timer

7.4.1 Operation

■ Time Base Timer (Time Base Timer)

Interrupt is constantly generated by a selected clock source and a interrupt generation cycle. Table:7.4.1 shows the interrupt cycle is combination with the clock source;

Table:7.4.1 Selection of Time Base Timer Interrupt Generation Cycle

Selected clock source	Interrupt generation cycle	
fosc	fosc × $1/2^7$	12.8 µs
	fosc × $1/2^8$	25.6 µs
	fosc × $1/2^9$	51.2 µs
	fosc × $1/2^{10}$	102.4 µs
	fosc × $1/2^{13}$	819.2 µs
	fosc × $1/2^{15}$	3.27 ms
fx	fx × $1/2^7$	3.9 ms
	fx × $1/2^8$	7.8 ms
	fx × $1/2^9$	15.6 ms
	fx × $1/2^{10}$	31.2 ms
	fx × $1/2^{13}$	250 ms
	fx × $1/2^{15}$	1 s
fosc = 10 MHz fx = 32.768 kHz		

■ Count Timing Timer Operation (Time Base Timer)

The counter counts up with the selected clock source as a counter clock.

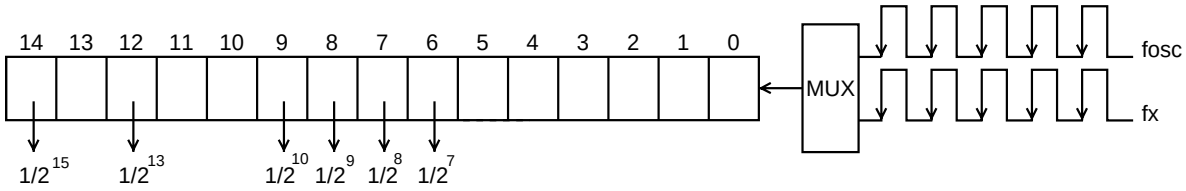


Figure:7.4.1 Count Timing of Timer Operation (Time Base Timer)

- When the selected interrupt cycle is passed, the interrupt request flag of the time base interrupt control register (TBICR) is set.

An interrupt may be generated at switching of the clock source. Enable the interrupt after switching the clock source.

The initialization can be done by writing an arbitrary value to the time base timer clear control register (TBCLR).

When fx is selected as a clock source, the time base timer may not be initialized. For prevention, write twice to the time base timer clear control register (TBCLR).

7.4.2 Setup Example

■ Timer Operation Setup (Time Base Timer)

An interrupt can be generated constantly with time base timer in the selected interrupt cycle. The interrupt generation cycle is fosc × $1/2^{13}$ (1 ms:fosc = 8.192 MHz) to generate interrupts.
An example setup procedure, with a description of each step is shown below

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Select the clock source TM6MD(0x03F62) bp0 :TM6CK0 =0	(1) Select fosc as a clock source by the TM6CK0 flag of the timer 6 mode register (TM6MD).
(2) Disable the interrupt TBICR(0x03FEC) bp1 :TBIE =0	(2) Set the TBIE flag of the TBICR register to “0” to disable the interrupt.
(3) Select the interrupt generation cycle TM6MD(0x03F62) bp6-4 :TM6IR2-0 =100	(3) Select the selected clock × $1/2^{13}$ as an interrupt generation cycle by the TM6IR2 to 0 flag of the TM6MD register.
(4) Initialize the time base timer TBCLR(0x03F63) =0x00	(4) Write value to the time base timer clear control register (TBCLR) to initialize time base timer.
(5) Set the interrupt level TBICR(0x0EFC) bp7-6 :TBLV1-0 =01	(5) Set the interrupt level by the TBLV1 to 0 flag of the time base interrupt control register (TBICR). If any interrupt request flag may be already set, clear them. [Chapter 3. 3.1.4 Interrupt Flag Setup]
(6) Enable the interrupt TBICR(0x03FEC) bp1 :TBIE =1	(6) Set the TBIE flag of the TBICR register to “1” to enable the interrupt.
(7) Start the time base timer operation TM6BEN(0x03F64) bp1 :TBEN =1	(7) Set the TBEN flag of the TM6BEN register to “1” to start the time base timer.

- When the selected interrupt generation cycle is passed, the interrupt request flag of the time base interrupt control register (TBICR) is set to “1”.

Chapter 8 Remote Control Carrier Functions

8

8.1 Overview

Remote control carrier output functions can generate the carrier wave for the remote control and output.

8.1.1 Functions

Table:8.1.1 shows the remote control carrier output functions.

Table:8.1.1 The remote control carrier output functions.

Remote control carrier output base timer selection	Timer 0 Timer 3
Duty selection	1/2 1/3 Timer output
Remote control carrier output enable factor	RMOEN
Remote control carrier output enable	"L" level output Remote control carrier output
P14 special function selection	Timer 0 Remote control carrier output

This function is not available in the STOP/HALT mode.

8.1.2 Block Diagram

■ Remote Control Carrier Output Block Diagram

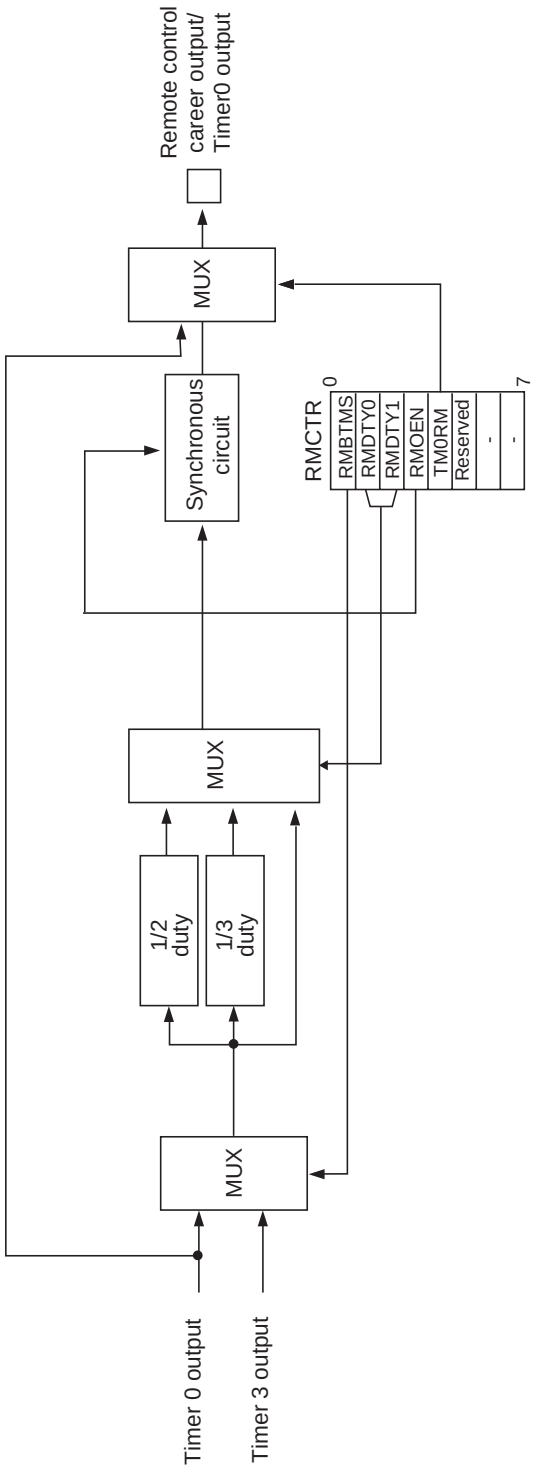


Figure:8.1.1 Remote Control Carrier Output Block Diagram

8.2 Control Registers

8.2.1 Control Registers

Table:8.2.1 shows the registers that control the remote control carrier output.

Table:8.2.1 Control Registers

Registers	Address	R/W	Function	Page
RMCTR	0x03F6C	R/W	Remote control carrier output control register	VIII-5
TM0MD	0x03F54	R/W	Timer 0 mode register	V-14
TM0OC	0x03F52	R/W	Timer 0 compare register	V-12
CK0MD	0x03F56	R/W	Timer 0 prescaler selection register	V-9
P1OMD	0x03F1C	R/W	Port 1 output mode register	IV-10
P1DIR	0x03F31	R/W	Port 1 direction control register	IV-8

8.2.2 Remote Control Carrier Output Control Register

■ Remote Control Carrier Output Control Register (RMCTR:0x03F6C)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	-	Reserved	TM0RM	RMOEN	RMDTY1	RMDTY0	RMBTMS
At reset	-	-	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7-6	-	-
5	Reserved	Set always to "0".
4	TM0RM	P14 special functions output selection 0:TM0IO 1:RMOUT
3	RMOEN	Remote control carrier output enable 0:"L" level output 1:remote control carrier output
2-1	RMDTY1 RMDTY0	Remote control carrier duty selection 00:1/2 duty 01:1/3 duty 1-:Timer output
0	RMBTMS	Remote control carrier base timer selection 0:Timer 0 output selection 1:Timer 3 output selection

8.3 Operations

8.3.1 Operations

Remote control carrier output functions can generate the carrier pulse for the remote control.

■ Operation of the remote control carrier output

Remote control carrier can be created by using the output signals of timer 0 and timer 3. Duty ratio can be selected from 1/2, 1/3, Timer output. Remote control carrier output signal is output from the RMOUT pin (P14).

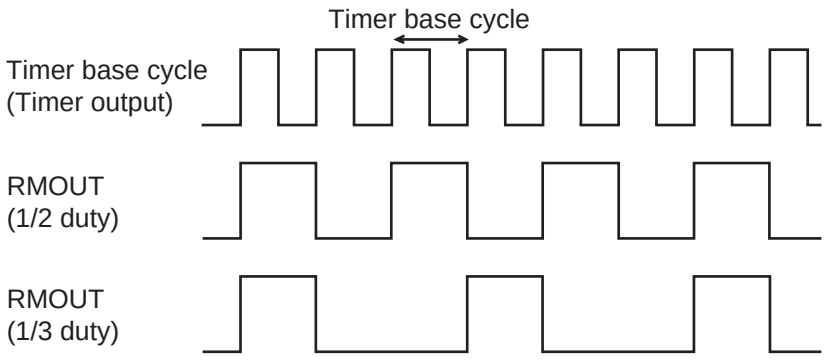


Figure:8.3.1 Remote Control Carrier Output Signal Duty Ratio

■ Count Timing of Remote Control Carrier Output Functions

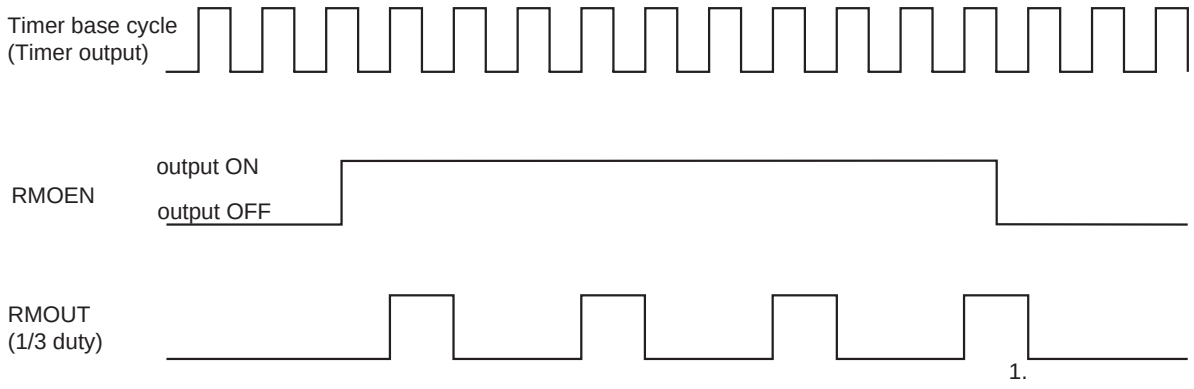


Figure:8.3.2 Count Timing of Remote Control Carrier Output Functions

1. Even if the RMOEN flag is switched OFF at the carrier output "H", the carrier wave is held by the synchronous circuit.

When RMOEN flag is changed, the base cycle and the duty selection timer should not be changed at the same time, as the carrier pulse may not be output correctly.

Set the timer output over 1 cycle of the system clock. The remote control carrier output may be executed incorrectly when the timer output is set under 1 cycle.

8.3.2 Setup Examples

■ Setup Example of the Remote Control Carrier Output Functions (Timer 0, Timer 3)

The setup examples that 1/3 duty carrier pulse signal is output as 36.7 kHz for "H" period from the RMOUT pin with the timer 0 are shown below. The clock source of the timer 0 is selected as fs/2 (at fs = 8 MHz). An example setup procedure, with a description of each step is shown below.

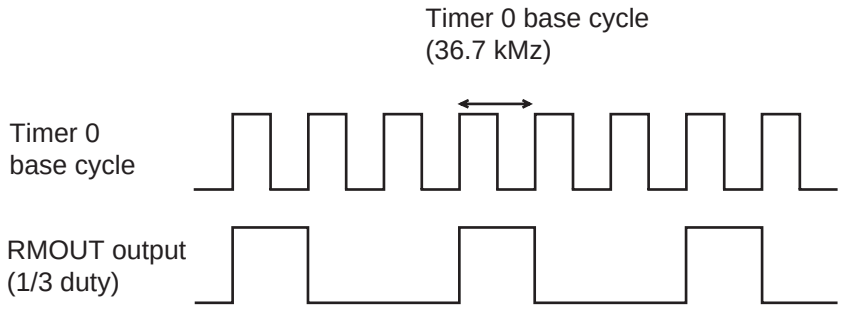


Figure:8.3.3 Output Wave of RMOUT Output Pin

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Disable the remote control carrier output RMCTR(0x03F6C) bp3 :RMOEN =0	(1) Set the RMOEN flag of the remote control carrier output control register (RMCTR) to "0" to disable the remote control carrier output.
(2) Select the base cycle setup timer RMCTR(0x03F6C) bp0 :RMBTMS =0	(2) Set the RMBTMS flag of the RMCTR register to "0" to select the timer 0 as the setup timer of the base cycle.
(3) Select the carrier output duty RMCTR(0x03F6C) bp2-1 :RMDTY1-0 =01	(3) Set the RMDTY1, 0 flag of the RMCTR register to "0, 1" to select the duty to 1/3.
(4) Confirm the counter stop TM0MD(0x03F54) bp3 :TM0EN =0	(4) Set the TM0EN flag of the timer 0 mode register (TM0MD) to "0" to stop counting of the timer 0.
(5) Set the remote control carrier output of the special function pin P1OMD(0x03F1C) bp4 :P1OMD4 =1 P1DIR(0x03F31) bp4 :P1DIR4 =1 RMCTR(0x03F6C) bp4 :TM0RM =1	(5) Set the P1OMD4 flag of the port 1 output mode register (P1OMD) to "1" to set P14 pin to the particular function pin. Set the P1DIR4 flag of the port 1 direction control register (P1DIR) to "1" to set the output mode. Set the TM0RM flag of the RMCTR register to "1" to select the remote control carrier output.
(6) Select the timer general operation TM0MD(0x03F54) bp4 :TM0PWM =0 bp5 :TM0MOD =0	(6) Set the TM0PWM flag and the TM0MOD flag of the TM0MD register to "0" to select the timer general operation.

Setup Procedure	Description
(7) Select the count clock source TM0MD(0x03F54) bp2-0 :TM0CK2-0 =X01	(7) Select the prescaler output to the clock source by theTM0CK2 to 0 of the TM0MD register.
(8) Select and enable the prescaler output CK0MD(0x03F56) bp2-1 :TM0PSC1-0 =X0 bp0 :TM0BAS =1	(8) Select the fs/2 to the prescaler output by the TM0PSC1 to 0 flag, TM0BAS flag of the timer 0 prescaler selection register.
(9) Set the base cycle of the remote control carrier TM0OC(0x03F52) =0x36	(9) Set the base cycle of the remote control carrier by writing 0x36 to the timer 0 compare register (TM0OC). To divide fs=8 MHz to get 1/2 dividing of 36.7 kHz (73.4 kHz), the setup value should be (fs/2 MHz/73.4 kHz) - 1 = 54 (0x36).
(10) Start the timer operation TM0MD(0x03F54) bp3 :TM0EN =1	(10) Set the TM0EN flag of the TM0MD register to "1" to start the timer 0.
(11) Enable the remote control carrier output RMCTR(0x03F6C) bp3 :RMOEN =1	(11) Set the RMOEN flag of the RMCTR register to "1" to enable the remote control carrier output.

TM0BC starts the count up from 0x00. As the base cycle pulse that is set at the TM0OC is output from the timer 0, 1/3 of the remote control carrier pulse signal is output. If the RMOEN flag of the RMCTR register is set to "0", the output signal of the remote control carrier pulse is stopped.

Chapter 9 Watchdog Timer

9

9.1 Overview

This LSI has a watchdog timer that is used to detect software processing errors. It is controlled by the watchdog timer control register (WDCTR). When an overflow of watchdog timer is generated, a watchdog interrupt (WDIRQ) is generated. If the watchdog interrupt is generated twice in a row, it is regarded to be an indication that the software cannot execute in the intended sequence; thus, a system reset is initiated by the hardware.

9.1.1 Functions

Table:9.1.1 shows watchdog timer functions.

Table:9.1.1 Watchdog Timer Functions

Watchdog time-out period setup selection	2^{16} of system clock 2^{18} of system clock 2^{20} of system clock
Watchdog timer enable	Stop Operation

9.1.2 Block Diagram

■ Watchdog Timer Block Diagram

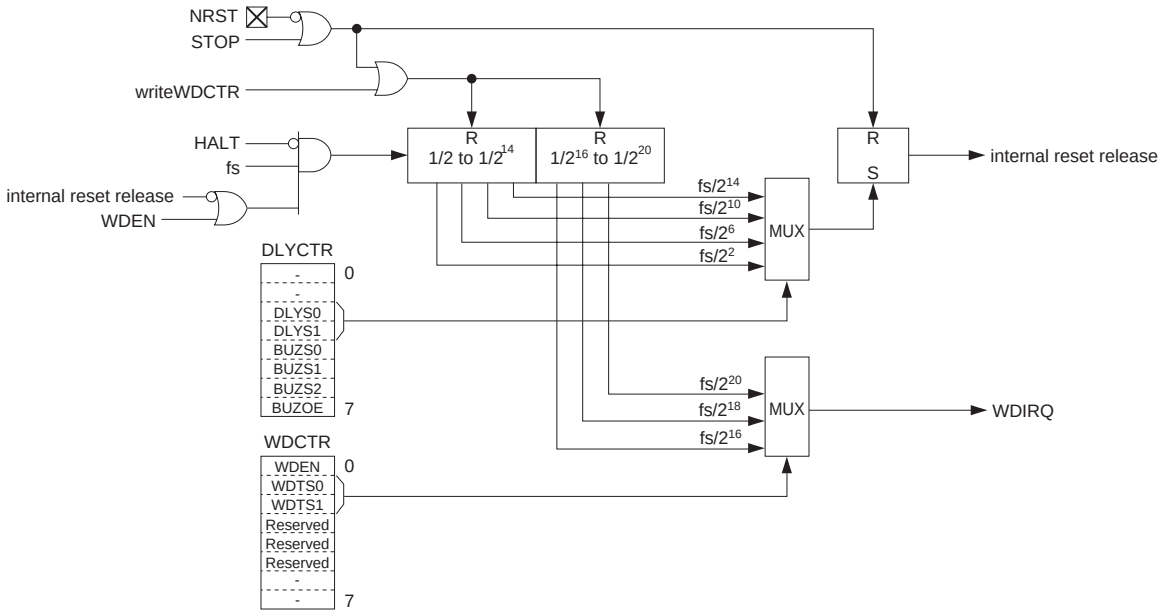


Figure:9.1.1 Block Diagram (Watchdog Timer)

The watchdog timer is also used as a timer to count the oscillation stabilization wait time. This is used as a watchdog timer except at recovering from STOP mode and at reset releasing.

The watchdog timer is initialized at reset or at STOP mode, and counts system clock (fs) as a clock source from the initial value (0x0000). The oscillation stabilization wait time is set by the oscillation stabilization control register (DLYCTR).

9.2 Control Register

The watchdog timer is formed by the control register (WDCTR).

9.2.1 Control Registers

Table:9.2.1 shows the registers that control the watchdog timer.

Table:9.2.1 Watchdog Timer Control Register Functions

Register	Address	R/W	Function	Page
WDCTR	0x03F02	R/W	Watchdog timer control register	IX-4

9.2.2 Watchdog Timer Control Register

The watchdog timer is controlled by the watchdog timer control register (WDCTR).

■ Watchdog Timer Control Register (WDCTR:0x03F02)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	-	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	WDTS1	WDTS0	WDEN
At reset	-	-	0	0	0	1	1	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7-6	-	-
5-3	Reserved	Set always to "0".
2-1	WDTS1 WDTS0	Watchdog time-out period setup 00:2^{16} of system clock 01:2^{18} of system clock 1X:2^{20} of system clock
0	WDEN	Watchdog timer enable 0:Watchdog timer is stopped 1:Watchdog timer is operated

9.3 Operation

9.3.1 Operation

The watchdog timer counts system clock (fs) as a clock source. If the watchdog timer is overflowed, the watchdog interrupt (WDIRQ) is generated as non maskable interrupt (NMI). At reset, the watchdog timer is stopped, but once the operation is enabled, it cannot be stopped except at reset. The watchdog timer control register (WDCTR) sets when the watchdog timer is released or how long the time-out period should be.

When the watchdog interrupt (WDIRQ) is generated, it is regarded to be an indication that the software cannot execute in the intended sequence; thus, a system reset is initiated by the hardware.

Once the watchdog timer starts operation, it cannot be stopped

■ Usage of Watchdog Timer

When the watchdog timer is used, constant clear in program is needed to prevent an overflow of the watchdog timer. As a result of the software failure, the software cannot execute in the intended sequence, thus the watchdog timer overflows to detect errors.

Programming of the watchdog timer is generally done in the last step of program debugging.

■ How to Detect Incorrect Code Execution

The watchdog timer is executed to be cleared in the certain cycle on the correct code execution. In MN101C78A, the watchdog timer detects errors when,

1. the watchdog timer overflows.

When the watchdog timer detects any error, the watchdog interrupt (WDIRQ) is generated as a non maskable interrupt (NMI).

■ How to clear Watchdog Timer

The watchdog timer can be cleared by writing to the watchdog timer control register (WDCTR). The watchdog timer can be cleared regardless of the writing data to the register. The bit-set (BSET) that does not change the value is recommended.

■ Watchdog Time-out Period

The watchdog time-out period is decided by the bp2, 1 (WDTS1-0) of the watchdog timer control register (WDCTR) and the system clock (fs). If the watchdog timer is not cleared by the set value, it is regarded as an error and the watchdog interrupt (WDIRQ) of the non maskable interrupt (NMI) is generated.

The system clock is decided by the CPU mode control register (CPUM).

[Chapter 2 2.5 Clock Switching]

The watchdog time-out period is generally decided by the execution time for main routine of the program. The period should be set longer than the execution time of main routine divided by natural number (1, 2, · · ·). Set the command of the watchdog timer clear to the main routine as the value makes the same cycle.

■ Watchdog Timer and CPU Mode

The relation between the watchdog timer and CPU mode features are as follows;

1. In NORMAL, IDLE, SLOW mode, the system clock is counted.
2. The counting is continued regardless of swithching in NORMAL, IDLE, SLOW mode.
3. In HALT mode, the watchdog timer is stopped.
4. In STOP mode, the watchdog timer is cleared automatically.
5. In STOP mode, the watchdog interrupt cannot be generated.
6. After recovering from STOP mode, if the detection of the incorrect code execution is valid, the counting is executed for the duration of the oscillation stabilization wait time. If the detection is invalid, the counting is stopped in the condition that the counting of the oscillation stabilization wait time is proceeded.
7. After releasing reset, the watchdog timer is cleared automatically and stop counting.

In the system that uses STOP mode, whether the STOP mode is done or not is generally divided on the program execution. However, in this case, the counting value of the watchdog timer differs.

9.3.2 Setup Example

The watchdog timer detects errors. In the following example, the time-out period is set to $2^{18} \times$ system clock.

An example setup procedure, with a description of each step is shown below.

■ Initial Setup Program (Watchdog Timer Initial Setup Example)

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Set the time-out period WDCTR(0x03F02) bp2-1:WDTS1-0 =01 (2) Start the watchdog timer operation WDCTR(0x03F02) bp0:WDEN =1	(1) Set the WDTS1-0 flag of the watchdog timer control register (WDCTR) to "01" to select the time-out period to $2^{18} \times$ system clock. (2) Set the WDEN flag of the WDCTR register to start the watchdog timer operation.

■ Main Routine Program (Watchdog Timer Constant Clear Setup Example)

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Set the watchdog timer for the constant clear Writing to WDCTR(0x03F02) (c.f.)BSET (WDCTR) WDEN (bp0:WDEN=1)	(1) Clear the watchdog timer by the cycle from $2^{18} \times$ system clock. The watchdog timer clear should be inserted in the main routine, with the same cycle, and to be the set cycle. The recommended instruction is the bit-set (BSET), does not change value, for clear.

■ Interrupt Service Routine Setup

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Set the watchdog interrupt service routine NMICR(0x03FE1) TBNZ (NMICR),WDIR,WDPR0	(1) If the watchdog timer overflows, the non maskable interrupt is generated. Confirm that the WDIR flag of the non maskable interrupt control register (NMICR) is “1” on the interrupt service routine to manage the suitable execution.

The operation just before the watchdog interrupt may be executed wrongly. Therefore, if the watchdog interrupt is generated, initialize the system.

Chapter 10 Buzzer

10

10.1 Overview

This LSI has a buzzer. It can output the square wave that multiply by $1/2^9$ to $1/2^{14}$ of the high frequency oscillation clock, or by $1/2^3$ to $1/2^4$ of the low frequency oscillation clock.

10.1.1 Functions

Table:10.1.1 shows the buzzer functions.

Table:10.1.1 Buzzer Functions

P12, P13 output selection	Port output Buzzer output
Buzzer output frequency selection	$fosc/2^{14}$ $fosc/2^{13}$ $fosc/2^{12}$ $fosc/2^{11}$ $fosc/2^{10}$ $fosc/2^9$ $fx/2^4$ $fx/2^3$
Oscillation stabilization wait cycle selection	$fs/2^{14}$ $fs/2^{10}$ $fs/2^6$ *1 $fs/2^2$ *1

*1:Do not use at high-speed operation (NORMAL mode).

Use at slow-speed operation (SLOW mode).

When BUZOE flag is set to “0”, buzzer output becomes “Low”.

10.1.2 Block Diagram

■ Buzzer Block Diagram

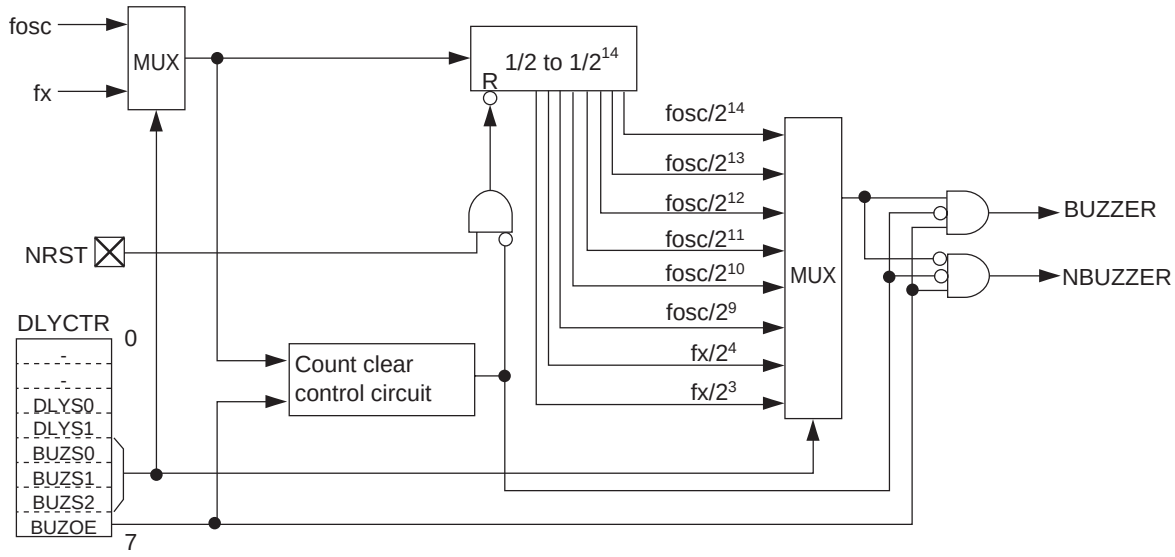


Figure:10.1.1 Buzzer Block Diagram

10.2 Control Register

Buzzer is formed by the control register (DLYCTR).

10.2.1 Registers

Table:10.2.1 shows the buzzer control register.

Table:10.2.1 Buzzer Control Register

Register	Address	R/W	Functions	Page
DLYCTR	0x03F03	R/W	Oscillation Stabilization Wait Time Control Register	X-5
P1OMD	0x03F1C	R/W	Port 1output mode register	IV-10

10.2.2 Oscillation Stabilization Wait Time Control Register (DLYCTR)

■ Oscillation Stabilization Wait Time Control Register (DLYCTR:0x03F03)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	BUZOE	BUZS2	BUZS1	BUZS0	DLYS1	DLYS0	-	-
at reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	-
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	-	-

bp	Flag	Description
7	BUZOE	P12, P13 output selection 0:Port output 1:Buzzer output
6-4	BUZS2 BUZS1 BUZS0	Buzzer output frequency selection 000:fosc/2^{14} 001:fosc/2^{13} 010:fosc/2^{12} 011:fosc/2^{11} 100:fosc/2^{10} 101:fosc/2^{9} 110:fx/2^{4} 111:fx/2^{3}
3-2	DLYS1 DLYS0	Oscillation stabilization wait period selection 00:fs/2^{14} 01:fs/2^{10} 10:fs/2^{6} *1 11:fs/2^{2} *1
1-0	-	-

*1:Do not use at high-speed operation (NORMAL mode).

Use at slow-speed operation (SLOW mode).

10.3 Operation

10.3.1 Operation

■ Buzzer

Buzzer outputs the square wave, having frequency $1/2^9$ to $1/2^{14}$ of the high oscillation clock (fosc), or $1/2^3$ to $1/2^4$ of the low oscillation clock (fx). The BUZS 2, 1, 0 flag of the oscillation stabilization wait control register (DLYCTR) set the frequency of the buzzer output. The BUZOE flag of the oscillation stabilization wait control register (DLYCTR) sets buzzer output ON / OFF.

■ Buzzer Output Frequency

The frequency of buzzer output is decided by the frequency of the high oscillation clock (fosc) or the low oscillation clock (fx) and the bit 6, 5, 4 (BUZS2, BUZS1, BUZS0) of the oscillation stabilization wait control register (DLYCTR).

Table:10.3.1 Buzzer Output Frequency

fosc	fx	BUZS2	BUZS1	BUZSO	Buzzer output frequency
10 MHz	-	0	0	0	2.44 kHz
10 MHz	-	0	0	1	4.88 kHz
10 MHz	-	0	1	0	9.76 kHz
8.39 MHz	-	0	1	0	2.05 kHz
8.39 MHz	-	0	1	1	4.1 kHz
2 MHz	-	1	0	0	1.95 kHz
2 MHz	-	1	0	1	3.91 kHz
-	32 kHz	1	1	0	2 kHz
-	32 kHz	1	1	1	4 kHz

10.3.2 Setup Example

■ Setup Example

Buzzer outputs the square wave of 2 kHz from P12 pin. It is used 8.39 MHz as the high oscillation clock (fosc).

An example of setup procedure, with a description of each step is shown below.

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Set the buzzer frequency DLYCTR (0x03F03) bp6-4 :BUZS2-0 =010	(1) Set BUZS2 to BUZS0 flag of the oscillation stabilization wait control register (DLYCTR) to "010" to select fosc/ 2^{12} to the buzzer frequency. When the high oscillation clock fosc is 8.39 MHz, the buzzer output frequency is 2.05 kHz.
(2) Set P12 pin P1OMD (0x03F1C) bp0 :BUZSEL =1 P1DIR (0x03F31) bp2 :P1DIR2 =1	(2) Set BUZSEL flag of port 1 output mode register (P1OMD) to "1" to set P12 to special function pin. Set P1DIR2 flag of port 1 direction control register (P1DIR) to "1" to set output mode, then low level is output from P12.
(3) Buzzer output ON DLYCTR (0x03F03) bp7 :BUZOE =1	(3) Set the BUZSE flag of the oscillation stabilization wait control register (DLYCTR) to "1" to output the square wave of the buzzer output frequency set by P12 pin.
(4) Buzzer output OFF DLYCTR (0x03F03) bp7 :BUZOE =0	(4) Set the BUZOE flag of the oscillation stabilization wait control register to (DLYCTR) "0" to clear, and P12 pin outputs low level.

Setup of the buzzer output ON should be done after setup of the buzzer frequency.
When the low oscillation clock (fx) dividing is selected as the buzzer output frequency and the buzzer output is switched ON from OFF, the buzzer dividing counter is not cleared unless more than 1clock of the low oscillation clock is secured.

Chapter 11 Serial interface 0

11

11.1 Overview

This LSI contains a serial interface 0 that can be used for both communication types of clock synchronous and UART (duplex).

Also the used pins can be switched to A (port A: PA0/SBO0A/TXD0A/AN0, PA1/SBI0A/RXD0A/AN1, PA2/SBT0A/AN2) or to B (Port 7: P75/SBO0B/TXD0B/KEY5/SEG2, P76/SBI0B/RXD0B/KEY6/SDA4A/SEG1, P77/SBT0B/KEY7/SCL4B/SEG0).

On this text, if there are not much difference between port A and port B on the operation, port A and B are omitted.

11.1.1 Functions

Table:11.1.1 shows functions of serial interface 0.

Table:11.1.1 Serial Interface 0 functions

Communication style	Clock synchronous	UART (duplex)
Interrupt	SC0TIRQ	SC0TIRQ(on transmission completion) SC0RIRQ(on reception completion)
Pins	SBO0,SBI0,SBT0	TXD0,RXD0
3 channels type	O	-
2 channels type	O(SBO0,SBT0)	O
1 channel type	-	TXD0
Specification of transfer bit count/ Frame selection	1 to 8 bits	7 bit +1STOP 7 bit +2STOP 8 bit +1STOP 8 bit +2STOP
Selection of parity bit	-	O
Parity bit control	-	0 parity 1 parity odd parity even parity
Selection of start condition	O	Only "enable start condition" is available
Specification of the first transfer bit	O	O
Specification of input edge/ output edge	O	-
SBO0 output control after final data is transferred	H/L/final data hold	-
Function in STANDBY mode	Only slave reception is available	-
Internal clock	Not divided Divided by 8 Divided by 16	Divided by 8 Divided by 16

Clock source	fosc/2 fosc/4 fosc/16 fosc/64 fs/2 fs/4 External clock Timer 1 output Timer 2 output	fosc/2 fosc/4 fosc/16 fosc/64 fs/2 fs/4 Timer 1 output Timer 2 output
Maximum transfer rate	5.0 MHz	300 kbps
fosc:Machine clock (High speed oscillation) fs:System clock		

11.1.2 Block Diagram

■ Serial interface 0 Block Diagram

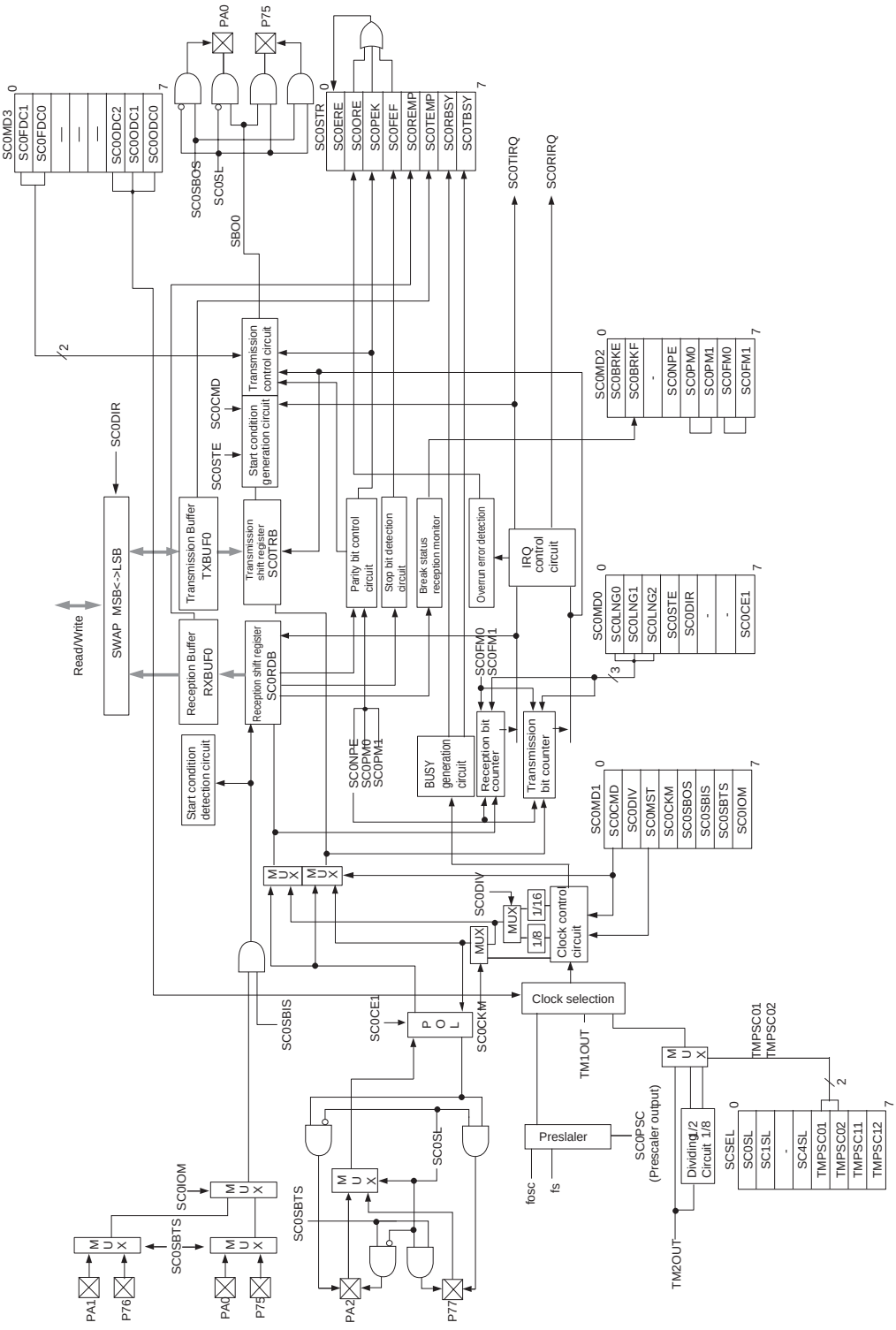


Figure:11.1.1 Serial interface 0 Block Diagram

11.2 Control Registers

11.2.1 Registers

Table:11.2.1 shows registers to control serial interface 0.

Table:11.2.1 Serial interface 0 Control Registers

Register	Address	R/W	Function	Page
SC0MD0	0x03F91	R/W	Serial interface 0 mode register 0	XI-7
SC0MD1	0x03F92	R/W	Serial interface 0 mode register 1	XI-8
SC0MD2	0x03F93	R/W	Serial interface 0 mode register 2	XI-9
SC0MD3	0x03F94	R/W	Serial interface 0 mode register 3	XI-10
SC0STR	0x03F95	R	Serial interface 0 status register	XI-11
RXBUF0	0x03F96	R	Serial interface 0 reception data buffer	XI-6
TXBUF0	0x03F97	R/W	Serial interface 0 transmission data buffer	XI-6
SCSEL	0x03F90	R/W	Serial interface I/O pins switching control register	XI-6
PAODC	0x03F2D	R/W	Port A Nch open-drain control register	IV-77
PADIR	0x03F3A	R/W	Port A direction control register	IV-75
PAPLU	0x03F4A	R/W	Port A pull-up/pull-down control register	IV-76
SC0RICR	0x03FEF	R/W	Serial 0 UART reception interrupt control register	III-32
SC0TICR	0x03FF0	R/W	Serial 0 UART transmission interrupt control register	III-33

R/W:Readable/ Writable

R:Readable only

11.2.2 Data Buffer Registers

Serial interface 0 has one each of 8-bit data buffer register for transmission and for reception.

■ Serial interface 0 Reception Data Buffer (RXBUF0:0x03F96)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	RXBUF07	RXBUF06	RXBUF05	RXBUF04	RXBUF03	RXBUF02	RXBUF01	RXBUF00
Reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

■ Serial interface 0 Transmission Data Buffer (TXBUF0:0x03F97)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TXBUF07	TXBUF06	TXBUF05	TXBUF04	TXBUF03	TXBUF02	TXBUF01	TXBUF00
Reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

11.2.3 Mode Registers

■ Serial interface 0 Mode Register 0 (SC0MD0:0x03F91)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	SC0CE1	-	-	SC0DIR	SC0STE	SC0LNG2	SC0LNG1	SC0LNG0
Reset	0	-	-	0	0	1	1	1
Access	R/W	-	-	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7	SC0CE1	Transmission data output edge 0:falling 1:rising Reception data input edge 0:rising 1:falling
6-5	-	-
4	SC0DIR	First bit to be transferred 0:MSB first 1:LSB first
3	SC0STE	Start condition selection 0:Disabled 1:Enabled
2-0	SC0LNG2 SC0LNG1 SC0LNG0	Transfer bit 000:1bit 001:2bit 010:3bit 011:4bit 100:5bit 101:6bit 110:7bit 111:8bit

■ Serial interface 0 Mode Register 1(SC0MD1:0x03F92)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	SC0IOM	SC0SBTS	SC0SBIS	SC0SBOS	SC0CKM	SC0MST	SC0DIV	SC0CMD
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	-	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7	SC0IOM	Serial data input selection 0:Data input from SBI0 (RXD0) 1:Data input from SBO0 (TXD0)
6	SC0SBTS	SBT0 pin function selection 0:Port 1:Transfer clock I/O
5	SC0SBIS	Serial input control selection 0:Input "1" 1:Input serial
4	SC0SBOS	SBO0(TXD0) pin function 0:Port 1:Output serial data
3	SC0CKM	Transfer clock dividing selection 0:Not divided 1:Divided
2	SC0MST	Clock master/ slave selection 0:Clock slave 1:Clock master
1	SC0DIV	Transfer clock dividing selection 0:Devided by 8 1:Devided by 16
0	SC0CMD	Synchronous serial/ duplex UART selection 0:Synchronous serial 1:Duplex UART

■ Serial interface 0 Mode Register 2 (SC0MD2:0x03F93)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	SC0FM1	SC0FM0	SC0PM1	SC0PM0	SC0NPE	-	SC0BRKF	SC0BRKE
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	-	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	-	R	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7-6	SC0FM1 SC0FM0	Frame mode specification 00:7 data bit + 1 stop bit 01:7 data bit + 2 stop bit 10:8 data bit + 1 stop bit 11:8 data bit + 2 stop bit
5-4	SC0PM1 SC0PM0	Added bit specification Transmission Reception 00:Add "0" Check for 0 01:Add "1" Check for 1 10:Add odd parity Check for odd parity 11:Add even parity Check for even parity
3	SC0NPE	Parity enable 0:Enable parity bit 1:Disable parity bit
2	-	-
1	SC0BRKF	Break status receive monitor 0:Data reception 1:Break reception
0	SC0BRKE	Break status transmit control 0:Data transmission 1:Break transmission

■ Serial interface 0 Mode Register 3 (SC0MD3:0x03F94)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	SC0FDC1	SC0FDC0	-	-	SC0PSCE	SC0PSC2	SC0PSC1	SC0PSC0
Reset	0	0	-	-	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	-	-	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7-6	SC0FDC1 SC0FDC0	Output selection after SBO0 final data is transferred 00:Fix to "1" (High) output 01:Hold final data 10:Fix to "0" (Low) output 11:Reserved
5-4	-	-
3	SC0PSCE	Prescaler count control 0:Disable the count 1:Enable the count
2-0	SC0PSC2 SC0PSC1 SC0PSC0	Selection clock 000:fosc/2 001:fosc/4 010:fosc/16 011:fosc/64 100:fs/2 101:fs/4 110:Timer 1 output 111:Timer 2 output

■ Serial interface 0 Status Register (SC0STR:0x03F95)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	SC0TBSY	SC0RBSY	SC0TEMP	SC0REMP	SC0FEF	SC0PEK	SC0ORE	SC0ERE
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

bp	Flag	Description
7	SC0TBSY	Serial bus status 0:Other use 1:Serial transmission in progress
6	SC0RBSY	Serial bus status 0:Other use 1:Serial reception in progress
5	SC0TEMP	Transmission buffer empty flag 0:Empty 1:Full
4	SC0REMP	Reception buffer empty flag 0:Empty 1:Full
3	SC0FEF	Framing error detection 0:No error 1:Error
2	SC0PEK	Parity error detection 0:No error 1:Error
1	SC0ORE	Overrun error detection 0:No error 1:Error
0	SC0ERE	Error monitor flag 0:No error 1:Error

■ Serial interface I/O pin switching control Register (SCSEL:0x03F90)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TEMPSC12	TEMPSC11	TEMPSC02	TEMPSC01	SC4SL	-	SC1SL	SC0SL
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	-	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	-	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7-6	TMPSC12 TMPSC11	Serial 1 used timer 2 output dividing switching X0:Timer 2 output 01:Timer 2 output divided by 2 11:Timer 2 output divided by 8
5-4	TMPSC02 TMPSC01	Serial 0 used timer 2 output dividing switching X0:Timer 2 output 01:Timer 2 output divided by 2 11:Timer 2 output divided by 8
3	SC4SL	Serial 4 I/O pin switching 0:A (P10, P11) 1:B (P76, P77)
2	-	-
1	SC1SL	Serial 1 I/O pin switching 0:A (P15 to P17) 1:B (PA4 to PA6)
0	SC0SL	Serial 0 I/O pin switching 0:A (PA0 to PA2) 1:B (P75 to P77)

11.3 Operation

Serial interface 0 can be used for both clock synchronous and duplex UART.

11.3.1 Clock Synchronous Serial Interface

■ Activation Factor for Communication

Table:11.3.1 shows activation factors for communication. At master communication, the transfer clock is generated by setting data to the transmission data buffer TXBUF0, or by receiving a start condition. Except during communication, the input signal from SBT0 pin is masked to prevent operating errors by noise. This mask can be released automatically by setting a data to TXBUF0 (access to the TXBUF0 register), or enabling a start condition to the data input pin. Therefore, at slave communication, set data to TXBUF0, or input an external clock after a start condition is input.

However, the external clock should be input after 3.5 transfer clock interval past from the data set to TXBUF0. This period is for loading the data from TXBUF0 to the internal shift register.

Table:11.3.1 Synchronous Serial Interface Activation Factor and Cautions

Clock	Communication type	Start condition	Activation factor of communication
Master	Transmission	Enabled	Set transmission data (*1)
		Disabled	Set transmission data(*2)
	Reception	Enabled	Input start condition(*3) or Set dummy data(*2)
		Disabled	Set dummy data (*2)
	Transmission/Reception	Enabled	-(*4)
		Disabled	Set transmission data(*2)
Slave	Transmission	Enabled	Input clock after transmission data is set (*5)
		Disabled	Input clock after transmission data is set (*6)
	Reception	Enabled	Input clock after start condition is input (*7) or Input clock after dummy data is set (*6)
		Disabled	Input clock after dummy data is set (*6)
	Transmission/Reception	Enabled	-(*4)
		Disabled	Input clock after transmission data is set (*6)

(*1) After the start condition output, the transfer clock is output after 1 transfer clock interval.

(*2) After setting transmission data/dummy data, the transfer clock should be output after 3.5 transfer clock interval at the maximum. The system configuratioin is required so that the transmission data/ dummy data are written after the master receives the information of slave data load completion.

(*3) After the start condition input, the transfer clock is output after 2.5 transfer clock interval at the maximum. When receiving data continuously, the system configuration is required to notify the master of the readout completion. Without the notification, the data before readout may be overwritten.

(*4) When the start condition is set to "enable", transmission and reception should not be excuted at the same time.

(*5) After setting the transmission data, output the start condition and wait until the master excutes the clock input. At the clock input, 1 or more transfer clock interval is required after the start condition output.

(*6) At the clock input, 3.5 or more transfer clock interval is required after setting transmission data/ dummy data. The system configuration is required to notify the master of the data load completion.

(*7) At the clock input, 0.5 or more transfer clock interval is required after the start condition input. When receiving data continuously, the system configuration is required to notify the master of the readout completion. Without the notification, the data before readout may be overwritten.

■ Transfer Bit Setup

The transfer bit count can be set from 1 to 8 bits. Set the transfer bit count by the SC0LNG 2 to 0 flag of the SC0MD0 register (at reset:111). The SC0LNG2 to 0 flag holds the former set value until it is set again.

Except during communication, SBT0 pin is masked to prevent errors by noise. At slave communication, set data to TXBUF0 or input a clock to SBT0 pin after a start condition is input.

To communicate properly, more than 2.5 transfer clock interval after the data set to TXBUF0 is required to input the external clock.

■ Start Condition Setup

The SC0STE flag of the SC0MD0 register sets the start condition whether it is enabled or disabled.

The start condition is recognized when SC0CE1 flag of SC0MD0 is set to "0" and a clock line (SBT0 pin) is "H", data line (SBI0 pin with 3 lines or SBO0 pin with 2 lines) is changed from "H" to "L". Also, it is recognized when SC0CE1 flag is set to "1" and a clock line (SBT0 pin) is "L", data line (SBI0 pin with 3 lines or SBO0 pin with 2 lines) is changed from "H" to "L".

Both the SC0SBOS flag and the SC0SBIS flag of the SC0MD1 register should be set to "0" before the start condition setup is changed.

When transmission and reception are executed at the same time, set the start condition to "disable" to prevent abnormal operation.

■ First Transfer Bit Setup

The SC0DIR flag of the SC0MD0 register can set the transfer bit. MSB first or LSB first can be selected.

■ Transmission Data Buffer

The transmission data buffer TXBUF0 is the spare buffer which stores data to be loaded to internal shift register. Set the data to be transferred to transmission data buffer TXBUF0, and the data is automatically loaded to internal shift register. The data loading takes more than 3 transfer clocks cycles. Data setting to TXBUF0 again during data loading may not be operated properly. You can determine whether or not data loading is in progress by monitoring transmission buffer empty flag SC0TEMP of the SC0STR. SC0TEMP flag is set to "1"when data is set to TXBUF0 and cleared to "0" when data loading ends.

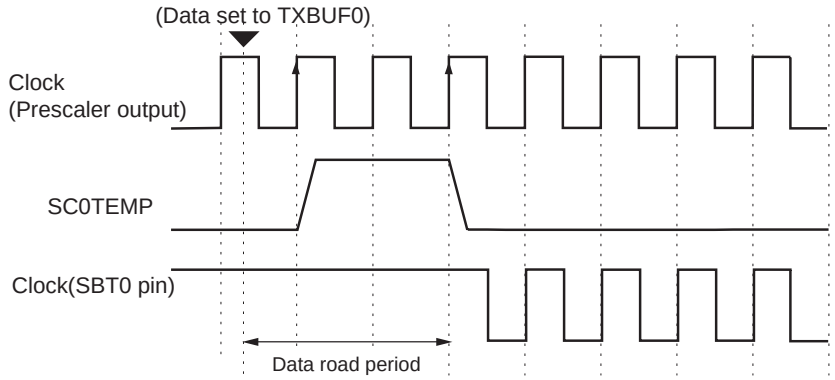


Figure:11.3.1 Transmission Data Buffer

■ Reception Date Buffer

The reception data buffer RXBUF0 is the spare buffer that pushed the received data in the internal shift register. After the communication complete interrupt SC0TIRQ is generated, all data stored in the internal shift register is stored to the received data buffer RXBUF0 automatically. RXBUF0 can store data up to 1 byte. RXBUF0 is rewritten every time communication is completed. Data of RXBUF0 should be read out before the next reception is completed. The received data buffer empty flag SC0REMP is set to "1" at the same time SC0TIRQ is generated. SC0REMP is cleared to "0" after RXBUF0 is read out.

When the start condition is set to "enable" in the clock synchronous communication, transmission and reception should not be executed at the same time to prevent abnormal operation.

If the start condition is input to restart during communication, the transmission data is not valid. Set the transmission data to TXBUF0 again to operate the transmission again.

RXBUF0 is rewritten every time when communication is completed. At continuous communication, data of RXBUF0 should be read out by the time the next reception completes.

■ Transmission Bit Count and First Transfer Bit

At transmission, when the transfer bit count is 1 bit to 7 bits, the data storing method to the transmission data buffer TXBUF0 is different depending on the first transfer bit selection. At MSB first, use the upper bits of TXBUF0 for storing. When the transfer bit count is 6 bits, as shown on Figure:11.3.2, if data "A" to "F" are stored to bp2 to bp7 of TXBUF0, the transfer is operated from "F" to "A". At LSB first, use the lower bits of TXBUF0 for storing. When the transfer bit count is 6 bits, as shown on Figure:11.3.3, if data "A" to "F" are stored to bp0 to bp5 of TXBUF0, the transfer is operated from "A" to "F".

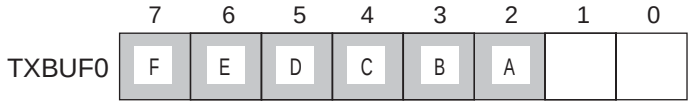


Figure:11.3.2 Transmission Bit Count and First Transfer Bit (starting with MSB)

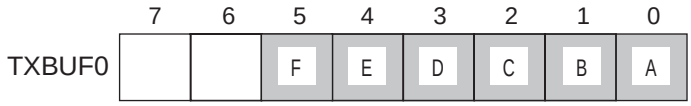


Figure:11.3.3 Transmission Bit Count and First Transfer Bit (starting with LSB)

■ Reception Bit Count and First Transfer Bit

At reception, when the transfer bit count is 1 bit to 7 bits, the data storing method to the reception data buffer RXBUF0 is different depending on the first transfer bit. At MSB first, data is stored to the lower bits of RXBUF0. When the transfer bit count is 6 bits, as shown on figure Figure:11.3.5, if data "A" to "F" are stored to bp0 to bp5 of RXBUF0, the transfer is operated from "F" to "A". At LSB first, data is stored to the upper bits of RXBUF0. When the transfer bit count is 6 bits, as shown on Figure:11.3.4, if data "A" to "F" are stored to bp2 to bp7 of RXBUF0, the transfer is operated from "A" to "F".

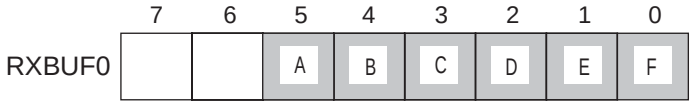


Figure:11.3.4 Reception Bit Count and First transfer Bit (starting with MSB bit)

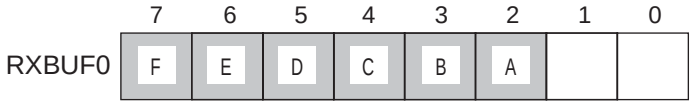


Figure:11.3.5 Reception Bit Count and First transfer Bit (starting with LSB bit)

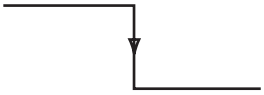
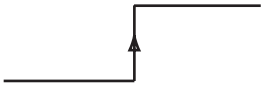
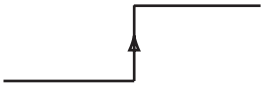
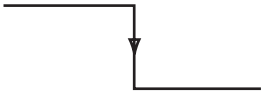
■ Continuous Transmission

This serial interface has a function for continuous communication. If data is set to the transmission data buffer TXBUF0 during communication, the transmission buffer empty flag SC0TEMP is automatically set to communicate continuously. Data setup to TXBUF0 should be done after the data is loaded to the internal shift register before the communication complete interrupt SC0TIRQ is generated. At master communication, suspension of communication between the SC0TIRQ generation and the next transfer clock output is 4 transfer clocks.

■ Input Edge/ Output Edge Setup

The SC0CE1 flag of the SC0MD0 register sets the output edge of the transmission data and the input edge of the reception data. Data at transmission is output at the falling edge of clock as the SC0CE1 flag = "0", and at the rising edge of clock as the SC0CE1 = "1". Data at reception is input at the rising edge of clock as the SC0CE1 = "0", and at the falling edge of clock as the SC0CE1 flag = "1".

Table:11.3.2 Transmission Data Output Edge and Reception Data Input Edge

SC0CE1	Transmission data output edge	Reception data input edge
0		
1		

■ Clock Setup

Clock source is selected from the dedicated prescaler and timers 1, 2 output (2 channels) with the SC0PSC2 to 0 of the SC0MD3 register. The dedicated prescaler is started by selecting "count enable" with the SC0PSCE flag of the SC0MD3 register. The SC0MST flag of the SC0MD1 register can select the internal clock (clock master), or the external clock (clock slave). Even if the external clock is selected, set the internal clock that has the same clock cycle or lower to the external clock by the SC0MD3 register as the interrupt flag SC0TIRQ is generated by the internal clock. The following is the internal clock source that can be set by the SC0MD3 register. Also, the SC0CKM flag of the SC0MD1 register can divide the internal clock. SC0DIV flag can select the dividing ratio between "divided by 8" and "divided by 16".

Table:11.3.3 Synchronous Serial Interface Internal Clock Source

	Serial Interface 0
Clock source (internal clock)	fosc/2
	fosc/4
	fosc/16
	fosc/64
	fs/2
	fs/4
	Timer 1 output
	Timer 2 output
	Timer 2 output/2
	Timer 2 output/8

Set always the SC0SBIS flag and SC0SBOS flag of the SC0MD1 register to "0" before switching the clock setup.

When the slave reception is executed with the start condition "enable" at the continuous communication, the system configuration is required to notify the master of the readout completion. Without the notification, the data before readout may be overwritten.

■ Pin Switching

Used pin can be switched to A (SBO0A, SBI0A, SBT0A) or B (SBO0B, SBI0B, SBT0B) by the SC0SL flag of the SCSEL register.

■ Data Input Pin Setup

3 channels type (clock pin: SBT0 pin, data output pin: SBO0 pin, data input pin: SBI0 pin) or 2 channels type (clock pin: SBT0 pin, data I/O pin: SBO0 pin) can be selected as a communication mode. SBI0 pin can be used only for serial data input. SBO0 pin can be selected as serial data input or output. Whether the serial data is input from SBI0 pin or SBO0 pin, it can be selected by the SC0IOM flag of the SC0MD1 register. When "data input from SBO0 pin" is selected to set the 2 channels type, transmission/ reception can be switched by the SBO0 pin direction control. For SBO0A pin, it can be done by the PADIR2 flag of the PADIR register, for SBO0B pin, by the P7DIR5 flag of the P7DIR. At this time, SBI0 pin can be used as a general port, too.

The transfer speed should be up to 5.0 MHz. If the transfer clock is over 5.0 MHz, the transmission data may not be sent correctly.

At reception, if SC0IOM of the SC0MD1 register is set to "1" and "serial data input from SBO0" is selected, SBI0 pin can be used as a general port.

■ Reception Buffer Empty Flag

After reception is completed (SC0TIRQ is generated), data is automatically stored to RXBUF0 from the internal shift register. If data is stored to the shift register RXBUF0 when the SC0SBIS of the SC0MD1 register is set to "serial input", the reception buffer empty flag SC0REMP of the SC0STR register is set to "1". This indicates that the reception data is going to be read out. SC0REMP is cleared to "0" by reading out the data of RXBUF0.

■ Transmission Buffer Empty Flag

During the communication (after the data is loaded to the internal shift register and before the communication complete interrupt SC0TIRQ is generated) if any data is set to TXBUF0 again, the transmission buffer empty flag SC0REMP of the SC0STR register is set to "1". This indicates that the next transmission data is going to be loaded. Data is loaded to the internal shift register from TXBUF0 by generation of SC0TIRQ, and the next transfer is started as SC0TEMP is cleared to "0".

■ Overrun Error and Error Monitor Flag

After reception complete, if the next data has already been received before reading out of the data of the received data buffer RXBUF0, overrun error is generated and the SC0ORE flag of the SC0STR register is set to "1". At the same time, the error monitor flag SC0ERE is set to indicate a reception error. The SC0ERE flag is cleared after the data of RXBUF0 is read out and the next communication complete interrupt SC0TIRQ is generated. SC0ERE is cleared as SC0ORE flag is cleared. These error flags have no effect on communication operation.

■ Reception BUSY Flag

When the SC0SBIS flag of the SC0MD1 register is set to “serial data input” and the data is set to TXBUF0, or the start condition is recognized, the BUSY flag SC0RBSY of the SC0STR register is set to "1". The flag is cleared to “0” after the communication complete interrupt SC0TIRQ is generated. During continuous communication, the SC0RBSY flag is always set. If the transmission buffer empty flag SC0TEMP is cleared to "0" as the communication complete interrupt SC0TIRQ is generated, SC0RBSY is cleared to "0". If the SC0SBIS flag is set to "0" during communication, the SC0RBSY flag is cleared to "0".

■ Transmission BUSY Flag

When the SC0SBOS flag of the SC0MD1 register is set to “serial data output” and the data is set to TXBUF0, or the start condition is recognized, the SC0TBUSY flag of the SC0STR register is set if the SC0SBOS flag of the SC0MD1 register is “1”. The flag is cleared to “0” after the communication complete interrupt SC0TIRQ is generated. During continuous communication, the SC0TBSY flag is always set. If the transmission buffer empty flag SC0TEMP is cleared to "0" as the communication complete interrupt SC0TIRQ is generated, SC0TBSY is cleared to "0". If the SC0SBOS flag is set to "0" during communication, the SC0TBSY flag is cleared to "0".

■ Forced Reset

This serial interface contains forced reset for abnormal operation. For forced reset, the SC0SBOS flag and the SC0SBIOS flag of the SC0MD1 register should be set to "0" (SBO0 pin: port, input data:"1" input).

At forced reset, the status register (the SC0BRKF flag of the SC0MD2 register, all flags of the SC0STR register) are initialized as they are set at reset, but the control register holds the set value.

■ Last Bit of Transmission Data

Table:11.3.4 shows the data output holding period of the last bit at transmission, and the minimum data input period of the last bit at reception. At slave, the internal clock should be set up to keep the data hold time at transmission.

Table:11.3.4 Last Bit Data Length of Transfer Data

	The last bit data holding period at transmission	The last data input period at reception
At master	1 bit data length	1 bit data length (Minimum)
At slave	[1 bit data length of external clock × 1/2] + [internal clock cycle × (1-2)]	

When start condition is disabled (at SC0STE flag = 0), the SBO0 output after the data output holding period of the final bit can be set by the setting value of the SC0FDC1 to 0 flag of the SC0MD3 register, as shown on Table:11.3.5

After releasing the reset, despite the setting value of the SC0FDC1 to 0 flag, output before the serial transfer is "H". When start condition is enabled (at SC0STE flag = 1), despite the setting value of the SC0FDC1 to 0, "H" is output.

Table:11.3.5 SBO0 Output after the Data Output Holding Period of the Last Bit (without start condition)

SC0FDC1 flag	SC0FDC0 flag	SBO0 output after the data output holding period of the last bit
0	0	Fixed to "1"(High) output
1	0	Last data holding
0	1	Fixed to "0"(Low) output
1	1	Reserved

■ Other Control Flag Setup

Table:11.3.6 shows the flags that do not required to be set or monitored as the flags are not used at clock synchronous communication.

Table:11.3.6 Other Control Flag

Register	Flag	Detail
SC0MD2	SC0BRKE	Break status transmission control
	SC0BRKF	Break status reception monitor
	SC0NPE	Parity enable
	SC0PM1 to 0	Added bit specification
	SC0FM1 to 0	Frame mode specification
SC0STR	SC0PEK	Parity error detection
	SC0FEF	Frame error detection

■ Transmission Timing

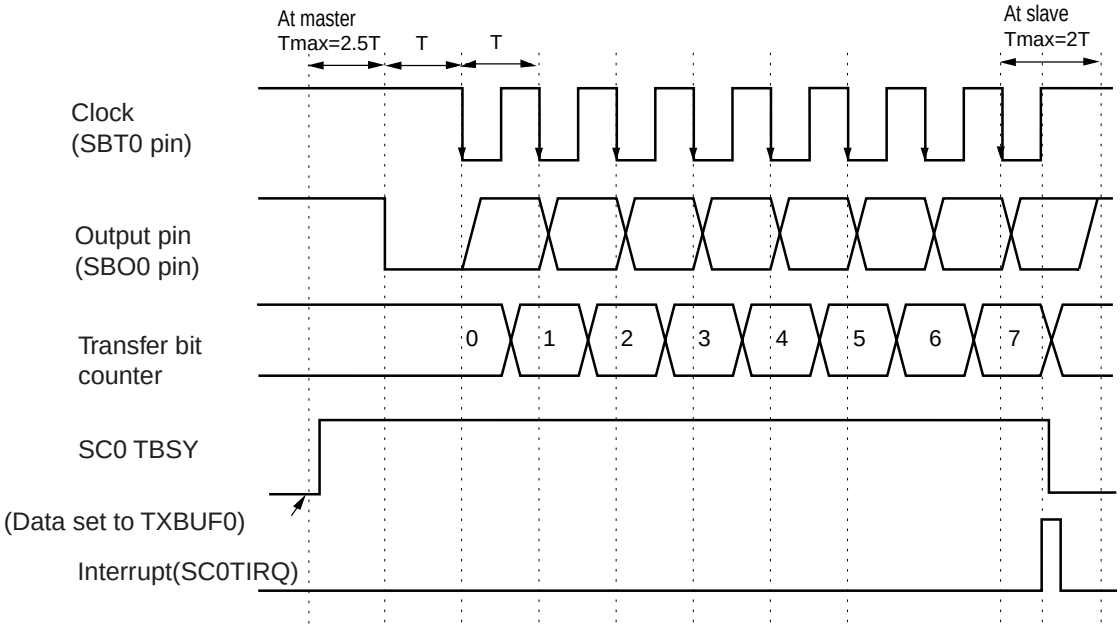


Figure:11.3.6 Transmission Timing (at falling edge, start condition is enabled)

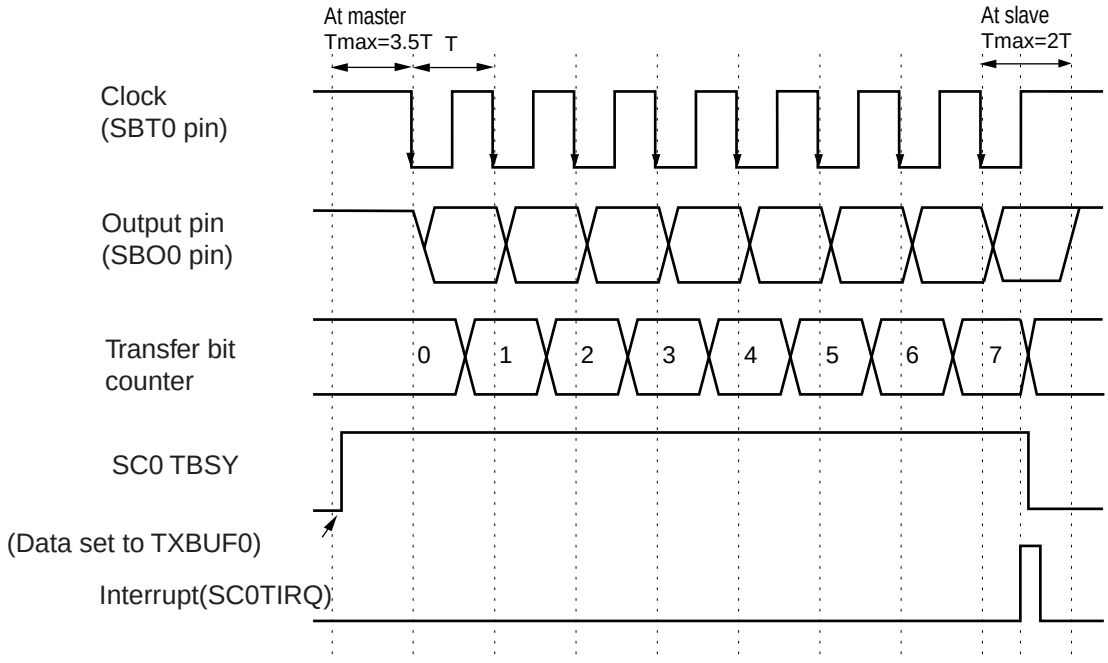


Figure:11.3.7 Transmission Timing (at falling edge, start condition is disabled)

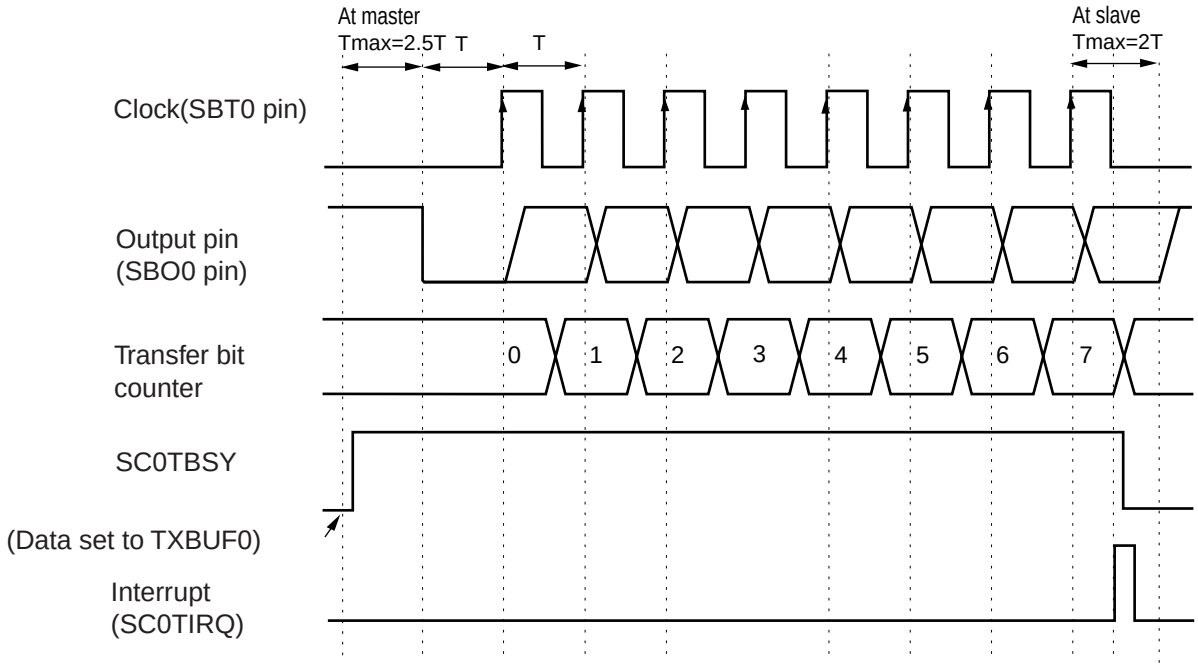


Figure:11.3.8 Transmission Timing (at rising edge, start condition is enabled)

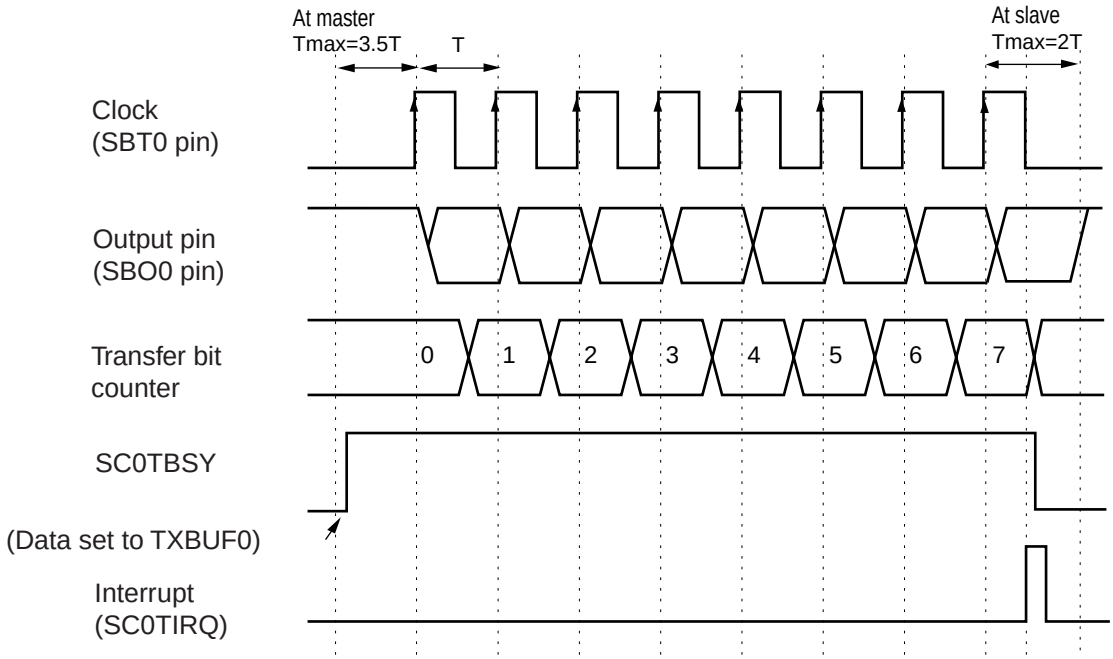


Figure:11.3.9 Transmission Timing (at rising edge, start condition is disabled)

■ Reception Timing

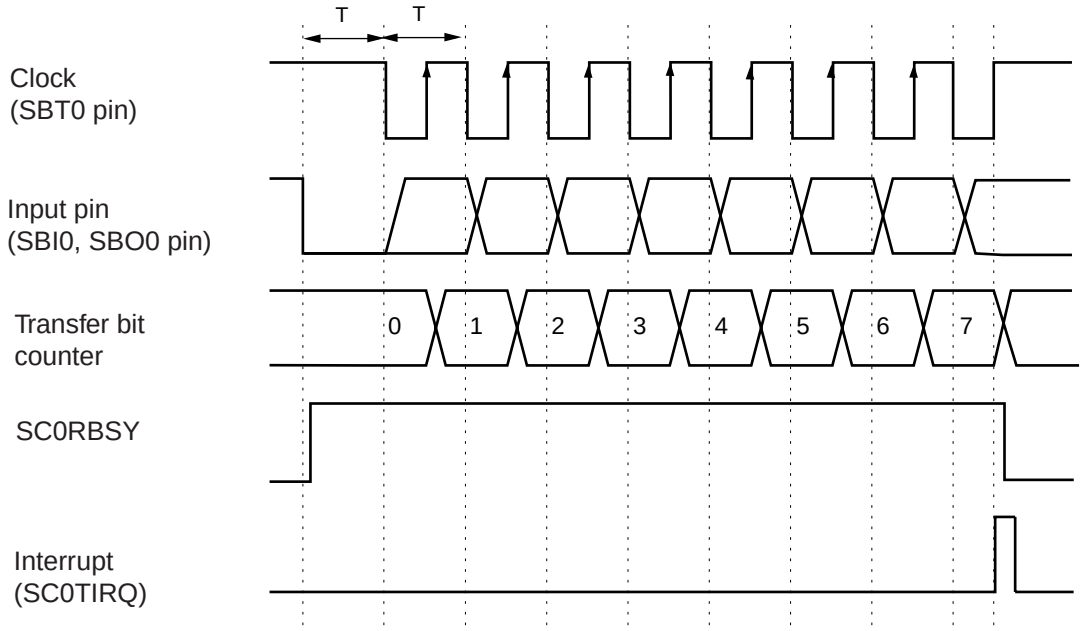


Figure:11.3.10 Reception Timing (at rising edge, start condition is enabled)

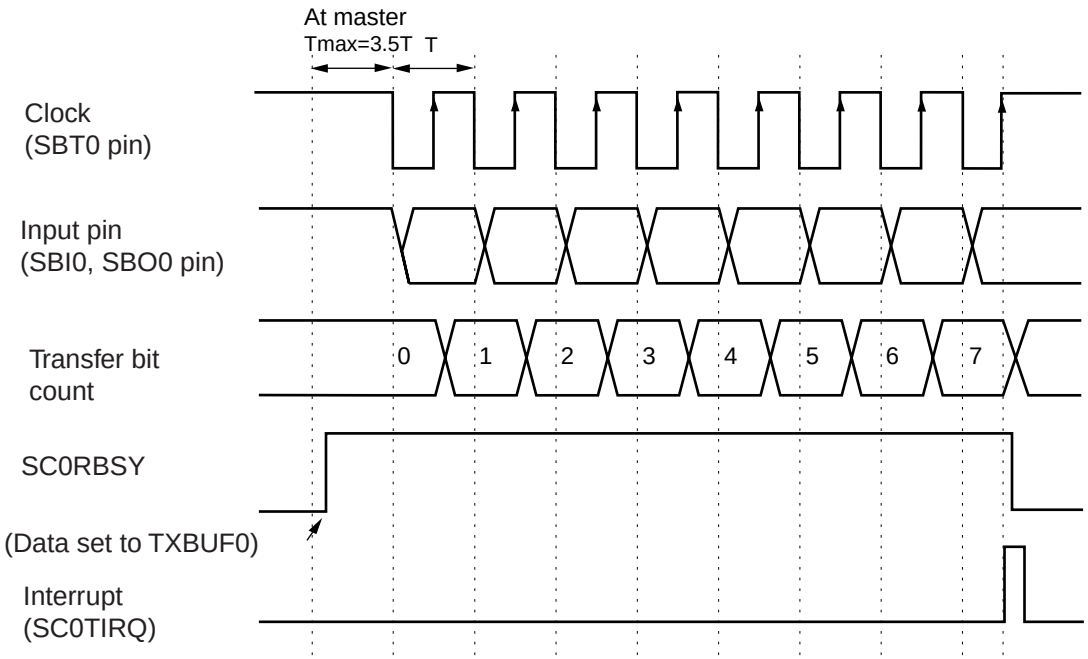


Figure:11.3.11 Reception Timing (at rising edge, start condition is disabled)

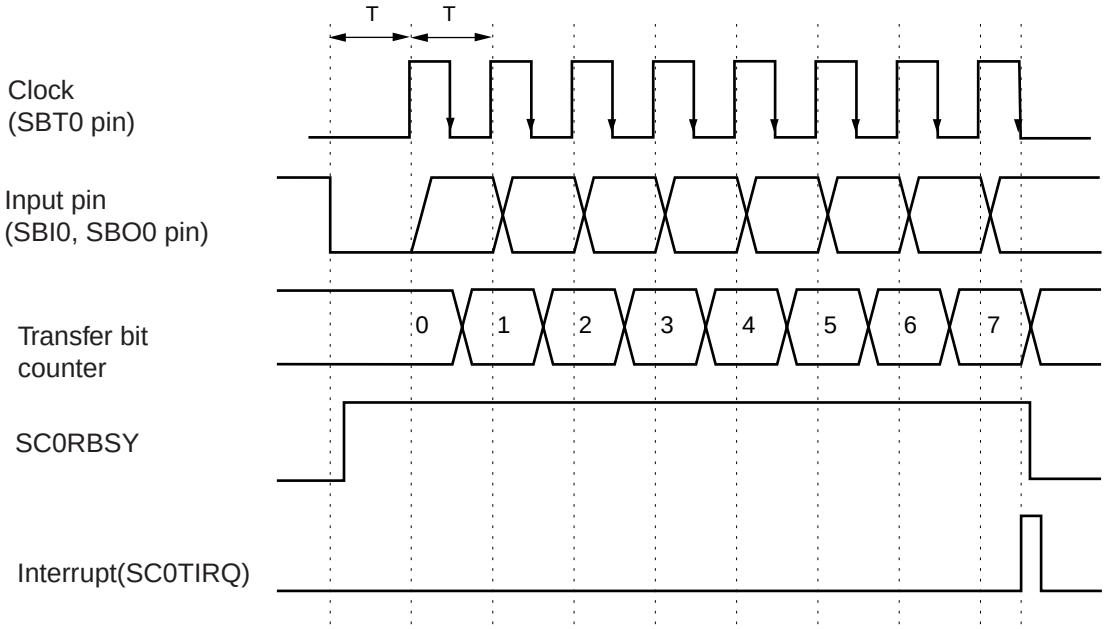


Figure:11.3.12 Reception Timing (at falling edge, start condition is enabled)

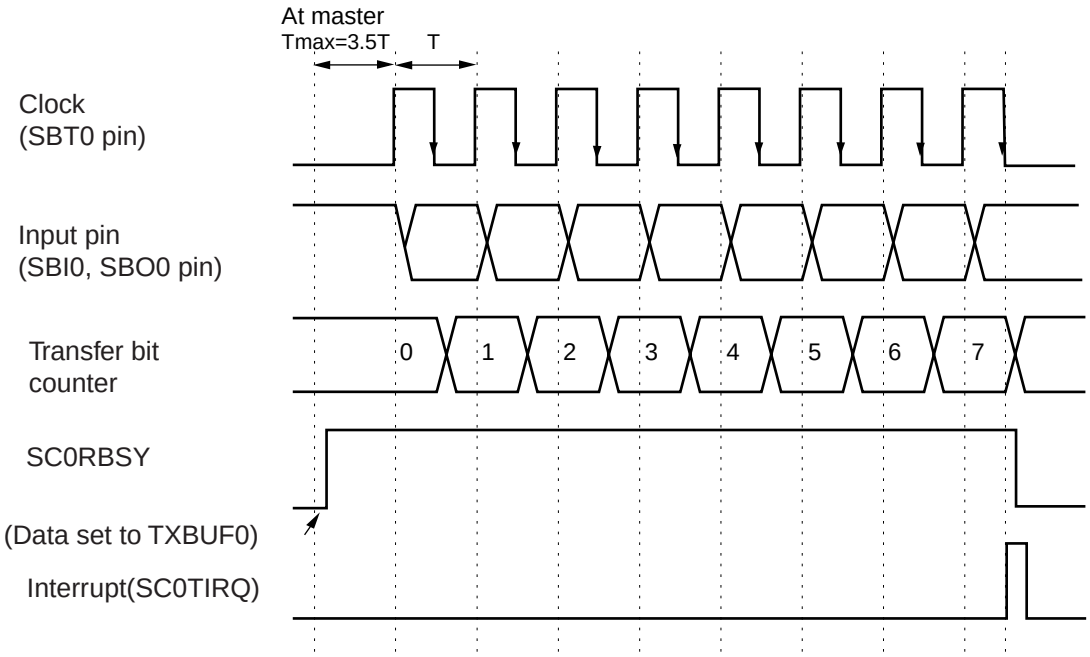


Figure:11.3.13 Reception Timing (at falling edge, start condition is disabled)

■ Transmission/ Reception Timing

As data is received at the opposite edge of the transmission clock, set the polarity of reception data input edge to opposite polarity of the transmission data output edge.

When transmission and reception are executed at the same time, set the start condition to "disable" to prevent abnormal operation.

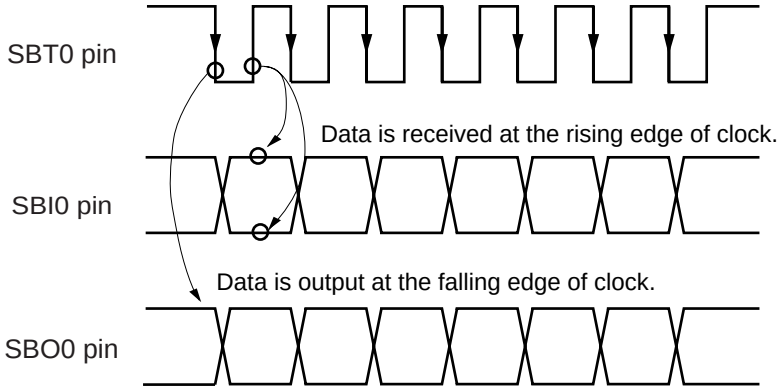


Figure:11.3.14 Transmission/ Reception Timing (Reception:at rising edge, Transmission:at falling edge)

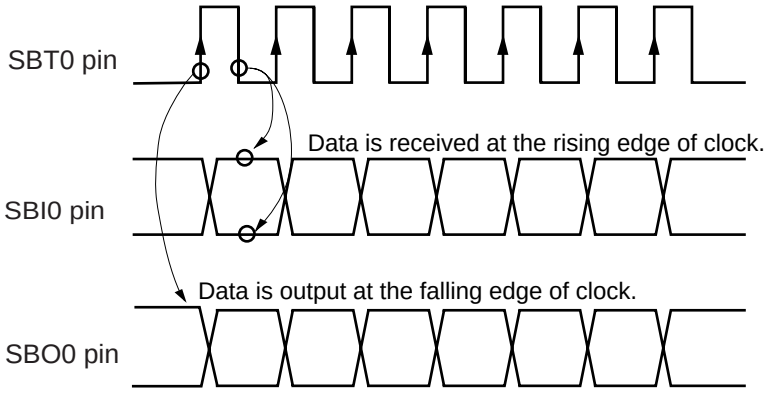


Figure:11.3.15 Transmission/ Reception Timing (Reception:at falling edge, Transmission:at rising edge)

■ Communication Function at Standby Mode

This serial interface is capable of slave reception in STANDBY mode. CPU operation status can be recovered from standby to normal by the communication complete interrupt SC0TIRQ that is generated after the slave reception.

(In STANDBY mode, continuous reception is disabled after data of transfer bit count set by SC0LNG2-0 flags of the SC0MD0 register is received.) The received data should be read out from the received data buffer RXBUF0 after recovering to NORMAL mode.

In STANDBY mode, reception with start condition is not available, thus, disable start condition. And set dummy data to tramsmission data buffer TXBUF0 before transition to STANDBY mode.

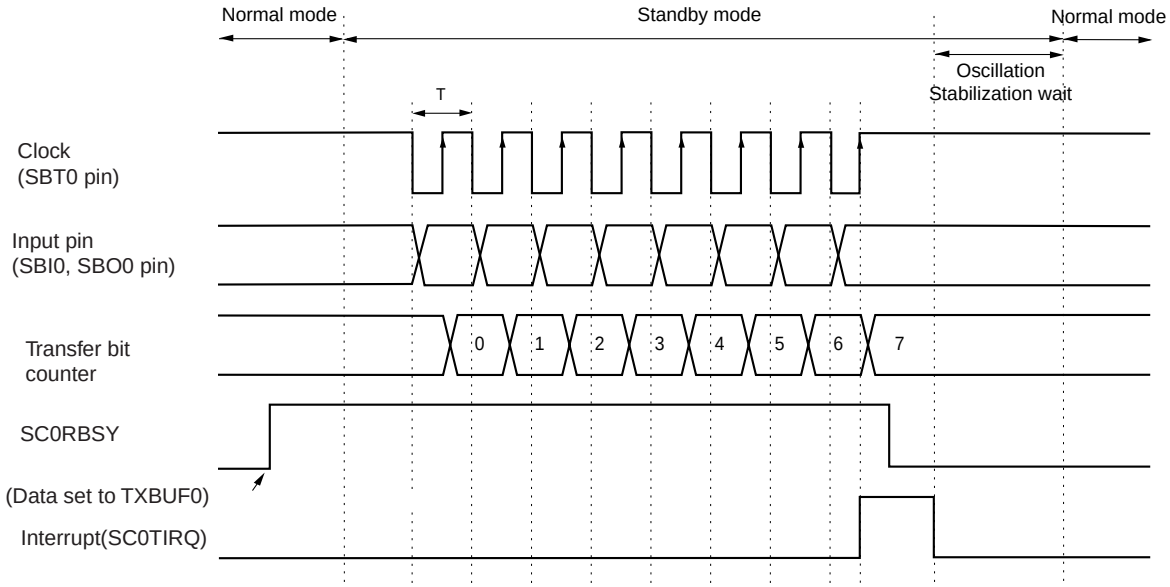


Figure:11.3.16 Reception Timing at Standby Mode (Reception:at rising edge, start condition is disabled)

■ Pins Setup (with 3 channels, at transmission)

Table:11.3.7 shows the setup for synchronous serial interface pin with 3 channels (SBO0 pin, SBI0 pin, SBT0 pin) at transmission.

Table:11.3.7 Setup for Synchronous Serial Interface Pin (with 3 channels, at transmission)

Setup item	Data output pin	Data input pin	Clock I/O pin	
	SBO0A pin/ SBO0B pin	SBI0A pin SBI0B pin	SBT0 pin/ SBT0B pin	
			Clock master	Clock slave
			SC0SCMD1(SC0MST)	
Port pin	PA0/P75	PA1/P76	PA2/P77	
Port pin setup	Select pin (A, B)			
	SCSEL (SC0SL)			
Serial data input selection	SBI0		-	
	SC0MD1(SC0IOM)			
Function	Serial data output	"1" input	Transfer clock I/O	Transfer clock I/O
	SC0MD1(SC0SBOS)	SC0MD1(SC0SBIS)	SC0MD1(SC0SBTS)	
Style	Push-pull/ Nch open-drain	-	Push-pull/ N-ch open-drain	Push-pull/ N-ch open-drain
	PAODC(PAODC0)/ P7ODC(P7ODC5)		PAODC(PAODC2)/P7ODC(P7ODC7)	
I/O	Output mode	-	Output mode	Input mode
	PADIR(PADIR0)/ P7DIR(P7DIR5)		PADIR(PADIR2)/P7DIR(P7DIR7)	
Pull-up setup	Added/ Not added	-	Added/ Not added	Added/ Not added
	PAPLU(PAPLU0)/ P7PLU(P7APLU5)		PAPLU(PAPLU2)/P7PLU(P7PLU7)	

■ Pins Setup (with 3 channels, at reception)

Table:11.3.8 shows the setup for synchronous serial interface pin with 3 channels (SBO0 pin, SBI0 pin, SBT0 pin) at reception.

Table:11.3.8 Setup for Synchronous Serial Interface Pin (with 3 channels, at reception)

<table>
<tr><td rowspan="3">Setup item</td><td>Data output pin</td><td>Data input pin</td><td colspan="2">Clock I/O pin</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">SBO0A pin/
SBO0B pin</td><td rowspan="2">SBI0A pin
SBI0B pin</td><td colspan="2">SBT0A pin/ SBT0B pin</td></tr>
<tr><td>Clock master</td><td>Clock slave</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">SC0SCMD1(SC0MST)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Port pin</td><td>PA0/P75</td><td>PA1/P76</td><td colspan="2">PA2/P77</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Port pin setup</td><td colspan="4">Select pin (A, B)</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">SCSEL (SC0SL)</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Serial data input selection</td><td colspan="2">SBI0</td><td colspan="2" rowspan="2">-</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">SC0MD1(SC0IOM)</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Function</td><td>Port</td><td>Serial input</td><td>Transfer clock I/O</td><td>Transfer clock I/O</td></tr>
<tr><td>SC0MD1(SC0SBOS)</td><td>SC0MD1(SC0SBIS)</td><td colspan="2">SC0MD1(SC0SBTS)</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Style</td><td rowspan="2">-</td><td rowspan="2">-</td><td>Push-pull/ N-ch open-drain</td><td>Push-pull/ N-ch open-drain</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">PAODC(PAODC2)/P7ODC(P7ODC7)</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">I/O</td><td rowspan="2">-</td><td>Input mode</td><td>Output mode</td><td>Input mode</td></tr>
<tr><td>PADIR(PADIR1)
P7DIR(P7DIR6)</td><td colspan="2">PADIR(PADIR2)/P7DIR(P7DIR7)</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Pull-up setup</td><td rowspan="2">-</td><td rowspan="2">-</td><td>Added/ Not added</td><td>Added/ Not added</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">PAPLU(PAPLU2)/P7PLU(P7PLU7)</td></tr>
</table>

■ Pins Setup (with 3 channels, at transmission / reception)

Table:11.3.9 shows the setup for synchronous serial interface pin with 3 channels (SBO0 pin, SBI0 pin, SBT0 pin) at transmission / reception.

Table:11.3.9 Setup for Synchronous Serial Interface Pin (with 3 channels, at transmission / reception)

Setup item	Data output pin	Data input pin	Clock I/O pin	
	SBO0A pin SBO0B pin	SBI0A pin SBI0B pin	SBT0A pin/SBT0B pin	
			Clock master	Clock slave
			SC0SCMD1(SC0MST)	
Port pin	PA0/P75	PA1/P76	PA2/P77	
Port pin setup	Select pin (A, B)			
	SCSEL (SC0SL)			
Serial data input selection	SBI0		-	
	SC0MD1(SC0IOM)			
Function	Serial data output	Serial input	Transfer clock I/O	Transfer clock I/O
	SC0MD1(SC0SBOS)	SC0MD1(SC0SBIS)	SC0MD1(SC0SBTS)	
Style	Push-pull/ N-ch open-drain	-	Push-pull/ N-ch open-drain	Push-pull/ N-ch open-drain
	PAODC(PAODC0) P7ODC(P7ODC5)		PAODC(PAODC2) P7ODC(P7ODC7)	
I/O	Output mode	Input mode	Output mode	Input mode
	PADIR(PADIR0) P7DIR(P7DIR5)	PADIR(PADIR1) P7DIR(P7DIR6)	PADIR(PADIR2) P7DIR(P7DIR7)	
Pull-up setup	Added/ Not added	-	Added/ Not added	Added/ Not added
	PAPLU(PAPLU0) P7PLU(P7PLU5)		PAPLU(PAPLU2) P7PLU(P7PLU7)	

■ Pins Setup (with 2 channels, at transmission)

Table:11.3.10 shows the setup for synchronous serial interface pin with 2 channels (SBO0 pin, SBT0 pin) at transmission. SBI0 pin can be used as a port.

Table:11.3.10 Setup for Synchronous Serial Interface Pin (with 2 channels, at transmission)

Setup item	Data output pin	Serial unused pin	Clock I/O pin	
	SBO0A pin SBO0B pin	SBI0A pin SBI0B pin	SBT0A pin/ SBT0B pin	
			Clock master	Clock slave
			SC0SCMD1(SC0MST)	
Port pin	PA0/P75	PA1/P76	PA2/P77	
Port pin setup	Select pin (A, B)			
	SCSEL (SC0SL)			
Serial data input selection	SBO0		-	
	SC0MD1(SC0IOM)			
Function	Serial data input	"1" input	Transfer clock I/O	Transfer clock I/O
	SC0MD1(SC0SBOS)	SC0MD1(SC0SBIS)	SC0MD1(SC0SBIS)	
Style	Push-pull/ N-ch open-drain	-	Push-pull/ N-ch open-drain	Push-pull/ N-ch open-drain
	PAODC(PAODC0) P7ODC(P7ODC5)		PAODC(PAODC2) P7ODC(P7ODC7)	
I/O	Output mode	-	Output mode	Input mode
	PADIR(PADIR0) P7DIR(PADIR5)		PADIR(PADIR2) P7DIR(P7DIR7)	
Pull-up setup	Added/ Not added	-	Added/ Not added	Added/ Not added
	PAPLU(PAPLU0) P7PLU(P7PLU5)		PAPLU(PAPLU2) P7PLU(P7PLU7)	

■ Pins Setup (with 2 channels, at reception)

Table:11.3.11 shows the setup for synchronous serial interface pin with 2 channels (SBO0 pin, SBT0 pin) at reception. SBI0 pin can be used as a port.

Table:11.3.11 Setup for Synchronous Serial Interface Pin (with 2 channels, at reception)

Setup item	Data output pin	Serial unused pin	Clock I/O pin	
	SBO0A pin SBO0B pin	SBI0A pin SBI0B pin	SBT0A pin/ SBT0B pin	
			Clock master	Clock slave
			SC0SCMD1(SC0MST)	
Port pin	PA0/P75	PA1/P76	PA2/P77	
Port pin setup	Select pin (A, B)			
	SCSEL (SC0SL)			
Serial data input selection	SBO0		-	
	SC0MD1(SC0IOM)			
Function	Port	Serial input	Transfer clock I/O	Transfer clock I/O
	SC0MD1(SC0SBOS)	SC0MD1(SC0SBIS)	SC0MD1(SC0SBIS)	
Style	-	-	Push-pull/ N-ch open-drain	Push-pull/ N-ch open-drain
			PAODC(PAODC2) P7ODC(P7ODC7)	
I/O	Input mode	-	Output mode	Input mode
	PADIR(PADIR0) P7DIR(P7DIR5)		PADIR(PADIR2) P7DIR(P7DIR7)	
Pull-up setup	-	-	Added/ Not added	Added/ Not added
			PAPLU(PAPLU2) P7PLU(P7PLU7)	

11.3.2 Setup Example

■ Transmission / Reception Setup Example

The setup example for clock synchronous serial communication with serial 0 is shown. Table:11.3.12 shows the conditions at transmission / reception.

Table:11.3.12 Setup Examples for Synchronous Serial Interface Transmission / Reception

Setup item	Set to
Serial data input pin	Select SBI0 (3 channels)
Transfer bit count	8 bit
Start condition	None
First transfer bit	MSB
Input edge	Falling edge
Output edge	Rising edge
Clock	Clock master
Clock source	fs/2
Clock source dividing	Not divided
Pin	A (port A)
SBT0/SBO0 pin style	Nch open-drain
SBT0 pin pull-up resistor	Added
SBO0 pin pull-up resistor	Added
serial 0 communication complete interrupt	Enable
SBO0 output after last data output	"1"(H) fix

An example setup procedure, with a description of each step is shown below.

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Select the prescaler operation SC0MD3(0x03F94) bp3 :SC0PSCE =1	(1) Set the SC0PSCE flag of the SC0MD3 register to "1" to select "prescaler operation".
(2) Select the clock source SC0MD3(0x03F94) bp2-0 :SC0PSC2-0 =100	(2) Set the SC0PSC2 to 0 flag of the SC0MD3 register to "100" to select the fs/2 as the clock source.
(3) SBO0A output control after the last data is output SC0MD3(0x03F94) bp7,6 :SC0FDC1-0 =00	(3) Set the SC0FDC1 to 0 flag of the SC0MD3 register to "00" to select "1" (High) fix of the SBO0 last data output.

Setup Procedure	Description
(4) Select the pin SCSEL(0x03F90) bp :SC0SL =0	(4) Set the SC0SL flag of the SCSEL register to "0" to select A (port A) as I/O pin.
(5) Control the pin style PAODC(0x03F2D) bp2:PAODC2=1 bp0:PAODC0=1 PAPLU(0x03F4A) bp2:PAPLU2=1 bp0:PAPLU0=1	(5) Set the PAODC2,PAODC0 flag of the PAODC register to "1,1" and select Nch open-drain to SBO0/SBT0 pin. Set the PAPLU2,PAPLU0 flag of the PAPLU register to "1,1" to enable the pull-up resistor.
(6) Control the pin direction PADIR(0x03F3A) bp2 :PADIR2 =1 bp1 :PADIR1 =0 bp0 :PADIR0 =1	(6) Set the PADIR2, PADIR0 flag of the Port A pin direction control register (PADIR) to "1,1" and the PADIR1 flag to "0" to set PA2, PA0 to the output mode, PA1 to the input mode.
(7) Set the SC0MD0 register Select the transfer bit count SC0MD0(0x03F91) bp2-0 :SC0LNG2-0 =111 Select the start condition SC0MD0(0x03F91) bp3 :SC0STE =0 Select the first bit to be transferred SC0MD0(0x03F91) bp4 :SC0DIR =0 Select the transfer edge SC0MD0(0x03F91) bp7 :SC0CE1 =1	(7) Set the SC0LNG2 to 0 flag of the serial 0 mode register 0 (SC0MD0) to "111" to set the transfer bit count as "8 bits". Set the SC0STE flag of the SC0MD0 register to "0" to disable the start condition. Set the SC0DIR flag of the SC0MD0 register to "0" to set MSB as a transfer first bit. Set the SC0CE1 flag of the SC0MD0 register to "1" to set the reception data input edge "falling" and the transmission data output edge "rising".
(8) Set the SC0MD1 register Select the communication style SC0MD1(0x03F92) bp0 :SC0CMD =0 Select the transfer clock SC0MD1(0x03F92) bp2 :SC0MST =1 bp3 :SC0CKM =0 Select the transfer clock SC0MD1(0x03F92) bp4 :SC0SBOS =1 bp5 :SC0SBIS =1 bp6 :SC0SBTS =1 bp7 :SC0IOM =0	(8) Set the SC0CMD flag of the SC0MD1 register to "0" to select the synchronous serial. Set the SC0MST flag of the SC0MD1 register to "1" to select the clock master (internal clock). Set the SC0CKM flag to "0" to select "not divided" for the clock source. Set the SC0SBOS, SC0SBIS, SC0SBTS flag of the SC0MD1 register to "1" to set the SBO0 pin to the serial data output, the SBI0 pin to the serial input, SBT0 pin to the transfer clock input/output. Set the SC0IOM flag "0" to set the serial data input from the SBI0 pin.
(9) Set the interrupt level SC0TICR(0x03FF0) bp7-6 :SC0LV1-0 =10	(9) Set the interrupt level by the SC0TLV1 to 0 flag of the serial 0 UART transmission interrupt control register (SC0TICR).

Setup Procedure	Description
(10) Enable the interrupt SC0TICR(0x03FF0) bp1 :SC0TIE =1 bp0 :SC0TIR =0	(10) Set the SC0TIE flag of the SC0TICR register to "1" to enable the interrupt. If any interrupt request flag (SC0TIR of the SC0TICR register) is already set, clear SC0TIR before the interrupt is enabled.
(11) Start the serial transmission Transmission data → TXBUF0(0x03F97) Received data → input SBI0 pin	(11) Set the transmission data to the serial transmission data buffer TXBUF0. The transmission or reception is started by the internal clock generation. When the transmission is finished, the serial 0 UART transmission interrupt SC0TIRQ is generated. [Chapter 3. 3-1-4 Setup]

Note: Procedures (1) to (3), (5), (6), (7) to (8) can be set at the same time.

■ Reception Setup Example

The setup example for clock synchronous serial communication with serial 0 is shown. Table:11.3.12 shows the conditions at Reception.

Table:11.3.13 Setup Examples for Synchronous Serial Interface Reception

Setup item	Set to
Serial data input pin	Select SBI0 (3 channels)
Transfer bit count	8 bit
Start condition	None
First transfer bit	MSB
Input edge	Falling edge
Output edge	Rising edge
Clock	Clock Slave
Clock source	fs/2
Clock source dividing	Not divided
Pin	A (port A)
SBT0/SBO0 pin style	Nch open-drain
SBT0 pin pull-up resistor	Added
SBO0 pin pull-up resistor	Added
serial 0 communication complete interrupt	Enable
SBO0 output after last data output	"1"(H) fix

An example setup procedure, with a description of each step is shown below.

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Select the prescaler operation SC0MD3(0x03F94) bp3 :SC0PSCE =1	(1) Set the SC0PSCE flag of the SC0MD3 register to "1" to select "prescaler operation".
(2) Select the clock source SC0MD3(0x03F94) bp2-0 :SC0PSC2-0 =100	(2) Set the SC0PSC2 to 0 flag of the SC0MD3 register to "100" to select the fs/2 as the clock source.
(3) SBO0A output control after the last data is output SC0MD3(0x03F94) bp7,6 :SC0FDC1-0 =00	(3) Set the SC0FDC1 to 0 flag of the SC0MD3 register to "00" to select "1" (High) fix of the SBO0 last data output.
(4) Select the pin SCSEL(0x03F90) bp0 :SC0SL =0	(4) Set the SC1SL flag of the SCSEL register to "0" to select A (port A) as I/O pin.
(5) Control the pin style PAODC(0x03F2D) bp2:PAODC2=1 bp0:PAODC0=1 PAPLU(0x03F4A) bp2:PAPLU2=1 bp0:PAPLU0=1	(5) Set the PAODC7,PAODC5 flag of the PAODC register to "1,1" to select Nch open-drain to SBT0 pin. Set the PAPLU2, PAPLU5 flag of the PAPLU register to "1,1" to enable the pull-up resistor.

Setup Procedure	Description
(6) Control the pin direction PADIR(0x03F3A) bp2 :PADIR2 =1 bp1 :PADIR1 =0 bp0 :PADIR0 =1	(6) Set the PADIR2, PADIR0 flag of the Port A pin direction control register (PADIR) to "1,1" and the PADIR1 flag to "0" to set PA2, PA0 to the output mode, PA1 to the input mode.
(7) Set the SC0MD0 register Select the transfer bit count SC0MD0(0x03F91) bp2-0 :SC0LNG2-0 =111 Select the start condition SC0MD0(0x03F91) bp3 :SC0STE =0 Select the first bit to be transferred SC0MD0(0x03F91) bp4 :SC0DIR =0 Select the transfer edge SC0MD0(0x03F91) bp7 :SC0CE1 =1	(7) Set the SC0LNG2 to 0 flag of the serial 0 mode register 0 (SC0MD0) to "111" to set the transfer bit count as 8 bits. Set the SC0STE flag of the SC0MD0 register to "0" to disable the start condition. Set the SC0DIR flag of the SC0MD0 register to "0" to set MSB as a transfer first bit. Set the SC0CE1 flag of the SC0MD0 register to "1" to set the reception data input edge "falling" and the transmission data output edge "rising".
(8) Set the SC0MD1 register Select the communication style SC0MD1(0x03F92) bp0 :SC0CMD =0 Select the transfer clock SC0MD1(0x03F92) bp2 :SC0MST =0 bp3 :SC0CKM =0 Select the transfer clock SC0MD1(0x03F92) bp4 :SC0SBOS =1 bp5 :SC0SBIS =1 bp6 :SC0SBTS =1 bp7 :SC0IOM =0	(8) Set the SC0CMD flag of the SC0MD1 register to "0" to select the synchronous serial. Set the SC0MST flag of the SC0MD1 register to "0" to select the clock slave (external clock). Set the SC0CKM flag to "0" to select "not divided " for the clock source. Set the SC0SBOS, SC0SBIS, SC0SBTS flag of the SC0MD1 register to "1" to set the SBO0 pin to the serial data output, the SBI0 pin to the serial input, SBT0 pin to the transfer clock input/output. Set the SC0IOM flag "0" to set the serial data input from the SBI0 pin.
(9) Set the interrupt level SC0TICR(0x03FF0) bp7-6 :SC0LV1-0 =10	(9) Set the interrupt level by the SC0TLV1 to 0 flag of the serial 0 UART transmission interrupt control register (SC0TICR).
(10) Enable the interrupt SC0TICR(0x03FF0) bp1 :SC0TIE =1 bp0 :SC0TIR =0	(10) Set the SC0TIE flag of the SC0TICR register to "1" to enable the interrupt. If any interrupt request flag (SC0TIR of the SC0TICR register) is already set, clear SC0TIR before the interrupt is enabled.
(11) Start the serial Reception dummy data → TXBUF0(0x03F97) Received data → input SBI0 pin	(11) Set the dummy data to the serial transmission data buffer TXBUF0. After the dummy data is set, when clock input is done after more than 3.5 transfer clock, reception is started. When reception is finished, the serial 0 UART transmission interrupt SC0TIRQ is generated. [Chapter 3. 3-1-4 Setup]

Note: Each procedure (1) to (3), (7), (8), (9) to (10) can be set at the same time.

At the reception with the start condition input, set the SC0STE flag to “1” to select start condition enable at the step (7) in the setup procedure. At the step (11), execute the start condition input instead of setting dummy data. After start condition input, more than 0.5 transfer clock is required for the clock input.

For communication with 2 channels, serial data is input/output from the SBO0 pin. Input/output is switched by the port direction control register PADIR. At reception, set always SC0SBIS of the SC0MD1 register to "1" to select "serial input". The SBI0 pin can be used as a general port.

This serial interface contains a force reset function. If the communication should be stopped by force, set SC0SBOS and SC0SBIS of the SC0MD1 register to "0".

Each flag should be set as this setup procedure in order. Activation of communication should be operated after all control registers (refer to Table:11.2.1 except TXBUF0) are set.

Transfer rate of transfer clock set by the SC0MD3 register should not exceed 5.0 MHz.

■ Transmission / Reception Setup Example (Standby Mode Reception)

The setup example for clock synchronous serial communication with serial 0 is shown. Table:11.3.14 shows the condition at standby mode reception.

Table:11.3.14 Setup Examples for Synchronous Serial Interface Transmission / Reception (Standby Mode Reception)

Setup item	Set to
Serial data input pin	Select SBI0 (3 channels)
Transfer bit count	8 bit
Start condition	None
First transfer bit	MSB
Input edge	Falling edge
Clock	Clock slave
Operation mode	Stop mode
Clock source	fs/2
Clock source dividing	Not divided
Pin	A (port A)
SBT0/SBO0 pin style	Push-pull
SBT0 pin pull-up resistor	Not added
SBO0 pin pull-up resistor	Not added
serial 0 communication complete interrupt	Enable

An example setup procedure, with a description of each step is shown below.

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Select the prescaler operation SC0MD3(0x03F94) bp3 :SC0PSCE =1	(1) Set the SC0PSCE flag of the SC0MD3 register to "1" to select "prescaler operation".
(2) Select the clock source SC0MD3(0x03F94) bp2-0 :SC0PSC2-0 =100	(2) Set the SC0PSC2 to 0 flag of the SC0MD3 register to "100" to select fs/2 as the clock source.
(3) Select the pin SCSEL(0x03F90) bp0 :SC0SL =0	(3) Set the SC0SL flag of the SCSEL register to "0" to select A (port A) as I/O pin
(4) Control the pin style PAODC(0x03F2D) bp2:PAOD2=0 bp0:PAODC0=0 PAPLU(0x03F4A) bp2:PAPLU2=0 bp0:PAPLU0=0	(4) Set the PAODC2,PAODC0 flag of the PAODC register to "0,0" to select Push-pull to SBO0/SBT0 pin. Set the PAPLU2,PAPLU0 flag of the PAPLU register to "0,0" to disenable the pull-up resistor.

Setup Procedure	Description
(5) Control the pin direction PADIR(0x03F3A) bp2 :PADIR2 =0 bp1 :PADIR1 =0 bp0 :PADIR0 =1	(5) Set the PADIR2, PADIR1 flag of the Port A pin direction control register (PADIR) to "0,0" and the PADIR0 flag to "1" to set PA2, PA1 to disable the start condition.
(6) Select the transfer bit count SC0MD0(0x03F91) bp2-0 :SC0LNG2-0 =111	(6) Set the SC0LNG2-0 flag of the serial 0 mode register (SC0MD0) to "111" to set the transfer bit count as 8 bits.
(7) Select the start condition SC0MD0(0x03F91) bp3 :SC0STE =0	(7) Set the SC0STE flag of the serial 0 mode register (SC0MD0) to "1" to disable the start condition.
(8) Select the first bit to be transferred SC0MD0(0x03F91) bp4 :SC0DIR =0	(8) Set the SC0DIR flag of the SC0MD0 register to "0" to set MSB as a transfer first bit.
(9) Select the transfer edge SC0MD0(0x03F91) bp7 :SC0CE1 =1	(9) Set the SC0CE1 flag of the SC0MD0 register to "1" to set the reception data input edge as falling.
(10) Select the communication type SC0MD1(0x03F92) bp0 :SC0CMD =0	(10) Set the SC0CMD flag of the SC0MD1 register to "0" to select the synchronous serial.
(11) Select the transfer clock SC0MD1(0x03F92) bp2 :SC0MST =0 bp3 :SC0CKM =0	(11) Set the SC0MST flag of the SC0MD1 register to "0" to select the clock slave (external slave). Set the SC0CKM flag to "0" to select "not divided" for the clock source.
(12) Control the pin function SC0MD1(0x03F92) bp4 :SC0SBOS =0 bp5 :SC0SBIS =1 bp6 :SC0SBTS =1 bp7 :SC0IOM =0	(12) Set the SC0SBOS flag of the SC0MD1 register to "0", the SC0SBTS flag of the SC0SBIS register to "1" to set the SBI0 pin to the serial data input as the SBO0 pin general port, the SBT0 pin to the transfer clock input/ output. Set the SC0IOM flag "0" to set the serial data input from the SBI0 pin.
(13) Set the interrupt level SC0TICR(0x03FF0) bp7-6 :SC0LV1-0 =10	(13) Set the interrupt level by the SC0LV1 to 0 flag of the serial 0 UART transmission interrupt control register (SC0TICR). (Set level 2)
(14) Enable the interrupt SC0TICR(0x03FF0) bp1 :SC0TIE =1 bp0 :SC0TIR =0	(14) Set the SC0TIE flag of the SC0TICR register to "1" to enable the interrupt. If any interrupt request flag (SC0TIR of the SC0TICR register) is already set, clear SC0TIR before the interrupt is enabled.
(15) Set the startup factor of the serial communication Dummy data → TXBUF0(0x03F97)	(15) Set the dummy data to the serial transmission data buffer TXBUF0.

Setup Procedure	Description
(16) Transfer to STOP mode CPUM(0x03F00) bp3:STOP =1	(16) Set the STOP flag of the CPUM register to "1" to transfer to the stop mode.
(17) Start the serial communication Transmission clock → input SBT0 pin Received data → input SBI0 pin	(17) Input the transfer clock to the SBT0 pin and transfer data to the SBI0 pin.
(18) Recover from the standby mode	(18) The serial 0 UART transmission interrupt SC0TIRQ is generated at the same time of the 8th bits data reception, then, CPU is recovered from the stop mode to the normal mode after the oscillation stabilization wait.

Note: Procedures (1), (2), (6) to (9), (10) to (12), (13) to (14) can be set at the same time.

Each flag should be set as this setup procedure in order. Activation of communication should be operated after all control registers (refer to Table:11.2.1 except TXBUF0) are set.

11.3.3 UART Serial Interface

Serial 0 can be used for duplex UART communication. Table:11.3.15 shows UART serial interface functions.

Table:11.3.15 URAT Serial Interface Functions

Communication style	UART (duplex)j
Interrupt	SC0TIRQ (transmission), SC0RIRQ (reception)
Pins	TXD0 (output / input) RXD0 (input)
First transfer bit specification	MSB / LSB
Parity bit selection	O
Parity bit control	0 parity 1 parity odd parity even parity
Frame selection	7 bits + 1 STOP 7 bits + 2 STOP 8 bits + 1 STOP 8 bits + 2 STOP
Continuous operation	O
Maximum transfer rate	300 kbps (standard 300 bps to 38.4 kbps) (with baud rate timer)

■ Activation Factor for Communication

At transmission, when data is set to the transmission data buffer TXBUF0, start condition is generated to start transfer. At reception, when start condition is received, communication is started. At reception, if the data length of "L" for start bit is longer than 0.5 bit, it can be recognized as start condition.

■ Transmission

Data transfer is automatically started by setting data to the transmission data buffer TXBUF0. When the transmission is completed, the serial 0 transmission interrupt SC0TIRQ is generated.

■ Reception

Once the start condition is recognized, reception is started after the transfer bit counter that counts transfer bit is cleared. When the reception is completed, the serial 0 reception interrupt SC0RIRQ is generated.

■ Duplex communication

On duplex communication, the transmission and reception can be operated separately at the same time. The frame mode and parity bit of the used data on transmission / reception should have the same polarity.

■ Transfer Bit Count Setup

The transfer bit count is automatically set after the frame mode is specified by the SC0FM1 to 0 flag of the SC0MD2 register. If the SC0CMD flag of the SC0MD1 register is set to "1", and UART communication is selected, the setup by the synchronous serial transfer bit count selection flag SC0LNG2 to 0 is no longer valid.

■ Data Input Pin Setup

2 channels type, data output pin (TXD0 pin), data input pin (RXD0 pin, or 1 channel type, data I/O pin (TXD0 pin) can be selected as a communication mode. The RXD0 pin can be used only for serial data input. The TXD0 pin can be used for serial data input or output. Whether the serial data is input from RXD0 or TXD0, it can be selected by the SC0IOM flag of the SC0MD1 register. When "data input from TXD0 pin" is selected to set the 1 channel communication, transmission / reception can be switched by the TXD0 pin direction control. For TXD0A pin, it can be done by the PADIR2 flag of the PADIR register. For TXD0B, by the P7DIR5 flag of the P7DIR register. At the same time, the RXD0 pin can be used as a general port.

■ Reception Buffer Empty Flag

When SC0RIRQ is generated, data is stored automatically to RXBUF0 from the internal shift register. When data is stored to RXBUF0 from the shift register, the reception buffer empty flag SC0REMP of the SC0STR register is set to "1". That indicates that the received data is going to be read out. SC0REMP is cleared to "0" by reading out the data of RXBUF0.

■ Reception BUSY Flag

When the start condition is recognized, the SC0RBSY flag of the SC0STR register is set to "1". When the reception complete interrupt SC0TIRQ is generated, the flag is cleared to “0”. If the SC0SBIS flag is set to "0" during reception, the SC0RBSY flag is reset to "0".

■ Transmission BUSY Flag

When data is set to TXBUF0, the SC0TBSY flag of the SC0STR register is set to "1". When the transmission complete interrupt SC0TIRQ is generated, the flag is cleared to "0". During continuous communication, the SC0TBSY flag is always set. If the transmission buffer empty flag SC0TEMP is set to "0" as the transmission complete interrupt SC0TIRQ is generated, the SC0TBSY is cleared to "0". If the SC0SBOS flag is set to "0", the SC0TBSY flag is reset to"0".

■ Frame Mode and Parity Check Setup

Figure 11-3-17 shows the data format at UART communication.

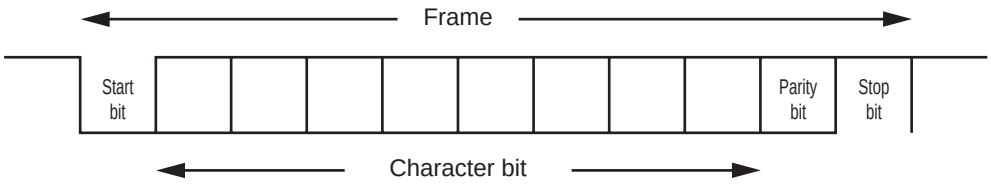


Figure:11.3.17 UART Serial Interface Transmission / Reception Data Format

The transmission / reception data consists of start bit, character bit, parity bit and stop bit. Table:11.3.16 shows its types to be set.

Table:11.3.16 UART Serial Interface Transmission / Reception Data

Start bit	1 bit
Character bit	7,8 bit
Parity bit	fixed to 0, fixed to 1, odd, even, none
Stop bit	1,2 bits

The SC0FM1 to 0 flag of the SC0MD2 register sets the frame mode. Table:11.3.17 shows the UART serial interface frame mode settings. If the SC0CMD flag of the SC0MD1 register is set to "1", and UART communication is selected, the transfer bit count on the SC0LNG2 to 0 flag of the SC0MD0 register is no longer valid.

Table:11.3.17 UART Serial Interface Frame Mode

SC0MD2 register		Frame mode
SC0FM1	SC0FM0	
0	0	Character bit 7 bits + Stop bit 1 bit
0	1	Character bit 7 bits + Stop bit 2 bits
1	0	Character bit 8 bits + Stop bit 1 bit
1	1	Character bit 8 bits + Stop bit 2 bits

Parity bit is to detect wrong bits with transmission / reception data. Table:11.3.18 shows types of parity bit. The SC0NPE, SC0PM1 to 0 flag of the SC0MD2 register set parity bit.

Table:11.3.18 Parity Bit of UART Serial Interface

SC0MD2			Parity bit	Setup
SC0NPE	SC0PM1	SC0PM0		
0	0	0	Fixed to 0	Set parity bit to "0"
0	0	1	Fixed to 1	Set parity bit to "1"
0	1	0	Odd parity	Control that the total of "1" of parity bit and character bit should be odd
0	1	1	Even parity	Control that the total of "1" of parity bit and character bit should be even
1	-	-	None	Do not add parity bit

■ Break Status Transmission Control Setup

The SC0BRKE flag of the SC0MD2 register generates the brake status. If SC0BRKE is set to "1" to select the brake transmission, all bits from start bits to stop bits transfer "0".

■ Reception Error

At reception, there are 3 types of error; overrun error, parity error and framing error. Reception error can be determined by the SC0ORE, SC0PEK, SC0FEF flag of the SC0STR register. Even one of those errors is detected, the SC0ERE flag of the SC0STR register is set to "1". Among reception error flags, the SC0PEK flag and the SC0FEF flag are renewed when the reception complete interrupt SC0RIRQ is generated. The SC0ORE flag is cleared at the same time of next communication complete interrupt SC0RIRQ generation after the data of the RXBUF0 is read out. The decision of the received error flag should be operated before the next communication is finished. Those error flag has no effect on communication operation. Table:11.3.19 shows the list of reception error source.

Table:11.3.19 Reception Error Source of UART Serial Interface

Flag	Error		
SC0ORE	Overrun error	Next data is received before reading the reception buffer	
SC0PEK	Parity error	at fixed to 0	when parity bit is "1"
		at fixed to 1	When parity bit is "0"
		Odd parity	The total of "1" of parity bit and character bit is even
		Even parity	The total of "1" of parity bit and character bit is odd
SC0FEF	Framing error	Stop bit is not detected	

■ Judgement of Break Status Reception

Reception at break status can be judge. If all received data from start bit and stop bit is "0", the SC0BRKF flag of the SC0MD2 register is set and determines the break status. The SC0BRKF flag is set when the reception complete interrupt SC0RIRQ is generated.

■ Continuous Communication

This serial interface has continuous communication function. When data is set to the transmission data buffer TXBUF0 during communication, the transmission buffer empty flag SC0TEMP is automatically set to communicate continuously. This does not generate any blank in communication. Set data to TXBUF between previous data setup and generation of the communication complete interrupt SC0TIRQ.

■ Clock Setup

Transfer clock is not necessary for UART communication itself, but necessary for setup of data transmission / reception timing in the serial interface.

Select the timer to be used as a baud rate timer by the SC0MD3 register.

■ Reception Bit Count and First Transfer Bit

At reception, when the transfer bit count is 7 bits, the data storing method to the received data buffer RXBUF0 is different depending on the first transfer bit selection. At MSB first, data is stored to the upper bits of RXBUF0. When the transfer bit count is 7 bits, as shown on Figure:11.3.18, data "G" to "A" are stored to bp7 to bp1 of RXBUF0 in this order. At LSB first, data are stored to the lower bits of RXBUF0. When the transfer bit count is 7 bits, as shown on Figure:11.3.19, data "A" to "G" are stored to bp0 to bp6 of RXBUF0 in this order.

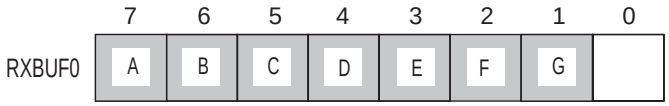


Figure:11.3.18 Reception Bit Count and First Transfer Bit (starting with MSB)

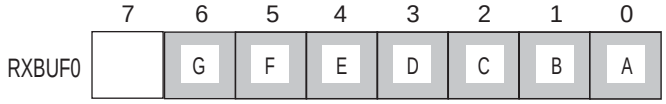


Figure:11.3.19 Transfer Bit Count and First Transfer Bit (starting with LSB)

The following items are the same as clock synchronous serial.

- First Transfer Bit Setup

Refer to:XI-15

- Transmission Data Buffer

Refer to:XI-15

- Received Data Buffer

Refer to:XI15

- Transfer Bit Count and First Transfer Bit

Refer to:XI-17

- Transmission Buffer Empty Flag

Refer to:XI-20

- Emergency Reset

Refer to:XI-21

■ Transmission Timing

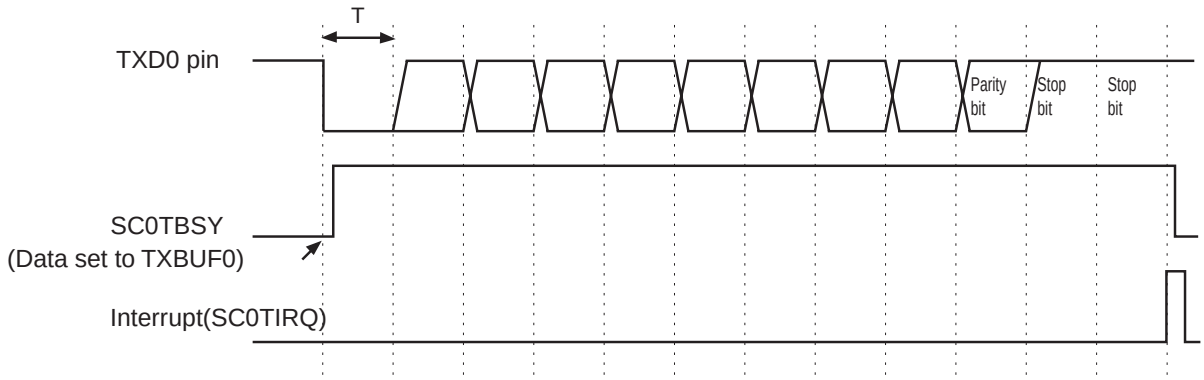


Figure:11.3.20 Transmission Timing (parity bit is enabled)

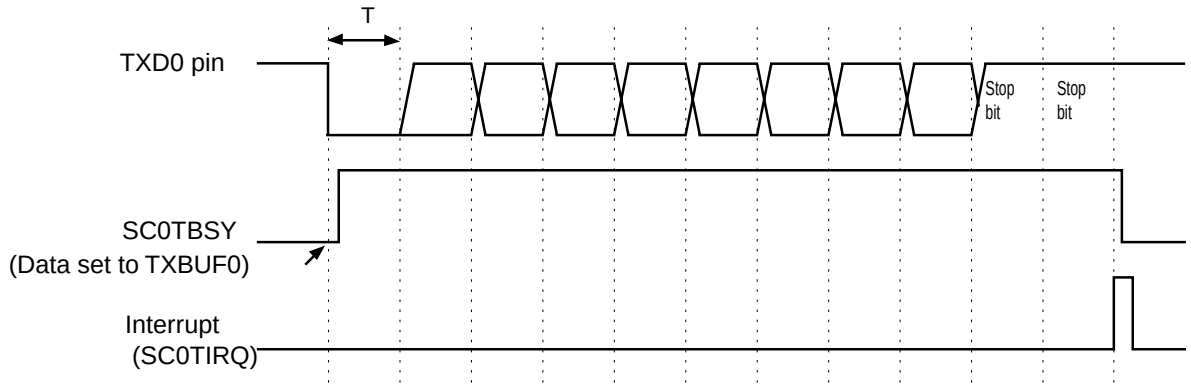


Figure:11.3.21 Transmission Timing (parity bit is disabled)

■ Reception Timing

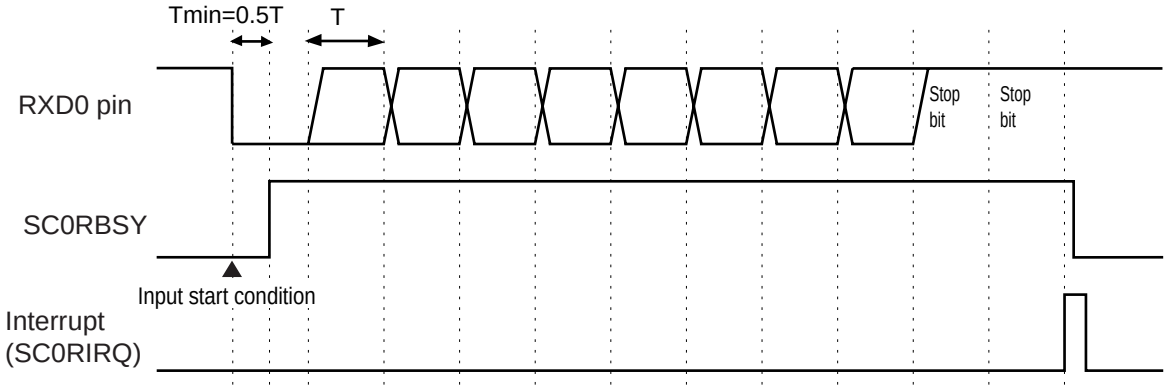


Figure:11.3.22 Reception Timing (parity bit is enabled)

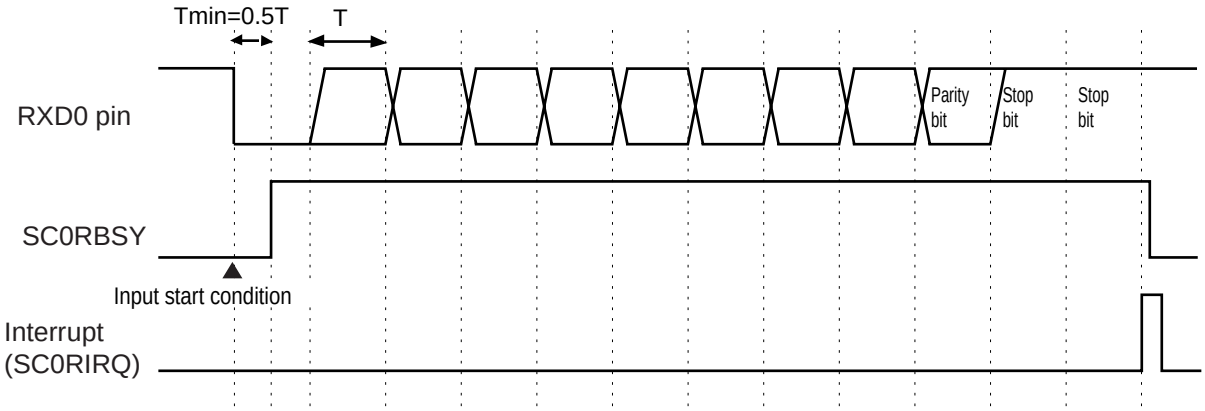


Figure:11.3.23 Reception Timing (parity bit is disabled)

■ Transfer Speed Setup

Baud rate timer (timer 1 , timer 2) can set any transfer rate. Table:11.3.20 shows the setup example of the transfer speed.

Table:11.3.20 UART Serial Interface Transfer Speed

Setup	Register	Page
Serial 0 clock source (timer 1 , timer 2)	SC0MD3	XI-10
Clock source dividing	SC0MD1	XI-10
Timer 1 clock source	TM1MD	V-15
Timer 1 compare register	TM1OC	V-12
Timer 2 clock source	TM2MD	V-16
Timer 2 compare register	TM2OC	V-12

Timer compare register is set as follows;

baud rate = 1 / (overflow cycle × 2 × internal clock dividing)

overflow cycle = (set value of compare register + 1) × timer clock cycle

therefore,

set value of compare register = timer clock frequency / (baud rate × 2 × internal clock dividing) - 1

For example, if baud rate should be 300 bps at timer clock source fs/4 (fosc = 8 MHz, fs = fosc/2) when the internal clock dividing is set to 8, set value should be as follows:

Set value of compare register = $(8 \times 10^6 / 2 / 4) / (300 \times 2 \times 8) - 1$

= 207

= 0xCF

Timer clock source and the set value of timer compare register at the standard rate are shown in the following page.

Transfer rate should not exceed 300 kbps.

Table:11.3.21 Setup Value of Serial Interface Transfer Speed 1 : When Setting UART Inter Clock to "Divided by 8" (decimal)

		Transfer speed (bit/s)									
fosc (MHz)	Clock source (Timer)	300		960		1200		2400		4800	
		Set value	Calculated value	Set value	Calculated value	Set value	Calculated value	Set value	Calculated value	Set value	Calculated value
2.00	fosc	-	-	129	962	103	1202	51	2404	25	4808
	fosc/4	103	300	-	-	25	1202	12	2404	-	-
	fosc/16	25	300	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/32	12	300	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/64	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	103	300	-	-	25	1202	12	2404	-	-
	fs/4	51	300	-	-	12	1202	-	-	-	-
4.00	fosc	-	-	-	-	207	1202	103	2404	51	4808
	fosc/4	207	300	64	962	51	1202	25	2404	12	4808
	fosc/16	51	300	-	-	12	1202	-	-	-	-
	fosc/32	25	300	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/64	12	300	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	207	300	64	962	51	1202	25	2404	12	4808
	fs/4	104	297	-	-	25	1202	12	2404	-	-
4.19	fosc	-	-	-	-	217	1201	108	2403	54	4761
	fosc/4	217	300	67	963	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/16	-	-	16	963	-	-	6	2338	-	-
	fosc/32	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/64	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	217	300	67	963	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/4	108	300	33	963	-	-	13	2338	-	-
8.00	fosc	-	-	-	-	-	-	207	2404	103	4808
	fosc/4	-	-	129	962	103	1202	51	2404	25	4808
	fosc/16	103	300	-	-	25	1202	12	2404	-	-
	fosc/32	51	300	-	-	12	1202	-	-	-	-
	fosc/64	25	300	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	-	-	129	962	103	1202	51	2404	25	4808
	fs/4	207	300	64	962	51	1202	25	2404	12	4808
8.38	fosc	-	-	-	-	-	-	217	2403	108	4805
	fosc/4	-	-	135	963	108	1201	-	-	-	-
	fosc/16	108	300	33	963	-	-	13	2338	-	-
	fosc/32	-	-	16	963	-	-	6	2338	-	-
	fosc/64	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	-	-	135	963	108	1201	-	-	-	-
	fs/4	217	300	67	963	-	-	-	-	-	-
10.00	fosc	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	129	4808
	fosc/4	-	-	162	959	129	1202	64	2404	-	-
	fosc/16	129	300	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/32	64	300	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/64	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	-	-	162	959	129	1202	64	2404	-	-
	fs/4	-	-	-	-	64	1202	-	-	-	-

Table:11.3.22 Setup Value of Serial Interface Transfer Speed 2 : When Setting UART Inter Clock to "Divided by 8" (decimal)

		Transfer speed (bit/s)									
fosc (MHz)	Clock source (Timer)	300		960		1200		2400		4800	
		Set value	Calculated value	Set value	Calculated value	Set value	Calculated value	Set value	Calculated value	Set value	Calculated value
2.00	fosc	12	9615	-	-	-	-	3	31250	-	-
	fosc/4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/16	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/32	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/64	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
4.00	fosc	25	9615	12	19231	-	-	7	31250	-	-
	fosc/4	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	31250	-	-
	fosc/16	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/32	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/64	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	31250	-	-
	fs/4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
4.19	fosc	26	9699	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/16	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/32	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/64	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
8.00	fosc	51	9615	25	19231	-	-	15	31250	12	38462
	fosc/4	12	9615	-	-	-	-	3	31250	-	-
	fosc/16	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/32	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/64	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	12	9615	-	-	-	-	3	31250	-	-
	fs/4	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	31250	-	-
8.38	fosc	54	9523	26	19398	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/16	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/32	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/64	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
10.00	fosc	64	9615	-	-	-	-	-	31250	-	-
	fosc/4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	31250	-	-
	fosc/16	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/32	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/64	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	31250	-	-
	fs/4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Table:11.3.23 Setup Value of Serial Interface Transfer Speed 1 : When Setting UART Inter Clock to "Divided by 16" (decimal)

		Transfer speed (bit/s)									
fosc (MHz)	Clock source (Timer)	300		960		1200		2400		4800	
		Set value	Calculated value	Set value	Calculated value	Set value	Calculated value	Set value	Calculated value	Set value	Calculated value
2.00	fosc	-	-	64	962	51	1202	25	2404	12	4808
	fosc/4	51	300	-	-	12	1202	-	-	-	-
	fosc/16	12	300	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/32	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/64	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	51	300	-	-	12	1202	-	-	-	-
	fs/4	25	300	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
4.00	fosc	-	-	129	962	103	1202	51	2404	25	4808
	fosc/4	103	300	-	-	25	1202	12	2404	-	-
	fosc/16	25	300	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/32	12	300	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/64	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	103	300	-	-	25	1202	12	2404	-	-
	fs/4	51	300	-	-	12	1202	-	-	-	-
4.19	fosc	-	-	135	963	108	1201	54	2381	-	-
	fosc/4	108	300	33	963	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/16	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/32	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/64	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	108	300	33	963	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/4	54	298	16	963	-	-	-	-	-	-
8.00	fosc	-	-	-	-	207	1202	103	2404	51	4808
	fosc/4	207	300	64	962	51	1202	25	2404	12	4808
	fosc/16	51	300	-	-	12	1202	-	-	-	-
	fosc/32	25	300	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/64	12	300	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	207	300	64	962	51	1202	25	2404	12	4808
	fs/4	103	300	-	-	25	1202	12	2404	-	-
8.38	fosc	-	-	-	-	217	1201	108	2403	54	4761
	fosc/4	217	300	67	963	54	1190	-	-	-	-
	fosc/16	54	298	16	963	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/32	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/64	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	217	300	67	963	54	1190	-	-	-	-
	fs/4	108	300	33	963	-	-	-	-	-	-
10.00	fosc	-	-	-	-	-	-	129	2404	64	4808
	fosc/4	-	-	80	965	64	1202	-	-	-	-
	fosc/16	64	300	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/32	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/64	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	-	-	80	965	64	1202	-	-	-	-
	fs/4	129	300	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Table:11.3.24 Setup Value of Serial Interface Transfer Speed 2 : When Setting UART Inter Clock to "Divided by 16" (decimal)

		Transfer speed (bit/s)									
fosc (MHz)	Clock source (Timer)	300		960		1200		2400		4800	
		Set value	Calculated value	Set value	Calculated value	Set value	Calculated value	Set value	Calculated value	Set value	Calculated value
2.00	fosc	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	31250	-	-
	fosc/4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/16	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/32	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/64	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
4.00	fosc	12	9615	-	-	-	-	3	31250	-	-
	fosc/4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/16	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/32	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/64	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
4.19	fosc	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/16	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/32	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/64	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
8.00	fosc	25	9615	12	19231	-	-	7	31250	-	-
	fosc/4	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	31250	-	-
	fosc/16	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/32	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/64	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	31250	-	-
	fs/4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
8.38	fosc	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/16	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/32	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/64	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
10.00	fosc	-	-	-	-	-	-	9	31250	-	-
	fosc/4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/16	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/32	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/64	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

■ Pin Setup (with 1,2 channels, at transmission)

Table:11.3.25 shows the pins setup for UART serial interface transmission. The pins setup is common to the TXD0 pin, RXD0 pin, regardless of whether the pins are independent / connected.

Table:11.3.25 UART Serial Interface Pin Setup (with 1,2 channels, at transmission)

Setup item	Data output pin	Data input pin
	TXD0 pin	RXD0 pin
Port pin	PA0/P75	PA1/P76
Port pin setup	Select pin (A, B)	
	SCSEL (SC0SL)	
Serial data input selection	RXD0	
	SC0MD1(SC0IOM)	
Function	Serial data output	"1" output
	SC0MD1(SC0SBOS)	SC0MD1(SC0SBIS)
Style	Push-pull/ N-ch open-drain	-
	PAODC(PAODC0)/P7ODC(P7ODC5)	
I/O	Output mode	-
	PADIR(PADIR0)/P7DIR(P7DIR5)	
Pull-up setup	Added / not added	-
	PAPLU(PAPLU0)/P7PLU(P7PLU5)	

■ Pin Setup (with 2 channels, at reception)

Table:11.3.26 shows the pins setup for UART serial interface reception with 2 channels (TXD0 pin, RXD0pin).

Table:11.3.26 UART Serial Interface Pin Setup (with 2 channels, at reception)

Setup item	Data output pin	Data input pin
	TXD0 pin	RXD0 pin
Port pin	PA0/P75	PA1/P76
Port pin setup	Select pin (A, B)	
	SCSEL (SC0SL)	
Serial data input selection	RXD0	
	SC0MD1(SC0IOM)	
Function	Port	Serial data input
	SC0MD1(SC0SBOS)	SC0MD1(SC0SBIS)
Style	-	-
I/O	-	Input mode
	-	PADIR(PADIR1)/ P7DIR(P7DIR6)
Pull-up setup	-	-

■ Pin Setup (with 1 channel, at reception)

Table:11.3.27 shows the pin setup for UART serial interface reception with 1 channel (TXD0 pin). The RXD0 pin can be used as a port as it is not used.

Table:11.3.27 UART Serial Interface Pin Setup (with 1 channel, at reception)

Setup item	Data output pin	Data input pin
	TXD0 pin	RXD0 pin
Port pin	PA0/P75	PA1/P76
Port pin setup	Select pin (A, B)	
	SCSEL (SC0SL)	
Serial data input selection	TXD0	
	SC0MD1(SC0IOM)	
Function	Port	Serial data input
	SC0MD1(SC0SBOS)	SC0MD1(SC0SBIS)
Style	-	-
I/O	Input mode	-
	PADIR(PADIR0)/P7DIR(P7DIR5)	-
Pull-up setup	-	-

■ Pin Setup (with 2 channels, at transmission / reception)

Table:11.3.28 shows the pin setup for UART serial interface transmission / reception with 2 channels (TXD0 pin, RXD0 pin).

Table:11.3.28 UART Serial Interface Pin Setup (with 2 channels, at transmission / reception)

Setup item	Data output pin	Data input pin
	TXD0 pin	RXD0 pin
Port pin	PA0/P75	PA1/P76
Port pin setup	Select pin (A, B)	
	SCSEL (SC0SL)	
Serial data input selection	RXD0	
	SC0MD1(SC0IOM)	
Function	Serial data output	Serial data input
	SC0MD1(SC0SBOS)	SC0MD1(SC0SBIS)
Style	Push-pull/ N-ch open-drain	-
	PAODC(PAODC0)/P7ODC(P7ODC5)	
I/O	Output mode	Input mode
	PADIR(PADIR0)/P7DIR(P7DIR5)	PADIR(PADIR1)/ P7DIR(P7DIR6)
Pull-up setup	Added / not added	-
	PAPLU(PAPLU0)/P7PLU(P7PLU5)	

11.3.4 Setup Example

■ Transmission / Reception Setup

The setup example for UART transmission / reception with serial 0 is shown. Table:11.3.29 shows the condition at transmission / reception.

Table:11.3.29 UART Interface Transmission Reception Setup

Setup item	SEt to
TXD0/RXD0 pin	Independent (with 2 channels)
Frame mode specification	8 bits + 2 stop bits
First transfer bit	MSB
Clock source	Timer 1
Clock source dividing	Divided by 8
Pin	A (port A)
TXD0/RXD0 pin type	N-ch open-drain
Pull-up resistor of TXD0 pin	Added
Parity bit add/check	"0" added/check
Serial 0 transmission complete interrupt	Enable
Serial 0 reception complete interrupt	Enable

An example setup procedure, with a description of each step is shown below.

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Set the baud rate timer	(1) Set the baud rate timer by the TM1MD register, the TM1OC register. Set the TM1EN flag to "1" to start timer 1. [Chapter 5 5.8 Serial Transfer Clock Output Operation]
(2) Select the clock source SC0MD3(0x03F94) bp2-0 :SC0PSC2-0 =110	(2) Set the bp2 to 0 flag of the SC0MD3 register to "110" to select Timer 1 output as a clock source.
(3) Select the pin SCSEL(0x03F90) bp0 :SC0SL =0	(3) Set the SC0SL flag of the SCSEL register to “0” to select A (port A) as I/O pin.
(4) Control the pin style PAODC(0x03F2D) bp0:PAODC0=1 PAPLU(0x03F4A) bp0:PAPLU0=1	(4) Set the PAODC0 flag of the PAODC register to "1" to select Nch open-drain. Set the PAPLU0 flag of the PAPLU register to "1" to enable the pull-up resistor.

Setup Procedure	Description
(5) Control the pin direction PADIR(0x03F3A) bp0 :PADIR0 =1 bp1 :PADIR1 =0	(5) Set the PADIR0 flag of the Port A pin direction control register (PADIR) to "1" and the PADIR1 flag to "0" to set PA0 to the output mode, PA1 to the input mode.
(6) Set the SC0MD0 register Select the start condition SC0MD0(0x03F91) bp3 :SC0STE =1	(6) Set the SC0STE flag of the SC0MD0 register to "1" to enable start condition.
Select the first bit to be transferred SC0MD0(0x03F91) bp4 :SC0DIR =0	Set the SC0DIR flag of the SC0MD0 register to "0" to select MSB as first transfer bit.
(7) Set the SC0MD2 register Control the output data SC0MD2(0x03F93) bp0 :SC0BRKE =0	(7) Set the SC0BRKE flag of the SC0MD2 register to "0" to select the serial data transmission.
Select the added parity bit SC0MD2(0x03F93) bp3 :SC0NPE =0 bp5-4 :SC0PM1-0 =00	Set the SC0PM1 to 0 flag of the SC0MD2 register to "00" to select 0 parity, and set the SC0NPE flag to "0" to enable add parity bit.
Specify the flame mode SC0MD2(0x03F93) bp7-6 :SC0FM1-0 =11	Set the SC0FM1 to 0 flag of the SC0MD2 register to "11" to select 8 bits + 2 stop bits for the flame mode.
(8) Set the SC0MD1 register Select the communication type SC0MD1(0x03F92) bp0 :SC0CMD =1	(8) Set the SC0CMD flag of the SC0MD1 register to "1" to select duplex UART.
Select the clock frequency SC0MD1(0x03F92) bp3 :SC0CKM =1 bp2 :SC0MST =1 bp1 :SC0DIV =0	Set the SC0CKM flag of the SC0MD1 register to "1" to select "divided" at source clock. Set the SC0DIV flag to “0” to select divided by 8 as the source clock. The SC0MST flag should always be set to "1" to select clock master.
Control the pin function SC0MD1(0x03F92) bp4 :SC0SBOS =1 bp5 :SC0SBIS =1 bp7 :SC0IOM =0	Set the SC0SBOS, SC0SBIS flag of the SC0MD1 register to "1" to set the RXD0 pin to serial data output and the RXD0 pin to serial data input.
(9) Enable the interrupt SC0RICR(0x03FEF) bp1 :SC0RIE =1 SC0TICR(0x03FF0) bp1 :SC0TIE =1	(9) Set the SC0RIE flag of the SC0RICR register to "1", and SC0TIE flag of the SC0TICR register to "1" to enable the interrupt request. If the interrupt request is already set, clear it.

Setup Procedure	Description
(10) Start the serial transmission The transmission → TXBUF0(0x03F97) The reception data → input to RXD0	(10) When the transmission data is set to the serial transmission data buffer (TXBUF0), the transmission is started. When the transmission is finished, the serial 0 transmission interrupt (SC0TIRQ) is generated. Also, after the received data is stored to the RXBUF0, the serial 0 reception interrupt (SC0RIRQ) is generated.

Note: Procedures (6), (7), (8) can be set at the same time.

When the TXD0 / RXD0 pin are connected for communication with 1 channel, serial data is input/output from the TXD0 pin. Input/output can be switched by the port direction control register PADIR. At reception, set SC0SBIOS of the SC0MD1 register to "1" to select serial data input. The RXD0 pin can be used as a general port.

This serial interface contains emergency reset function. If communication should be stopped by force, set SC0SBOS and SC0SBIS of the SC0MD1 register to "0".

Each flag should be set as the setup procedure in order. Activation of communication should be operated after all control registers (refer to Table:11.2.1 TXBUF0, RXBUF0) are set.

Timer 1 and timer 2 can be used as a baud rate timer. Refer to Chapter 5 5.8 Serial Transfer Clock Output Operation.

Chapter 12 Serial interface 1

12

12.1 Overview

This LSI contains a serial interface 1 that can be used for both communication types of clock synchronous and UART (duplex).

Also the used pins can be switched to A (port 1: P15/TM0OB/SBO1A/TXD1A/SEG1, P16/TM2IO/SBI1A/RXD1A/SEG9, P17/TM2OB/SBT1A/SEG8) or to B (Port A:PA5/AN5/SBO1B/TXD1B, PA6/AN6/SBT1B, PA4/AN4/SBI1B/RXD1B/VPP).

On this text, if there are not much difference between port A and port B on the operation, port A and B are omitted.

Operation with the used pin B is available for 48 pin package product only. For 44 pin package, select A as the used pin.

12.1.1 Functions

Table:12.1.1 shows functions of serial interface 1.

Table:12.1.1 Serial Interface 1 functions

Communication style	Clock synchronous	UART (duplex)
Interrupt	SC1TIRQ	SC1TIRQ(on transmission completion) SC1RIRQ(on reception completion)
Used pins	SBO1,SBI1,SBT1	TXD1,RXD1
3 channels type	O	-
2 channels type	O(SBO1,SBT1)	O
1 channel type	-	TXD1
Specification of transfer bit count/ Frame selection	1 to 8 bits	7 bit +1STOP 7 bit +2STOP 8 bit +1STOP 8 bit +2STOP
Selection of parity bit	-	O
Parity bit control	-	0 parity 1 parity odd parity even parity
Selection of start condition	O	Only "enable start condition" is available
Specification of the first transfer bit	O	O
Specification of input edge/ output edge	O	-

SBO1 output control after final data is transferred	H/L/final data hold	-
Function in STANDBY mode	Only slave reception is available	-
Internal clock dividing value	Not divided Divided by 8 Divided by 16	Divided by 8 Divided by 16
Clock source	fosc/2 fosc/4 fosc/16 fosc/64 fs/2 fs/4 External clock Timer 1 output Timer 2 output	fosc/2 fosc/4 fosc/16 fosc/64 fs/2 fs/4 Timer 1 output Timer 2 output
Maximum transfer rate	5.0 MHz	300 kbps
fosc:Machine clock (High speed oscillation) fs:System clock		

12.1.2 Block Diagram

■ Serial interface 1 Block Diagram

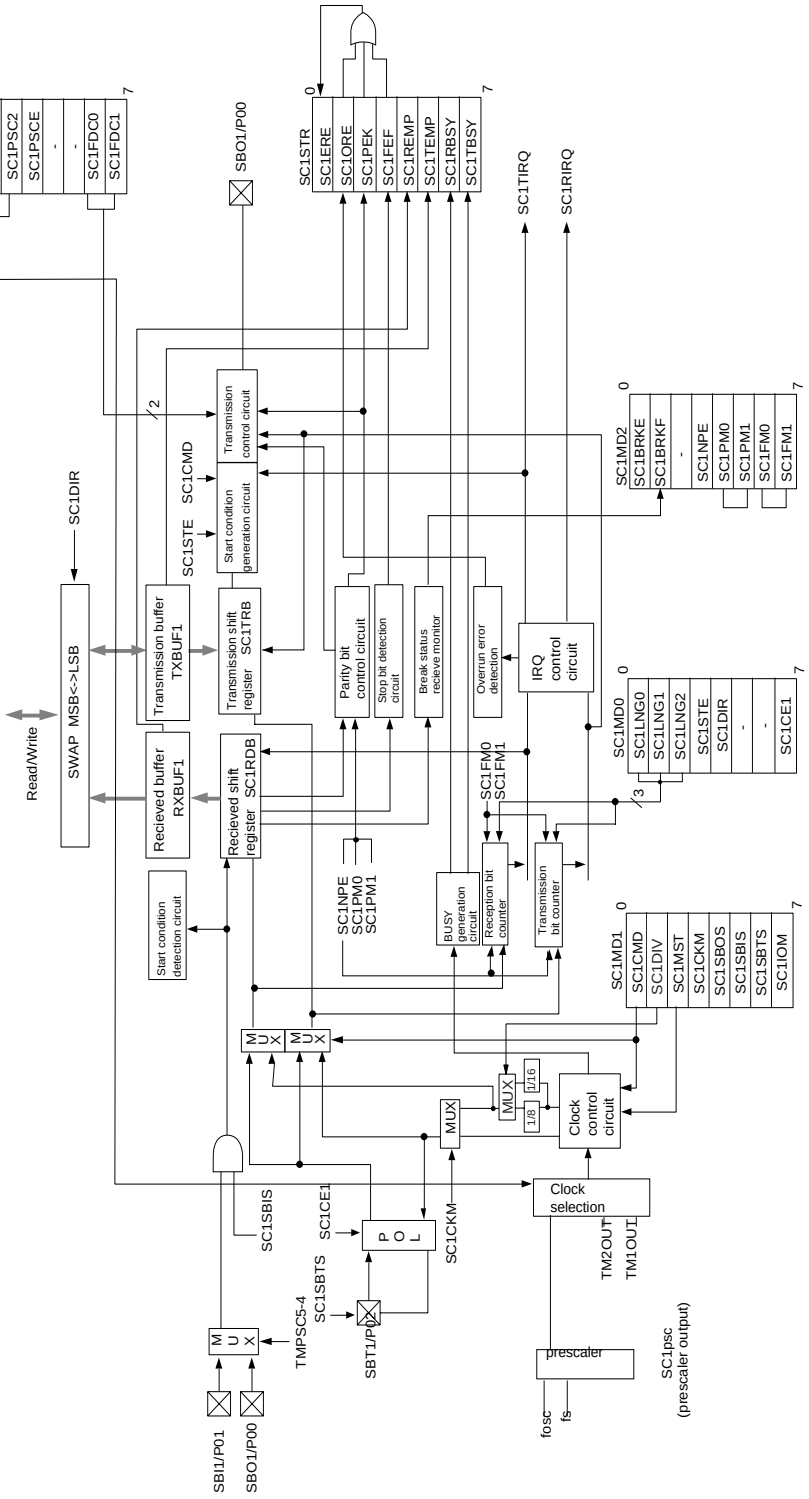


Figure:12.1.1 Serial interface 1 Block Diagram

12.2 Control Registers

12.2.1 Registers

Table:12.2.1 shows registers to control serial interface 1.

Table:12.2.1 Serial interface 1 Control Registers

Register	Address	R/W	Function	Page
SC1MD0	0x03F99	R/W	Serial interface 1 mode register 0	XII-7
SC1MD1	0x03F9A	R/W	Serial interface 1 mode register 1	XII-8
SC1MD2	0x03F9B	R/W	Serial interface 1 mode register 2	XII-9
SC1MD3	0x03F9C	R/W	Serial interface 1 mode register 3	XII-10
SC1STR	0x03F9D	R	Serial interface 1 status register	XII-11
RXBUF1	0x03F9E	R	Serial interface 1 received data buffer	XII-6
TXBUF1	0x03F9F	R/W	Serial interface 1 transmission data buffer	XII-6
SCSEL	0x03F90	R/W	Serial interface I/O pins switching control register	XI- 12
P1ODC	0x03F1B	R/W	Port 1 Nch open drain control register	IV- 11
P1DIR	0x03F31	R/W	Port 1 direction control register	IV- 8
P1PLUD	0x03F41	R/W	Port 1 pull-up/pull-down control register	IV- 9
SC1RICR	0x03FF1	R/W	Serial 1 UART reception interrupt control register	III- 34
SC1TICR	0x03FF2	R/W	Serial 1 UART transmission interrupt control register	III- 35

R/W:Readable/ Writable

R:Readable only

12.2.2 Data Buffer Registers

Serial interface 1 has one each of 8-bit data buffer register for transmission, and for reception.

■ Serial interface 1 Reception Data Buffer (RXBUF1:0x03F9E)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	RXBUF17	RXBUF16	RXBUF15	RXBUF14	RXBUF13	RXBUF12	RXBUF11	RXBUF10
Reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

■ Serial interface 1 Transmission Data Buffer (TXBUF1:0x03F9F)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TXBUF17	TXBUF16	TXBUF15	TXBUF14	TXBUF13	TXBUF12	TXBUF11	TXBUF10
Reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

12.2.3 Mode Registers

■ Serial interface 1 Mode Register 0 (SC1MD0:0x03F99)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	SC1CE1	-	-	SC1DIR	SC1STE	SC1LNG2	SC1LNG1	SC1LNG0
Reset	0	-	-	0	0	1	1	1
Access	R/W	-	-	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7	SC1CE1	Transmission data output edge 0:falling 1:rising Reception data input edge 0:rising 1:falling
6-5	-	-
4	SC1DIR	First bit to be transferred 0:MSB first 1:LSB first
3	SC1STE	Start condition selection 0:Disabled 1:Enabled
2-0	SC1LNG2 SC1LNG1 SC1LNG0	Transfer bit 000:1bit 001:2bit 010:3bit 011:4bit 100:5bit 101:6bit 110:7bit 111:8bit

■ Serial interface 1 Mode Register 1(SC1MD1:0x03F9A)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	SC1IOM	SC1SBTS	SC1SBIS	SC1SBOS	SC1CKM	SC1MST	SC1DIV	SC1CMD
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	-	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7	SC1IOM	Serial data input selection 0:Data input from SBI1 (RXD1) 1:Data input from SBO1 (TXD1)
6	SC1SBTS	SBT1 pin function selection 0:Port 1:Transfer clock I/O
5	SC1SBIS	Serial input control selection 0:Input "1" 1:Input serial
4	SC1SBOS	SBO1(TXD1) pin function 0:Port 1:Output serial data
3	SC1CKM	Transfer clock dividing selection 0:Not divided 1:Divided by 8
2	SC1MST	Clock master/ slave selection 0:Clock slave 1:Clock master
1	SC1DIV	Transfer clock dividing selection 0:Devided by 8 1:Devided by 16
0	SC1CMD	Synchronous serial/ duplex UART selection 0:Synchronous serial 1:Duplex UART

■ Serial interface 1 Mode Register 2 (SC1MD2:0x03F9B)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	SC1FM1	SC1FM0	SC1PM1	SC1PM0	SC1NPE	-	SC1BRKF	SC1BRKE
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	-	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	-	R	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7-6	SC1FM1 SC1FM0	Frame mode specification 00:7 data bit + 1 stop bit 01:7 data bit + 2 stop bit 10:8 data bit + 1 stop bit 11:8 data bit + 2 stop bit
5-4	SC1PM1 SC1PM0	Added bit specification Transmission Reception 00:Add "0" Check for 0 01:Add "1" Check for 1 10:Add odd parity Check for odd parity 11:Add even parity Check for even parity
3	SC1NPE	Parity enable 0:Enable parity bit 1:Disable parity bit
2	-	-
1	SC1BRKF	Break status receive monitor 0:Data reception 1:Break reception
0	SC1BRKE	Break status transmit control 0:Data transmission 1:Break transmission

■ Serial interface 1 Mode Register 3 (SC1MD3:0x03F9C)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	SC1FDC1	SC1FDC0	-	-	SC1PSCE	SC1PSC2	SC1PSC1	SC1PSC0
Reset	0	0	-	-	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	-	-	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7-6	SC1FDC1 SC1FDC0	Output selection after SBO1 final data transmission 00:Fix to "1" (High) output 01:Hold final data 10:Fix to "0" (Low) output 11:Reserved
5-4	-	-
3	SC1PSCE	Prescaler count control 0:Disable the count 1:Enable the count
2-0	SC1PSC2 SC1PSC1 SC1PSC0	Selection clock 000:fosc/2 001:fosc/4 010:fosc/16 011:fosc/64 100:fs/2 101:fs/4 110:Timer 1 output 111:Timer 2 output

■ Serial interface 1 Status Register (SC1STR:0x03F9D)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	SC1TBSY	SC1RBSY	SC1TEMP	SC1REMP	SC1FEF	SC1PEK	SC1ORE	SC1ERE
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

bp	Flag	Description
7	SC1TBSY	Serial bus status 0:Other use 1:Serial transmission in progress
6	SC1RBSY	Serial bus status 0:Other use 1:Serial reception in progress
5	SC1TEMP	Transmission buffer empty flag 0:Empty 1:Full
4	SC1REMP	Reception buffer empty flag 0:Empty 1:Full
3	SC1FEF	Framing error detection 0:No error 1:Error
2	SC1PEK	Parity error detection 0:No error 1:Error
1	SC1ORE	Overrun error detection 0:No error 1:Error
0	SC1ERE	Error monitor flag 0:No error 1:Error

■ Serial interface I/O pin switching control Register (SCSEL:0x03F90)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TEMPSC 12	TEMPSC 11	TEMPSC2	TEMPSC1	SC4SL	-	SC1ORE	SC1ERE
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	-	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	-	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7-6	TMPSC12 TMPSC11	Serial 1 used timer 2 output dividing switching X0:Timer 2 output 01:Timer 2 output divided by 2 11:Timer 2 output divided by 8
5-4	TMPSC02 TMPSC01	Serial 0 used timer 2 output dividing switching X0:Timer 2 output 01:Timer 2 output divided by 2 11:Timer 2 output divided by 8
3	SC4SL	Serial 4 I/O pin switching 0:A (P10, P11) 1:B (P76, P77)
2	-	-
1	SC1SL	Serial 1 I/O pin switching 0:A (P15 to P17) 1:B (PA4 to PA6)
0	SC0SL	Serial 0 I/O pin switching 0:A (PA0 to PA2) 1:B (P75 to P77)

12.3 Operation

Serial interface 1 can be used for both clock synchronous and duplex UART.

12.3.1 Clock Synchronous Serial Interface

■ Activation Factor for Communication

Table:12.3.1 shows activation factors for communication. At master communication, the transfer clock is generated by setting data to the transmission data buffer TXBUF1, or by receiving a start condition. Except during communication, the input signal from SBT1 pin is masked to prevent operating errors by noise. This mask can be released automatically by setting a data to TXBUF1 (access to the TXBUF1 register), or enabling a start condition to the data input pin. Therefore, at slave communication, set data to TXBUF1, or input an external clock after a start condition is input.

However, the external clock should be input after 3.5 transfer clock interval past from the data set to TXBUF1. This period is for loading the data from TXBUF1 to the internal shift register.

Table:12.3.1 Synchronous Serial Interface Activation Factor and Cautions

Clock	Communication type	Start condition	Activation source of communication
Master	Transmission	Enabled	Set transmission data (*1)
		Disabled	Set transmission data(*2)
	Reception	Enabled	Input start condition(*3) or Set dummy data(*2)
		Disabled	Set dummy data (*2)
	Transmission/Reception	Enabled	-(*4)
		Disabled	Set transmission data(*2)
Slave	Transmission	Enabled	Input clock after transmission data is set (*5)
		Disabled	Input clock after transmission data is set (*6)
	Reception	Enabled	Input clock after start condition is input (*7) or Input clock after dummy data is set (*6)
		Disabled	Input clock after dummy data is set (*6)
	Transmission/Reception	Enabled	-(*4)
		Disabled	Input clock after transmission data is set (*6)

(*1) After the start condition output, the transfer clock is output after 1 transfer clock interval.

(*2) After setting transmission data/dummy data, the transfer clock should be output after 3.5 transfer clock interval at the maximum. The system configuratioin is required so that the transmission data/ dummy data are written after the master receives the information of slave data load completion.

(*3) After the start condition input, output the transfer clock after 2.5 transfer clock interval at the maximum. When receiving data continuously, the system configuration is required to notify the master of the readout completion. Without the notification, the data before readout may be overwritten.

(*4) When the start condition is set to "enable", transmission and reception should not be excuted at the same time.

(*5) After setting the transmission data, output the start condition and wait until the master excutes the clock input. At the clock input, 1 or more transfer clock interval is required after the start condition output.

(*6) At the clock input, 3.5 or more transfer clock interval is required after setting transmission data/ dummy data. The system configuration is required to notify the master of the data load completion.

(*7) At the clock input, 0.5 or more transfer clock interval is required after the start condition input. When receiving data continuously, the system configuration is required to notify the master of the readout completion. Without the notification, the data before readout may be overwritten.

■ Transfer Bit Setup

The transfer bit count is selected from 1 to 8 bits. Set the transfer bit count by the SC1LNG 2 to 0 flag of the SC1MD0 register (at reset:111). The SC1LNG2 to 0 flag holds the former set value until it is set again.

Except during communication, SBT1 pin is masked to prevent errors by noise. At slave communication, set data to TXBUF1 or input a clock to SBT1 pin after a start condition is input.

To communicate properly, more than 2.5 transfer clock interval after the data set to TXBUF1 is required to input the external clock.

■ Start Condition Setup

The SC1STE flag of the SC1MD0 register sets whether a start condition is enabled or disabled.

The start condition is recognized when SC1CE1 flag of SC1MD0 is set to "0" and a clock line (SBT1 pin) is "H", data line (SBI1 pin with 3 lines or SBO1 pin with 2 lines) is changed from "H" to "L". Also, it is recognized when SC1CE1 flag is set to "1" and a clock line (SBT1 pin) is "L", data line (SBI1 pin with 3 lines or SBO1 pin with 2 lines) is changed from "H" to "L".

Both the SC1SBOS flag and the SC1SBIS flag of the SC1MD1 register should be set to "0", before the start condition setup is changed.

When transmission and reception are executed at the same time, set the start condition to "disable" to prevent abnormal operation.

■ First Transfer Bit Setup

The SC1DIR flag of the SC1MD0 register can set the transfer bit. MSB first or LSB first can be selected.

■ Transmission Data Buffer

The transfer data buffer TXBUF1 is the spare buffer which stores data to be loaded to internal shift register. Set the data to be transferred to transfer data buffer TXBUF1, and the data is automatically loaded to internal shift register. The data loading takes more than 3 transfer clocks cycles. Data setting to TXBUF1 again during data loading may not be operated properly. You can determine whether or not data loading is in progress by monitoring transfer buffer empty flag SC1TEMP of the SC1STR. SC1TEMP flag is set to "1"when data is set to TXBUF1 and cleared to "0" when data loading ends.

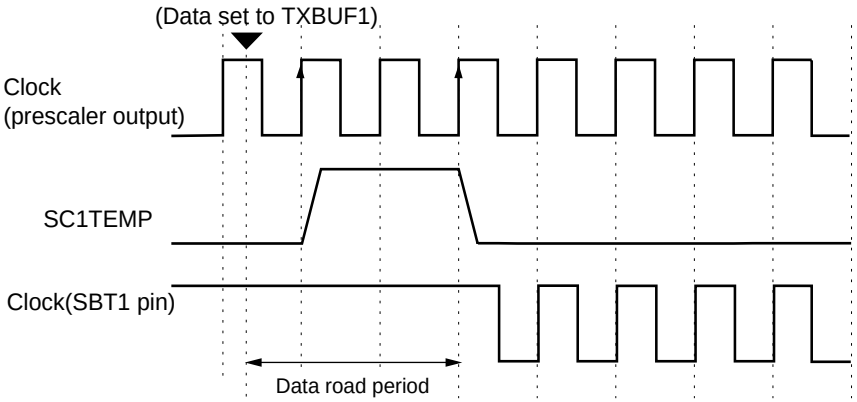


Figure:12.3.1 Transmission Data Buffer

■ Reception Date Buffer

The reception data buffer RXBUF1 is the spare buffer that pushed the received data in the internal shift register. After the communication complete interrupt SC1TIRQ is generated, all data stored in the internal shift register is stored to the received data buffer RXBUF1 automatically. RXBUF1 can store data up to 1 byte. RXBUF1 is rewritten every time communication is completed. Data of RXBUF1 should be read out before the next reception is completed. The received data buffer empty flag SC1REMP is set to "1" at the same time SC1TIRQ is generated. SC1REMP is cleared to "0" after RXBUF1 is read out.

To communicate properly, the external clock should be input after 3.5 transfer clock interval past from the data set to TXBUF1.

When the start condition is set to "enable" in the clock synchronous communication, transmission and reception should not be executed at the same time to prevent abnormal operation.

If the start condition is input to restart during communication, the transmission data is not valid. Set the transmission data to TXBUF1 again to operate the transmission again.

RXBUF1 is rewritten every time communication is completed. At continuous communication, data of RXBUF1 should be read out before the next reception is completed.

■ Transfer Bit Count and First Transfer Bit

At transmission, when the transfer bit count is 1 bit to 7bits, the data storing method to the transmission data buffer TXBUF1 is different depending on the first transfer bit selection. At MSB first, use the upper bits of TXBUF1 for storing. When the transfer bit count is 6 bits, as shown on Figure:12.3.2, if data "A" to "F" are stored to bp2 to bp7 of TXBUF1, the transmission is operated from "F" to "A". At LSB first, use the lower bits of TXBUF1 for storing. When the transfer bit count is 6 bits, as shown on Figure:12.3.3, if data "A" to "F" are stored to bp0 to bp5 of TXBUF1, the transmission is operated from "A" to "F".

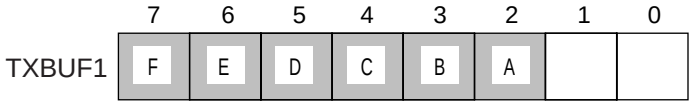


Figure:12.3.2 Transmission Bit Count and First Transfer Bit (starting with MSB)

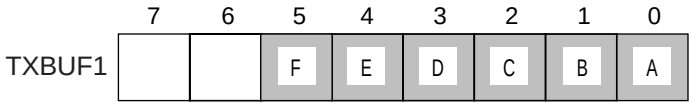


Figure:12.3.3 Transmission Bit Count and First Transfer Bit (starting with LSB)

■ Reception Bit Count and First Transfer Bit

At reception, when the transfer bit count is 1 bit to 7 bits, the data storing method to the received data buffer RXBUF1 is different depending on the first transfer bit. At MSB first, data is stored to the lower bits of RXBUF1. When the transfer bit count is 6 bits, as shown on figure Figure:12.3.5, if data "A" to "F" are stored to bp0 to bp5 of RXBUF1, the transmission is operated from "F" to "A". At LSB first, data is stored to the upper bits of RXBUF1. When there the transfer bit count is 6 bits, as shown on Figure:12.3.4, if data "A" to "F" are stored to bp2 to bp7 of RXBUF1, the transmission is operated from "A" to "F".

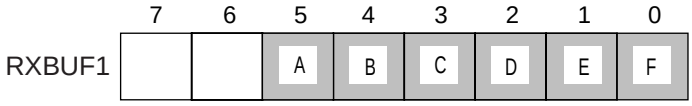


Figure:12.3.4 Reception Bit Count and First Transfer Bit (starting with MSB bit)

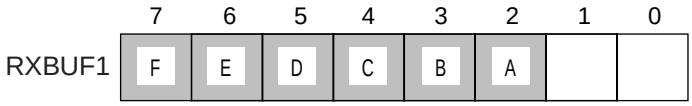


Figure:12.3.5 Reception Bit Count and First Transfer Bit (starting with LSB bit)

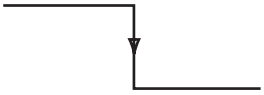
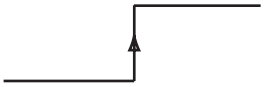
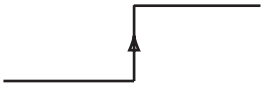
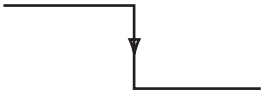
■ Continuous Transmission

This serial interface has a function for continuous communication. If data is set to the transmission data buffer TXBUF1 during communication, the transmission buffer empty flag SC1TEMP is automatically set to communicate continuously. Data set to TXBUF1 should be done after the data is loaded to the internal shift register before the communication complete interrupt SC1TIRQ is generated. At master communication, suspension of communication between the SC1TIRQ generation and the next transfer clock output is 4 transfer clocks.

■ Input Edge/ Output Edge Setup

The SC1CE1 flag of the SC1MD0 register set the output edge of the transmission data and the input edge of the received data. Data at transmission is output at the falling edge of clock as the SC1CE1 flag = "0", and at the rising edge of clock as the SC1CE1 = "1". Data at reception is input at the rising edge of clock as the SC1CE1 = "0", and at the falling edge of clock as the SC1CE1 flag = "1".

Table:12.3.2 Transmission Data Output Edge and Reception Data Input Edge

SC1CE1	Transmission data output edge	Reception data input edge
0		
1		

■ Clock Setup

Clock source is selected from the dedicated prescaler and timers 1, 2 output (2 channels) with the SC1PSC2 to 0 of the SC1MD3 register. The dedicated prescaler is started by selecting "count enable" with the SC1PSCE flag of the SC1MD3 register. The SC1MST flag of the SC1MD1 register can select the internal clock (clock master), or the external clock (clock slave). Even if the external clock is selected, set the internal clock that has the same clock cycle or lower to the external clock, by the SC1MD3 register as the interrupt flag SC1TIRQ is generated by the internal clock. The following is the internal clock source that can be set by the SC1MD3 register. Also, the SC1CKM flag of the SC1MD1 register can divide the internal clock. SC1DIV flag can select the dividing ratio between "divided by 8" and "divided by 16".

Table:12.3.3 Synchronous Serial Interface Clock Source

	serial 1
Clock source (internal clock)	fosc/2
	fosc/4
	fosc/16
	fosc/64
	fs/2
	fs/4
	Timer 1 output
	Timer 2 output
	Timer 2 output/2
	Timer 2 output/8

Set always the SC1SBIS flag and SC1SBOS flag of the SC1MD1 register to "0" before switching the clock setup.

When the slave reception is executed with the start condition "enable" at the continuous communication, the system configuration is required to notify the master of the readout completion.Without the notification, the data before readout may be overwritten.

■ Used Pin Switching

Used pin can be switched to A (SBO1A, SBI1A, SBT1A) or B (SBO1B, SBI1B, SBT1B) by the SC1SL flag of the SCSEL register.

■ Data Input Pin Setup

3 channels type (clock pin: SBT1 pin, data output pin: SBO1 pin, data input pin: SBI1 pin) or 2 channels type (clock pin :SBT1 pin, data I/O pin: SBO1 pin) can be selected as a communication mode. SBI1 pin can be used only for serial data input. SBO1 pin can be selected as serial data input or output. Whether the serial data is input from SBI1 pin or SBO1 pin, it can be selected by the SC1IOM flag of the SC1MD1 register. When "data input from SBO1 pin" is selected to set the 2 channels type, transmission/ reception can be switched by the SBO1 pin direction control. For SBO1A pin, it can be done by the P1DIR5 flag of the P1DIR register, for SBO1B pin, by the PADIR5 flag of the PADIR register. At this time, SBI1 pin can be used as a general port, too.

The transfer speed should be up to 5.0 MHz. If the transfer clock is over 5.0 MHz, the transmission data may not be sent correctly.

At reception, if SC1IOM of the SC1MD1 register is set to "1" and "serial data input from SBO1" is selected, SBI1 pin can be used as a general port.

■ Reception Buffer Empty Flag

After reception is completed (SC1TIRQ is generated), data is automatically stored to RXBUF1 from the internal shift register. If data is stored to the shift register RXBUF1 when the SC1SBIS of the SC1MD1 register is set to "serial input", the reception buffer empty flag SC1REMP of the SC1STR register is set to "1". This indicates that the reception data is going to be read out. SC1REMP is cleared to "0" by reading out the data of RXBUF1.

■ Transmission Buffer Empty Flag

During the communication (after setting data to TXBUF1 and before the communication complete interrupt SC1TIRQ is generated) if any data is set to TXBUF1 again, the transmission buffer empty flag SC1REMP of the SC1STR register is set to "1". This indicates that the next transmission data is going to be loaded. Data is loaded to the inside shift register from TXBUF1 by generation of SC1TIRQ, and the next transfer is started as SC1TEMP is cleared to "0".

■ Overrun Error and Error Monitor Flag

After reception complete, if the next data has been already received before reading out of the data of the received data buffer RXBUF1, overrun error is generated and the SC1ORE flag of the SC1STR register is set to "1". At the same time, the error monitor flag SC1ERE is set to indicate a reception error. The SC1ERE flag is cleared after the data of the RXBUF1 is read out and the next communication complete interrupt SC1TIRQ is generated. SC1ERE is cleared as SC1ORE flag is cleared. These error flags have no effect on communication operation.

■ Reception BUSY Flag

When the SC1SBIS flag of the SC1MD1 register is set to “serial data input” and the data is set to TXBUF1, or the start condition is recognized, the BUSY flag SC1RBSY of the SC1STR register is set to "1". The flag is cleared to “0” after the communication complete interrupt SC1TIRQ is generated. During continuous communication, the SC1RBSY flag is always set. If the transmission buffer empty flag SC1TEMP is cleared to "0" as the communication complete interrupt SC1TIRQ is generated, SC1RBSY is cleared to "0". If the SC1SBIS flag is set to "0" during communication, the SC1RBSY flag is cleared to "0".

■ Transmission BUSY Flag

When the SC1SBOS flag of the SC0MD1 register is set to “serial data output” and the data is set to TXBUF1, or the start condition is recognized, the SC1TBUSY flag of the SC1STR register is set if the SC1SBOS flag of the SC1MD1 register is “1”. The flag is cleared to “0” after the communication complete interrupt SC1TIRQ is generated. During continuous communication, the SC1TBSY flag is always set. If the transmission buffer empty flag SC1TEMP is cleared to "0" as the communication complete interrupt SC1TIRQ is generated, SC1TBSY is cleared to "0". If the SC1SBOS flag is set to "0" during communication, the SC1TBSY flag is cleared to "0".

■ Forced Reset

This serial interface contains forced reset for abnormal operation. For forced reset, the SC1SBOS flag and the SC1SBIOS flag of the SC1MD1 register should be set to "0" (SBO1 pin: port, input data:"1" input).

At forced reset, the status register (the SC1BRKF flag of the SC1MD2 register, all flags of the SC1STR register) are initialized as they are set at reset, but the control register holds the set value.

■ Last Bit of Transmission Data

Table:12.3.4 shows the data output holding period of the last bit at transmission, and the minimum data input period of the last bit at reception. At slave, the internal clock should be set up to keep the data hold time at transmission.

Table:12.3.4 Last Bit Data Length of Transfer Data

	The last bit data holding period at transmission	The last data input period at reception
At master	1 bit data length	1 bit data length (Minimum)
At slave	[1 bit data length of external clock × 1/2] + [internal clock cycle × (1-2)]	

When start condition is disabled (at SC1STE flag = 0), the SBO1 output after the data output holding period of the final bit can be set by the setting value of the SC1FDC1 to 0 flag of the SC1MD3 register as shown on Table:12.3.5.

After releasing the reset, despite the setting value of the SC1FDC1 to 0 flag, output before the serial transfer is "H". When start condition is enabled (at SC1STE flag = 1), despite the setting value of the SC1FDC1 to 0, "H" is output.

Table:12.3.5 SBO1 Output after the Data Output Holding Period of the Last Bit (without start condition)

SC1FDC1 flag	SC1FDC0 flag	SBO1 output after the data output holding period of the last bit
0	0	Fixed to "1"(High) output
1	0	Last data holding
0	1	Fixed to "0"(Low) output
1	1	Reserved

■ Other Control Flag Setup

Table:12.3.6 shows flags that do not required to be set or monitored as the flags are not used at clock synchronous communication.

Table:12.3.6 Other Control Flag

Register	Flag	Detail
SC1MD2	SC1BRKE	Break status transmission control
	SC1BRKF	Break status reception monitor
	SC1NPE	Parity enable
	SC1PM1 to 0	Added bit specification
	SC1FM1 to 0	Frame mode specification
SC1STR	SC1PEK	Parity error detection
	SC1FEF	Frame error detection

■ Transmission Timing

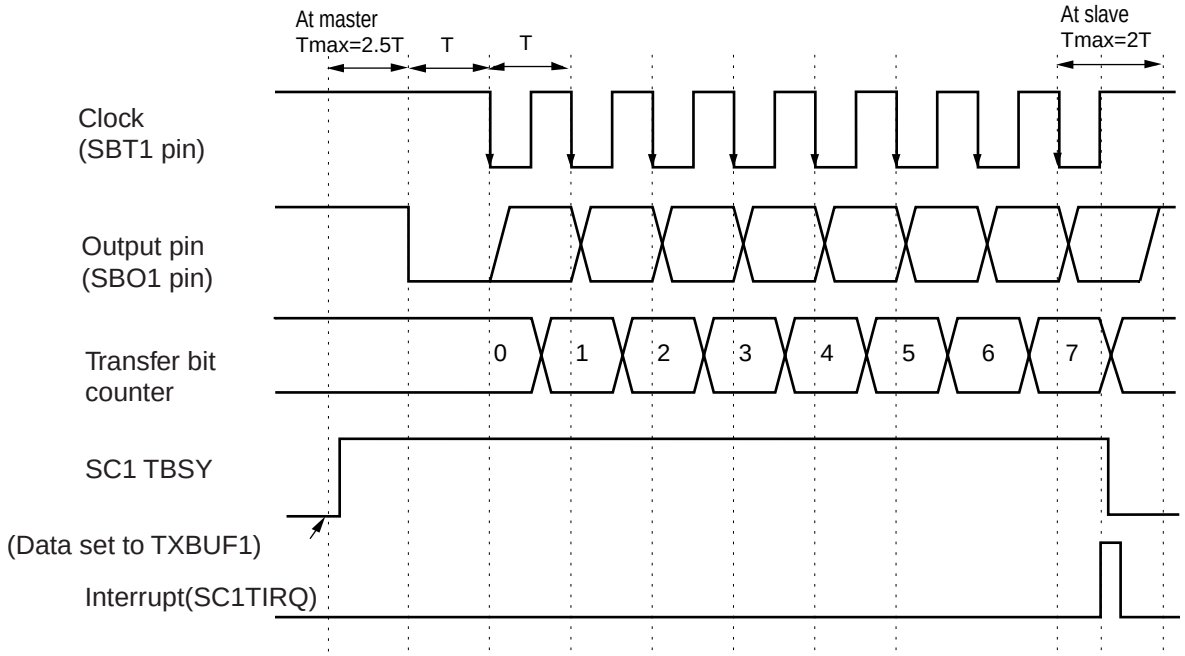


Figure:12.3.6 Transmission Timing (at falling edge, start condition is enabled)

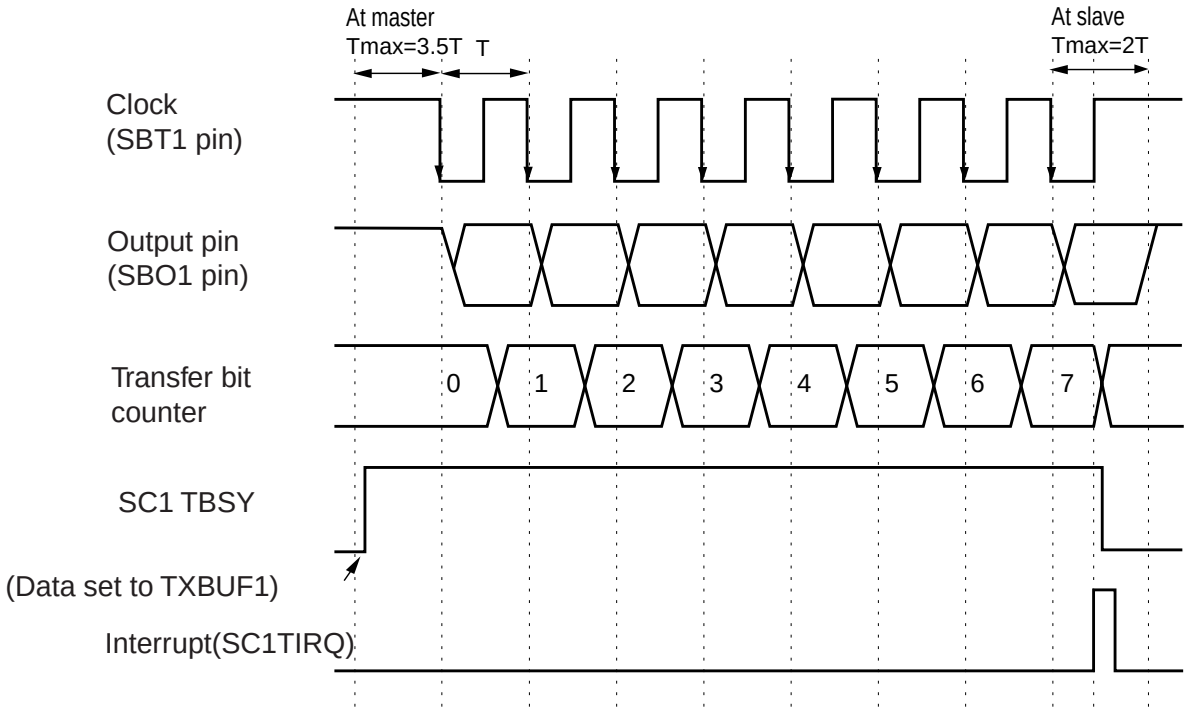


Figure:12.3.7 Transmission Timing (at falling edge, start condition is disabled)

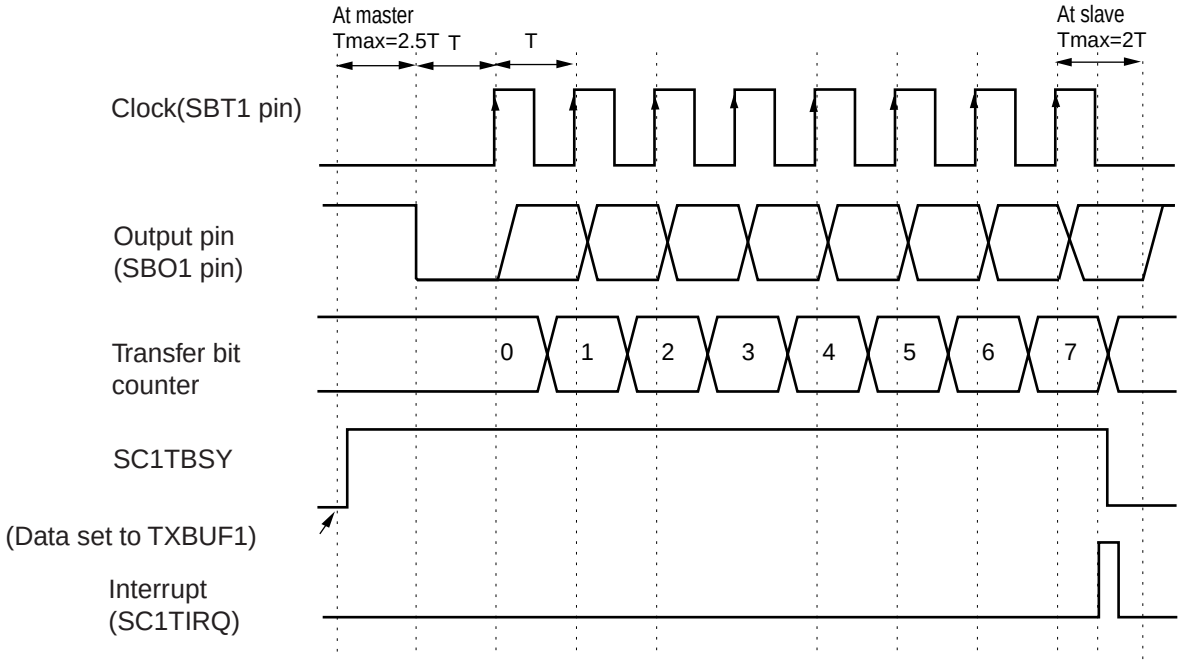


Figure:12.3.8 Transmission Timing (at rising edge, start condition is enabled)

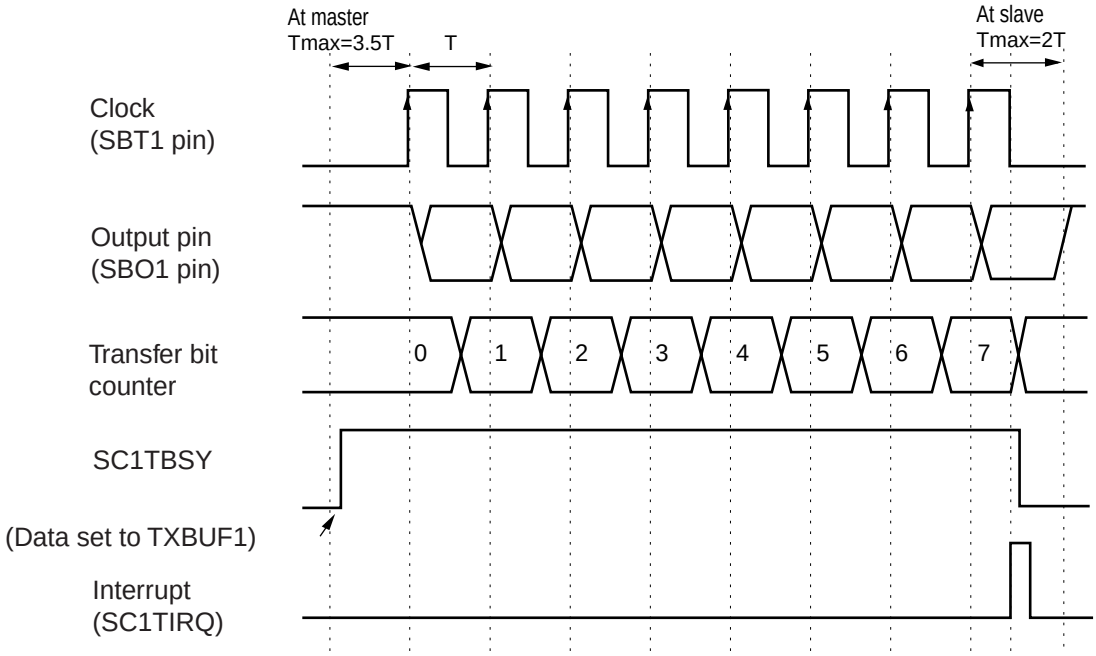


Figure:12.3.9 Transmission Timing (at rising edge, start condition is disabled)

■ Reception Timing

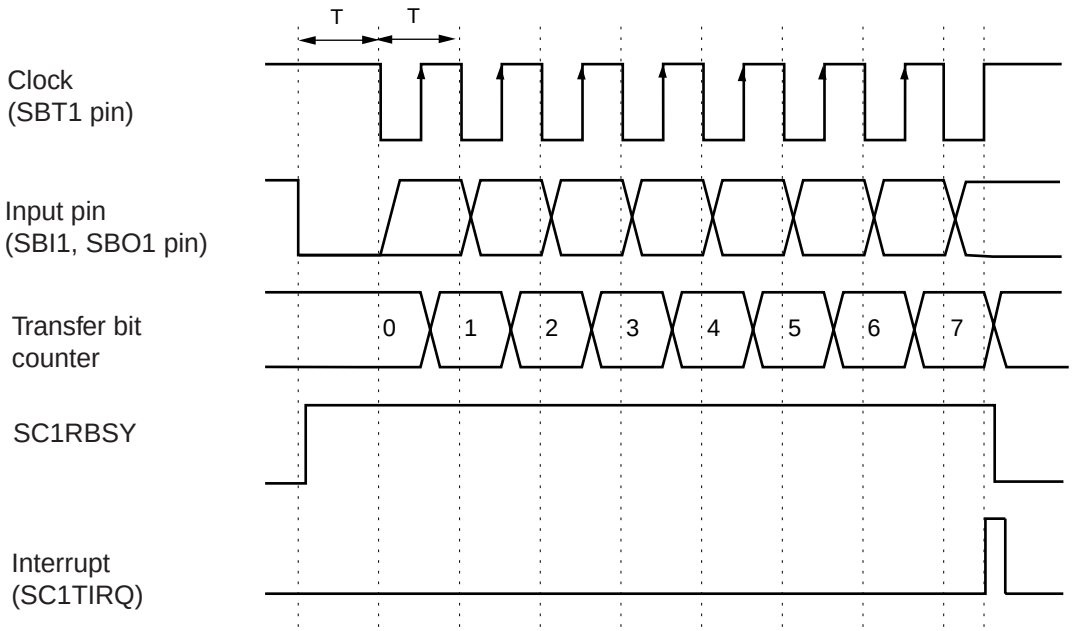


Figure:12.3.10 Reception Timing (at rising edge, start condition is enabled)

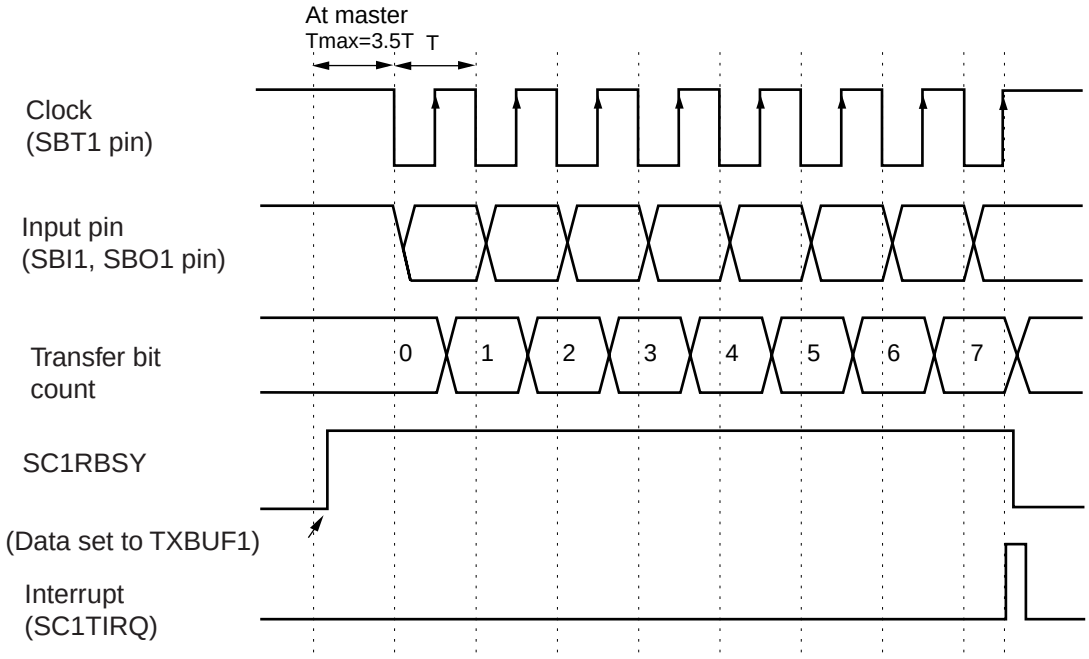


Figure:12.3.11 Reception Timing (at rising edge, start condition is disabled)

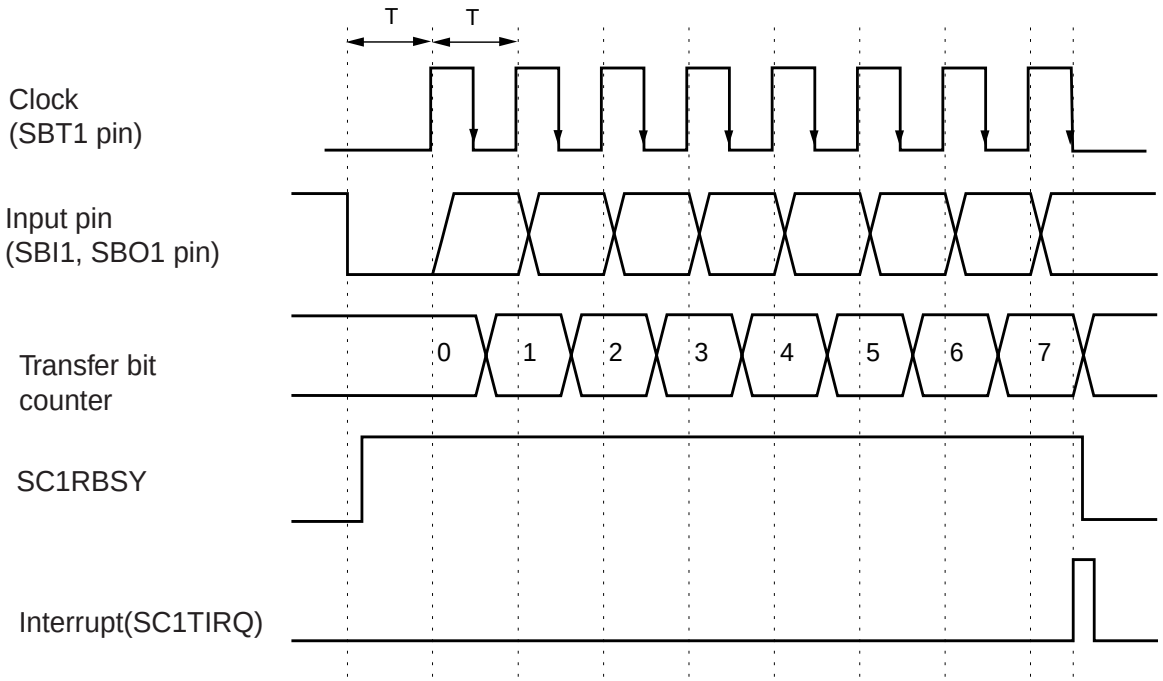


Figure:12.3.12 Reception Timing (at falling edge, start condition is enabled)

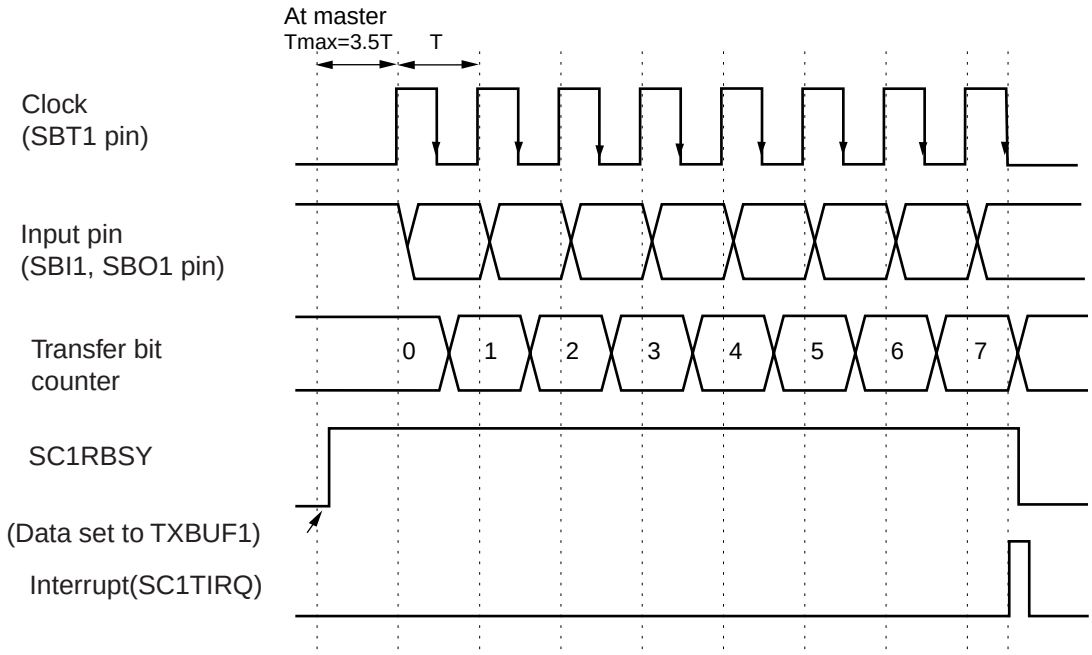


Figure:12.3.13 Reception Timing (at falling edge, start condition is disabled)

■ Transmission/ Reception Timing

As data is received at the opposite edge of the transmission clock, set the polarity of reception data input edge to opposite polarity of the transmission data output edge.

When transmission and reception are executed at the same time, set the start condition to "disable" to prevent abnormal operation.

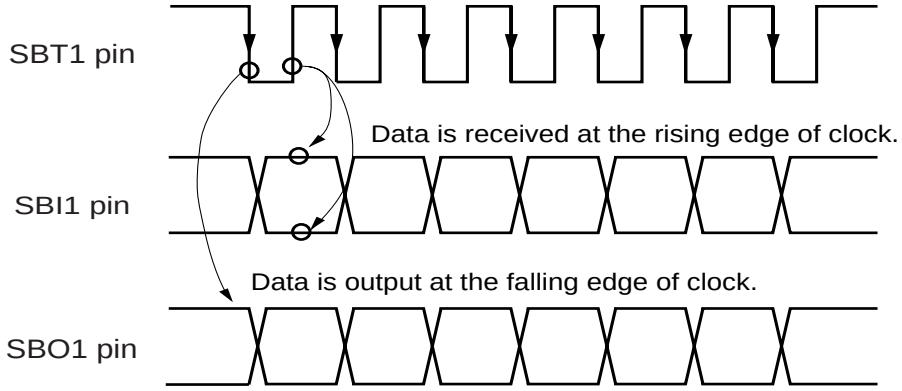


Figure:12.3.14 Transmission/ Reception Timing (Reception: at rising edge, Transmission: at falling edge)

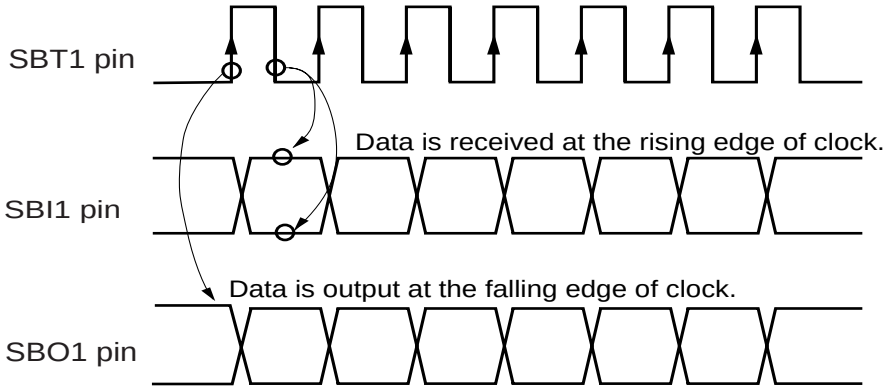


Figure:12.3.15 Transmission/ Reception Timing (Reception: at falling edge, Transmission: at rising edge)

■ Communication Function at Standby Mode

This serial interface is capable of slave reception in STANDBY mode. CPU operation status can be recovered from standby to normal by the communication complete interrupt SC1TIRQ that is generated after the slave reception.

(In STANDBY mode, continuous reception is disabled after data of transfer bit count set by SC1LNG2-0 flags of the SC1MD0 register is received.) The received data should be read out from the received data buffer RXBUF1 after recovering NORMAL mode.

In STANDBY mode, reception with start condition is not available, thus, disable start condition. And set dummy data to transmission data buffer TXBUF1 before transition to STANDBY mode.

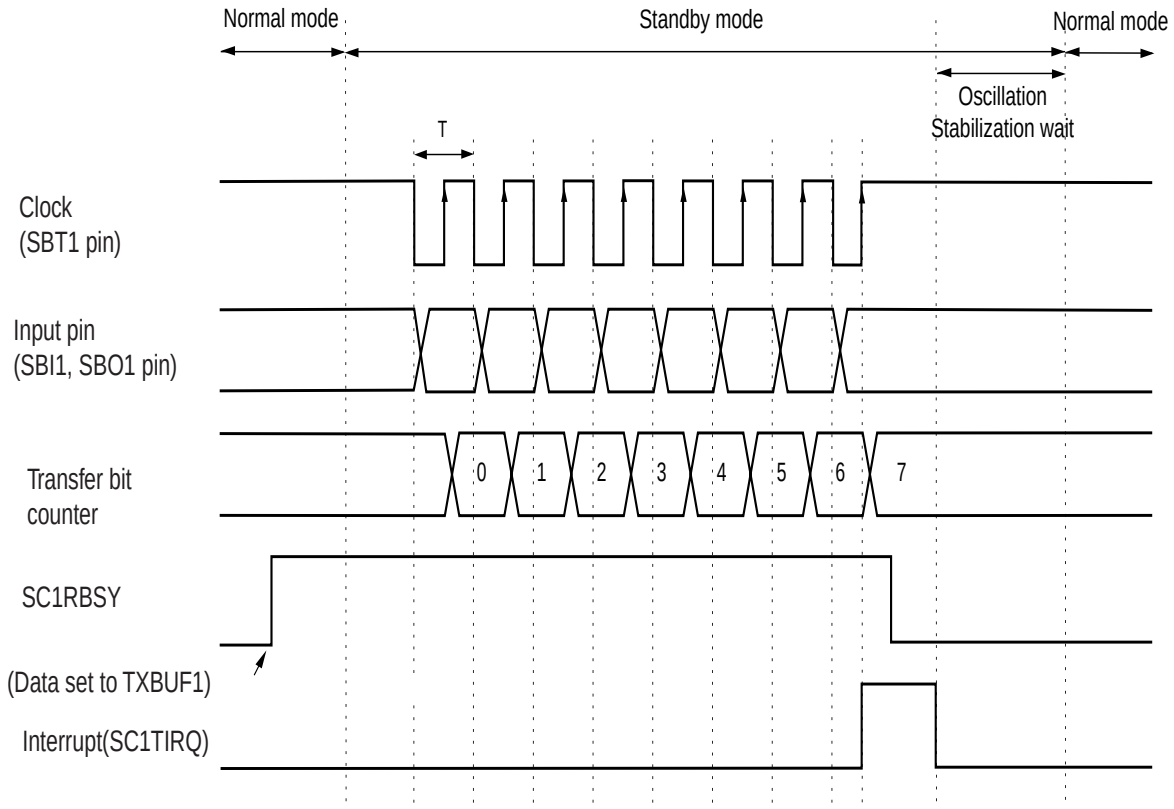


Figure:12.3.16 Reception Timing at Standby Mode (Reception: at rising edge, start condition is disabled)

■ Pins Setup (with 3 channels, at transmission)

Table:12.3.7 shows the setup for synchronous serial interface pin with 3 channels (SBO1 pin, SBI1 pin, SBT1 pin) at transmission.

Table:12.3.7 Setup for Synchronous Serial Interface Pin (with 3 channels, at transmission)

Setup item	Data output pin	Data input pin	Clock I/O pin	
	SBO1A pin/SBO1B pin	SBI1A pin/SBI1B pin	SBT1 pin/SBT1B pin	
			Clock master	Clock slave
			SC1SCMD1(SC1MST)	
Port pin	P15	P16	P17/PA6	
Port pin setup	Select used pin (A, B)			
	SCSEL (SC1SL)			
Serial data input selection	SBI1		-	
	SC1MD1(SC1IOM)			
Function	Serial data output	"1" input	Transfer clock I/O	Transfer clock I/O
	SC1MD1(SC1SBOS)	SC1MD1(SC1SBIS)	SC1MD1(SC1SBTS)	
Style	Push-pull/ Nch open-drain	-	Push-pull/ Nch open-drain	Push-pull/ Nch open-drain
	P1ODC(P1ODC5)/ PAODC(PAODC5)		P1ODC(P1ODC7)/PAODC(PAODC6)	
I/O	Output mode	-	Output mode	Input mode
	P1DIR(P1DIR5)/ PADIR(PADIR5)		P1DIR(P1DIR7)/PADIR(PADIR6)	
Pull-up setup	Added/ Not added	-	Added/ Not added	Added/ Not added
	P1PLUD(P1PLUD5)/ PAPLU(PAPLU5)		P1PLUD(P1PLUD7)	

■ Pins Setup (with 3 channels, at reception)

Table:12.3.8 shows the setup for synchronous serial interface pin with 3 channels (SBO1 pin, SBI1 pin, SBT1 pin) at reception.

Table:12.3.8 Setup for Synchronous Serial Interface Pin (with 3 channels, at reception)

Setup item	Data output pin	Data input pin	Clock I/O pin	
	SBO1A pin/ SBO1B pin	SBI1A pin/ SBI1B pin	SBT1A pin/ SBT1B pin	
			Clock master	Clock slave
			SC1SCMD1(SC1MST)	
Port pin	P15/ PA5	P16/ PA4	P17/ PA6	
Port pin setup	Select used pin (A, B)			
	SCSEL (SC1SL)			
Serial data input selection	SBI1		-	
	SC1MD1(SC1IOM)			
Function	Port	Serial input	Transfer clock I/O	Transfer clock I/O
	SC1MD1(SC1SBOS)	SC1MD1(SC1SBIS)	SC1MD1(SC1SBTS)	
Style	-	-	Push-pull/ Nch open-drain	Push-pull/ Nch open-drain
			P1ODC(P1ODC7) /PAODC(PAODC6)	
I/O	-	Input mode	Output mode	Input mode
		P1DIR(P1DIR6) / PADIR(PADIR4)	P1DIR(P1DIR7)/ PADIR(PADIR6)	
Pull-up setup	-	-	Added/ Not added	Added/ Not added
			P1PLUD(P1PLUD7)/ PAPLU(PAPLU6)	

■ Pins Setup (with 3 channels, at transmission / reception)

Table:12.3.9 shows the setup for synchronous serial interface pin with 3 channels (SBO1 pin, SBI1 pin, SBT1 pin) at transmission / reception.

Table:12.3.9 Setup for Synchronous Serial Interface Pin (with 3 channels, at transmission / reception)

Setup item	Data output pin	Data input pin	Clock I/O pin	
	SBO1A pin/ SBO1B pin	SBI1A pin/ SBI1B pin	SBT1A pin/ SBT1B pin	
			Clock master	Clock slave
			SC1SCMD1(SC1MST)	
Port pin	P15/PA5	P16/PA4	P17/PA6	
Port pin setup	Select used pin (A, B)			
	SCSEL (SC1SL)			
Serial data input selection	SBI1		-	
	SC1MD1(SC1IOM)			
Function	Serial data output	Serial input	Transfer clock I/O	Transfer clock I/O
	SC1MD1(SC1SBOS)	SC1MD1(SC1SBIS)	SC1MD1(SC1SBTS)	
Style	Push-pull/ Nch open-drain	-	Push-pull/ Nch open-drain	Push-pull/ Nch open-drain
	P1ODC(P1ODC5)/ PAODC(PAODC5)		P1ODC(P1ODC7)/ PAODC(PAODC6)	
I/O	Output mode	Input mode	Output mode	Input mode
	P1DIR(P1DIR5)/ PADIR(PADIR5)	P1DIR(P1DIR6)/ PADIR(PADIR4)	P1DIR(P1DIR7)/ PADIR(PADIR6)	
Pull-up setup	Added/ Not added	-	Added/ Not added	Added/ Not added
	P1PLUD(P1PLUD5)/ PAPLU(PAPLU5)		P1PLUD(P1PLUD7)/ PAPLU(PAPLU6)	

■ Pins Setup (with 2 channels, at transmission)

Table:12.3.10 shows the setup for synchronous serial interface pin with 2 channels (SBO1 pin, SBT1 pin) at transmission. SBI1 pin can be used as a port.

Table:12.3.10 Setup for Synchronous Serial Interface Pin (with 2 channels, at transmission)

Setup item	Data output pin	Serial unused pin	Clock I/O pin	
	SBO1A pin/ SBO1B pin	SBI1A pin/ SBI1B pin	SBT1A pin/ SBT1B pin	
			Clock master	Clock slave
			SC1SCMD1(SC1MST)	
Port pin	P15/PA5	P16/PA4	P17/PA6	
Port pin setup	Select used pin (A, B)			
	SCSEL (SC1SL)			
Serial data input selection	SBO1		-	
	SC1MD1(SC1IOM)			
Function	Serial data input	"1" input	Transfer clock I/O	Transfer clock I/O
	SC1MD1(SC1SBOS)	SC1MD1(SC1SBIS)	SC1MD1(SC1SBIS)	
Style	Push-pull/ Nch open-drain	-	Push-pull/ Nch open-drain	Push-pull/ Nch open-drain
	P1ODC(P1ODC5)/ PAODC(PAODC5)		P1ODC(P1ODC7)/ PAODC(PAODC6)	
I/O	Output mode	-	Output mode	Input mode
	P1DIR(P1DIR5)/ PADIR(P1DIR5)		P1DIR(P1DIR7)/ PADIR(PADIR6)	
Pull-up setup	Added/ Not added	-	Added/ Not added	Added/ Not added
	P1PLUD(P1PLUD5)/ PAPLU(PAPLU5)		P1PLUD(P1PLUD7)/ PAPLU((PAPLU6)	

■ Pins Setup (with 2 channels, at reception)

Table:12.3.11 shows the setup for synchronous serial interface pin with 2 channels (SBO1 pin, SBT1 pin) at reception. SBI1 pin can be used as a port.

Table:12.3.11 Setup for Synchronous Serial Interface Pin (with 2 channels, at reception)

Setup item	Data output pin	Serial unused pin	Clock I/O pin	
	SBO1A pin/ SBO1B pin	SBI1 pin/ SBI1B pin	SBT1A pin/ SBT1B pin	
			Clock master	Clock slave
			SC1SCMD1(SC1MST)	
Port pin	P15/PA5	P16/PA4	P17/PA6	
Port pin setup	Select used pin (A, B)			
	SCSEL (SC1SL)			
Serial data input selection	SBO1		-	
	SC1MD1(SC1IOM)			
Function	Port	Serial input	Transfer clock I/O	Transfer clock I/O
	SC1MD1(SC1SBOS)	SC1MD1(SC1SBIS)	SC1MD1(SC1SBIS)	
Style	-	-	Push-pull/ Nch open-drain	Push-pull/ Nch open-drain
			P1ODC(P1ODC7)/ PAODC(PAODC6)	
I/O	Input mode	-	Output mode	Input mode
	P1DIR(P1DIR5)/ PADIR(PADIR5)		P1DIR(P1DIR7)/ PADIR(PADIR6)	
Pull-up setup	-	-	Added/ Not added	Added/ Not added
			P1PLUD(P1PLUD7)/ PAPLU(PAPLU6)	

12.3.2 Setup Example

■ Transmission / Reception Setup Example

The setup example for clock synchronous serial communication with serial 1 is shown. Table:12.3.12 shows the conditions at transmission / reception.

Table:12.3.12 Setup Examples for Synchronous Serial Interface Transmission / Reception

Setup item	Set to
Serial data input pin	Select SBI1 (3 channels)
Transfer bit count	8 bit
Start condition	None
First transfer bit	MSB
Input edge	Falling edge
Output edge	Rising edge
Clock	Clock master
Clock source	fs/2
Clock source dividing	Not divided
Used pin	A (port 1)
SBT1/SBO1 pin style	Nch open-drain
SBT1 pin pull-up resistor	Added
SBO1 pin pull-up resistor	Added
serial 1 communication complete interrupt	Enable
SBO1 output after last data output	"1"(H) fix

An example setup procedure, with a description of each step is shown below.

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Select the prescaler operation SC1MD3(0x03F9C) bp3 :SC1PSCE =1	(1) Set the SC1PSCE flag of the SC1MD3 register to "1" to select "prescaler operation".
(2) Select the clock source SC1MD3(0x03F9C) bp2-0 :SC1PSC2-0 =100	(2) Set the SC1PSC2 to 0 flag of the SC1MD3 register to "100" to select the fs/2 to clock source.
(3) SBO1A output control after the last data output SC1MD3(0x03F9C) bp7,6 :SC1FDC1-0 =00	(3) Set the SC1FDC1 to 0 flag of the SC1MD3 register to "00" to select "1" (High) fix of the SBO1 last data output.

Setup Procedure	Description
(4) Select the used pin SCSEL(0x03F90) bp1 :SC1SL =0	(4) Set the SC1SL flag of the SCSEL register to "0" to select A (port A) as I/O pin.
(5) Control the pin style P1ODC(0x03F1B) bp7:P1ODC7=1 bp5:P1ODC5=1 P1PLUD(0x03F41) bp7:P1PLUD7=1 bp5:P1PLUD5=1	(5) Set the P1ODC7,P1ODC5 flag of the P1ODC register to "1,1" and select Nch open-drain to SBO1/SBT1 pin. Set the P1PLUD7,P1PLUD5 flag of the P1PLUD register to "1,1" to enable the pull-up resistor.
(6) Control the pin direction P1DIR(0x03F31) bp7 :P1DIR7 =1 bp6 :P1DIR6 =0 bp5 :P1DIR5 =1	(6) Set the P1DIR7, P1DIR5 flag of the Port 1 pin direction control register (P1DIR) to "1,1" and the P1DIR6 flag to "0" to set P17, P15 to the output mode, P16 to the input mode.
(7) Set the SC1MD0 register Select the transfer bit count SC1MD0(0x03F99) bp2-0 :SC1LNG2-0 =111 Select the start condition SC1MD0(0x03F99) bp3 :SC1STE =0 Select the first bit to be transferred SC1MD0(0x03F99) bp4 :SC1DIR =0 Select the transfer edge SC1MD0(0x03F99) bp7 :SC1CE1 =1	(7) Set the SC1LNG2 to 0 flag of the serial 1 mode register 0 (SC1MD0) to "111" to set the transfer bit count as "8 bits". Set the SC1STE flag of the SC1MD0 register to "0" to disable the start condition. Set the SC1DIR flag of the SC1MD0 register to "0" to set MSB as a transfer first bit. Set the SC1CE1 flag of the SC1MD0 register to "1" to set the reception data input edge "falling" and the transmission data output edge "rising".
(8) Set the SC1MD1 register Select the communication style SC1MD1(0x03F9A) bp0 :SC1CMD =0 Select the transfer clock SC1MD1(0x03F9A) bp2 :SC1MST =1 bp3 :SC1CKM =0 Select the transfer clock SC1MD1(0x03F9A) bp4 :SC1SBOS =1 bp5 :SC1SBIS =1 bp6 :SC1SBTS =1 bp7 :SC1IOM =0	(8) Set the SC1CMD flag of the SC1MD1 register to "0" to select the synchronous serial. Set the SC1MST flag of the SC1MD1 register to "1" to select the clock master (internal clock). Set the SC1CKM flag to "0" to select "not divided" for the clock source. Set the SC1SBOS, SC1SBIS, SC1SBTS flag of the SC1MD1 register to "1" to set the SBO1 pin to the serial data output, the SBI1 pin to the serial input, SBT1 pin to the transfer clock input/output. Set the SC1IOM flag "0" to set the serial data input from the SBI1 pin.
(9) Set the interrupt level SC1TICR(0x03FF2) bp7-6 :SC1TLV1-0 =10	(9) Set the interrupt level by the SC1TLV1 to 0 flag of the serial 1 transmission interrupt control register (SC1TICR).

Setup Procedure	Description
(10) Enable the interrupt SC1TICR(0x03FF2) bp1 :SC1TIE =1 bp0 :SC0TIR =0	(10) Set the SC1TIE flag of the SC1TICR register to "1" to enable the interrupt. If any interrupt request flag (SC1TIR of the SC1TICR register) is already set, clear SC1TIR before the interrupt is enabled.
(11) Start the serial transmission Transmission data → TXBUF1(0x03F9F) Reception data → input SBI1 pin	(11) Set the transmission data to the serial transmission data buffer TXBUF1. The transmission or reception is started by the internal clock generation. When the transmission is finished, the serial 1 UART transmission interrupt SC1TIRQ is generated. [Chapter 3. 3-1-4 Setup]

Note: Procedures (1) to (3),(5),(6),(7) to (8) can be set at the same time.

■ Reception Setup Example

The setup example for clock synchronous serial communication with serial 1 is shown. Table:12.3.12 shows the conditions at Reception.

Table:12.3.13 Setup Examples for Synchronous Serial Interface Reception

Setup item	Set to
Serial data input pin	Select SBI1 (3 channels)
Transfer bit count	8 bit
Start condition	None
First transfer bit	MSB
Input edge	Falling edge
Output edge	Rising edge
Clock	Clock Slave
Clock source	fs/2
Clock source dividing	Not divided
Used pin	A (port 1)
SBT1/SBO1 pin style	Nch open-drain
SBT1 pin pull-up resistor	Added
SBO1 pin pull-up resistor	Added
Serial 1 communication complete interrupt	Enable
SBO1 output after last data output	"1"(H) fix

An example setup procedure, with a description of each step is shown below.

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Select the prescaler operation SC1MD3(0x03F9C) bp3 :SC1PSCE =1	(1) Set the SC1PSCE flag of the SC1MD3 register to "1" to select "prescaler operation".
(2) Select the clock source SC1MD3(0x03F9C) bp2-0 :SC1PSC2-0 =100	(2) Set the SC1PSC2 to 0 flag of the SC1MD3 register to "100" to select the fs/2 to clock source.
(3) SBO1A output control after the last data output SC1MD3(0x03F9C) bp7,6 :SC1FDC1-0 =00	(3) Set the SC1FDC1 to 0 flag of the SC1MD3 register to "00" to select "1" (High) fix of the SBO1 last data output.
(4) Select used pin SCSEL(0x03F90) bp1 :SC1SL =0	(4) Set the SC1SL flag of the SC1SEL register to "0" to select A (port 1) as I/O pin.
(5) Control the pin style P1ODC(0x03F1B) bp7:P1ODC7=1 bp5:P1ODC5=1 P1PLUD(0x03F4A) bp7:P1ODC7=1 bp5:P1ODC5=1	(5) Set the P1ODC7,P1ODC5 flag of the P1ODC register to "1,1" to select Nch open-drain to SBT0 pin. Set the P1PLUD7,P1PLUD5 flag of the P1PLUD register to "1,1" to enable the pull-up resistor.

Setup Procedure	Description
(6) Control the pin direction P1DIR(0x03F31) bp7 :P1DIR7 =1 bp6 :P1DIR6 =0 bp5 :P1DIR5 =1	(6) Set the P1DIR7, P1DIR5 flag of the Port 1 pin direction control register (P1DIR) to "1,1" and the P1DIR6 flag to "0" to set P17, P15 to the output mode, P16 to the input mode.
(7) Set the SC1MD0 register Select the transfer bit count SC1MD0(0x03F99) bp2-0 :SC1LNG2-0 =111 Select the start condition SC1MD0(0x03F99) bp3 :SC1STE =0 Select the first bit to be transferred SC1MD0(0x03F99) bp4 :SC1DIR =0 Select the transfer edge SC1MD0(0x03F99) bp7 :SC1CE1 =1	(7) Set the SC1LNG2 to 0 flag of the serial 1 mode register 0 (SC1MD0) to "111" to set the transfer bit count as "8 bits". Set the SC1STE flag of the SC1MD0 register to "0" to disable the start condition. Set the SC1DIR flag of the SC1MD0 register to "0" to set MSB as a transfer first bit. Set the SC1CE1 flag of the SC1MD0 register to "1" to set the reception data input edge "falling" and the transmission data output edge "rising".
(8) Set the SC1MD1 register Select the communication style SC1MD1(0x03F9A) bp0 :SC1CMD =0 Select the transfer clock SC1MD1(0x03F9A) bp2 :SC1MST =1 bp3 :SC1CKM =0 Select the transfer clock SC1MD1(0x03F9A) bp4 :SC1SBOS =1 bp5 :SC1SBIS =1 bp6 :SC1SBTS =1 bp7 :SC1IOM =0	(8) Set the SC1CMD flag of the SC1MD1 register to "0" to select the synchronous serial. Set the SC1MST flag of the SC1MD1 register to "0" to select the clock slave (external clock). Set the SC1CKM flag to "0" to select "not divided " for the clock source. Set the SC1SBOS, SC1SBIS, SC1SBTS flag of the SC1MD1 register to "1" to set the SBO1 pin to the serial data output, the SBI1 pin to the serial input, SBT1 pin to the transfer clock input/output. Set the SC1IOM flag "0" to set the serial data input from the SBI1 pin.
(9) Set the interrupt level SC1TICR(0x03FF2) bp7-6 :SC1TLV1-0 =10	(9) Set the interrupt level by the SC1TLV1 to 0 flag of the serial 1 transmission interrupt control register (SC1TICR).
(10) Enable the interrupt SC1TICR(0x03FF2) bp1 :SC1TIE =1 bp2 :SC0TIR =0	(10) Set the SC1TIE flag of the SC1TICR register to "1" to enable the interrupt. If any interrupt request flag (SC1TIR of the SC1TICR register) is already set, clear SC1TIR before the interrupt is enabled.
(11) Start the serial Reception dummy data → TXBUF1(0x03F9F) Received data → input SBI1 pin	(11) Set the transmission data to the serial dummy data buffer TXBUF1. After the dummy data is set, when clock input is done after more than 3.5 transfer clock, reception is started. When reception is finished, the serial 1 UART transmission interrupt SC1TIRQ is generated. [Chapter 3. 3-1-4 Setup]

Note: Each procedure (1) to (3),(7),(8),(9) to (10) can be set at the same time.

* At the reception with the start condition input, set the SC0STE flag to "1" and the start condition to "enable" in step (7). In step (11), execute the start condition input instead of dummy data setting. After the start condition input, 0.5 or more transfer clock is needed before the clock input.

At the reception with the start condition input, set the SC0STE flag to “1” to select start condition enable at the step (7) in the setup procedure. At the step (11), execute the start condition input instead of setting dummy data. After start condition input, more than 0.5 transfer clock is required for the clock input.

For transmission with 3 channels, set the SC1SBIS of SC1MD1 register to “1” to set the serial input to “1” input. SBI1 pin can be used as a general port. For reception with 3 channels, set the SC1SBOS of SC1MD1 register to “0” to select “port”. SBO1 pin can be used as a general port.

For communication with 2 channels, serial data is input/output from the SBO1 pin. Input/output is switched by the port direction control register P1DIR. At reception, set always SC1SBIS of the SC1MD1 register to "1" to select "serial input". The SBI1 pin can be used as a general port.

This serial interface contains a force reset function. If the communication should be stopped by force, set SC1SBOS and SC1SBIS of the SC1MD1 register to "0".

Each flag should be set as this setup procedure in order. Activation of communication should be operated after all control registers (refer to Table:12.2.1 except TXBUF1) are set.

Transfer rate of transfer clock set by the SC1MD3 register should not exceed 5.0 MHz.

■ Transmission / Reception Setup Example (Standby Mode Reception)

The setup example for clock synchronous serial communication with serial 1 is shown. Table:12.3.14 shows the condition at standby mode reception.

Table:12.3.14 Setup Examples for Synchronous Serial Interface Transmission / Reception (Standby Mode Reception)

Setup item	Set to
Serial data input pin	Select SBI1 (3 channels)
Transfer bit count	8 bit
Start condition	None
First transfer bit	MSB
Input edge	Falling edge
Clock	Clock slave
Operation mode	Stop mode
Clock source	fs/2
Clock source dividing	Not divided
Used pin	A (port 1)
SBT1/SBO1 pin style	Push-pull
SBT1 pin pull-up resistor	Not added
SBO1 pin pull-up resistor	Not added
serial 1 communication complete interrupt	Enable

An example setup procedure, with a description of each step is shown below.

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Select the prescaler operation SC1MD3(0x03F9C) bp3 :SC1PSCE =1	(1) Set the SC1PSCE flag of the SC1MD3 register to "1" to select "prescaler operation".
(2) Select the clock source SC1MD3(0x03F9C) bp2-0 :SC1PSC2-0 =100	(2) Set the SC1PSC2 to 0 flag of the SC1MD3 register to "100" to select fs/2 as the clock source.
(3) Select the used pin SCSEL(0x03F90) bp1 :SC1SL =0	(3) Set the SC1SL flag of the SCSEL register to "0" to select A (port 1) as I/O pin.
(4) Control the pin style P1ODC(0x03F1B) bp7:P1ODC7=0 bp5:P1ODC5=0 P1PLUD(0x03F41) bp7:P1PLUD7=0 bp5:P1PLUD5=0	(4) Set the P1ODC7,P1ODC5 flag of the P1ODC register to "1" to select Push-pull to SBT1 pin. Set the P1PLUD7,P1PLUD5 flag of the P1PLUD register to "1" to enable the pull-up resistor.

Setup Procedure	Description
(5) Control the pin direction P1DIR(0x03F31) bp7 :P1DIR7 =0 bp6 :P1DIR6 =0 bp5 :P1DIR5 =1	(5) Set the P1DIR7, P1DIR6 flag of the Port 1 pin direction control register (P1DIR) to "1" and the P1DIR5 flag to "1" to set P17, P16 to the input mode, P15 to the output mode.
(6) Select the transfer bit count SC1MD0(0x03F99) bp2-0 :SC1LNG2-0 =111	(6) Set the SC1LNG2 to 0 flag of the serial 1 mode register (SC1MD0) to "111" to set the transfer bit count as "8 bits".
(7) Select the start condition SC1MD0(0x03F99) bp3 :SC1STE =0	(7) Set the SC1STE flag of the serial 1 mode register (SC1MD0) to "1" to disable the start condition.
(8) Select the first bit to be transferred SC1MD0(0x03F99) bp4 :SC1DIR =0	(8) Set the SC1DIR flag of the SC1MD0 register to "0" to set MSB as a transfer first bit.
(9) Select the transfer edge SC1MD0(0x03F99) bp7 :SC1CE1 =1	(9) Set the SC1CE1 flag of the SC1MD0 register to "1" to set the reception data input edge "falling".
(10) Select the communication type SC1MD1(0x03F9A) bp0 :SC1CMD =0	(10) Set the SC1CMD flag of the SC1MD1 register to "0" to select the synchronous serial.
(11) Select the transfer clock SC1MD1(0x03F9A) bp2 :SC1MST =0 bp3 :SC1CKM =0	(11) Set the SC1MST flag of the SC1MD1 register to "0" to select the clock slave (external slave). Set the SC1CKM flag to "0" to select "not divided" for the clock source.
(12) Control the pin function SC1MD1(0x03F9A) bp4 :SC1SBOS =0 bp5 :SC1SBIS =1 bp6 :SC1SBTS =1 bp7 :SC1IOM =0	(12) Set the SC1SBOS flag of the SC1MD1 register to "0", the SC1SBIS flag, SC1SBTS flag to "1" to set the SBO1 pin to a general port, the SBI1 pin to the serial data input, the SBT1 pin to the transfer clock input/ output. Set the SC1IOM flag "0" to set the serial data input from the SBI1 pin.
(13) Set the interrupt level SC1TICR(0x03FF2) bp7-6 :SC1LV1-0 =10	(13) Set the interrupt level by the SC1LV1 to 0 flag of the serial 1 UART transmission interrupt control register (SC1TICR). (Set level 2)
(14) Enable the interrupt SC1TICR(0x03FF2) bp1 :SC1TIE =1 bp0 :SC1TIR =0	(14) Set the SC1TIE flag of the SC1TICR register to "1" to enable the interrupt. If any interrupt request flag (SC1TIR of the SC1TICR register) is already set, clear SC1TIR before the interrupt is enabled.
(15) Set the startup factor of the serial communication Dummy data → TXBUF1(0x03F9F)	(15) Set the dummy data to the serial transmission data buffer TXBUF1.

Setup Procedure	Description
(16) Transfer to STOP mode CPUM(0x03F00) bp3:STOP =1	(16) Set the STOP flag of the CPUM register to "1" to transfer to the stop mode.
(17) Start the serial communication Dummy data → TXBUF1(0x03F9F) Reception data → input SBI1 pin	(17) Input the transfer clock to the SBT1 pin and transfer data to the SBI1 pin.
(18) Recover from the standby mode	(18) The serial 1 UART transmission interrupt SC1TIRQ is generated at the same time of the 8th bits data reception. After the oscillation stabilization wait, CPU is recovered from the stop mode to the normal mode.

Note: Procedure (1),(2) (6) to (9), (10) to (12), (13) to (14) can be set at the same time.

Each flag should be set as this setup procedure in order. Activation of communication should be operated after all control registers (refer to Table:12.2.1 except TXBUF1) are set.

12.3.3 UART Serial Interface

Serial 1 can be used for duplex UART communication. Table:12.3.15 shows UART serial interface functions.

Table:12.3.15 URAT Serial Interface Functions

Communication style	UART (duplex)j
Interrupt	SC1TIRQ (transmission), SC1RIRQ (reception)
Used pins	TXD1 (output / input) RXD1 (input)
First transfer bit specification	MSB / LSB
Parity bit selection	O
Parity bit control	0 parity 1 parity odd parity even parity
Frame selection	7 bits + 1 STOP 7 bits + 2 STOP 8 bits + 1 STOP 8 bits + 2 STOP
Continuous operation	O
Maximum transfer rate	300 kbps (standard 300 bps to 38.4 kbps) (with baud rate timer)

■ Activation Factor for Communication

At transmission, when data is set to the transmission data buffer TXBUF1, start condition is generated to start transfer. At reception, when a start condition is received, communication is started. At reception, if the data length of "L" for start bit is longer than 0.5 bit, that can be recognized as start condition.

■ Transmission

Data transfer is automatically started by setting data to the transmission data buffer TXBUF1. When the transmission is completed, the serial 1 transmission interrupt SC1TIRQ is generated.

■ Reception

Once the start condition is received, reception is started after the transfer bit counter that counts transfer bit is cleared. When the reception is completed, the serial 1 reception interrupt SC1RIRQ is generated.

■ Duplex communication

On duplex communication, the transmission and reception can be operated separately at the same time. The frame mode and parity bit of the used data on transmission / reception should have the same polarity.

■ Transfer Bit Count Setup

The transfer bit count is automatically set after the frame mode is specified by the SC1FM1 to 0 flag of the SC1MD2 register. If the SC1CMD flag of the SC1MD1 register is set to "1", and UART communication is selected, the setup by the synchronous serial transfer bit count selection flag SC1LNG2 to 0 is no longer valid.

■ Data Input Pin Setup

2 channels type, data output pin (TXD1 pin), data input pin (RXD1 pin, or 1 channel type, data I/O pin (TXD1 pin) can be selected as a communication mode. The RXD1 pin can be used only for serial data input. The TXD1 pin can be used for serial data input or output. Whether the serial data is input from RXD1 or TXD1, it can be selected by the SC1IOM flag of the SC1MD1 register. When "data input from TXD1 pin" is selected to set the 1 channel communication, transmission / reception can be switched by the TXD0 pin direction control. For TXD0A pin, it can be done by the PADIR2 flag of the PADIR register. For TXD0B, by the P7DIR5 flag of the P7DIR register. At the same time, the RXD1 pin can be used as a general port.

■ Reception Buffer Empty Flag

When SC1RIRQ is generated, data is stored automatically to RXBUF1 from the internal shift register. When data is stored to RXBUF1 from the shift register, the reception buffer empty flag SC1REMP of the SC1STR register is set to "1". That indicates that the received data is going to be read out. SC1REMP is cleared to "0" by reading out the data of RXBUF1.

■ Reception BUSY Flag

When the start condition is recognized, the SC1RBSY flag of the SC1STR register is set to "1". When the reception complete interrupt SC1TIRQ is generated, the flag is cleared to “0”. If the SC1SBIS flag is set to "0" during reception, the SC1RBSY flag is reset to "0".

■ Transmission BUSY Flag

When data is set to TXBUF1, the SC1TBSY flag of the SC1STR register is set to "1". When the transmission complete interrupt SC1TIRQ is generated, the flag is cleared to "0". During continuous communication, the SC1TBSY flag is always set. If the transmission buffer empty flag SC1TEMP is set to "0" as the transmission complete interrupt SC1TIRQ is generated, the SC1TBSY is cleared to "0". If the SC1SBOS flag is set to "0", the SC1TBSY flag is reset to "0".

■ Frame Mode and Parity Check Setup

Figure 11-3-17 shows the data format at UART communication.

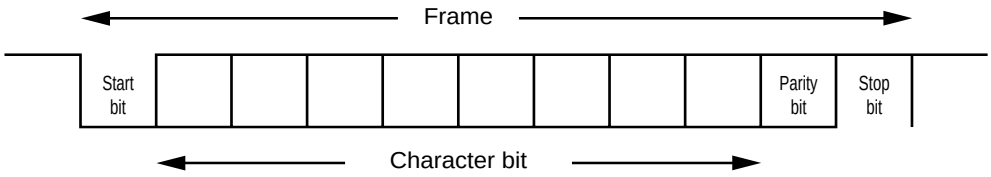


Figure:12.3.17 UART Serial Interface Transmission / Reception Data Format

The transmission / reception data consists of start bit, character bit, parity bit and stop bit. Table:12.3.16 shows its types to be set.

Table:12.3.16 UART Serial Interface Transmission / Reception Data

Start bit	1 bit
Character bit	7,8 bit
Parity bit	fixed to 0, fixed to 1, odd, even, none
Stop bit	1,2 bits

The SC1FM1 to 0 flag of the SC1MD2 register sets the frame mode. Table:12.3.17 shows the UART serial interface frame mode settings. If the SC1CMD flag of the SC1MD1 register is set to "1", and UART communication is selected, the transfer bit count on the SC1LNG2 to 0 flag of the SC1MD0 register is no longer valid.

Table:12.3.17 UART Serial Interface Frame Mode

SC1MD2 register		Frame mode
SC1FM1	SC1FM0	
0	0	Character bit 7 bits + Stop bit 1 bit
0	1	Character bit 7 bits + Stop bit 2 bits
1	0	Character bit 8 bits + Stop bit 1 bit
1	1	Character bit 8 bits + Stop bit 2 bits

Parity bit is to detect wrong bits with transmission / reception data. Table:12.3.18 shows types of parity bit. The SC1NPE, SC1PM1 to 0 flag of the SC1MD2 register set parity bit.

Table:12.3.18 Parity Bit of UART Serial Interface

SC1MD2			Parity bit	Setup
SC1NPE	SC1PM1	SC1PM0		
0	0	0	Fixed to 0	Set parity bit to "0"
0	0	1	Fixed to 1	Set parity bit to "1"
0	1	0	Odd parity	Control that the total of "1" of parity bit and character bit should be odd
0	1	1	Even parity	Control that the total of "1" of parity bit and character bit should be even
1	-	-	None	Do not add parity bit

■ Break Status Transmission Control Setup

The SC1BRKE flag of the SC1MD2 register generates the brake status. If SC1BRKE is set to "1" to select the brake transmission, all bits from start bits to stop bits transfer "0".

■ Reception Error

At reception, there are 3 types of error; overrun error, parity error and framing error. Reception error can be determined by the SC1ORE, SC1PEK, SC1FEF flag of the SC1STR register. Even one of those errors is detected, the SC1ERE flag of the SC1STR register is set to "1". Among reception error flags, the SC1PEK and the SC1FEF flags are renewed when the reception complete interrupt SC1RIRQ is generated. The SC1ORE flag is cleared at the same time of next communication complete interrupt SC1RIRQ generation after the data of the RXBUF1 is read out. The decision of the received error flag should be operated before the next communication is finished. Those error flag has no effect on communication operation. Table:12.3.19 shows the list of reception error source.

Table:12.3.19 Reception Error Source of UART Serial Interface

Flag	Error		
SC1ORE	Overrun error	Next data is received before reading the receive buffer	
SC1PEK	Parity error	at fixed to 0	when parity bit is "1"
		at fixed to 1	When parity bit is "0"
		Odd parity	The total of "1" of parity bit and character bit is even
		Even parity	The total of "1" of parity bit and character bit is odd
SC1FEF	Framing error	Stop bit is not detected	

■ Judgement of Break Status Reception

Reception at break status can be judge. If all received data from start bit and stop bit is "0", the SC1BRKF flag of the SC1MD2 register is set and determines the break status. The SC1BRKF flag is set when the reception complete interrupt SC1RIRQ is generated.

■ Continuous Communication

This serial interface has continuous communication function. When data is set to the transmission data buffer TXBUF1 during communication, the transmission buffer empty flag SC1TEMP is automatically set to communicate continuously. This does not generate any blank in communication. Set data to TXBUF between previous data setup and generation of the communication complete interrupt SC1TIRQ.

■ Clock Setup

Transfer clock is not necessary for UART communication itself, but necessary for setup of data transmission / reception timing in the serial interface.

Select the timer to be used as a baud rate timer by the SC1MD3 register.

■ Reception Bit Count and First Transfer Bit

At reception, when the transfer bit count is 7 bits, the data storing method to the received data buffer RXBUF1 is different depending on the first transfer bit selection. At MSB first, data is stored to the upper bits of RXBUF1. When the transfer bit count is 7 bits, as shown on Figure:12.3.18, data "G" to "A" are stored to bp7 to bp1 of RXBUF1 in this order. At LSB first, data is stored to the lower bits of RXBUF1. When the transfer bit count is 7 bits, as shown on Figure:12.3.19, data "A" to "G" are stored to bp0 to bp6 of RXBUF1 in this order.

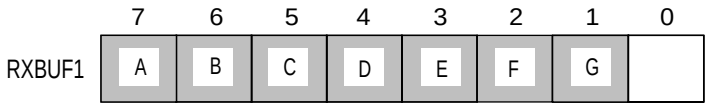


Figure:12.3.18 Reception Bit Count and First Transfer Bit (starting with MSB)

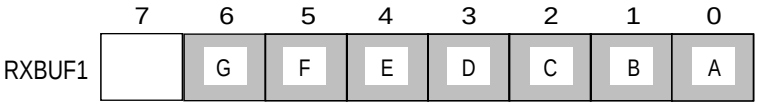


Figure:12.3.19 Reception Bit Count and First Transfer Bit (starting with LSB)

The following items are the same as clock synchronous serial.

■ First Transfer Bit Setup

Refer to:XII-14

■ Transmission Data Buffer

Refer to:XII-15

■ Reception Data Buffer

Refer to:XII15

■ Transmission Bit Count and First Transfer Bit

Refer to:XII-16

■ Transmission Buffer Empty Flag

Refer to:XII-19

■ Emergency Reset

Refer to:XII-20

■ Transmission Timing

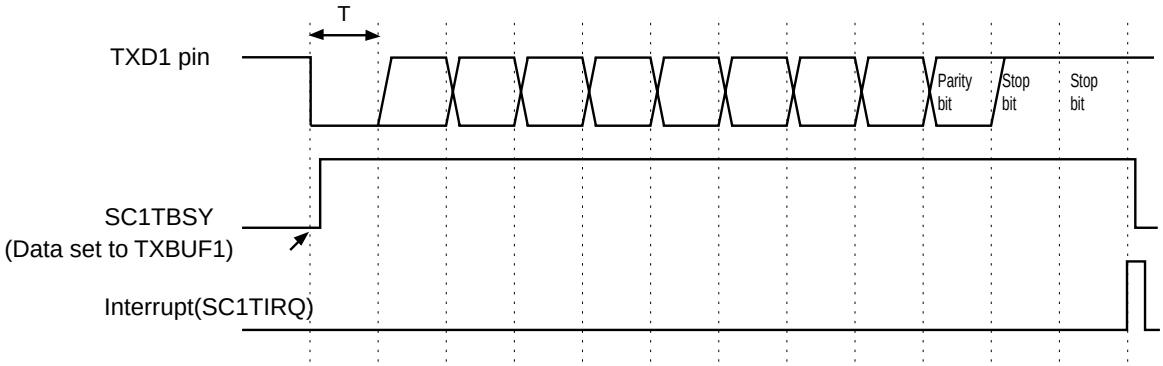


Figure:12.3.20 Transmission Timing (parity bit is enabled)

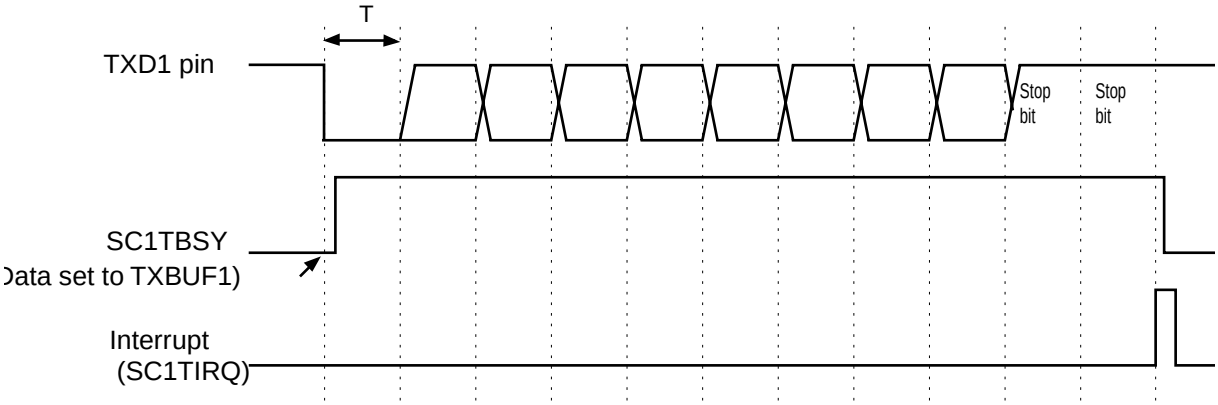


Figure:12.3.21 Transmission Timing (parity bit is disabled)

■ Reception Timing

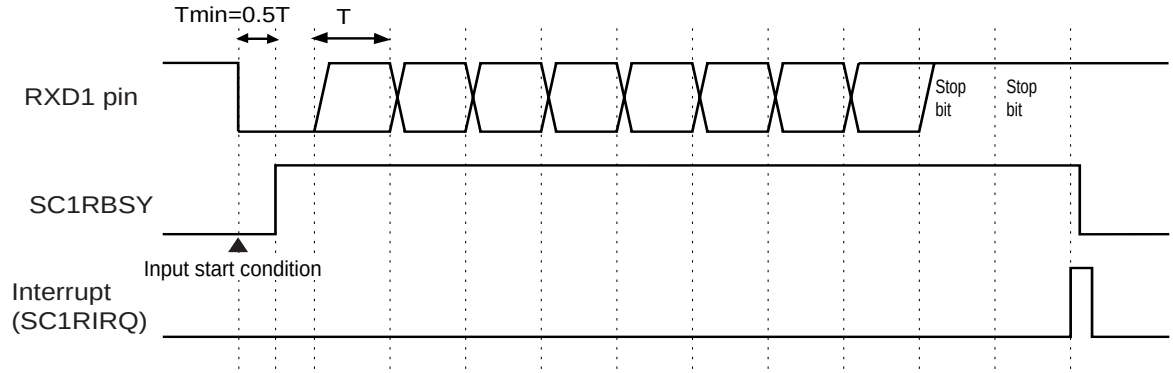


Figure:12.3.22 Reception Timing (parity bit is enabled)

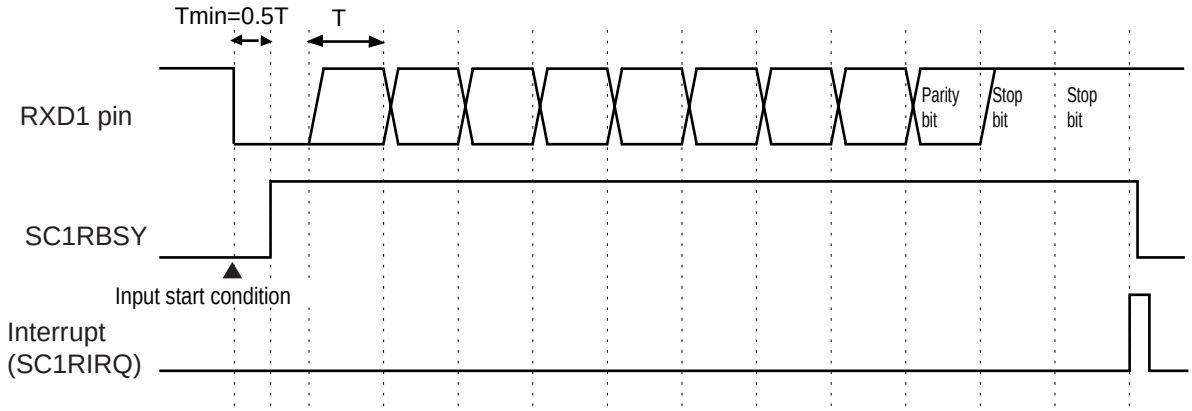


Figure:12.3.23 Reception Timing (parity bit is disabled)

■ Transfer Speed Setup

Baud rate timer (timer 1 , timer 2) can set any transfer rate. Table:12.3.20 shows the setup example of the transfer speed.

Table:12.3.20 UART Serial Interface Transfer Speed

Setup	Register	Page
Serial 1 clock source (timer 1 , timer 2)	SC1MD3	XII-10
Clock source dividing	SC1MD1	XII- 8
Timer 1 clock source	TM1MD	V- 15
Timer 1 compare register	TM1OC	V- 12
Timer 2 clock source	TM2MD	V- 16
Timer 2 compare register	TM20C	V- 12

Timer compare register is set as follows;

baud rate = 1 / (overflow cycle × 2 × internal clock dividing)

overflow cycle = (set value of compare register + 1) × timer clock cycle

therefore,

set value of compare register = timer clock frequency / (baud rate × 2 × internal clock dividing) - 1

For example, if baud rate should be 300 bps at timer clock source fs/4 (fosc = 8 MHz, fs = fosc/2) when the internal clock dividing is set to 8, set value should be as follows:

Set value of compare register = $(8 \times 10^6 / 2 / 4) / (300 \times 2 \times 8) - 1$

= 207

= 0xCF

Timer clock source and the set value of timer compare register at the standard rate are shown in the following page.

Transfer rate should not exceed 300 kbps.

Table:12.3.21 Setup Value of Serial Interface Transfer Speed 1 : When Setting UART Inter Clock to "Divided by 8" (decimal)

		Transfer speed (bit/s)									
fosc (MHz)	Clock source (Timer)	300		960		1200		2400		4800	
		Set value	Calculated value	Set value	Calculated value	Set value	Calculated value	Set value	Calculated value	Set value	Calculated value
2.00	fosc	-	-	129	962	103	1202	51	2404	25	4808
	fosc/4	103	300	-	-	25	1202	12	2404	-	-
	fosc/16	25	300	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/32	12	300	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/64	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	103	300	-	-	25	1202	12	2404	-	-
	fs/4	51	300	-	-	12	1202	-	-	-	-
4.00	fosc	-	-	-	-	207	1202	103	2404	51	4808
	fosc/4	207	300	64	962	51	1202	25	2404	12	4808
	fosc/16	51	300	-	-	12	1202	-	-	-	-
	fosc/32	25	300	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/64	12	300	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	207	300	64	962	51	1202	25	2404	12	4808
	fs/4	104	297	-	-	25	1202	12	2404	-	-
4.19	fosc	-	-	-	-	217	1201	108	2403	54	4761
	fosc/4	217	300	67	963	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/16	-	-	16	963	-	-	6	2338	-	-
	fosc/32	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/64	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	217	300	67	963	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/4	108	300	33	963	-	-	13	2338	-	-
8.00	fosc	-	-	-	-	-	-	207	2404	103	4808
	fosc/4	-	-	129	962	103	1202	51	2404	25	4808
	fosc/16	103	300	-	-	25	1202	12	2404	-	-
	fosc/32	51	300	-	-	12	1202	-	-	-	-
	fosc/64	25	300	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	-	-	129	962	103	1202	51	2404	25	4808
	fs/4	207	300	64	962	51	1202	25	2404	12	4808
8.38	fosc	-	-	-	-	-	-	217	2403	108	4805
	fosc/4	-	-	135	963	108	1201	-	-	-	-
	fosc/16	108	300	33	963	-	-	13	2338	-	-
	fosc/32	-	-	16	963	-	-	6	2338	-	-
	fosc/64	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	-	-	135	963	108	1201	-	-	-	-
	fs/4	217	300	67	963	-	-	-	-	-	-
10.00	fosc	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	129	4808
	fosc/4	-	-	162	959	129	1202	64	2404	-	-
	fosc/16	129	300	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/32	64	300	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/64	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	-	-	162	959	129	1202	64	2404	-	-
	fs/4	-	-	-	-	64	1202	-	-	-	-

Table:12.3.22 Setup Value of Serial Interface Transfer Speed 2 : When Setting UART Inter Clock to "Divided by 8" (decimal)

		Transfer speed (bit/s)									
fosc (MHz)	Clock source (Timer)	300		960		1200		2400		4800	
		Set value	Calculated value	Set value	Calculated value	Set value	Calculated value	Set value	Calculated value	Set value	Calculated value
2.00	fosc	12	9615	-	-	-	-	3	31250	-	-
	fosc/4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/16	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/32	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/64	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
4.00	fosc	25	9615	12	19231	-	-	7	31250	-	-
	fosc/4	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	31250	-	-
	fosc/16	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/32	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/64	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	31250	-	-
	fs/4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
4.19	fosc	26	9699	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/16	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/32	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/64	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
8.00	fosc	51	9615	25	19231	-	-	15	31250	12	38462
	fosc/4	12	9615	-	-	-	-	3	31250	-	-
	fosc/16	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/32	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/64	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	12	9615	-	-	-	-	3	31250	-	-
	fs/4	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	31250	-	-
8.38	fosc	54	9523	26	19398	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/16	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/32	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/64	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
10.00	fosc	64	9615	-	-	-	-	-	31250	-	-
	fosc/4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	31250	-	-
	fosc/16	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/32	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/64	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	31250	-	-
	fs/4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Table:12.3.23 Setup Value of Serial Interface Transfer Speed 1 : When Setting UART Inter Clock to "Divided by 16" (decimal)

		Transfer speed (bit/s)									
fosc (MHz)	Clock source (Timer)	300		960		1200		2400		4800	
		Set value	Calculated value	Set value	Calculated value	Set value	Calculated value	Set value	Calculated value	Set value	Calculated value
2.00	fosc	-	-	64	962	51	1202	25	2404	12	4808
	fosc/4	51	300	-	-	12	1202	-	-	-	-
	fosc/16	12	300	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/32	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/64	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	51	300	-	-	12	1202	-	-	-	-
	fs/4	25	300	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
4.00	fosc	-	-	129	962	103	1202	51	2404	25	4808
	fosc/4	103	300	-	-	25	1202	12	2404	-	-
	fosc/16	25	300	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/32	12	300	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/64	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	103	300	-	-	25	1202	12	2404	-	-
	fs/4	51	300	-	-	12	1202	-	-	-	-
4.19	fosc	-	-	135	963	108	1201	54	2381	-	-
	fosc/4	108	300	33	963	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/16	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/32	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/64	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	108	300	33	963	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/4	54	298	16	963	-	-	-	-	-	-
8.00	fosc	-	-	-	-	207	1202	103	2404	51	4808
	fosc/4	207	300	64	962	51	1202	25	2404	12	4808
	fosc/16	51	300	-	-	12	1202	-	-	-	-
	fosc/32	25	300	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/64	12	300	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	207	300	64	962	51	1202	25	2404	12	4808
	fs/4	103	300	-	-	25	1202	12	2404	-	-
8.38	fosc	-	-	-	-	217	1201	108	2403	54	4761
	fosc/4	217	300	67	963	54	1190	-	-	-	-
	fosc/16	54	298	16	963	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/32	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/64	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	217	300	67	963	54	1190	-	-	-	-
	fs/4	108	300	33	963	-	-	-	-	-	-
10.00	fosc	-	-	-	-	-	-	129	2404	64	4808
	fosc/4	-	-	80	965	64	1202	-	-	-	-
	fosc/16	64	300	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/32	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/64	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	-	-	80	965	64	1202	-	-	-	-
	fs/4	129	300	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Table:12.3.24 Setup Value of Serial Interface Transfer Speed 2 : When Setting UART Inter Clock to "Divided by 16" (decimal)

		Transfer speed (bit/s)									
fosc (MHz)	Clock source (Timer)	300		960		1200		2400		4800	
		Set value	Calculated value	Set value	Calculated value	Set value	Calculated value	Set value	Calculated value	Set value	Calculated value
2.00	fosc	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	31250	-	-
	fosc/4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/16	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/32	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/64	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
4.00	fosc	12	9615	-	-	-	-	3	31250	-	-
	fosc/4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/16	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/32	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/64	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
4.19	fosc	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/16	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/32	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/64	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
8.00	fosc	25	9615	12	19231	-	-	7	31250	-	-
	fosc/4	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	31250	-	-
	fosc/16	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/32	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/64	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	31250	-	-
	fs/4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
8.38	fosc	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/16	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/32	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/64	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
10.00	fosc	-	-	-	-	-	-	9	31250	-	-
	fosc/4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/16	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/32	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fosc/64	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	fs/4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

■ Pin Setup (with 1,2 channels, at transmission)

Table:12.3.25 shows the pins setup at UART serial interface transmission. The pins setup is common to the TXD1 pin, RXD1 pin, regardless of whether the pins are independent / connected.

Table:12.3.25 UART Serial Interface Pin Setup (with 1,2 channels, at transmission)

Setup item	Data output pin	Data input pin
	TXD1 pin	RXD1 pin
Port pin	P15/PA5	P16/PA4
Port pin setup	Select used pin (A, B)	
	SCSEL (SC1SL)	
Serial data input selection	RXD1	
	SC1MD1(SC1IOM)	
Function	Serial data output	"1" output
	SC1MD1(SC1SBOS)	SC1MD1(SC1SBIS)
Style	Push-pull/ Nch open-drain	-
	P1ODC(P1ODC5)/PAODC(PAODC5)	
I/O	Output mode	-
	P1DIR(P1DIR5)/PADIR(PADIR5)	
Pull-up setup	Added / not added	-
	P1PLUD(P1PLUD5)/PAPLU(PAPLU5)	

■ Pin Setup (with 2 channels, at reception)

Table:12.3.26 shows the pins setup at UART serial interface reception with 2 channels (TXD1 pin, RXD1pin).

Table:12.3.26 UART Serial Interface Pin Setup (with 2 channels, at reception)

Setup item	Data output pin	Data input pin
	TXD1 pin	RXD1 pin
Port pin	P15/PA5	P16/PA4
Port pin setup	Select used pin (A, B)	
	SCSEL (SC1SL)	
Serial data input selection	RXD1	
	SC1MD1(SC1IOM)	
Function	Port	Serial data input
	SC1MD1(SC1SBOS)	SC1MD1(SC1SBIS)
Style	-	-
I/O	-	Input mode
	-	P1DIR(P1DIR6)/ PADIR(PADIR7)
Pull-up setup	-	-

■ Pin Setup (with 1 channel, at reception)

Table:12.3.27 shows the pin setup at UART serial interface reception with 1 channel (TXD1 pin). The RXD1 pin in not used, so can be used as a port.

Table:12.3.27 UART Serial Interface Pin Setup (with 1 channel, at reception)

Setup item	Data output pin	Data input pin
	TXD1 pin	RXD1 pin
Port pin	P15/PA5	P16/PA4
Port pin setup	Select used pin (A, B)	
	SCSEL (SC1SL)	
Serial data input selection	TXD1	
	SC1MD1(SC1IOM)	
Function	Port	Serial data input
	SC1MD1(SC1SBOS)	SC1MD1(SC1SBIS)
Style	-	-
I/O	Input mode	-
	P1DIR(P1DIR5)/PADIR(PADIR5)	-
Pull-up setup	-	-

■ Pin Setup (with 2 channels, at transmission / reception)

Table:12.3.28 shows the pin setup at UART serial interface transmission / reception with 2 channels (TXD1 pin, RXD1 pin).

Table:12.3.28 UART Serial Interface Pin Setup (with 2 channels, at transmission / reception)

Setup item	Data output pin	Data input pin
	TXD1 pin	RXD1 pin
Port pin	P15/PA5	P16/PA4
Port pin setup	Select used pin (A, B)	
	SCSEL (SC1SL)	
Serial data input selection	RXD1	
	SC1MD1(SC1IOM)	
Function	Serial data output	Serial data input
	SC1MD1(SC1SBOS)	SC1MD1(SC1SBIS)
Style	Push-pull/ Nch open-drain	-
	P1ODC(P1ODC5)/PAODC(PAODC5)	
I/O	Output mode	Input mode
	P1DIR(P1DIR5)/PADIR(PADIR5)	P1DIR(P1DIR6)/ PADIR(PADIR7)
Pull-up setup	Added / not added	-
	P1PLUD(P1PLUD5)/PAPLU(PAPLU5)	

12.3.4 Setup Example

■ Transmission / Reception Setup

The setup example at UART transmission / reception with serial 1 is shown. Table:12.3.29 shows the condition at transmission / reception.

Table:12.3.29 UART Interface Transmission Reception Setup

Setup item	SEt to
TXD1/RXD1 pin	Independent (with 2 channels)
Frame mode specification	8 bits + 2 stop bits
First transfer bit	MSB
Clock source	Timer 1
Clock source dividing	Divided by 8
Used pin	A (port 1)
TXD1/RXD1 pin type	Nch open-drain
Pull-up resistor of TXD1 pin	Added
Parity bit add/check	"0" added/check
Serial 1 transmission complete interrupt	Enable
Serial 1 reception complete interrupt	Enable

An example setup procedure, with a description of each step is shown below.

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Set the baud rate timer	(1) Set the baud rate timer by the TM1MD register, the TM1OC register. Set the TM1EN flag to "1" to start timer 1. [Chapter 5 5.8 Serial Transfer Clock Output Operation]
(2) Select the clock source SC1MD3(0x03F9C) bp2-0 :SC1PSC2-0 =110	(2) Set the bp2 to 0 flag of the SC1MD3 register to "110" to select Timer 1 output as a clock source.
(3) Select the used pin SCSEL(0x03F90) bp1 :SC1SL =0	(3) Set the SC1SL flag of the SCSEL register to "0" to select A (port 1) as I/O pin.
(4) Control the pin style P1ODC(0x03F1B) bp5:P1ODC5=1 P1PLUD(0x03F41) bp5:P1PLU5=1	(4) Set the P1ODC5 flag of the P1ODC register to "1" to select Nch open-drain to TXD1 pin. Set the P1PLUD5 flag of the P1PLUD register to "1" to enable the pull-up resistor.

Setup Procedure	Description
(5) Control the pin direction P1DIR(0x03F31) bp5 :P1DIR5 =1 bp6 :P1DIR6 =0	(5) Set the P1DIR5 flag of the Port 1 pin direction control register (P1DIR) to "1" and the P1DIR6 flag to "0" to set P15 to the output mode, P16 to the input mode.
(6) Set the SC1MD0 register Select the start condition SC1MD0(0x03F99) bp3 :SC1STE =1	(6) Set the SC1STE flag of the SC1MD0 register to "1" to enable start condition.
Select the first bit to be transferred SC1MD0(0x03F99) bp4 :SC1DIR =0	Set the SC1DIR flag of the SC1MD0 register to "0" to select MSB as first transfer bit.
(7) Set the SC1MD2 register Control the output data SC1MD2(0x03F9B) bp0 :SC1BRKE =0	(7) Set the SC1BRKE flag of the SC1MD2 register to "0" to select the serial data transmission.
Select the added parity bit SC1MD2(0x03F9B) bp3 :SC1NPE =0 bp5-4 :SC1PM1-0 =00	Set the SC1PM1 to 0 flag of the SC1MD2 register to "00" to select 0 parity, and set the SC1NPE flag to "0" to enable add parity bit.
Specify the flame mode SC1MD2(0x03F9B) bp7-6 :SC1FM1-0 =11	Set the SC1FM1 to 0 flag of the SC1MD2 register to "11" to select 8 bits + 2 stop bits at the flame mode.
(8) Set the SC1MD1 register Select the communication type SC1MD1(0x03F9A) bp0 :SC1CMD =1	(8) Set the SC1CMD flag of the SC1MD1 register to "1" to select duplex UART.
Select the clock frequency SC1MD1(0x03F9A) bp3 :SC1CKM =1 bp2 :SC1MST =1 bp1 :SC1DIV =0	Set the SC1CKM flag of the SC1MD1 register to "1" to select "divided" at source clock. Set the SC1DIV flag to “0” to select “divided by 8” as source clock. The SC1MST flag should always be set to "1" to select clock master.
Control the pin function SC1MD1(0x03F9A) bp4 :SC1SBOS =1 bp5 :SC1SBIS =1 bp7 :SC1IOM =0	Set the SC1SBOS, SC1SBIS flag of the SC1MD1 register to "1" to set the RXD1 pin to serial data output and the RXD1 pin to serial data input.
(9) Enable the interrupt SC1RICR(0x03FF1) bp1 :SC1RIE =1 SC1TICR(0x03FF2) bp1 :SC1TIE =1	(9) Set the SC1RIE flag of the SC1RICR register to "1", and SC1TIE flag of the SC1TICR register to "1" to enable the interrupt request. If the interrupt request is already set, clear it.

Setup Procedure	Description
(10) Start the serial transmission The transmission → TXBUF1(0x03F9F) The reception data → input to RXD1	(10) When the transmission data is set to the serial transmission data buffer (TXBUF1), the transmission is started. When the transmission is finished, the serial 1 transmission interrupt (SC1TIRQ) is generated. Also, after the received data is stored to the RXBUF1, the serial 1 reception interrupt (SC1RIRQ) is generated.

Note:(6), (7), (8) can be set at the same time.

When the TXD1 / RXD1 pin are connected for communication with 1 channel, serial data is input/output from the TXD1 pin. Input/output can be switched by the port direction control register P1DIR. At reception, set SC1SBIOS of the SC1MD1 register to "1" to select serial data input. The RXD1 pin can be used as a general port.

This serial interface contains emergency reset function. If communication need to be stopped by force, set SC1SBOS and SC1SBIS of the SC1MD1 register to "0".

Each flag should be set as the setup procedure in order. Activation of communication should be operated after all control registers (refer to Table:12.2.1 TXBUF1, RXBUF1) are set.

Timer 1 and timer 2 can be used as a baud rate timer. Refer to Chapter 5 5.8 Serial Transfer Clock Output Operation.

Chapter 13 Serial Interface 3

13

13.1 Overview

This LSI contains a serial interface 3 that is capable of both clock synchronous / IIC (single master) serial communication.

13.1.1 Functions

Table:13.1.1 shows the serial interface 3 functions.

Table:13.1.1 Serial Interface 3 Functions

Communication style	Clock synchronous	IIC (single master)
Interrupt	SC3IRQ	SC3IRQ
Pins	SBO3,SBI3,SBT3	SDA3,SCL3
3 channels type	O	-
2 channels type	O (SBO3,SBT3)	O
Transfer bit count	1 to 8 bit	1 to 8 bit
Start condition	O	O
First transfer bit	O	O
Input edge / Output edge	O	-
SBO3 output control after final data is transferred	H/L/ last data hold	-
Function in STANDBY mode	Slave reception only	-
ACK bit	-	O
ACK bit level	-	O
Clock sources	fosc/2 fosc/4 fosc/8 fosc/32 fs/2 fs/4 external clock timer 2 output timer 3 output	fosc/2 fosc/4 fosc/8 fosc/32 fs/2 fs/4 timer 2 output timer 3 output
Maximum transfer rate	5.0 MHz	NORMAL mode: 100 kHz High speed mode: 400 kHz
fosc : machine clock (for high speed oscillation) fs : system clock In IIC communication, transfer clock is obtained by dividing the clock source by 8.		

13.1.2 Block Diagram

■ Serial Interface 3 Block Diagram

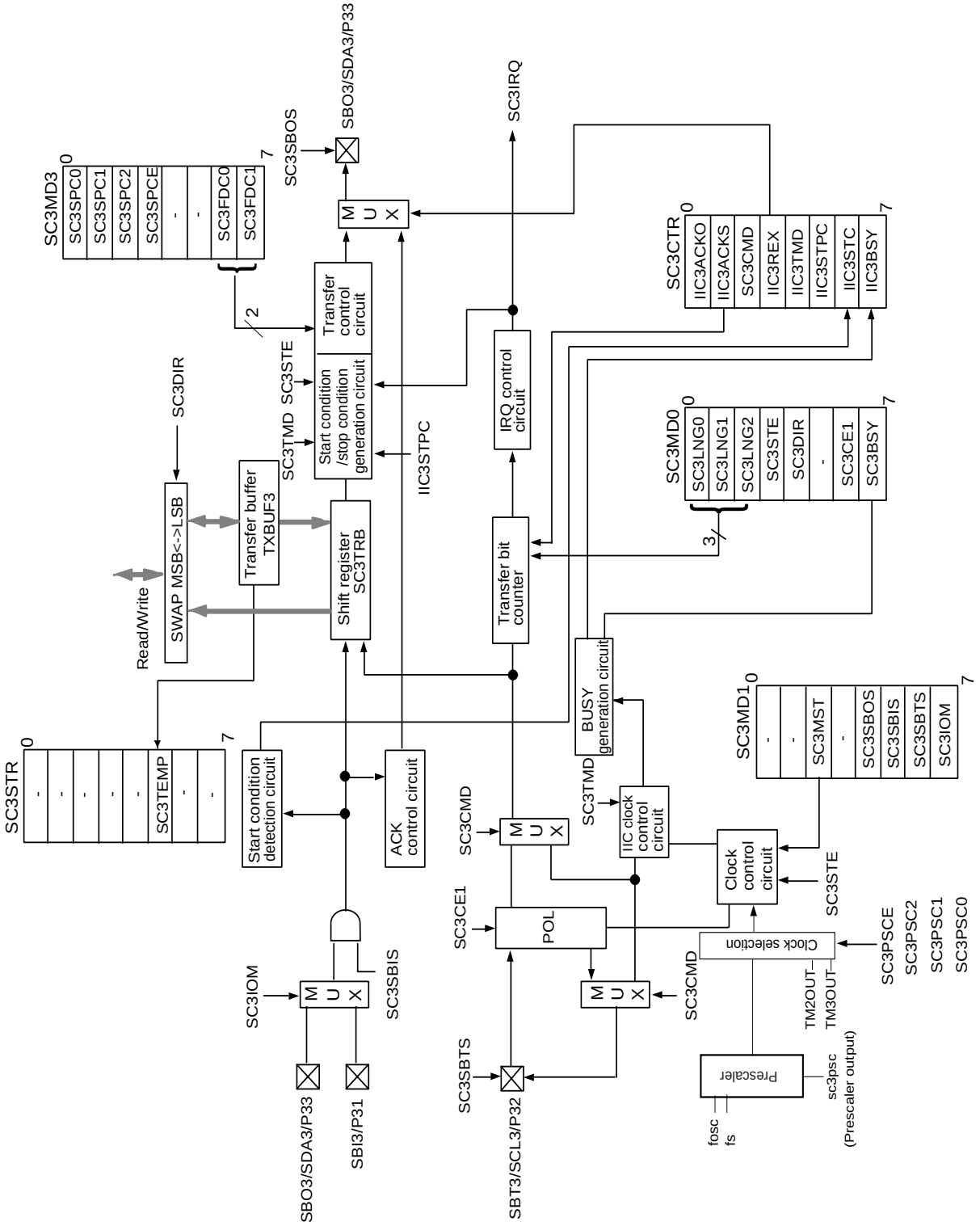


Figure:13.1.1 Serial Interface 3 Block Diagram

13.2 Control Registers

13.2.1 Registers List

Table:13.2.1 shows the registers that control serial interface 3.

Table:13.2.1 Serial Interface 3 Control Registers List

Register	Address	R/W	Function	Page
SC3MD0	0x03FA0	R/W	Serial interface 3 mode register 0	XIII-6
SC3MD1	0x03FA1	R/W	Serial interface 3 mode register 1	XIII-7
SC3MD3	0x03FA2	R/W	Serial interface 3 mode register 3	XIII-8
SC3STR	0x03FA3	R	Serial interface 3 status register	XIII-9
SC3TRB	0x03FA4	R	Serial interface 3 transmission/reception shift register	XIII-5
TXBUF3	0x03FA5	R/W	Serial interface 3 transmission data buffer	XIII-5
SC3CTR	0x03FA6	R/W	Serial interface 3 control register	XIII-10
P3ODC	0x03F3B	R/W	Port 3 N-ch open drain control register	IV-30
P3DIR	0x03F33	R/W	Port 3 direction control register	IV-27
P3PLU	0x03F43	R/W	Port 3 pull-up control register	IV-28
SC3ICR	0x03FF3	R/W	Serial interface 3 interrupt control register	III-36

R /W : Readable / Writable

R : Readable

13.2.2 Data Buffer Register

Serial interface 3 has a 8-bit serial data buffer register for transmission.

■ Serial Interface 3 Transmission Data Buffer (TXBUF3: 0x03FA5)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TXBUF37	TXBUF36	TXBUF35	TXBUF34	TXBUF33	TXBUF32	TXBUF31	TXBUF30
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

13.2.3 Data Register

Serial interface 3 has a 8-bit serial data register.

■ Serial Interface 3 Transmission / Reception Shift Register (SC3TRB: 0x03FA4)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	SC3TRB7	SC3TRB6	SC3TRB5	SC3TRB4	SC3TRB3	SC3TRB2	SC3TRB1	SC3TRB0
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

13.2.4 Serial interface 3 Mode Register

■ Serial Interface 3 Mode Register 0 (SC3MD0: 0x03FA0)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	SC3BSY	SC3CE1	-	SC3DIR	SC3STE	SC3LNG2	SC3LNG1	SC3LNG0
At reset	0	0	-	0	0	1	1	1
Access	R	R/W	-	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7	SC3BSY	Serial bus status in clock synchronous communication 0: Other use 1: Serial transnission is in progress
6	SC3CE1	Transmission data output edge Reception data input edge 0: Falling Rising 1: Rising Falling
5	-	-
4	SC3DIR	First bit to be transferred 0: MSB first 1: LSB first
3	SC3STE	Start condition 0: Disable start condition 1: Enable start condition
2-0	SC3LNG2 SC3LNG1 SC3LNG0	Transfer bit count 000: 1 bit 001: 2 bit 010: 3 bit 011: 4 bit 100: 5 bit 101: 6 bit 110: 7 bit 111: 8 bit

■ Serial interface 3 Mode Register 1 (SC3MD1: 0x03FA1)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	SC3IOM	SC3SBTS	SC3SBIS	SC3SBOS	-	SC3MST	-	-
At reset	0	0	0	0	-	0	-	-
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	-	R/W	-	-

bp	Flag	Description
7	SC3IOM	Serial data input selection 0: Data input from SBI3 1: Data input from SBO3 (SDA3)
6	SC3SBTS	SBT3 pin function 0: Port 1: Transfer clock input / output
5	SC3SBIS	Serial input control 0: "1" input 1: Serial data input
4	SC3SBOS	SBO3(SDA3) pin function 0: Port 1: Serial data output
3	-	-
2	SC3MST	Clock master / slave selection 0: Slave 1: Master
1-0	-	-

■ Serial interface 3 Mode Register 3 (SC3MD3: 0x03FA2)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	SC3FDC1	SC3FDC0	-	-	SC3PSCE	SC3PSC2	SC3PSC1	SC3PSC0
At reset	0	0	-	-	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	-	-	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7-6	SC3FDC1 SC3FDC0	SBO3 output selection after transfer of last data 00: Fixed to "1"(High) output 01: Hold last data 10: Fixed to "0"(Low) output 11: Reserved
5-4	-	-
3	SC3PSCE	Prescaler count control 0: Disable the count 1: Enable the count
2-0	SC3PSC2 SC3PSC1 SC3PSC0	Clock selection 000: fosc/2 001: fosc/4 010: fosc/8 011: fosc/32 100: fs/2 101: fs/4 110: timer 2 output 111: timer 3 output

■ Serial interface 3 Status Register (SC3STR: 0x03FA3)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	-	SC3TEMP	-	-	-	-	-
At reset	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	-
Access	-	-	R	-	-	-	-	-

bp	Flag	Description
7-6	-	-
5	SC3TEMP	Transfer buffer empty flag 0: Empty 1: Full
4-0	-	-

■ Serial interface 3 Control Register (SC3CTR: 0x03FA6)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	IIC3BSY	IIC3STC	IIC3STPC	IIC3TMD	IIC3REX	SC3CMD	IIC3ACKS	IIC3ACK0
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7	IIC3BSY	Serial bus status in IIC communication 0: Other use 1: Serial transnission is in progress
6	IIC3STC	Start condition 0: Disable start condition 1: Enable start condition *1
5	IIC3STPC	Stop condition detection flag in IIC communication *2 0: undetected 1: detected
4	IIC3TMD	Communication mode 0: NORMAL mode 1: High-speed mode
3	IIC3REX	Transmission / reception mode selection 0: Transmission 1: Reception
2	SC3CMD	Synchronous / IIC selection 0: Synchronous 1: IIC
1	IIC3ACKS	ACK bit enable 0: Disable 1: Enable
0	IIC3ACK0	ACK bit level selection *3 0: L level 1: H level

*1:"1"is not writable.
*2:"0"is not writable. Also, this is not writable at the forced reset (when the SC3SBOS flag and SC3SBIS flag of SC3MD1register are "0").
*3:The written value is readable only after IIC communication is generated.

13.3 Operation

Serial interface 3 is used as both clock synchronous /single master IIC serial interface.

13.3.1 Clock Synchronous Serial Interface

■ Activation Factor for Communication

Table:13.3.1 shows the activation source for communication. At master, a transfer clock is generated by setting data to the transfer data buffer TXBUF3, or by enabling start condition. Signals input from SBT3 pin inside serial interface are masked to prevent operating errors by noise, except during communication. This mask is automatically released by setting data to TXBUF3 (access to the TXBUF3 register), or enabling start condition to the data input pin. Therefore, at slave communication, set data to TXBUF3 or input start condition before input external clock.

However, the external clock should be input after more than 3.5 transfer clock interval after the data set to TXBUF3. This wait time is needed to load the data from TXBUF3 to the internal shift register.

Table:13.3.1 Synchronous Serial Interface Activation Factor and Cautions

Clock	Communication type	Start condition	Activation source of communication
Master	Transmission	Enabled	Set transmission data (*1)
		Disabled	Set transmission data(*2)
	Reception	Enabled	Input start condition(*3) or Set dummy data(*2)
		Disabled	Set dummy data (*2)
	Transmission/ Reception	Enabled	-(*4)
		Disabled	Set transmission data(*2)
Slave	Transmission	Enabled	Input clock after transmission data is set (*5)
		Disabled	Input clock after transmission data is set (*6)
	Reception	Enabled	Input clock after start condition is input (*7) or Input clock after dummy data is set (*6)
		Disabled	Input clock after dummy data is set (*6)
	Transmission/ Reception	Enabled	-(*4)
		Disabled	Input clock after transmission data is set (*6)

(*1) After the start condition output, output the transfer clock 1 transfer clock later.

(*2) After setting transmission data/dummy data, the transfer clock should be output after 3.5 transfer clock at the maximum. The system configuratioin is needed so that the transmission data/dummy data are written after the master receives the information of slave data load completion.

(*3) After the start condition input, output the transfer clock after 2.5 transfer clock at the maximum. When receiving data continuously, the system configuration is needed to notify the master of the readout completion. Without the notification, the data before readout may be overwritten.

(*4) When the start condition is set to "enable", transmission and reception should not be excuted at the same time.

(*5) After setting the transmission data, output the start condition and wait until the master excutes the clock input. At the clock input, 1 or more transfer clock should be needed after the start condition output.

(*6) At the clock input, 3.5 or more transfer clock should be needed after setting transmission data/ dummy data. The system configuration is needed to notify the master of the data load completion.

(*7) At the clock input, 0.5 or more transfer clock should be needed after the start condition input. When receiving data continuously, the system configuration is needed to notify the master of the readout completion. Without the notification, the data before readout may be overwritten.

■ Transfer Bit Count Setup

The transfer bit count can be selected from 1 bit to 8 bits. Set the SC3LNG 2 to 0 flag of the SC3MD0 register (at reset : 111). The SC3LNG 2 to 0 flag holds the previous value until other value is set.

The SBT3 pin is masked inside serial interface to prevent operating errors by noise, except during communication. At slave, set data to SC3TRB or input start condition before input clock to the TXBUF3 pin.

Wait more than 3.5 transfer clocks before input the external clock after the data set to TXBUF3. Otherwise, normal operation is not guaranteed.

■ Start Condition Setup

Enable or disable of start condition can be selected with the SC3STE flag of the SC3MD0 register.

Start condition is detected when the SC3CE1 flag of the SC3MD0 register is set to "0" and data line SBI3 pin (3 channels) or SBO3 pin (2 channels) changes from "H" to "L" while the clock line (SBT3 pin) is "H". It is also detected when the SC3CE1 flag of the SC3MD0 register is set to "1" and data line SBI3 pin (3 channels) or SBO3 pin (2 channels) changes from "H" to "L" while the clock line (SBT3 pin) is "L".

Set the SC3SB0S flag of the SC3MD1 register to "0" before change the start condition edge.

When transmission and reception are executed at the same time, set the start condition to "disable" in order to prevent abnormal operation.

■ First Transfer Bit Setup

The SC3DIR flag of the SC3MD0 register sets the first bit to be transferred. LSB or MSB can be selected.

■ Transmission Data Buffer

The transfer data buffer TXBUF3 is the spare buffer which stores data to be loaded to internal shift register. Set the data to be transferred to transfer data buffer TXBUF3, and the data is automatically loaded to internal shift register. The data loading takes more than 3 transfer clocks cycles. Data setting to TXBUF3 again during data loading may not be operated properly. You can determine whether or not data loading is in progress by monitoring transfer buffer empty flag SC3TEMP of the SC3STR. SC3TEMP flag is set to "1"when data is set to TXBUF3 and cleared to "0" when data loading ends.

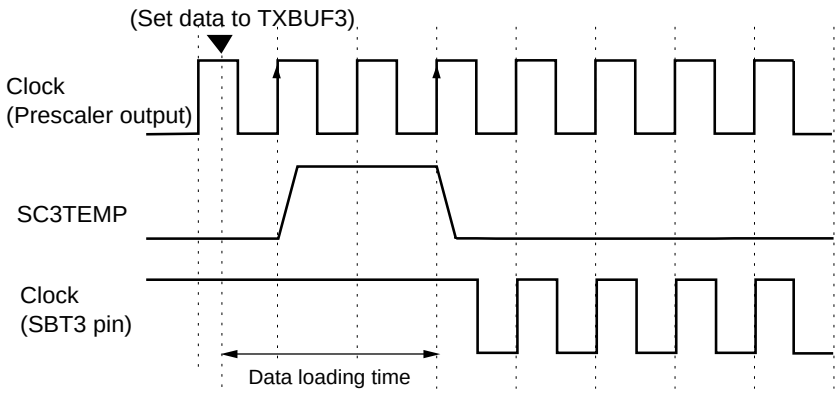


Figure:13.3.1 Transmission Data Buffer

■ Reception Data Buffer

Use transmission / reception shift register SC3TRB as reception data buffer. The received data is stored to SC3TRB shifting by 1 bit.

When the start condition is set to "enable" in the clock synchronous communication, transmission and reception should not be executed at the same time in order to prevent abnormal operation.

If start condition is input for activation during communication again, the transmission data becomes invalid. To transmit the data, set it to TXBUF3 again.

SC3TRB is overwritten in every communication. In sequence reception, read out the data in SC3TRB before the next reception is started.

■ Transmission Bit Count and First Transfer Bit

When the transfer bit count is 1 to 7 bits, data storage to the transmission /reception shift register TXBUF3 depends on the first transfer bit. When MSB is the first bit to be transferred, the lower bits of TXBUF3 are used for storage. In Figure:13.3.2, if data "A" to "F" are stored to bp2 to bp7 of SC3TRB as the transfer bit count is 6 bits, data is transferred from "F" to "A". When LSB is the first bit to be transferred, use the lower bits of TXBUF3 for storage. In Figure:13.3.3, if data "A" to "F" are stored to bp0 to bp5 of TXBUF3, as the transfer bit count is 6 bits, data is transferred from "A" to "F".

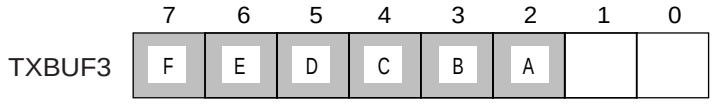


Figure:13.3.2 Transfer Bit Count and First Transfer Bit (MSB First)

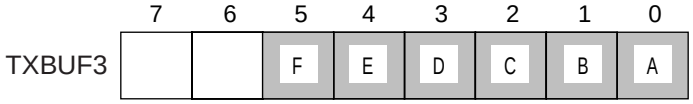


Figure:13.3.3 Transfer Bit Count and First Transfer Bit (LSB First)

■ Receive Bit Count and First Transfer Bit

When the transfer bit count is 1 to 7 bits, data storage to the transmit/receive shift register SC3TRB depends on the first transfer bit. When MSB is the first bit to be transferred, the lower bits of SC3TRB are used for storage. In Figure:13.3.4, as the transfer bit count is 6 bits, data "A" to "F" are stored to bp5 to bp0 of SC3TRB, and they are transferred from "F" to "A". When LSB is the first bit to be transferred, use the upper bits of SC3TRB for storage. In Figure:13.3.5, data "A" to "F" are stored to bp2 to bp7 of SC3TRB, as the transfer bit count is 6 bits, and they are transferred from "A" to "F".

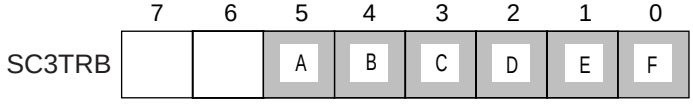


Figure:13.3.4 Receive Bit Count and First Transfer Bit (MSB First)

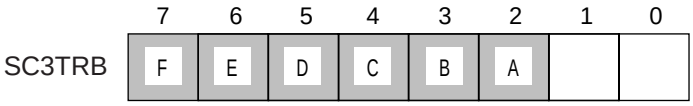


Figure:13.3.5 Receive Bit Count and First Transfer Bit (LSB First)

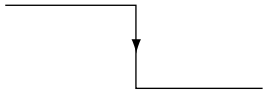
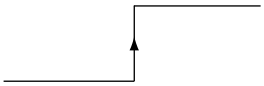
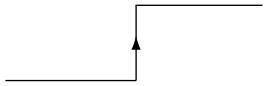
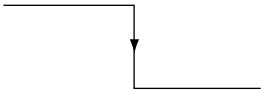
■ Continuous Transmission

Serial interface 3 is capable of continuous transmission. If data is set to transmission data buffer TXBUF3 during transmission, transmission buffer empty flag SC3TEMP is set and the set data is automatically transmit. Set data to TXBUF3 in the period that after data is loaded to internal shift register and before communication end interrupt SC3IRQ is generated. In master communication, communication blank from SC3IRQ generation to next transfer clock output is 4 transfer clock.

■ Input edge / output edge Setup

The SC3CE1 flag of the SC3MD0 register sets the output edge of the transmission data and the input edge of the received data. Data at transmission is output at the falling edge of clock as the SC3CE1 flag = "0", and at the rising edge of clock as the SC3CE1 = "1". Data at reception is input at the rising edge of clock as the SC3CE1 = "0", and at the falling edge of clock as the SC3CE1 flag = "1"

Table:13.3.2 Input Edge / Output Edge of Transmission and Reception Data

SC3CE1	Transmission data output edge	Received data input edge
0		
1		

■ Clock Setup

Clock source is selected from the dedicated prescaler and timers 2, 3 output (2 channels) with the SC3PSC3 to 0 of the SC3MD3 register. The dedicated prescaler is started by selecting "count enable" with the SC3PSCE of the SC3MD3 register. The SC3MST flag of the SC3MD1 register selects the internal clock (clock master), or the external clock (clock slave). Even if the external clock is selected, set the internal clock with same frequency to the external clock with the SC3MD3 register, as the interrupt flag SC3IRQ is generated by the internal clock. Table:13.3.3 shows the internal clock source which can be set with the SC3MD3 register.

Table:13.3.3 Synchronous Serial Interface Inside Clock Source

	Serial 3
Clock source (Internal clock)	fosc/2
	fosc/4
	fosc/8
	fosc/32
	fs/2
	fs/4
	timer 2 output
	timer 3 output

Set "0" to the SC3SBIS and SC3SBOS flags of the SC3MD register before change the clock setup.

When the slave reception is executed with the start condition "enable" at the continuous communication, the system configuration is needed to notify the master of the readout completion.Without the notification, the data before readout may be overwritten.

■ Data Input Pin Setup

There are 2 communication modes to be selected : 3 channels (clock pin (SBT3 pin), data output pin (SBO3 pin), data input pin (SBI3 pin)), 2 channels (clock pin (SBT3 pin), data I/O pin (SBO3 pin)). The SBI3 pin can be used only for serial data input. The SBO3 pin can be used for serial data input and output. The SC3IOM flag of the SC3MD1 register selects either serial data is input from the SBI3 pin, or the SBO3 pin. When "data input from the SBO3 pin" is selected for communication with 2 channels, the P3DIR3 flag of the P3DIR register is used to switch the transmission / reception of the SBO3 pin. The SBI3 pin, not used at that time, can be used as a general port.

Maximum transfer speed should be under 5.0 MHz. If transfer clock exceeds 5.0 MHz, data may not be transferred properly.

In reception, you can use SBI3 pin as general port by setting SC3IOM of the SC3MD1 register to "1" to select "serial data input from SBO3 pin".

■ Transmission Buffer Empty Flag

If any data is set to TXBUF3 during communication (after setting data to TXBUF3 before generating the communication complete interrupt SC3IRQ), the transmission buffer empty flag SC3TEMP of the SC3STR register is set to "1". That indicates that the next transmission data is going to be loaded. Data is loaded to inside shift register from TXBUF3 by generation of SC3TIRQ, and the next transfer is started as SC3TEMP is cleared to "0".

■ BUSY flag

If data is set to the transmission/reception shift register TXBUF3, or start condition is enabled, the busy flag SC3BSY is set. That is cleared to "0" by the generation of the communication end interrupt SC3IRQ. The SC3BSY flag setup is maintained during continuous communication. If transmission buffer empty flag SC3TEMP is "0" when communication end interrupt SC3IRQ is generated, SC3BSY is cleared to "0".

■ Forced Reset

You can shut down the communication by setting both of the SC3SBOS flag and the SC3SBIS flag of the SC3MD1 register to "0" (the SBO3 pin function : port, input data : input "1") and SC3BSY flag of the SC3MD0 register. When a forced reset is done, the SC3BSY flag of the SC3MD0 register is cleared, but other control registers hold their set values.

■ Last Bit of Transmission Data

Table:13.3.4 shows last bit data output holding time at transmission, and the minimum data input time of the last bit at reception. At slave, internal clock setup is necessary to reserve data holding time at data transmission.

Table:13.3.4 Last Bit Data Length of Transmission Data

	at transmission Last bit data holding period	at reception Last bit data input period
At master	1 bit data length	1 bit data length (min)
At slave	[1 bit data length of external clock × 1/2]+ [internal clock cycle × (1/2 to 3/2)]	

When start condition is disabled (SC3STE flag=0), SBO3 output after last bit data output hold time can be set with SC3FDC1-0 of the SC3MD3 register as shown in Table:13.3.5.

After reset release, output before serial transfer is "H" regardless of the set value of SC3FDC1-0 flags. When start condition is enabled (SC3STE flag =1), "H" is output regardless of the set value of SC3FDC1-0 flags.

Table:13.3.5 SBO3 Output after Last Bit Data Output Hold Time (without start condition)

SC3FDC1 flag	SC3FDC0 flag	SBO3 output after last bit data output hold time
0	0	Fixed to "1"(High) output
1	0	Fixed to "0"(Low) output
0	1	Hold last data
1	1	Reserved

■ Transmission Timing

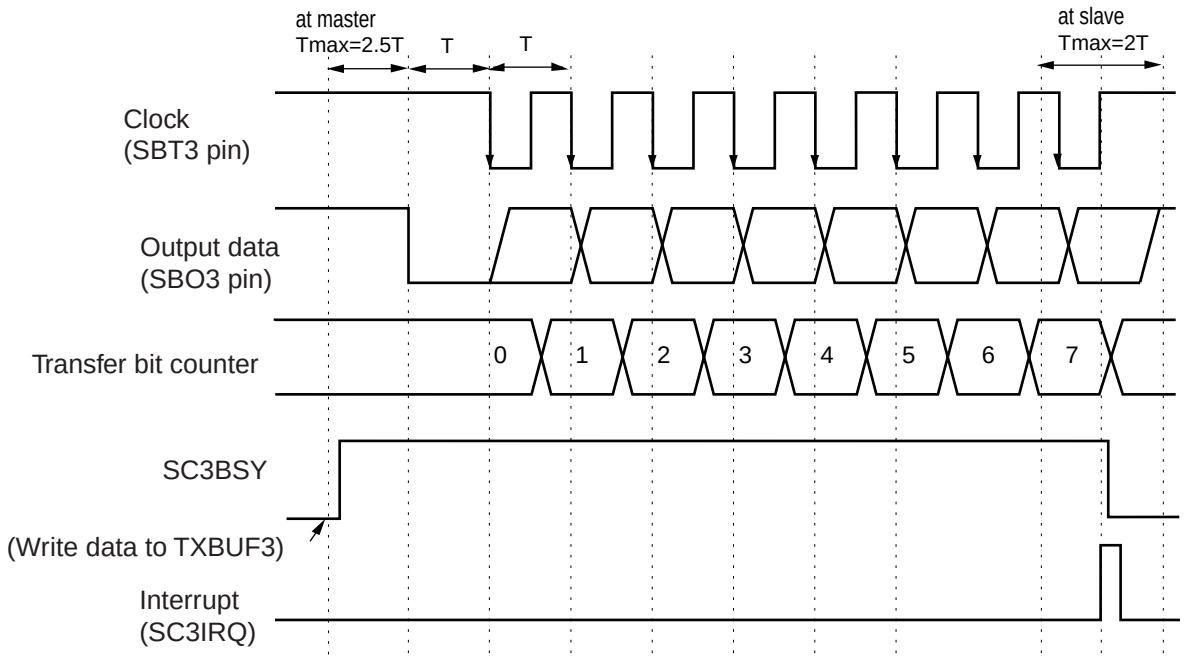


Figure:13.3.6 Transmission Timing (Falling edge, Start condition is enabled)

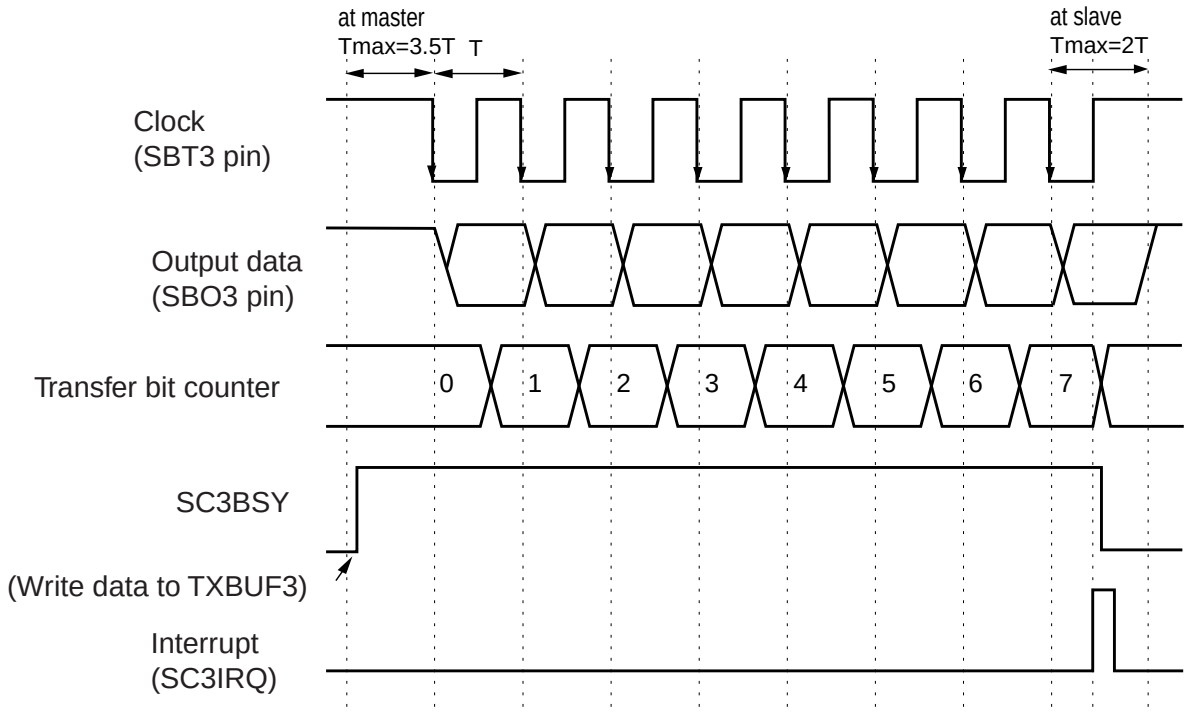


Figure:13.3.7 Transmission Timing (Falling edge, Start condition is disabled)

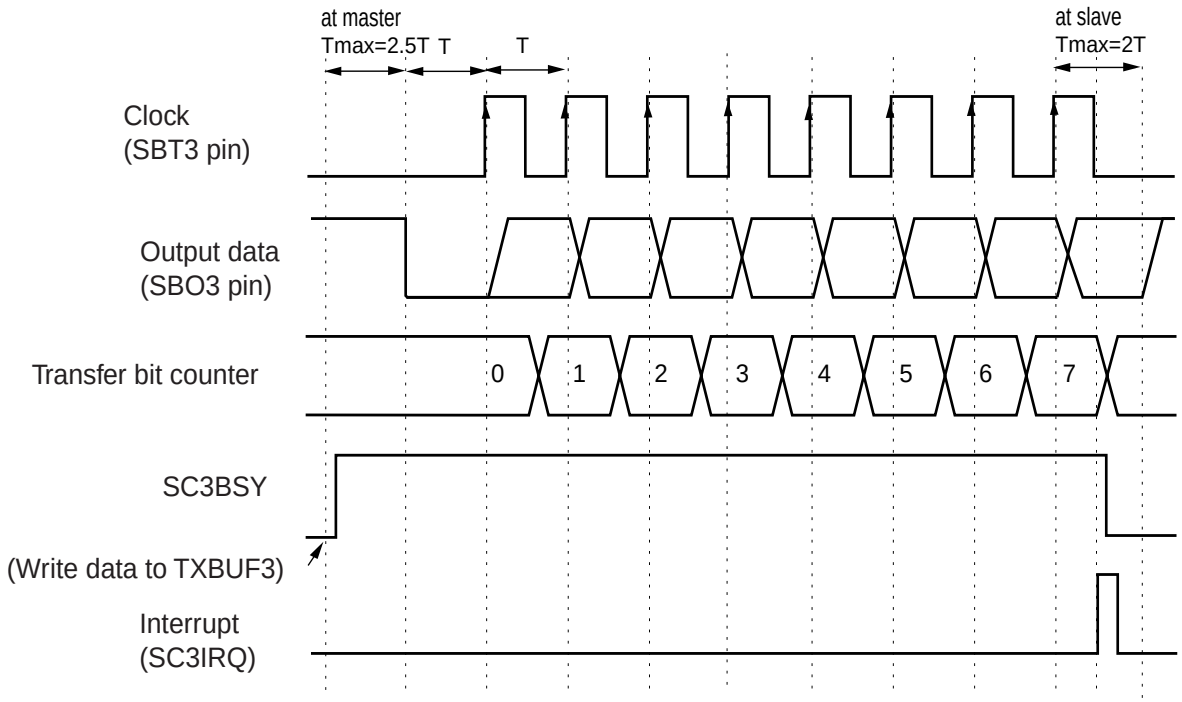


Figure:13.3.8 Transmission Timing (Rising edge, Start condition is enabled)

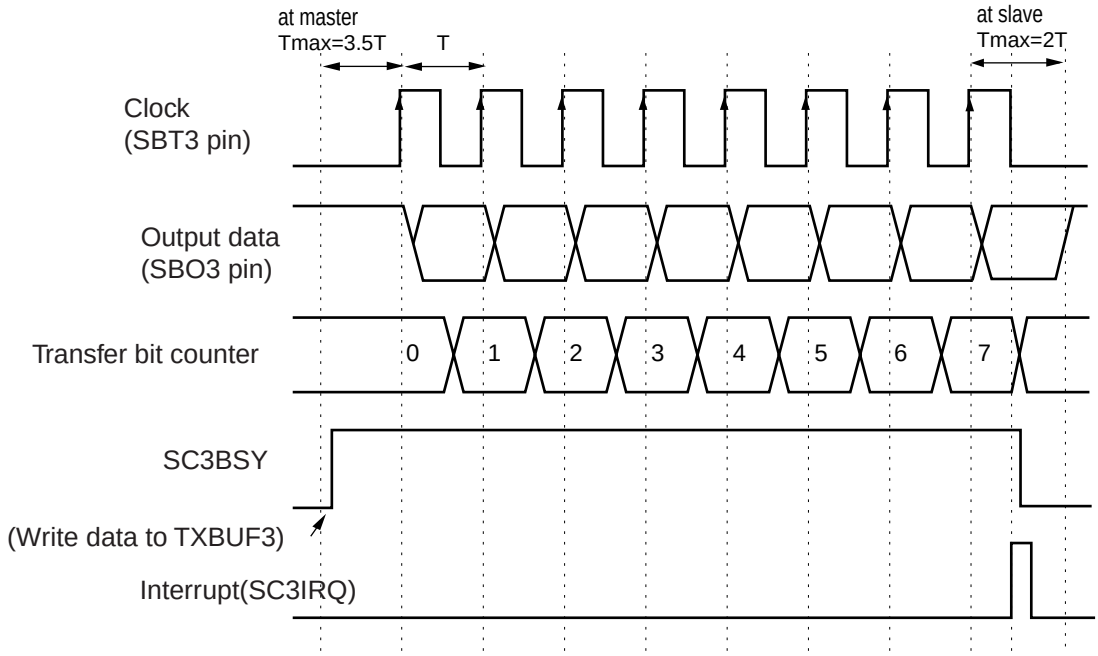


Figure:13.3.9 Transmission Timing (Rising edge, Start condition is disabled)

■ Reception Timing

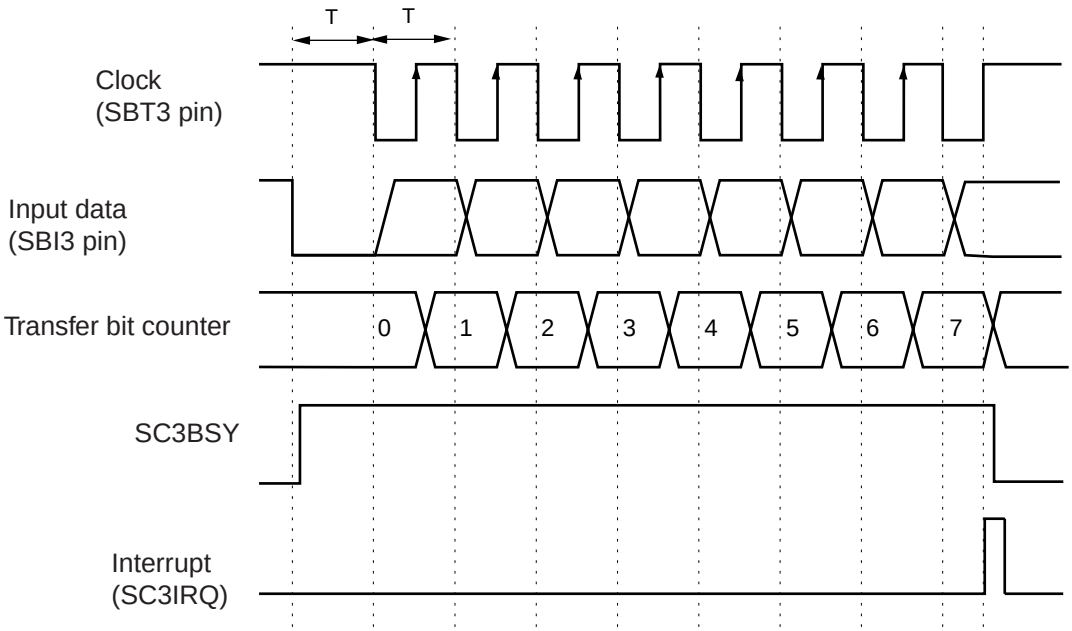


Figure:13.3.10 Reception Timing (Rising edge, Start condition is enabled)

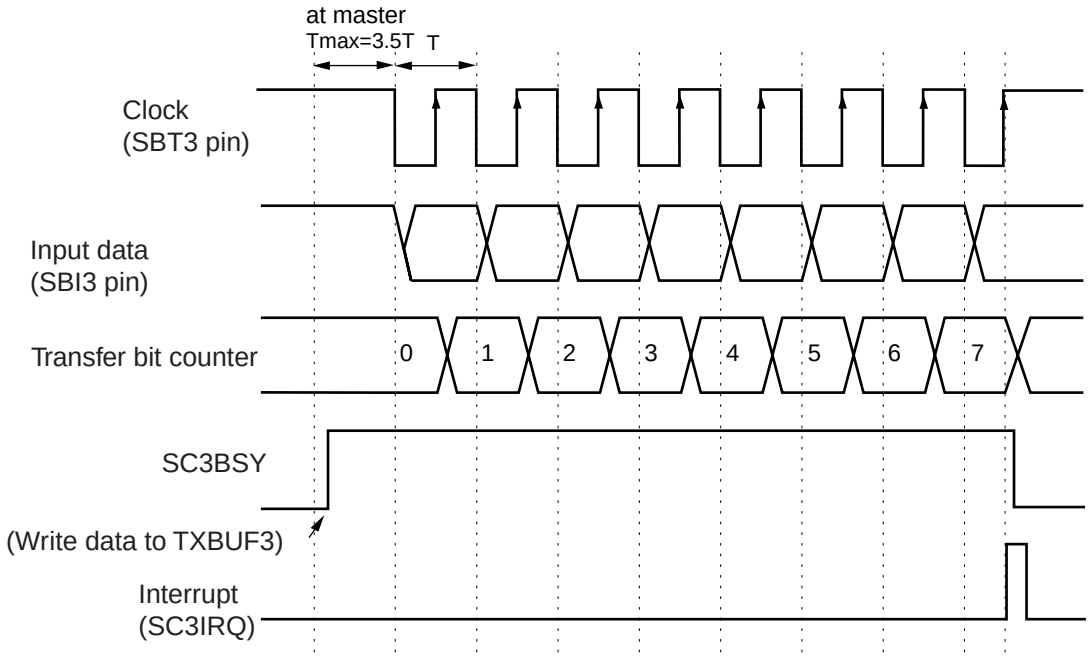


Figure:13.3.11 Reception Timing (Rising edge, Start condition is disabled)

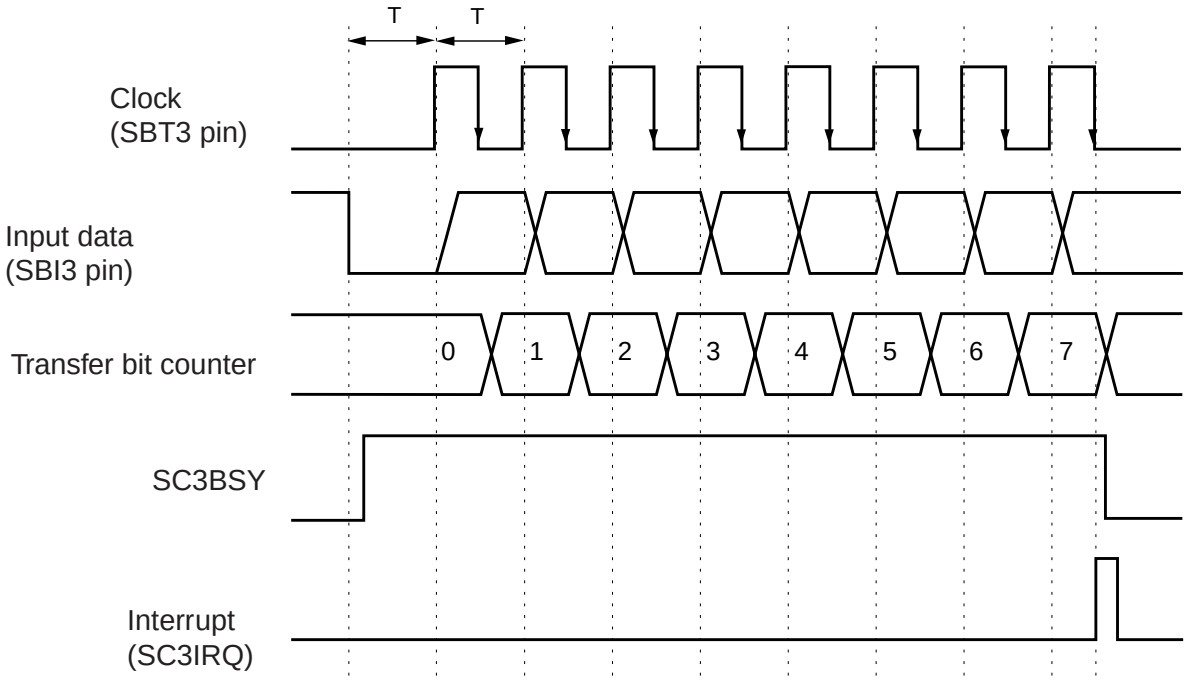


Figure:13.3.12 Reception Timing (Falling edge, Start condition is enabled)

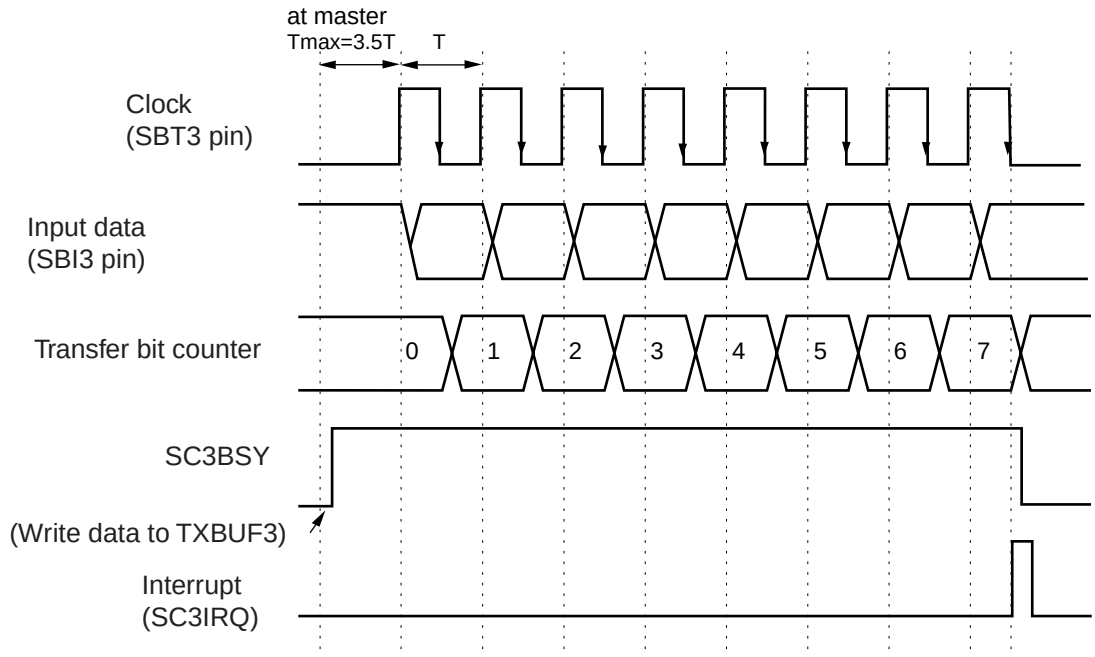


Figure:13.3.13 Reception Timing (Falling edge, Start condition is disabled)

■ Transmission / Reception

As data is received at the opposite edge of the transmission clock, set the polarity of reception data input edge to opposite polarity of the transmission data output edge.

When transmission and reception are executed at the same time, set the start condition to "disable" to prevent abnormal operation.

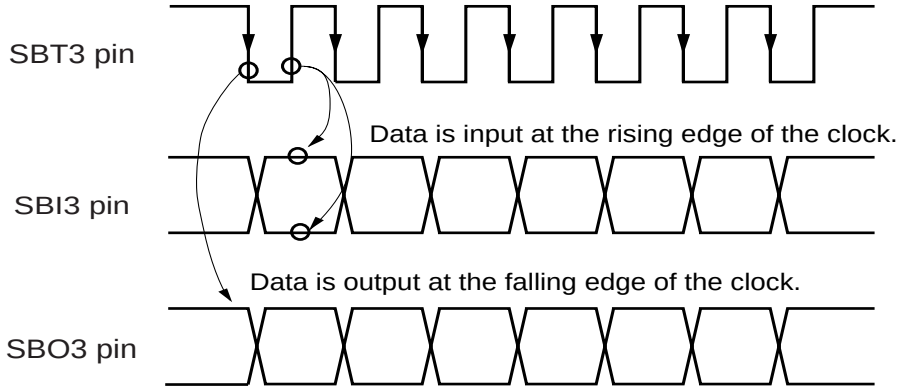


Figure:13.3.14 Transmission / Reception Timing (Reception : Rising edge, Transmission : Falling edge)

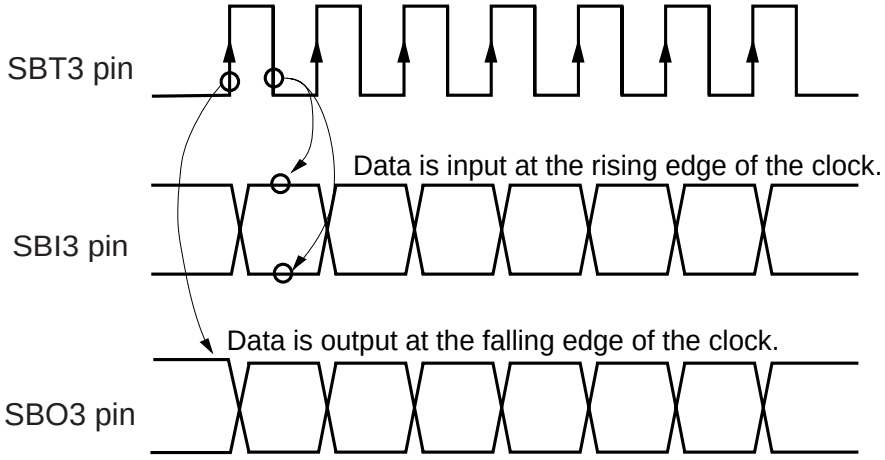


Figure:13.3.15 Transmission / Reception Timing (Reception : Falling edge, Transmission : Rising edge)

■ Communication in STANDBY mode

This serial interface is capable of slave reception in STANDBY mode. CPU operation status can be recovered from standby to normal by the communication complete interrupt SC3TIRQ that is generated after the slave reception.

(In STANDBY mode, continuous reception is disabled after data of transfer bit count set by SC3LNG2-0 flags of the SC3MD0 register is received.) The received data should be read out from the transmission/reception shift register SC3TRB after recovering to NORMAL mode.

In STANDBY mode, reception with start condition is not available, thus, disable start condition. And set dummy data to transmission data buffer TXBUF3 before transition to STANDBY mode.

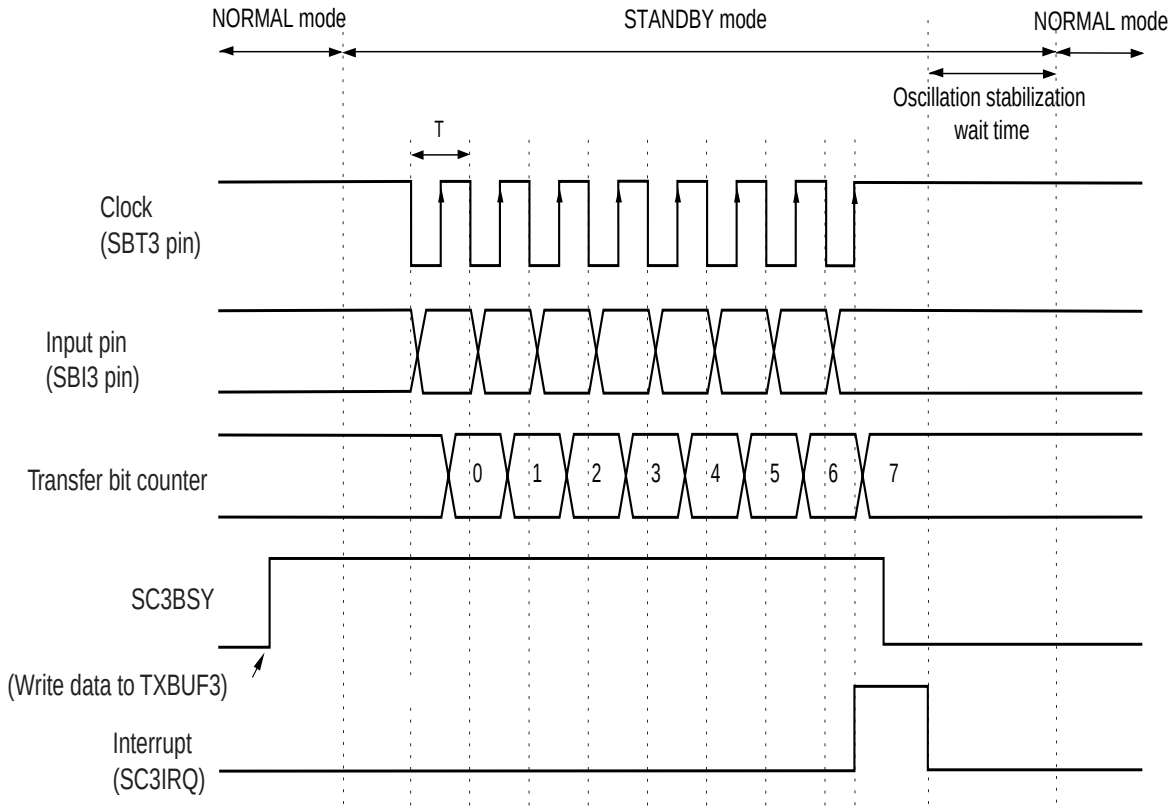


Figure:13.3.16 Reception Timing (Rising edge, Start condition is disabled)

■ Pins Setup (3 channels, at transmission)

Table:13.3.6 shows the pins setup at synchronous serial interface transmission with 3 channels (SBO3 pin, SBI3 pin, SBT3 pin).

Table:13.3.6 Synchronous Serial Interface Pins Setup (3 channels, at transmission)

Item	Data output pin	Data input pin	Clock I/O pin	
	SBO3 pin	SBI3 pin	SBT3 pin	
			Clock master	Clock slave
Port Pin	P33	P31	P32	
Serial data input selection	SBI3		-	
	SC3MD1(SC3IOM)			
Function	Serial data output	"1" input	Serial clock I/O	Serial clock I/O
	SC3MD1(SC3SBOS)	SC3MD1(SC3SBIS)	SC3MD1(SC3SBTS)	
Type	Push-pull/N-ch open-drain	-	Push-pull/N-ch open-drain	Push-pull/N-ch open-drain
	P3ODC(P3ODC3)		P3ODC(P3ODC2)	
I/O	Output mode	-	Output mode	Input mode
	P3DIR(P3DIR3)		P3DIR(P3DIR2)	
Pull-up	added / not added	-	added / not added	added / not added
	P3PLU(P3PLU3)		P3PLU(P3PLU2)	

■ Pins Setup (3 channels, at reception)

Table:13.3.7 shows the pins setup at synchronous serial interface reception with 3 channels (SBO3 pin, SBI3 pin, SBT3 pin).

Table:13.3.7 Synchronous Serial Interface Pins Setup (3 channels, at reception)

Item	Data output pin	Data input pin	Clock I/O pin	
	SBO3 pin	SBI3 pin	SBT3 pin	
			Clock master	Clock slave
Port Pin	P33	P31	P32	
Serial data input selection	SBI3		-	
	SC3MD1(SC3IOM)			
Function	Port	Serial data input	Serial clock I/O	Serial clock I/O
	SC3MD1(SC3SBOS)	SC3MD1(SC3SBIS)	SC3MD1(SC3SBTS)	
Type	-	-	Push-pull/N-ch open-drain	Push-pull/N-ch open-drain
			P3ODC(P3ODC2)	
I/O	-	Input mode	Output mode	Input mode
		P3DIR(P3DIR1)	P3DIR(P3DIR2)	
Pull-up	-	-	added / not added	added / not added
			P3PLU(P3PLU2)	

■ Pins Setup (3 channels, at reception / transmission)

Table:13.3.8 shows the setup for synchronous serial interface pin with 3 channels (SBO3 pin, SBI3 pin, SBT3 pin) at transmission / reception.

Table:13.3.8 Synchronous Serial Interface Pins Setup (3 channels, at transmission / reception)

Item	Data output pin	Data input pin	Clock I/O pin	
	SBO3 pin	SBI3 pin	SBT3 pin	
			Clock master	Clock slave
Port Pin	P33	P31	P32	
Serial data input selection	SBI3		-	
	SC3MD1(SC3IOM)			
Function	Serial data output	Serial data input	Serial clock I/O	Serial clock I/O
	SC3MD1(SC3SBOS)	SC3MD1(SC3SBIS)	SC3MD1(SC3SBTS)	
Type	Push-pull/N-ch open-drain	-	Push-pull/N-ch open-drain	Push-pull/N-ch open-drain
	P3ODC(P3ODC3)		P3ODC(P3ODC2)	
I/O	Output mode	Input mode	Output mode	Input mode
	P3DIR(P3DIR3)	P3DIR(P3DIR1)	P3DIR(P3DIR2)	
Pull-up	added / not added	-	added / not added	added / not added
	P3PLU(P3PLU3)		P3PLU(P3PLU2)	

■ Pins Setup (2 channels, at transmission)

Table:13.3.9 shows the pins setup at synchronous serial interface transmission with 2 channels (SBO3pin, SBT3 pin). The SBI3 pin is not used, so that it can be used as a general port.

Table:13.3.9 Synchronous Serial Interface Pins Setup (2 channels, at transmission)

Item	Data I/O pin	Serial unused pin	Clock I/O pin	
	SBO3 pin	SBI3 pin	SBT3 pin	
			Clock master	Clock slave
Port Pin	P33	P31	P32	
Serial data input selection	SB03		-	
	SC3MD1(SC3IOM)			
Function	Serial data output	"1" input	Serial clock I/O	Serial clock I/O
	SC3MD1(SC3SBOS)	SC3MD1(SC3SBIS)	SC3MD1(SC3SBIS)	
Type	Push-pull/N-ch open-drain	-	Push-pull/N-ch open-drain	Push-pull/N-ch open-drain
	P3ODC(P3ODC3)		P3ODC(P3ODC2)	
I/O	Output mode	-	Output mode	Input mode
	P3DIR(P3DIR3)		P3DIR(P3DIR2)	
Pull-up	added / not added	-	added / not added	added / not added
	P3PLU(P3PLU3)		P3PLU(P3PLU2)	

■ Pins Setup (2 channels, at reception)

Table:13.3.10 shows the pins setup at synchronous serial interface reception with 2 channels (SBO3 pin, SBT3 pin). The SBI3 pin is not used, so that it can be used as a general port.

Table:13.3.10 Synchronous Serial Interface Pins Setup (2 channels, at reception)

Item	Data I/O pin	Serial unused pin	Clock I/O pin	
	SBO3 pin	SBI3 pin	SBT3 pin	
			Clock master	Clock slave
Port Pin	P33	P31	P32	
Serial data input selection	SB03		-	
	SC3MD1(SC3IOM)			
Function	Port	Serial input	Serial clock I/O	Serial clock I/O
	SC3MD1(SC3SBOS)	SC3MD1(SC3SBIS)	SC3MD1(SC3SBIS)	
Type	-	-	Push-pull/N-ch open-drain	Push-pull/N-ch open-drain
			P3ODC(P3ODC2)	
I/O	Input mode	-	Output mode	Input mode
	P3DIR(P3DIR3)		P3DIR(P3DIR2)	
Pull-up	-	-	added / not added	added / not added
			P3PLU(P3PLU2)	

13.3.2 Setup Example

■ Transmission / Reception Setup Example

The setup example for clock synchronous serial communication with serial 3 is shown. Table:13.3.11 shows the conditions at transmission/reception.

Table:13.3.11 Conditions for Synchronous Serial Interface at transmission / reception

Item	set to
Serial data input pin	SBI3 (3 channels)
Transfer bit count	8 bits
Start condition	Disabled
First transfer bit	MSB
Input edge	Falling
Output edge	Rising
Clock	Clock master
Clock source	fs/2
SBT3/SB03 pin type	N-ch open-drain
SBT3 pull-up resistor	Added
SB03 pull-up resistor	Added
Serial interface 3 communication end interrupt	Enabled

An example setup procedure, with a description of each step is shown below.

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Select prescaler operation. SC3MD3 (0x03FA2) bp3 :SC3PSCE =1	(1) Set the SC3PSCE flag of the SC3MD3 register to "1" to select prescaler operation.
(2) Select the clock source. SC3MD3 (0x03FA2) bp2-0 :SC3PSC2-0 =100	(2) Set the SC3PSC2-0 flag of the SC3MD3 register to "100" to select fs/2 for clock source.
(3) Control of pin type. P3ODC (0x03F3B) bp2 :P3ODC2 =1 bp3 :P3ODC3 =1 P3PLU (0x03F43) bp2 :P3PLU2 =1 bp3 :P3PLU3 =1	(3) Set the P3ODC2, P3ODC3 flags of the P3ODC register to "1, 1" to select N-ch open drain for the SBO3/SBT3 pin type. Set the P3ODC2, P3ODC3 flags of the P3PLU register to "1, 1" to add pull-up resistor.

Setup Procedure	Description
(4) Control of pin direction. P3DIR (0x03F33) bp2 :P3DIR2 =1 bp1 :P3DIR1 =0 bp3 :P3DIR3 =1	(4) Set the P3DIR2, P3DIR3 flags of the Port 3 pin control direction register (P3DIR) to "1, 1" to set P32, P33 to output mode, to set P31 to input mode.
(5) Set the SC3MD0 register. Select the transfer bit count. SC3MD0 (0x03FA0) bp2-0 :SC3LNG2-0 =111 Select the start condition. SC3MD0 (0x03FA0) bp3 :SC3STE =0 Select the first bit to be transferred. SC3MD0 (0x03FA0) bp4 :SC3DIR =0 Select the transfer edge. SC3MD0 (0x03FA0) bp6 :SC3CE1 =1	(5) Set the SC3LNG2-0 flag of the serial 3 mode register (SC3MD0) to "111" to set the transfer bit count as 8 bits. Set the SC3STE flag of the SC3MD0 register to "0" to disable start condition. Set the SC3DIR flag of the SC3MD0 register to "0" to set MSB as the first transfer bit. Set the SC3CE1 flag of the SC3MD0 register to "1" to set the transmission data output edge to "rising", and the received data input edge to "falling".
(6) Set the SC3CTR register. SC3CTR (0x03FA6) bp2 :SC3CMD =0	(6) Set the SC3CMD flag of the SC3CTR register to "0" to select serial data tansmission.
(7) Set the SC3MD1 register. Select the transfer clock. SC3MD1 (0x03FA1) bp2 :SC3MST =1 Control of pin function. SC3MD1 (0x03FA1) bp4 :SC3SBOS =1 bp5 :SC3SBIS =1 bp6 :SC3SBTS =1 bp7 :SC3IOM =0	(7) Set the SC3MST flag of the SC3MD1 register to "1" to select clock master (internal clock). Set the SC3SBOS, SC3SBIS, SC3SBTS flags of the SC3MD1 register to "1" to set the SBO3 pin to serial data output, the SBI3 pin to serial data input, and the SBT3 pin to serial clock I/O. Set the SC3IOM flag to "0" to set "serial data input from the SBI3 pin".
(8) Set the interrupt level. SC3ICR (0x03FF3) bp7-6 :SC3LV1-0 =10	(8) Set the interrupt level by the SC3LV1-0 flag of the serial 3 interrupt control register (SC3ICR).
(9) Enable the interrupt. SC3ICR (0x03FF3) bp1 :SC3IE =1 bp0 :SC3IR =0	(9) Set the SC3IE flag of the SC3ICR register to “1” to enable the interrupt. If the interrupt request flag (SC3IR of the SC3ICR register) is already set, clear SC3IR before enabling interrupt.
(10) Start serial transmission. Transmission data → TXBUF3 (0x03FA5) Reception data → Input to SBI3 pin	(10) Set the transmission data to the serial transmission data buffer TXBUF3. The internal clock is generated to start transmission/reception. After communication , the serial 3 interrupt SC3IRQ is generated. [Chapter 3. 3-1-4 Setup]

Note : Procedures (1) to (2),(5), (6) and (7) can be set at the same time.

Note : Procedures (8) and (9) can be set at the same time.

For communication with 3 channels, set the SC3BIS of the SC3MD1 register to "0" to set the serial input to "1". The SBI3 pin can be used as a general port. For reception only, set the SC3SBOS of the SC3MD1 register to "0" to select port. The SBO3 pin can be used as a general port.

For communication with 2 channels, set the SBO3 pin to serial data I/O. The port direction control register P3DIR switches the I/O. For reception, set the SC3SBIS of the SC3MD1 register to "1" to select serial input. The SBO3 pin can be used as a general port.

This serial interface contains a force reset function. If the communication should be stopped by force, set SC3SBOS and SC3SBIS of the SC3MD1 register to "0".

Each flag should be set as this setup procedure in order. Activation of communication should be operated after all control registers (refer to Table:13.2.1 except TXBUF3) are set.

Transfer rate of transfer clock set by the SC3MD3 register should not exceed 5.0 MHz.

■ Reception Setup Example

The setup example for clock synchronous serial communication with serial 3 is shown. Table:13.3.12 shows the conditions at reception.

Table:13.3.12 Conditions for Synchronous Serial Interface at reception

Item	set to
Serial data input pin	SBI3 (3 channels)
Transfer bit count	8 bits
Start condition	Disabled
First transfer bit	MSB
Input edge	Falling
Output edge	Rising
Clock	Clock slave
Clock source	fs/2
SBT3/SB03 pin type	N-ch open-drain
SBT3 pin pull-up resistor	Added
SB03 pin pull-up resistor	Added
Serial interface 3 communication complete interrupt	Enabled

An example setup procedure, with a description of each step is shown below.

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Select prescaler operation. SC3MD3 (0x03FA2) bp3 :SC3PSCE =1	(1) Set the SC3PSCE flag of the SC3MD3 register to "1" to select prescaler operation.
(2) Select the clock source. SC3MD3 (0x03FA2) bp2-0 :SC3PSC2-0 =100	(2) Set the SC3PSC2-0 flag of the SC3MD3 register to "100" to select fs/2 as the clock source.
(3) Control the pin type. P3ODC (0x03F3B) bp2 :P3ODC2 =1 P3PLU (0x03F43) bp2 :P3PLU2 =1	(3) Set the P3ODC2 flags of the P3ODC register to "1" to select N-ch open drain for the SBT3 pin type. Set the P3PLU2 flags of the P3PLU register to "1" to add pull-up resistor.
(4) Control of pin direction. P3DIR (0x03F33) bp2 :P3DIR2 =1 bp1 :P3DIR1 =0	(4) Set the P3DIR2 flags of the Port 3 pin control direction register (P3DIR) to "1" and set P3DIR1 to "0" to set P32 to output mode, to set P31 to input mode.

Setup Procedure	Description
(5) Set the SC3MD0 register. Select the transfer bit count. SC3MD0 (0x03FA0) bp2-0 :SC3LNG2-0 =111 Select the start condition. SC3MD0 (0x03FA0) bp3 :SC3STE =0 Select the first transfer bit. SC3MD0 (0x03FA0) bp4 :SC3DIR =0 Select the transfer edge. SC3MD0 (0x03FA0) bp6 :SC3CE1 =1	(5) Set the SC3LNG2-0 flag of the serial 3 mode register (SC3MD0) to "111" to set the transfer bit count as 8 bits. Set the SC3STE flag of the SC3MD0 register to "0" to disable start condition. Set the SC3DIR flag of the SC3MD0 register to "0" to set MSB as the first transfer bit. Set the SC3CE1 flag of the SC3MD0 register to "1" to set the transmission data output edge to "rising", and the reception data input edge to "falling".
(6) Set the SC3CTR register. SC3CTR (0x03FA6) bp2 :SC3CMD =0	(6) Set the SC3CMD flag of the SC3CTR register to "0" to select serial data tansmission.
(7) Set the SC3MD1 register. Select the transfer clock. SC3MD1 (0x03FA1) bp2 :SC3MST =0 Control the pin function. SC3MD1 (0x03FA1) bp4 :SC3SBOS =0 bp5 :SC3SBIS =1 bp6 :SC3SBTS =1 bp7 :SC3IOM =0	(7) Set the SC3MST flag of the SC3MD1 register to "0" to select clock slave (external clock). Set the SC3SBIS, SC3SBTS flags of the SC3MD1 register to "1" to set the SBI3 pin to serial data input, the SBT3 pin to serial clock I/O. Set the SC3BOS flag to "0" to set the SBO3 pin to the port. Set the SC3IOM flag to "0" to set "serial data input from the SBI3 pin".
(8) Set the interrupt level. SC3ICR (0x03FF3) bp7-6 :SC3LV1-0 =10	(8) Set the interrupt level by the SC3LV1-0 flag of the serial 3 interrupt control register (SC3ICR).
(9) Enable the interrupt. SC3ICR (0x03FF3) bp1 :SC3IE =1 bp0 :SC3IR =0	(9) Set the SC3IE flag of the SC3ICR register to “1” to enable the interrupt . If the interrupt request flag (SC3IR of the SC3ICR register) is already set, clear SC3IR before enabling interrupt.
(10) Start serial reception. dummy data → TXBUF3 (0x03FA5) Reception data → Input to SBI3 pin	(10) Set the dummy data to the serial transmission data buffer TXBUF3. Wait 3.5 or more transfer clock after the dummy data setting, and execute the clock input. Then the reception starts. After the reception completes, the serial 3 interrupt SC3IRQ is generated. [Chapter 3. 3-1-4 Setup]

Note : Procedures (1) to (2),(5), (6) and (7) can be set at the same time.

Note : Procedures (8) and (9) can be set at the same time.

* At the reception with the start condition input, set the SC3STE flag to "1" and the start condition to "enable" in step (5). In step (10), execute the start condition input instead of dummy data setting. After the start condition input, 0.5 or more transfer clock is required before the clock input.

For communication with 3 channels, set the SC3BIS of the SC3MD1 register to "0" to set the serial input to "1". The SBI3 pin can be used as a general port. For reception only, set the SC3SBOS of the SC3MD1 register to "0" to select port. The SBO3 pin can be used as a general port.

For communication with 2 channels, set the SBO3 pin to serial data I/O. The port direction control register P3DIR switches the I/O. For reception, set the SC3SBIS of the SC3MD1 register to "1" to select serial input. The SBO3 pin can be used as a general port.

This serial interface contains a force reset function. If the communication should be stopped by force, set SC3SBOS and SC3SBIS of the SC3MD1 register to "0".

Each flag should be set as this setup procedure in order. Activation of communication should be operated after all control registers (refer to Table:13.2.1 except TXBUF3) are set.

Transfer rate of transfer clock set by the SC3MD3 register should not exceed 5.0 MHz.

■ Transmission / Reception Setup Example (reception in STANDBY mode)

The setup example for clock synchronous serial communication with serial 3 is shown. Table:13.3.13 shows the conditions at reception in STANDBY mode.

Table:13.3.13 Conditions for Synchronous Serial Interface at transmission / reception (reception in STANDBY mode)

Item	set to
Serial data input pin	SBI3 (3 channels)
Transfer bit count	8 bit
Start condition	Disabled
First transfer bit	MSB
Input edge	Falling
Clock	Clock slave
Operation mode	STOP mode
Clock source	fs/2
SBT3/SB03 pin type	Push-pull
SBT3 pin pull-up resistor	Not added
SBI3 pin pull-up resistor	Not added
Serial interface 3 communication complete interrupt	Enabled

An example setup procedure, with a description of each step is shown below.

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Select prescaler operation. SC3MD3 (0x03FA2) bp3 :SC3PSCE =1	(1) Set the SC3PSCE flag of the SC3MD3 register to "1" to select prescaler operation.
(2) Select the clock source. SC3MD3 (0x03FA2) bp2-0 :SC3PSC2-0 =100	(2) Set the SC3PSC2-0 flag of the SC3MD3 register to "100" to select fs/2 as the clock source.
(3) Control the pin type. P3ODC (0x03F3B) bp2 :P3ODC2 =0 P3PLU(0x03F43) bp2 :P3PLU2 =0	(3) Set the P3ODC2, P3ODC3 flags of the P3ODC register to "0, 0" to select push-pull for the SBO3/SBT3 pin type. Set the P3PLU2, P3PLU3 flags of the P3PLU register to "0, 0" not to add pull-up resistor.
(4) Control the pin direction. P3DIR (0x03F33) bp2 :P3DIR2 =1 bp1 :P3DIR1 =0 bp3 :P3DIR3 =0	(4) Set the P3DIR2, P3DIR3 flags of the Port 3 pin control direction register (P3DIR) to "1, 0" to set P32 to output mode, P33, P31 to input mode.

Setup Procedure	Description
(5) Select the transfer bit count. SC3MD0 (0x03FA0) bp2-0 :SC3LNG2-0 =111	(5) Set the SC3LNG2-0 flags of the serial 3 mode register (SC3MD0) to "111" to set the transfer bit count as 8 bits
(6) Select the start condition. SC3MD0 (0x03FA0) bp3 :SC3STE =0	(6) Set the SC3STE flag of the SC3MD0 register to "0" to disable start condition.
(7) Select the first transfer bit. SC3MD0 (0x03FA0) bp4 :SC3DIR =0	(7) Set the SC3DIR flag of the SC3MD0 register to "0" to set MSB as the first transfer bit.
(8) Select the transfer edge. SC3MD0 (0x03FA0) bp6 :SC3CE1 =1	(8) Set the SC3CE1 flag of the SC3MD0 register to "1" to set the reception data input edge to "falling".
(9) Select the communication type. SC3CTR (0x03FA6) bp0 :SC3CMD =0	(9) Set the SC3CMD flag of the SC3CTR register to "0" to select synchronous serial interface.
(10) Select the transfer clock. SC3MD1 (0x03FA1) bp2 :SC3MST =0	(10) Set the SC3MST flag of the SC3MD1 register to "0" to select clock slave (external clock).
(11) Control the pin function. SC3MD1(0x03FA1) bp4 :SC3SBOS =0 bp5 :SC3SBIS =1 bp6 :SC3SBTS =1 bp7 :SC3IOM =0	(11) Set the SC3SBOS flags of the SC3MD1 register to “0”, SC3SBIS, SC3SBTS flags to "1" to set the SBO3 pin to general port, the SBI3 pin to serial data input, and the SBT3 pin to serial clock I/O. Set the SC3IOM flag to "0" to set "serial data input from the SBI3 pin".
(12) Set the interrupt level SC3ICR (0x03FF3) bp7-6 :SC3LV1-0 =10	(12) Set the interrupt level (to level 2) by the SC3LV1-0 flags of the serial 3 interrupt control register (SC3ICR).
(13) Enable the interrupt. SC3ICR (0x03FF3) bp1 :SC3IE =1 bp0 :SC3IR =0	(13) Set the SC3IE flag of the SC3ICR register to “1” to enable the interrupt. If the interrupt request flag (SC3IR of the SC3ICR register) is already set, clear SC3IR before the interrupt is enabled. [Chapter 3 3.1.4. Interrupt Flag Setup]
(14) Set the activation factor for serial communication. Dummy data → TXBUF3 (0x03FA5)	(14) Set dummy data to the serial transmission data buffer TXBUF3.
(15) Transition to STOP mode. CPUM (0x03F00) bp3:STOP =1	(15) Set the STOP flag of the CPUM register to "1" for transition to STOP mode.
(16) Start serial reception. Transfer clock → Input to SBT3 pin Reception data → Input to SBI3 pin	(16) Set the transfer clock to SBT3 pin and transfer data to SBI3 pin.

Setup Procedure	Description
(17) Return from STANDBY mode	(17) Serial 3 interrupt SC3IRQ is generated at the same time of reception of the 8th bits data, and then CPU returns from STOP mode to NORMAL mode after oscillation stabilization wait time.

Note : Procedures (5) to (8),(10) to (11), (12) to (13) can be set at the same time.

Each flag should be set as this setup procedure in order. Activation of communication should be operated after all control registers (refer toTable:13.2.1, except TXBUF3) are set.

13.3.3 Single Master IIC Serial Interface

Serial interface 3 is capable of IIC serial communication in single master. Communication of this IIC interface is based on the IIC-BUS data transfer format of Phillips. Table:13.3.14 shows the functions of IIC serial interface.

Table:13.3.14 IIC Serial Interface Functions

Communication type	Single master IIC
Interrupt	SC3IRQ
Pins	SDA3,SCL3
Transfer bit count specification	1 to 8 bit
First transfer bit specification	O
ACK bit selection	O
ACK bit level selection	O
Clock source	fosc/2 fosc/4 fosc/8 fosc/32 fs/2 fs/4 timer 2 output timer 3 output
The transfer rate is the clock source divided by 8.	

■ Activation factor for Communication

Set data (at transmission) or dummy data (at reception) to the transmission/reception shift register TXBUF3. Start condition and transfer clock are generated to start communication, regardless of transmission/reception. This serial interface can not be used for slave communication.

■ Start Condition Setup

In IIC communication, enable start condition by the SC3STE flag of the SC3MD0 register at the first communication after reset release. From the second communication, the SC3STE flag of the SC3MD0 register can select if start condition is enabled or not.

If start condition is detected during data communication in which the start condition is enabled, the SC3STC flag of the SC3CTR register is set to "1", and the communication end interrupt SC3IRQ is generated to end the transmission. This means that the communication is not executed properly and needs to be re-executed. Clear the SC3STC flag by program. When data line (SDA3 pin) is changed from "H" to "L" while clock line (the SCL3 pin) is "H", start condition is generated.

■ Generation of Stop Condition

Stop condition is generated as the SDA3 line is changed from "L" to "H", while the SCL3 line is "H". Stop condition can be generated by setting the IIC3STPC flag of the SC3CTR register to "0" by program.

When the stop condition is generated, IIC3STPC flag is cleared automatically.

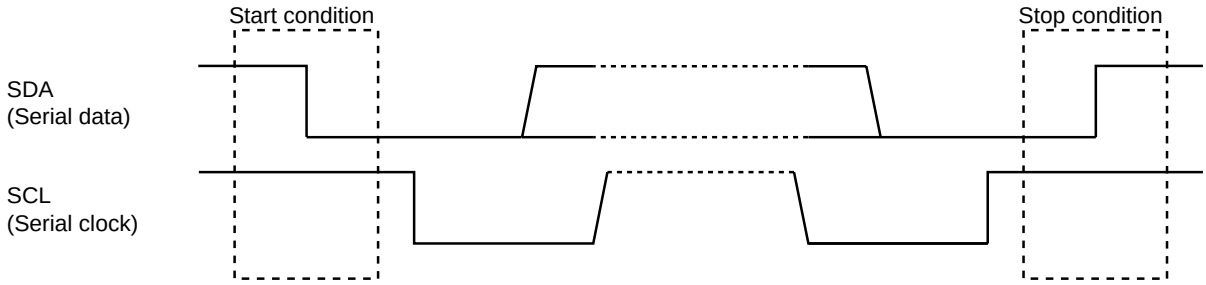


Figure:13.3.17 Start Condition and Stop Condition

■ Input Edge/Output Edge Setup

In IIC communication, data is always received at the falling edge of the clock. Even if the SC3CE1 flag is set to "0", the received data is stored in the falling edge of the clock.

■ Data I/O Pin Setup

The SDA3 pin (used as SBO3 pin, too) is used to input/output data. Set the SC3IOM flag of the SC3MD1 register to "1" to input serial data from the SBO3 pin. As the SBI3 pin is not used at that time, it can be used as a general port. But always set the SC3SBIS flag of the above register to "1" to set "input serial data".

To detect start condition, set the SC3SBIS flag of the SC3MD1 register to "input serial data", regardless of transmission/reception.

■ Reception of Confirming (ACK) Bit after Data Transmission

The IIC3ACKS flag of the SC3CTR register selects if ACK bit is enabled or not. If ACK bit is enabled, ACK bit is received from the slave station after data (1 to 8 bits) is transferred. At reception of ACK bit, the SDA3 line is automatically released. To receive ACK bit, 1 clock is output to store ACK bit to the IIC3ACK0 of the SC3CTR register. The transmission/reception shift register SC3TRB is not operated by the ACK bit reception clock. When the received ACK bit level is "L", the reception is normal at slave and the next data can be received. If the level is "H", the reception maybe completed at slave, so set the IIC3STPC flag of the SC3CTR register to "0" to end communication.

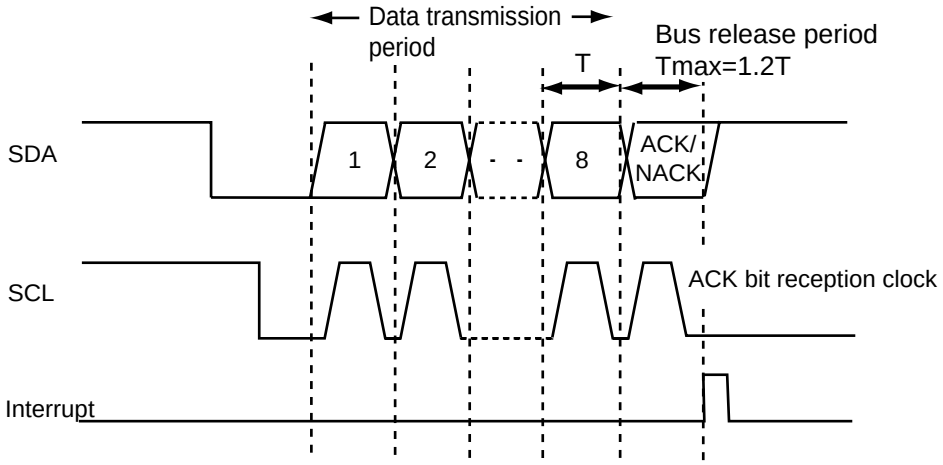


Figure:13.3.18 ACK Bit Reception Timing after Transmission of 8-Bit Data

■ Transmission of Confirming (ACK Bit) of Data Reception

Selection of enable/disable of ACK bit is the same as the transmission. When ACK bit is enabled, ACK bit and clock are output after data (1 to 8 bits) is received. When the reception is continued, ACK bit outputs "L". And when the reception is finished, it outputs "H". The IIC3ACK0 of the SC3CTR register sets the output ACK bit level.

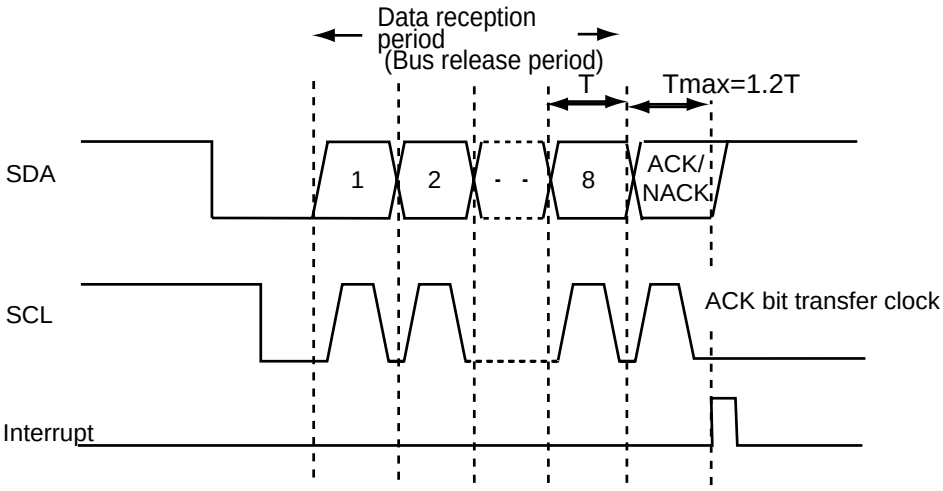


Figure:13.3.19 ACK Bit Transmission Timing after Reception of 8-Bit Data

■ Transfer Format

There are two transfer format used on IIC bus are : the addressing format that transmits/receives data after 1 byte data (address data) that consists of slave address (7 bits) and R/W bit (1 bit) is transferred after start condition, and the free data format that transmits data right after the start condition. The serial interface of this LSI supports 2 communication formats for only master transmission and master reception in IIC communication. Sequence of communication is shown below. The shaded part shows the data transferred from slave.

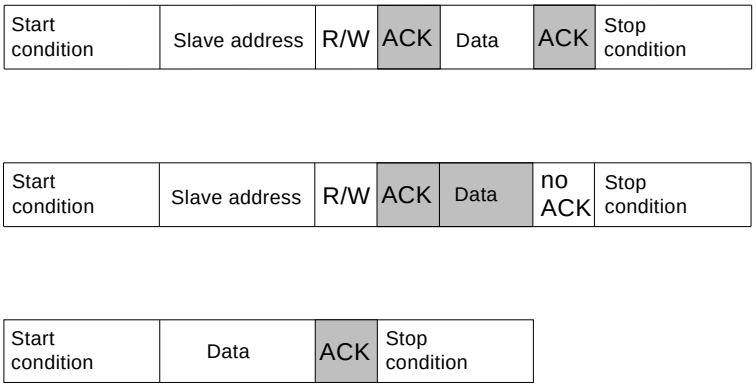


Figure:13.3.20 Communication Sequence on Each Transfer Format

[Figure:13.3.21 Master Transmission Timing, Figure:13.3.22 Master Reception Timing]

■ Clock Setup

The transfer clock for IIC communication is obtained by dividing clock source by 8 inside this serial. The clock source is selected from the dedicated prescaler, timer 2 or 3 output by the SC3MD3 register. The clock source should be set in such a way that the transfer rate is under 100 kHz in NORMAL mode, 400 kHz in high speed mode with the SC3MD3 register. The dedicated prescaler starts as this register selects "prescaler Count Enable". Set the SC3MST flag of the SC3MD1 register to "1" to select the internal clock (clock master). This IIC interface can not be used with external clock (clock slave).

Table:13.3.15 IIC Serial Interface Clock Sources

	Single master IIC
Clcok source (internal clock)	fosc/2
	fosc/4
	fosc/8
	fosc/32
	fs/2
	fs/4
	timer 2 output
	timer 3 output

The transfer rate in IIC communication is obtained by dividing clock source by 8. The clock source should be set in such a way that the transfer rate is under 100 kHz in NORMAL mode, 400 kHz in high speed mode with the SC3MD3 register.

Set the SC3MST flag of the SC3MD1 register to "1" to select internal clock (clock master).

Set the SC3SBIS and SC3SBOS flags of the SC3MD1 register to "0" before change the clock setup.

■ Transmission/Reception Mode Setup and Operation

The IIC3REX flag of the SC3CTR register selects the status of the transmission or the reception. The first data is always added start condition for communication regardless of the setting value of the SC3STE. The start condition is output from this serial (master).

The start condition is not added over the second communication, select the start condition "none" at the first setting. And the start condition is added over the second communication, select the start condition "enable" at the first setting.

At addressing format, slave address and R/W bit are set to the first data after start condition for transmission. At master reception, switch to the reception mode at the interrupt transaction after the transmission of the first 1 byte data is finished, after the ACK signal from slave is confirmed. If the communication should be continued to other device without stop, transmit slave address and R/W bit again after start condition is generated again. At reception, the SDA line is automatically released to wait for reception. After the storage of data is finished, confirmation of the reception (ACK bit) is output.

[Figure:13.3.21 Master Transmission Timing, Figure:13.3.22 Master Reception Timing]

■ IIC BUSY Flag Operation

When data is set to the transmission buffer TXBUF3, IIC3BSY flag of the SC3CTR register is set to “1” . When ACK transmission/reception (with ACK enabled communication) or the final bit communication (with ACK disabled communication) completes, the IIC3BSY flag is cleared to “0”. Also, when the stop condition generation flag (IIC3STPC) is set to “1”, IIC3BSY is set to “1” and cleared to “0” when stop condition is completed.

If start condition is detected during communication, the communication end interrupt SC3IRQ is generated and the IIC3BSY flag is automatically cleared.

The following items are the same as clock synchronous serial.

■ First Transfer Bit Setup

Refer to : XIII-13

■ Transmission Data Buffer

Refer to : XIII-13

■ Reception Data Buffer

Refer to : XIII-13

■ Transfer Bit Count and First Transfer Bit

Refer to : XIII-15

■ Continuous Communication

Refer to : XIII-15

■ Forced Reset

Refer to : XIII-17

In communication, set Nch-open drain for pin type, as the hardware switches if bus is used/ released. In reception, set the SDA3 pin (the SBO3 pin) direction to "output".

■ Master Transmission Timing

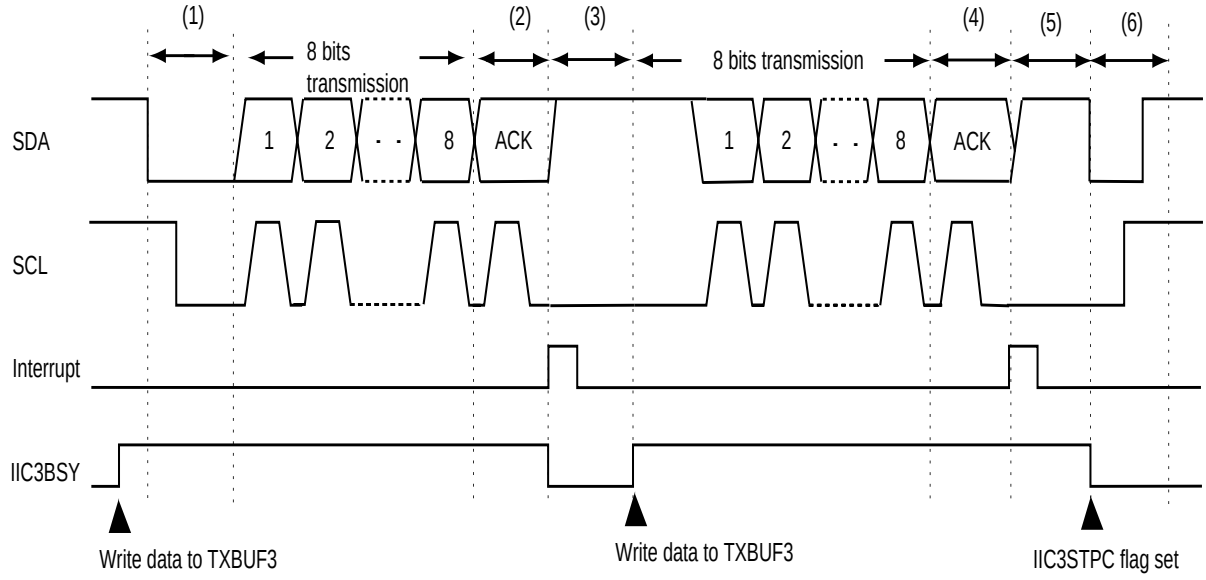


Figure:13.3.21 Master Transmission Timing

(1) Output start condition.

(2) Bus released period, ACK bit is received.

(3) Interrupt

Set data to TXBUF3

(4) Receive ACK bit.

(5) Interrupt

Communication ends : clear the IIC3BSY flag.

(6) Generates stop condition.

■ Master Reception Timing

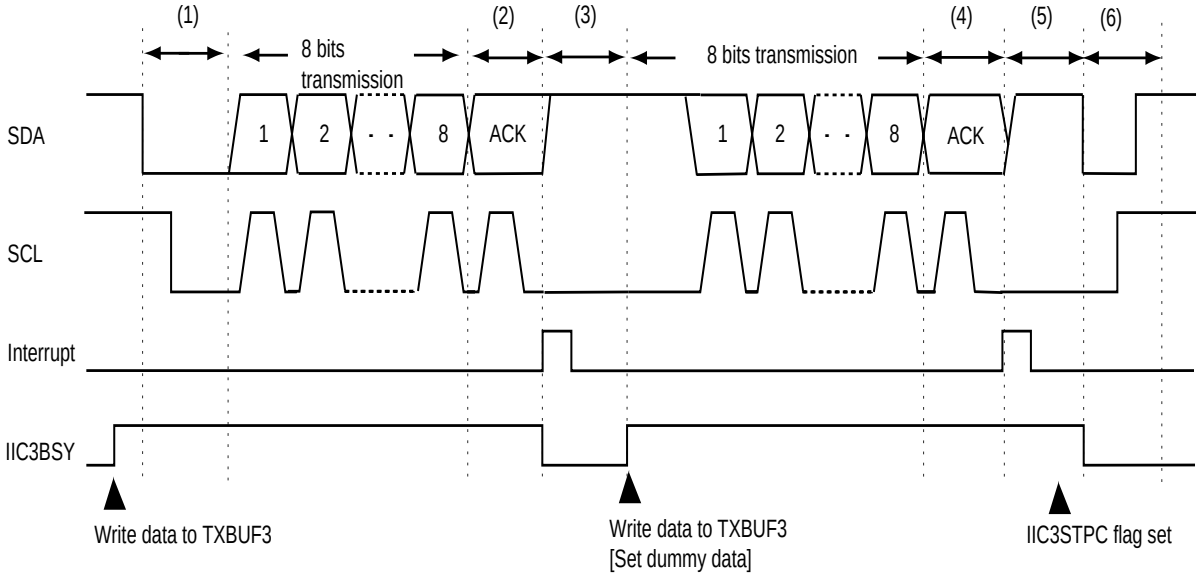


Figure:13.3.22 Master Reception Timing

(1) Output start condition.

(2) Bus released period, ACK bit is received.

(3) Interrupt

Set to reception mode : IIC3REX = 0 → 1

Set data to TXBUF3

(4) Receive ACK bit.

(5) Interrupt

Communication ends : clear the IIC3BSY flag.

(6) Generates stop condition.

■ Pin Setup (2 channels, at transmission)

Table:13.3.16 shows the pins setup in IIC serial interface transmission with 2 channels (SDA3 pin, SCL3 pin).

Table:13.3.16 Pin Setup (2 channels, at transmission)

Item	Data I/O pin	Clock output pin
	SDA3 pin	SCL3 pin
Pin	P33	P32
SDA3/SCL3 pins	SBI3/SBO3 pin connection	-
	SC3MD1(SC3IOM)	
Function	Serial data output	Serial clock output
	SC3MD1(SC3SBOS)	SC3MD1(SC3SBTS)
	Serial data input	-
	SC3MD1(SC3SBIS)	
Type	N-ch open-drain	N-ch open-drain
	P3ODC(P3ODC3)	P3ODC(P3ODC2)
I/O	Output mode	Output mode
	P3DIR(P3DIR3)	P3DIR(P3DIR2)
Pull-up	Added	Added
	P3PLU(P3PLU3)	P3PLU(P3PLU2)

■ Pin Setup (2 channels, at reception)

Table:13.3.17 shows the pins setup in IIC serial interface reception with 2 channels (SDA3 pin, SCL3 pin).

Table:13.3.17 Pin Setup (2 channels, at reception)

Item	Data I/O pin	Clock output pin
	SDA3 pin	SCL3 pin
Pin	P33	P32
SDA3/SCL3 pins	SBI3/SBO3 pin connection	-
	SC3MD1(SC3IOM)	
Function	Port	Serial clock output
	SC3MD1(SC3SBOS)	SC3MD1(SC3SBTS)
	Serial data input	-
	SC3MD1(SC3SBIS)	
Type	N-ch open-drain	N-ch open-drain
	P3ODC(P3ODC3)	P3ODC(P3ODC2)
I/O	Output mode	Output mode
	P3DIR(P3DIR3)	P3DIR(P3DIR2)
Pull-up	Added	Added
	P3PLU(P3PLU3)	P3PLU(P3PLU2)

13.3.4 Setup Example

■ Master Transmission Setup Example

The setup example for the transmission of several bytes data to the all the devices on IIC bus with IIC serial Interface 3 is shown. Table:13.3.18 shows the conditions at communication.

Table:13.3.18 Conditions Single Master IIC Communication Setup

Item	Set to
SBI3/SBO3 pins	Connection (2 channels)
Transfer bit count	8 bits
Start condition	Enable (disable after second communication)
First transfer bit	MSB
ACK bit	Enable
IIC communication mode	NORMAL mode
Clock source	fosc/32
SCL3/SDA3 pin type	N-ch open-drain
SCL3 pin pull-up resistance	Added
SDA3 pin pull-up resistance	Added

An example setup procedure, with a description of each step is shown below.

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Select prescaler operation. SC3MD3 (0x03FA2) bp3: SC3PSCE =1	(1) Set the SC3PSCE flag of the SC3MD3 register to "1" to select prescaler operation.
(2) Select the clock source. SC3MD3 (0x03FA2) bp2-0: SC3PSC2-0 =011	(2) SC3PSC2-0 flags of the SC3MD3 register to "011" to select fs/32 as the clock source.
(3) Control the pin type. P3ODC (0x03F3B) bp2: P3ODC2 =1 bp3: P3ODC3 =1	(3) Set the P3ODC2,P3ODC3 flag of the P3ODC register to "1, 1" to select N-ch open drain for the SDA3/SCL3 pin type.
(4) Control the pin direction. P3DIR (0x03F33) bp2: P3ODC2 =1 bp3: P3ODC3 =1	(4) Set the P3DIR2, P3DIR3 flag of P3 pin control direction register (P3DIR) to "1, 1" to set P32, P33 to output mode.

Setup Procedure	Description
(5) Set ACK bit. SC3CTR (0x03FA6) bp0 :SC3ACKO =x bp1 :IIC3ACKS =1	(5) Set the IIC3ACKS flag of the serial 3 control register (SC3CTR) to "1" to select “enable ACK bit". ACK bit is received at transmission that setup of the ACK bit level with the IIC3ACKS flag is not necessary.
(6) Select the communication mode. SC3CTR (0x03FA6) bp4 :IIC3TMD =0	(6) Set the IIC3TMD flag of the serial 3 control register (SC3CTR) to "0" to select NORMAL mode.
(7) Select the communication type. SC3CTR (0x03FA6) bp2 :SC3CMD =1	(7) Set the SC3CMD flag of the serial 3 control register (SC3CTR) to "1" to select IIC.
(8) <Transmission setup> Select the transmission/reception SC3CTR(0x03FA6) bp3 :IIC3REX =0	(8) Set the IIC3REX flag of the serial 3 control register (SC3CTR) to "0" to select the transmission mode.
(9) Initialize the monitor flag. SC3CTR (0x03FA6) bp6 :IIC3STC =0	(9) Set the IIC3STC flag of the serial 3 control register (SC3CTR) to "0, 0" to initialize the start condition detection flag.
(10) Set the SC3MD0 register. Select the transfer bit count. SC3MD0 (0x03FA0) bp2-0 :SC3LNG2-0 =111 Select the start condition. SC3MD0 (0x03FA0) bp3 :SC3STE =1 Select the first transfer bit. SC3MD0 (0x03FA0) bp4 :SC3DIR =0 Select the IIC communication edge. SC3MD0(0x03FA0) bp6 :SC3CE1 =1	(10) Set the SC3LNG2-0 flag of the serial 3 mode register (SC3MD0) to "111" to set the transfer bit count as 8 bits. Set the SC3STE flag of the SC3MD0 register to "0" to disenable start condition(Start condition is not added after the second communication.). Set the SC3DIR flag of the SC3MD0 register to "0" "to set MSB as the first transfer bit. In IIC communication, set always the SC3CE1 flag of the SC3MD0 register to "1".
(11) Set the SC3MD1 register. Select the transfer clock. SC3MD1 (0x03FA1) bp2 :SC3MST =1 Control the pin function. SC3MD1 (0x03FA1) bp4 :SC3SBOS =1 bp5 :SC3SBIS =1 bp6 :SC3SBTS =1 bp7 :SC3IOM =1	(11) Set the SC3MST flag of the SC3MD1 register to "1" to select clock master (internal clock). In IIC communication, do not select external clock. Set the SC3SBOS, SC3SBIS, SC3SBTS flags of the SC3MD1 register to "1" to set the SDA3 pin (the SBO3 pin) to serial data output, the SBI3 pin to serial data input, and the SCL3 pin (the SBT3 pin) to serial clock I/O. Set the SC3IOM flag to "1" to set "serial data input from the SDA3 pin (the SBO3 pin)".
(12) Set the interrupt level. SC3ICR (0x03FF3) bp7-6 :SC3LV1-0 =10	(12) Set the interrupt level by the SC3LV1-0 flag of the serial 3 interrupt control register (SC3ICR).

Setup Procedure	Description
(13) Enable the interrupt. SC3ICR (0x03FF3) bp1 :SC3IE =1	(13) Set the SC3IE flag of the SC3ICR register to “1” to enable the interrupt. If the interrupt request flag (SC3IR of the SC3ICR register) is already set, clear SC3IR before the interrupt is enabled. [Chapter 3 3.1.4 Interrupt Flag Setup]
(14) <Start transmission.> Start serial transmission. Confirm that SCL3 (P32) is "H". Transmission data → TXBUF3 (0x03FA5)	(14) Set the transmission data to the transmission data buffer TXBUF3. Then the transfer clock is generated to start transmission. If the ACK bit is received after data transmission, the communication complete interrupt SC3IRQ is generated.
(15) <Transmission ends.> <Setup the next data transmission> Judge the monitor flag. SC3CTR (0x03FA6) bp6 :IIC3STC	(15) Confirm the IIC3STC flag of the serial 3 control register (SC3CTR). When the previous transmission is completed properly, IIC3STC = "0". If IIC3STC = "1", the communication should be re-executed.
(16) Judge the ACK bit level. SC3CTR (0x03FA6) bp0 :SC3ACK0	(16) Confirm the level of the ACK bit, received by the SC3ACK0 flag of the serial 3 control register (SC3CTR). When SC3ACK0 = 0, the transmission can be continued. When SC3ACK0 = 1, the reception at slave may not be operated properly, so finish the communication.
(17) Set the SC3MD0 register. Select the transfer bit count. SC3MD0 (0x03FA0) bp2-0 :SC3LNG2-0	(17) To change the transfer count bit, set the transfer count bit by the SC3LNG2-0 flag of the serial 3 mode register (SC3MD0).
(18) <Start next data transmission.> Serial transmission starts. [→ (15)]	(18) Set the transmission data to TXBUF3 to start the transmission. [→ (15)]
(19) <Transmission ends.> <IIC communication end processing> Set the IIC3STPC flag SC3CTR (0x03FA6) bp5 :IIC3STPC =1	(19) Set the IIC3STPC flag of the serial 3 control register (SC3CTR) to "1". Stop condition is automatically generated to finish the communication.

Note : Procedures (1), (2) can be set at the same time.

Note : Procedures (5) to (9) can be set at the same time.

Note : Procedures (10), (11)can be set at the same time.

Note : Procedures (12), (13)can be set at the same time.

Each flag should be set as this setup procedure in order. Activation of communication should be operated after all control registers (refer toTable:13.2.1, except TXBUF3) are set.

Chapter 14 Serial Interface 4

14

14.1 Overview

This LSI contains a serial interface 4, which is compatible with IIC serial interface (slave) communication.

14.1.1 Functions

Table:14.1.1 shows the serial interface 4 functions.

Table:14.1.1 Serial Interface 4 Functions

Communication style	IIC (slave)
Interrupt	SC4IRQ
Pins	SDA,SCL
Addressing	7 bits/10 bits
General call	O
Maximum transfer rate	400 kHz (High speed mode)

Serial interface 4 is only available in NORMAL mode. It is not available in other modes (SLOW, HALT0, HALT1, STOP1).

14.1.2 Block Diagram

■ Serial Interface 4 Block Diagram

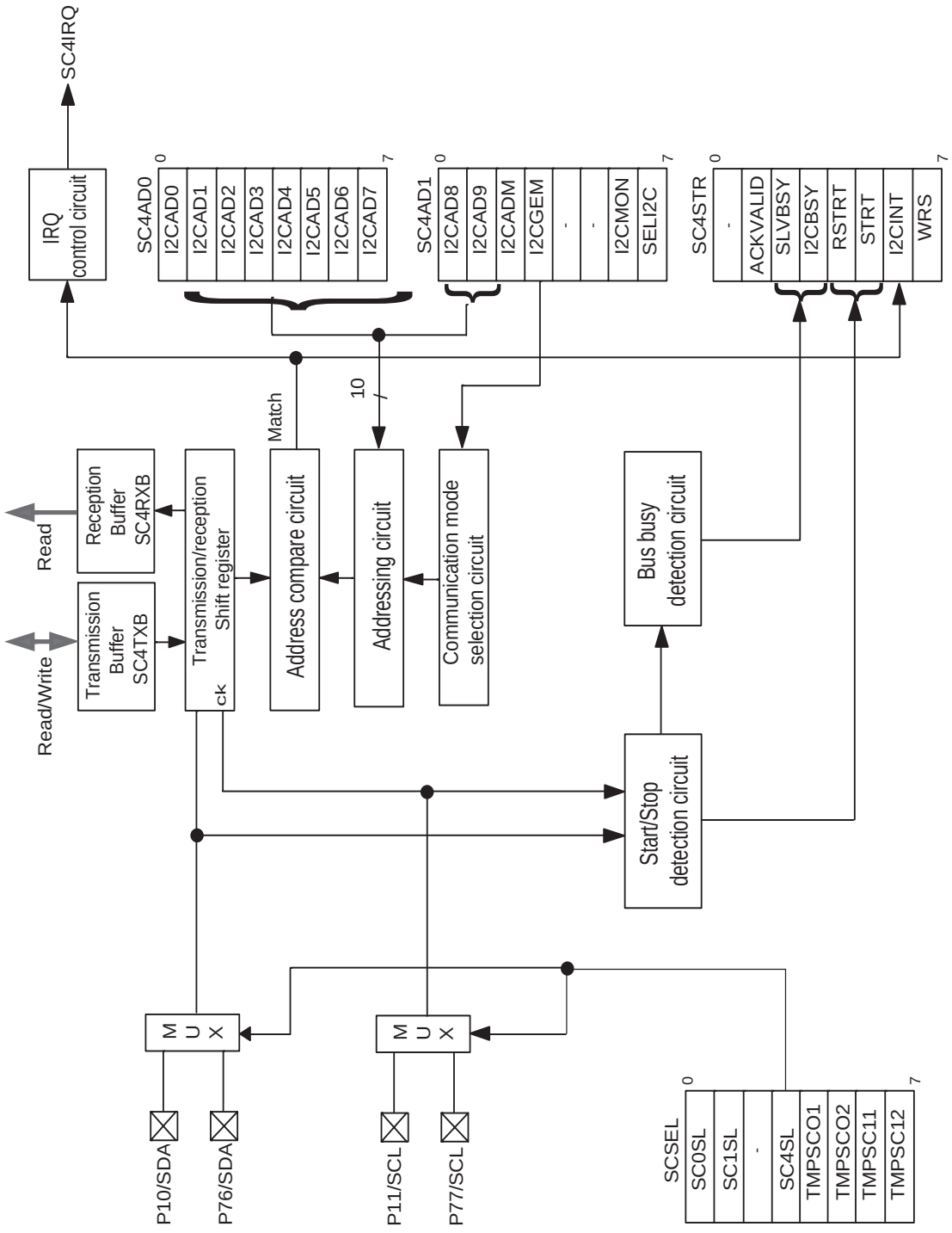


Figure:14.1.1 Serial Interface 4 Block Diagram

14.1.3 Control Registers

Table:14.1.2 shows the registers that control serial interface 4.

Table:14.1.2 Serial Interface 4 Control Registers List

Register	Address	R/W	Function	Page
SC4AD0	0x03FA7’	R/W	Serial interface 4 addressing register 0	XIV-6
SC4AD1	0x03FA8’	R/W	Serial interface 4 addressing register 1	XIV-6
SC4TXB	0x03FAA’	R/W	Serial interface 4 transmission data buffer	XIV-5
SC4RXB	0x03FA9’	R	Serial interface 4 reception data buffer	XIV-5
SC4STR	0x03FAB	R	Serial interface 4 status register	XIV-7
SCSEL	0x03F90’	R/W	Serial interface I/O pin switching control register	XIV-8
P1ODC	0x03F1B’	R/W	Port 1 N-ch open drain control register	IV-11
P7ODC	0x03F1D’	R/W	Port 7 N-ch open drain control register	IV-54
P1DIR	0x03F31’	R/W	Port 1 direction control register	IV-8
P1PLUD	0x03F41’	R/W	Port 1 pull-up resistor control register	IV-9
P1OUT	0x03F11’	R/W	Port 1 output control register	IV-7
P7DIR	0x03F37’	R/W	Port 7 direction control register	IV-52
P7PLUD	0x03F47’	R/W	Port 7 pull-up resistor control register	IV-53
P7OUT	0x03F17’	R/W	Port 7 output control register	IV-51
SC4ICR	0x03FF5’	R/W	Serial interface 4 interrupt control register	III-38

R /W : Readable / Writable

14.1.4 Data Buffer Register

Serial interface 4 has one each of 8-bit serial data buffer register for transmission and for reception.

■ Serial Interface 4 Reception Data Buffer (SC4RXB: 0x03FA9)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	I2CRXB7	I2CRXB6	I2CRXB5	I2CRXB4	I2CRXB3	I2CRXB2	I2CRXB1	I2CRXB0
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

bp	Flag	Description
7-0	I2CRXB7 I2CRXB6 I2CRXB5 I2CRXB4 I2CRXB3 I2CRXB2 I2CRXB1 I2CRXB0	Serial interface 4 reception data buffer

■ Serial Interface 4 Transmission Data Buffer (SC4TXB: 0x03FAA)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	I2CTXB7	I2CTXB6	I2CTXB5	I2CTXB4	I2CTXB3	I2CTXB2	I2CTXB1	I2CTXB0
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7-0	I2CTXB7 I2CTXB6 I2CTXB5 I2CTXB4 I2CTXB3 I2CTXB2 I2CTXB1 I2CTXB0	Serial interface 4 transmission data buffer

14.1.5 Mode Register

■ Serial Interface 4 Addressing Register (SC4AD0: 0x03FA7)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	I2CAD7	I2CAD6	I2CAD5	I2CAD4	I2CAD3	I2CAD2	I2CAD1	I2CAD0
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7-20	I2CAD7 I2CAD6 I2CAD5 I2CAD4 I2CAD3 I2CAD2 I2CAD1 I2CAD0	Serial interface 4 addressing register

■ Serial Interface 4 Addressing Register 1 (SC4AD1: 0x03FA8)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	SELI2C	I2CMON	-	-	I2CGEM	I2CADM	I2CAD9	I2CAD8
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7	SELI2C	Reset control 0:Reset 1:Operational status
6	I2CMON	Monitor mode selection 0:Communication mode 1:Monitor mode
5-4	-	-
3	I2CGEM	Communication mode selection 0:Normal communication mode 1:General call communication mode
2	I2CADM	Address mode selection 0:7 bits address mode 1:10 bits address mode
1-0	I2CAD9 I2CAD8	Address setup

■ Serial Interface 4 Status Register 1 (SC4STR: 0x03FAB)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	WRS	I2CINT	STRT	RSTRT	I2CBSY	SLVBSY	ACKVALID	-
At reset	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

bp	Flag	Description
7	WRS	Data transfer direction determination flag 0:Slave→Master 1:Master→Slave
6	I2CINT	Interrupt detection flag 0:Undetected 1:Detected
5	STRT	Start condition detection 0:Undetected 1:Detected
4	RSTRT	Re-start condition detection 0:Undetected 1:Detected
3	I2CBSY	Bus busy flag 0:Bus free status 1:Bus busy status
2	SLVBSY	Slave busy flag 0:Other than during data transfer 1:During data transfer
1	ACKVALID	ACK detection flag 0:Undetected 1:Detected
0	-	-

■ Serial Interface Input/Output Pin Switching Control Register (SCSEL: 0x03F90)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	TMPSC12	TMPSC11	TMPSC02	TMPSC01	SC4SL	-	SC!SL	SC0SL
At reset	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7-6	TMPSC12 TMPSC11	Serial interface 1 used timer2 output dividing switching X0:Timer 2 output 01:Timer 2 output/2 11:Timer 2 output/8
5-4	TMPSC02 TMPSC01	Serial interface0 used timer2 output dividing switching X0:Timer 2 output 01:Timer 2 output/2 11:Timer 2 output/8
3	SC4SL	Serial interface 4 I/O pin switching 0:P10, P11 1:P76, P77
2	-	-
1	SC!SL	Serial interface 1 I/O pin switching 0:P15 to P17 1:PA4 to PA6
0	SC0SL	Serial interface 0 I/O pin switching 0:PA0 to PA2 1:P75 to P77

14.2 Operation

■ Activation and Termination Factors

Set the SELI2C flag of the SC4AD1 register to "1" to activate this serial interface. For the termination, set the flag to "0". The ports used for communication can be used as general ports while the serial interface is not in operative state. When the SELI2C register is set to "0", SC4AD0 register, SC4TXB register and SC4RXB register is automatically cleared.

■ Slave Address Setup

This serial interface can select either 7 bits or 10 bits slave address. To select 7 bits slave address, set the I2CADM flag of the SC4AD1 register to "0" to select 7 bits address mode, and set the slave address to upper 7 bits of the I2CAD0 register (I2CAD7 to I2CAD1). To select 10 bits slave address, set the I2CADM flag of the SC4AD1 register to "1" to select 10 bits address mode, and set the upper 2 bits of the slave address to lower 2 bits of the I2CAD1 register (I2CAD9, I2CAD8) and set the lower 8 bits of the slave address to I2CAD0 register. When 10 bits address mode is selected, this serial interface circuit is capable of data reception only.

■ General Call Communication

This serial interface is compatible with general call communication mode. Set the I2CGEM flag of the SC4AD1 register to "1" to select general call communication mode. In this mode, slave address set in the SC4AD0 and SC4AD1 registers are invalid.

■ Data Transmission/Reception

This serial interface enables automatic address determination after detection of start condition on IIC bus. Serial interface 4 interrupt (SC4IRQ) is generated only when address transmitted from master matches the set slave address. Data transmission/reception are controlled with the WRS flag of the SC4STR register, and slave transmission is selected when the WRS flag is set to "0", slave reception is selected when the WRS flag is set to "1". In slave transmission, setting the transmission data to SC4TXB register opens the bus line and data transmission is started by the clock transmitted from master. In slave reception, setting the dummy data to SC4RXB register opens the bus line and data reception is started by the clock transmitted from master.

■ Start/Re-Start Condition Detection

When data (SDA) pin changes from "H" to "L" while clock (SCL) pin is "H", start condition is detected and the STRT flag of the SC4STR register is set to "1". The STRT flag is cleared to "0" after communication data is set when the interrupt routine right after the slave address reception sets the communication data. If start condition is detected again during data transfer, the RSTRT flag is set. This flag is cleared to "0" after communication data is set when the interrupt routine right after the slave address reception sets the communication data. If address transmitted from master does not match the slave address, these flags are automatically cleared at the timing when address miscompare is detected.

■ Busy Flag

This serial interface contains 2 busy flags (SLVBSY, I2CBSY). The SLVBSY flag is set to "1" when address transmitted from master matches the slave address. The I2CBSY flag is set to "1" during communication on IIC bus. In 10 bits address mode, if the upper 2 bits address which is first to be transmitted from master matches the I2CAD9-8 of the SC4AD1 register, the SLVBSY flag is set to "1" but SC4IRQ is not generated. If the lower 8 bits address which is next to be transmitted from master matches the I2CAD7-0 of the SC4AD0 register, the SLVBSY flag is remained "1" and SC4IRQ is generated. If these address mismatch, the SLVBSY flag is cleared to "0" and SC4IRQ is not generated.

■ Bus Line Monitor

General call communication can be monitored with the bus line OFF (serial interface 4 is not activated). For monitoring, while the SELI2C flag is set to "1", set the I2CGEM flag of the SC4AD1 register to "1" and set the I2CMON flag to “1”. Though serial 4 interrupt (SC4IRQ) is generated at this time, it does not output signal to the data and clock that it has no effect on the communication.

■ Pin Setup

Table:14.2.1 shows pin setup (SDA, SCL pins) for IIC serial interface 4 data transmission. N-ch open drain setup is always necessary for using this serial interface. Use the pull-up resistor control register (PnPLU) of each port for pull-up resistor setup. Input/output of the transfer data is automatically switched.

Table:14.2.1 Pin Setup

Item	Data I/O pin	Clock output pin
	SDA pin	SCL pin
Port Pin	P10	P11
	P76	P77
Function	Serial data I/O	Serial clock I/O
N-ch open-drain setup register	P1ODC P7ODC	
Pull-up resistor control register	P1PLUD P7PLUD	

This serial interface does not features the function that resets the serial interface circuit by identifying reception data or by changing the slave address. Including general call communication mode, reception data identification should be done by software.

14.2.1 Setup Example of the Slave IIC Serial Interface

■ Setup Example of the Data Transmission

The setup example for slave transmission with serial 4 is shown. Table:14.2.2 shows the conditions at transmission.

Table:14.2.2 Conditions for Slave IIC Communication

Item	set to
Data pin (SDA)	P10
Clock pin (SCl)	P11
Addressing mode	7 bits
Slave address	0110011
Transmission data	x'55'

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Control the pin type. P1ODC (x'3F1B') bp1-0 :P1ODC1-0 =11 P1PLUD (x'3F41') bp1-0 :P1PLUD1-0 =11	(1) Set the P1ODC0, P1ODC1 flags of the P1ODC register to "1" to select N-ch open-drain for P10 and P11. Set the P1PLUD0, P1PLUD1 flag of the P1PLUD register to "1" to add pull-up resistor.
(2) Control the pin direction. P1DIR (x'3F31') bp1-0 :P1DIR1-0 =11	(2) Set the P1DIR0, P1DIR1 flags of the port 1pin direction control register (P1DIR) to "1" to set P10 and P11 to output mode.
(3) Select communication pin. SCSEL (X'3F90) bp3 :SC4SL =0	(3) Set the SC4SL flag of the SCSEL register to "0" to select P10 and P11 for communication pins.
(4) Select communication mode, address mode. SC4AD1 (x'3FA8) bp3 :I2CGEM =0 bp2 :I2CADM =0	(4) Set the I2CGEM flag to "0" to select normal communication mode, and set I2CADM flag to "0" to select 7 bits address mode.
(5) Activate serial interface 4. SC4AD1 (x'3FA8) bp7 :SELI2C =1	(5) Set the SELI2C flag of the SC4AD1 register to "1" to activate the serial interface.
(6) Set the slave address. SC4AD0 (x'3FA7) bp7-0 :I2CAD7-1 =0110011	(6) Set the slave address to the upper 7 bits of the SC4AD1 register (I2CAD7-1).
(7) Start IIC communication.	(7) Master on the IIC bus starts communication.

Setup Procedure	Description
(8) Confirm data transmission/reception. SC4STR (x'3FAB') bp7 :WRS =0	(8) When the address transmitted from the master matches the slave address set in the SC4AD1 register, serial interface 4 interrupt (SC4IRQ) is generated. In the interrupt routine, when the WRS flag of the SC4MD0 register is "0", this communication is recognized as slave transmission.
(9) Set transmission data. SC4TXB (x'3FAA') bp7-0 :SI2CTXB7-0 =x'55'	(9) Set the transmission data to the SC4TXB register.

Chapter 15 A/D Converter

15

15.1 Overview

This LSI contains an A/D converter with 10 bits resolutions. It contains a built-in sample hold circuit. The channels 0 to 6 (AN0 to AN6) of analog input can be switched by software. When A/D converter is stopped, the power consumption can be reduced by turning the built-in ladder resistance OFF. A/D conversion is activated by a register setup.

15.1.1 Functions

Table:15.1.1 shows the A/D converter functions.

Table:15.1.1 A/D Converter Functions

A/D Input Pins	7 pins
Pins	AN6 to AN0
Interrupt	ADIRQ
Resolution	10 bits
Conversion Time (Min.)	24.5 µs(T_{AD}= as 800 ns)
Input range	V_{SS} to V_{REF+}
Power Consumption	Built-in Ladder Resistance (ON/OFF)

The conversion time shown in the above table does not include between the instant when A/D conversion start flag is enabled and the instant when the actual analog signal is sampled. The actual time is the conversion time plus 1 T_{AD}.

15.1.2 Block Diagram

■ A/D Converter Block Diagram

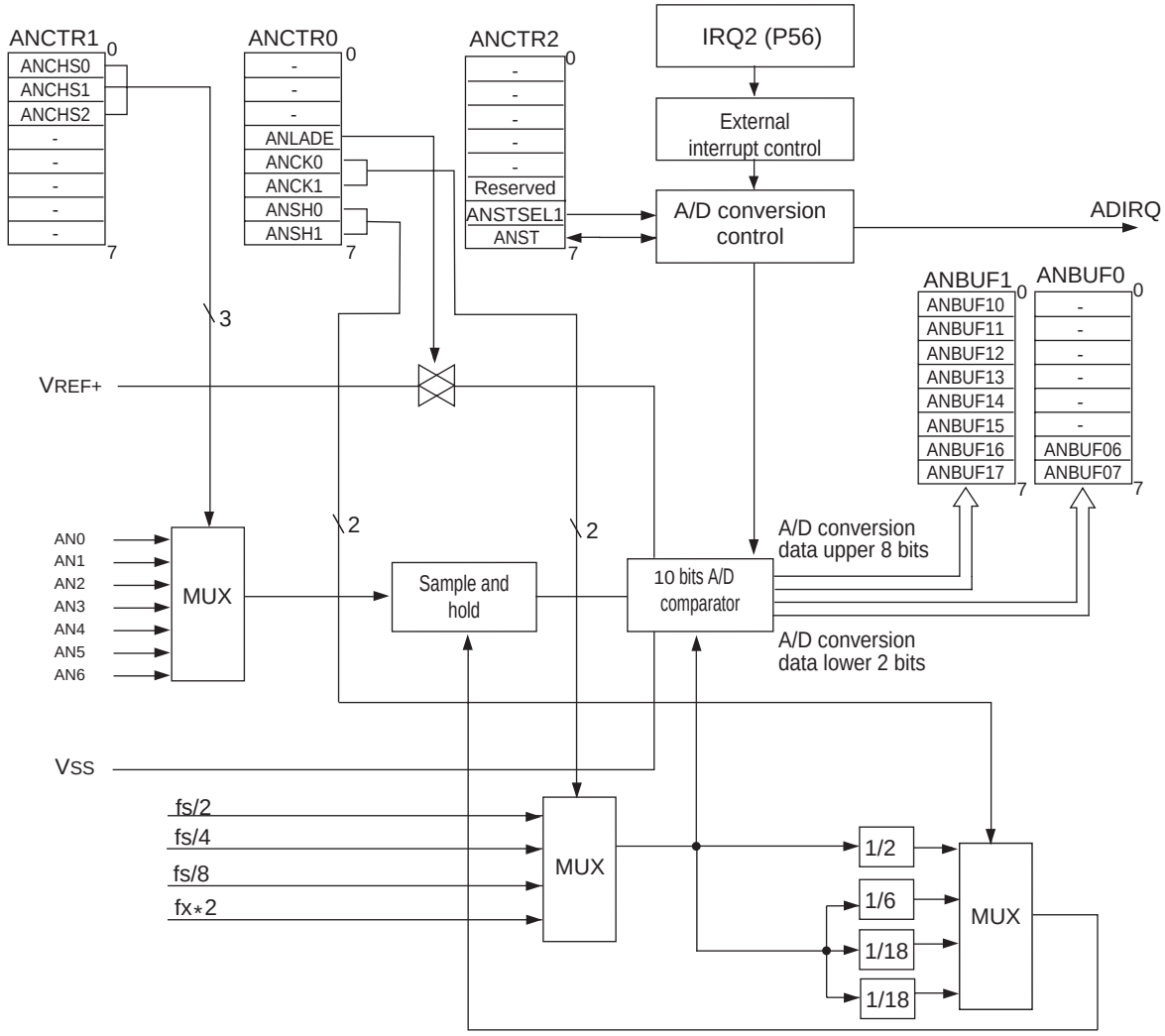


Figure:15.1.1 A/D Converter Block Diagram

15.2 Control Registers

A/D converter consists of the register (ANCTRn) and the data storage buffer (ANBUFn).

15.2.1 Registers

Table:15.2.1 shows the registers used to control A/D converter.

Table:15.2.1 A/D Converter Control Registers

Register	Address	R/W	Function	Page
ANCTR0	0x03FCB	R/W	A/D converter control register 0	XV-5
ANCTR1	0x03FCC	R/W	A/D converter control register 1	XV-6
ANCTR2	0x03FCD	R/W	A/D converter control register 2	XV-6
ANBUF0	0x03FCE	R	A/D converter data storage buffer 0	XV-7
ANBUF1	0x03FCF	R	A/D converter data storage buffer 1	XV-7
ADICR	0x03FF4	R/W	A/D converter interrupt control register	III-37
IRQ2ICR	0x03FE4	R/W	External interrupt 2 control register	III-22
EDGDT	0x03F1E	R/W	Both edges interrupt control register	III-49
PAIMD	0x03F4E	R/W	Port A input mode register	IV-76
PAPLUD	0x03F4A	R/W	Port A Pull-up resistor control register	IV-76

R/W : Readable/Writable

R : Readable only

15.2.2 Control Registers

■ A/D Converter Control Register0 (ANCTR0:0x03FCB)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	ANSH1	ANSH0	ANCK1	ANCK0	ANLADE	-	-	-
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	-	-	-
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	-	-	-

bp	Flag	Description
7-6	ANSH1 ANSH0	Sample hold time 00:T_{AD} x 2 01:T_{AD} x 6 10:T_{AD} x 18 11:T_{AD} x 18
5-4	ANCK1 ANCK0	A/D conversion clock (ftad=1/T_{AD}) 00:fs/2 01:fs/4 10:fs/8 11:fx x 2 * as T_{AD}>800 ns
3	ANLADE	A/D ladder resistance control 0:A/D ladder resistance OFF 1:A/D ladder resistance ON
2-0	-	-

■ A/D Converter Control Register1 (ANCTR1:0x03FCC)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	-	-	-	-	ANSHS2	ANSHS1	ANSHS0
Reset	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	0
Access	-	-	-	-	-	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Flag	Description
7-3	-	-
2-0	ANSHS2 ANSHS1 ANSHS0	Analog input channel 000:AN0 001:AN1 010:AN2 011:AN3 100:AN4 101:AN5 110:AN6 111:Reserved

■ A/D Converter Control Register2 (ANCTR2:0x03FCD)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	ANST	ANSTSEL1	Reserved	-	-	-	-	-
Reset	0	0	0	-	-	-	-	-
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	-	-	-	-	-

bp	Flag	Description
7	ANST	A/D conversion status 0:Finish, Hold 1:Start, Converting
6	ANSTSEL1	A/D conversion start factor selection 0:Set ANST flag to “1” 1:External interrupt 2
5	Reserved	Set always to "0"
4-0	-	-

15.2.3 Data Buffers

■ A/D Conversion Data Storage Buffer0 (ANBUF0:0x03FCE)

The lower 2 bits results from A/D conversion are stored to this register.

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	ANBUF07	ANBUF06	-	-	-	-	-	-
Reset	X	X	-	-	-	-	-	-
Access	R	R	-	-	-	-	-	-

■ A/D Conversion Data Storage Buffer1 (ANBUF1:0x03FCF)

The upper 8 bits results from A/D conversion are stored to this register.

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	ANBUF17	ANBUF16	ANBUF15	ANBUF14	ANBUF13	ANBUF12	ANBUF11	ANBUF10
Reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

15.3 Operation

Description of A/D converter circuit setup procedure is as follows.

1. Set the analog pins.

   Set the analog input pin (set at the procedure 2) to "special function pin" by the port A input mode register (PAIMD).

   * Setup of the port A input mode register should be done before analog voltage is put to pins.

2. Select the analog input pin.

   Select the analog input pin from AN6 to AN0 by the ANCHS2-0 flag of the A/D converter control register1 (ANCTR1).

3. Select the A/D converter clock.

   Select the A/D converter clock by the ANCK1, ANCK0 flag of the A/D converter control register 0 (ANCTR0). Converter clock (T_{AD}) should not be less than 800 ns by any oscillator.

4. Set the sample hold time.

   Set the sample hold time by the ANSH1, ANSH0 flag of the A/D converter control register 0 (ANCTR0). The sample hold time should be based on analog input impedance.

   * Procedures (2) to (4) can be set in any order. (3) and (4) can be set at the same time.

5. Set the A/D ladder resistance.

   Set the ANLADE flag of the A/D converter control register 0 (ANCTR0) to "1", and a current flow through the ladder resistance and A/D converter goes into the waiting.

6. Start A/D conversion.

   Set the ANST flag of the A/D converter control register 2 (ANCTR2) to "1" to start A/D converter.

   * Set the REDG0 flag of the external interrupt 2 control register (IRQ2ICR) and the EDGSEL flag of the edge interrupt control register (EDGDT) to specify the valid edge.

7. A/D conversion

   After sampling by the sample hold time (set at the procedure 4), A/D conversion is decided in comparison with MSB in order.

8. Complete the A/D conversion.

   When A/D conversion is completed, the ANST flag is cleared to "0", and the result of the conversion is stored to the A/D buffer (ANBUF0,1). Then, the A/D complete interrupt request (ADIRQ) is generated.

Set the ANLADE flag to "1" and wait 12 conversion clock to start A/D conversion.

During A/D conversion, when the ANST flag is set to "0" to forcefully stop A/D conversion, more than (2 system clock) + (2 conversion clock) time is required to restart A/D conversion.

When A/D conversion start factor is selected as "start by external interrupt" and ANST flag is set to "0" to forcefully stop A/D conversion, set always A/D conversion start factor to "0" before clearing the ANST flag to "0".

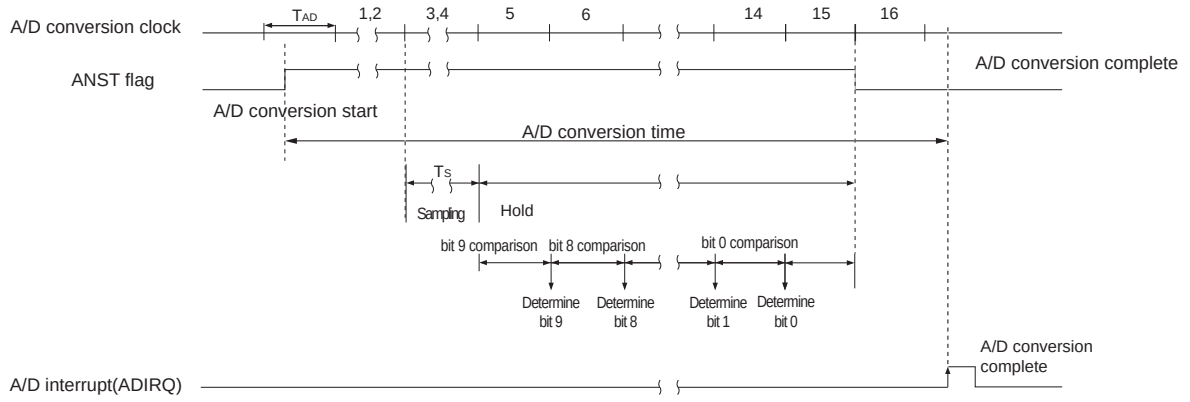


Figure:15.3.1 Operation of A/D Conversion

To read out the value of the A/D conversion, A/D conversion should be done several times to prevent noise error by confirming the match of level by program, or by using the average value.

From A/D conversion start to the generation of A/D conversion complete interrupt is the A/D conversion period. Re-conversion is not executed if an external interrupt is generated between the instant when ANST flag is cleared and the instant when A/D conversion complete interrupt is generated. However, when ANST flag is set to "1" (software start up), re-conversion is executed.

15.3.1 Setup

■ Input Pins of A/D Converter Setup

Input pins for A/D converter is selected by the ANCH2-0 flag of the ANCTR1 register.

■ A/D Converter Clock Setup

The A/D converter clock is set by the ANCK1 to ANCK0 flag of the ANCTR0 register. Set the A/D converter clock (T_{AD}) more than 800 ns. Table:15.3.1 shows the machine clock (fosc, fx, fs) and the A/D converter clock (T_{AD}). (calculated as fs = fosc/2, fx/4)

Table:15.3.1 A/D Conversion Clock and A/D Conversion Cycle

ANCK1	ANCK0	A/D conversion clock	A/D conversion cycle (T_{AD})		
			at high speed oscillation		at low speed oscillation
			fosc=10 MHz	fosc=8.38 MHz	fosc=32.768 kHz
0	0	fs/2	400 ns (no usable)	477.33 ns (no usable)	244.14 µs
	1	fs/4	800 ns	954.65 ns	488.28 µs
1	0	fs/8	1600 ns	1.91 µs	976.56 µs
	1	fx*2	15.26 µs	15.26 µs	15.26 µs

For the system clock (fs), refer to [Chapter 2 Clock Switching].

■ A/D Converter Sampling Time (Ts) Setup

The sampling time of A/D converter is set by the ANSH1 to 0 flag of the ANCTR0 register. The sampling time of A/D converter depends on external circuit, so set the right value by analog input impedance.

Table:15.3.2 Sampling Time of A/D Conversion and A/D Conversion Time

ANSH1	ANSH0	Sampling time (Ts)	A/D conversion time[µs]				
			at high speed				at low speed
			at T_{AD}=1600 ns (fs=5 MHz)	at T_{AD}=954.65 ns (fs=4.19 MHz)	at T_{AD}=1.91 µs (fs=4.19 MHz)	at T_{AD}=15.26 µs (fx=32.768 kHz)	at T_{AD}=15.26 µs (fx=32.768 kHz)
0	0	T_{AD} x 2	24.5	14.82	29.15	229.4	534.15
	1	T_{AD} x 6	30.9	18.64	36.79	290.44	595.19
1	0	T_{AD} x 18	50.1	30.09	59.71	473.56	778.31
	1	T_{AD} x 18	50.1	30.09	59.71	473.56	778.31

* Calculated as fs=fosc/2,fx/4.

The conversion time shown above does not include between the instant when A/D conversion start flag is enabled and the instant when the actual analog signal is sampled. The actual time is the conversion time plus 1 T_{AD}.
[Calculus]
Conversion Time = $T_S + 13T_{AD} + 2.5/fs$

A/D conversion time may be extended up to 0.5 system clock when fx*2 is selected as the A/D conversion clock.

■ Built-in Ladder Register Control

The ANLADE flag of the ANCTR0 register is set to "1" to send a current to the ladder resistance for A/D conversion. When A/D converter is stopped, the ANLADE flag of the ANCTR0 register is set to "0" to save the power consumption.

■ A/D Conversion Start Factor Selection

A/D conversion start factor is set by the ANSTSEL1 flag of the ANCTR2 register. By setting the ANSTSEL1 flag of the ANCTR2 register, A/D conversion starts with the “external interrupt 2” factor. Also, A/D conversion starts when ANST flag of the ANCTR2 register is set to “1”.

When the “external interrupt 2” is selected as the A/D conversion start factor, specify the valid edge by the REDG0 flag of the external interrupt 2 control register (IRQ2ICR) or EDGSEL2 flag of the both edges interrupt control register (EDGDT).

Specify the valid interrupt edge before selecting the interrupt factor by the A/D conversion start factor.

When the “external interrupt 2” is selected as the A/D conversion start factor, specify the valid edge by the REDG0 flag of the external interrupt 2 control register (IRQ2ICR) or EDGSEL2 flag of the both edges interrupt control register (EDGDT).

Specify the valid interrupt edge before selecting the interrupt factor by the A/D conversion start factor.

■ A/D Conversion Start Setup

A/D conversion start is set by the ANST flag of the ANCTR2 register. The ANST flag of the ANCTR2 register is set to "1" to start A/D conversion. When selecting “external interrupt 2” as the A/D conversion start factor, set the ANST flag of the ANCTR2 register to “1” after the external interrupt 2 is generated. Also, during A/D conversion, the ANST flag of the ANCTR2 register is set to “1” and cleared to “0” after the converted data is stored.

15.3.2 Setup Example

■ Example of A/D Converter Setup by Registers

A/D conversion is started by setting registers. The analog input pins are set to AN0, the converter clock is set to fs/4, and the sampling hold time is set to T_{AD} x 2. Then, A/D conversion complete interrupt is generated. An example setup procedure, with a description of each step is shown below.

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Set the analog input pin. PAIMD(0x03F4E) bp0 :PAIMD0 =1 PAPLUD(0x03F4A) bp0 :PAPLU0 =0	(1) Set the analog input pin (set at the procedure 2) as the special function pin by the port A input mode register (PAIMD). Also, disable pull-up resistor by the port A pull-up resistor control register (PAPLUD).
(2) Select the analog input pin. ANCTR1(0x03FCC) bp2-0 :ANCHS2-0 =000	(2) Select the analog input pin from AN6 to AN0 by the ANCH2-0 flag of the A/D converter control register1 (ANCTR1).
(3) Select the A/D converter clock. ANCTR0(0x03FCB) bp5-4 :ANCK1-0 =01	(3) Select the A/D converter clock by the ANCK1, ANCK0 flag of the A/D converter control register0 (ANCTR0).
(4) Set the sample hold time. ANCTR0(0x03FCB) bp7-6 :ANSH1-0 =00	(4) Set the sample hold time by the ANSH1, ANSH0 flag of the A/D converter control register0 (ANCTR0).
(5) Set the interrupt level. ADICR(0x03FF4) bp7-6 :ADLV1-0 =00	(5) Set the interrupt level by the ADLV1-0 flag of the A/D conversion complete interrupt control register (ADICR). If any interrupt request flag is already set, clear the flag.
(6) Enable the interrupt. ADICR(0x03FF4) bp1 :ADIE =1	(6) Set the ADIE flag the ADICR register to "1" to enable the interrupt. [Chapter 3 3.1.4 Interrupt Flag Setup]
(7) Set the A/D ladder resistance. ANCTR0(0x03FCB) bp3 :ANLADE =1	(7) Set the ANLADE flag of the A/D converter control register0 (ANCTR0) to "1" to send a current to the ladder resistance for the A/D conversion.
(8) Start A/D conversion operation. ANCTR2(0x03FCD) bp7 :ANST =1	(8) Set the ANST flag of the A/D converter control register2 (ANCTR2) to "1" to start the A/D conversion.
(9) Complete A/D conversion operation. ANBUF0(0x03FCE) ANBUF1(0x03FCF)	(9) When A/D conversion is completed, the result is stored to the A/D buffer (ANBUF0,1) and the ANST flag of the A/D converter control register2 (ANCTR2) is cleared to “0”. Then A/D conversion complete interrupt is generated.

* The procedures (3) to (4) can be set at the same time.

After A/D conversion is completed, when A/D conversion is re-started with a different setup, set the ANLADE of the A/D converter control register0 (ANCTR0) to "0" and confirm the analog stop before changing the setup.
Operations of other procedures are not guaranteed.

15.3.3 Cautions

A/D conversion can be damaged by noise easily. Therefore, anti-noise measures should be taken adequately.

■ Anti-noise measures

For A/D input (analog input pin), add capacitor near the Vss pins of micro controller.

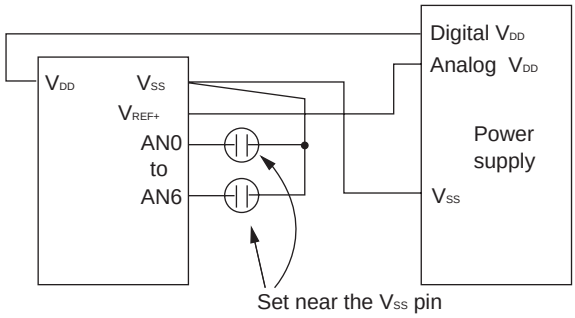


Figure:15.3.2 A/D Converter Recommended Example 1

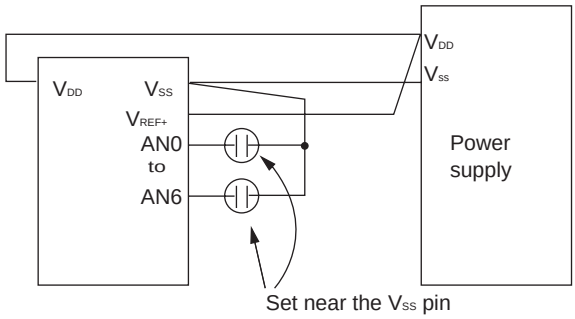


Figure:15.3.3 A/D Converter Recommended Example 2

For high precision of A/D conversion, the following cautions on A/D converter should be kept.
1.The input impedance R of A/D input pin should be under 500 kΩ, and the external capacitor C (more than 1000 pF, under 1 μF) should be connected to it.
2.The A/D conversion frequency should be set in regard to R, C.
3.At the A/D conversion, if the input level of microcontroller is changed, or the peripheral added circuit is switched to ON/OFF, the A/D conversion could work wrongly, as the analog input pins and power pins cannot be fixed. At the setup checking, confirm the wave form of analog input pins.

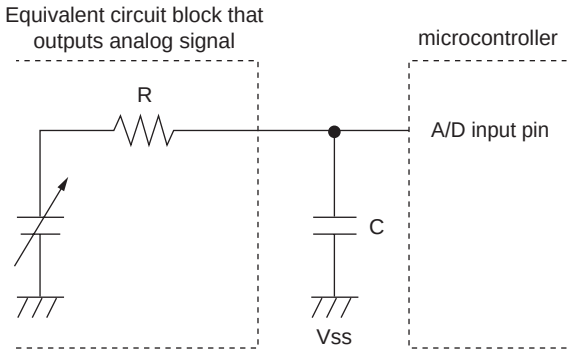


Figure:15.3.4 Recommended Circuit

Chapter 16 LCD

16

16.1 Functions

This LSI contains an internal LCD driver circuit with 12 segment pins and 4 common pins. The LCD driver contains of a segment output latch, LCD control registers, a prescaler, a timing control circuit, a multiplexer, segment drivers, common drivers and voltage divider resistors.

16.1.1 Functions

Table:16.1.1 shows the functions of the LCD driver circuits.

Table:16.1.1 LCD Functions

	LCD
Duty	Static 1/2 duty 1/3 duty 1/4 duty
Segment Output Pins	SEG0 to SEG11
Common Output Pins	COM0 to COM3
LCD Power Supply	V_{LC1} to V_{LC3}
LCD Voltage Divider Resistor	V_{LC1} input voltage can be divided into 2/3, 1/3. Selectable from high resistance or low resistance.
Clock Source (LCDCLK)	fosc/2^{11} fosc/2^{12} fosc/2^{13} fosc/2^{14} fosc/2^{15} fosc/2^{16} fosc/2^{17} fosc/2^{18} fx/2^{6} fx/2^{7} fx/2^{8} fx/2^{9}
fosc: Machine clock (High speed oscillation) fx: Machine clock (Low speed oscillation) LCDCLK: LCD clock source (selected with LCDCK0 to LCDCK3)	

Use the LCD panel driver voltage V_{LCD} as V_{LCD} £ V_{DD} £ 3.6 v

16.1.2 LCD Operation in Standby Mode

Certain LCD driver operation could be limited in standby mode.

Table:16.1.2 shows the LCD operation capabilities in standby mode.

Table:16.1.2 LCD Operation in Standby Mode

CPU Mode		LCD Clock	
		fosc	fx
Operation Mode	NORMAL	O	O
	SLOW	¥	O
Standby Mode	HALT0	D	D
	HALT1	¥	D
	STOP	¥	¥
O: LCD Operation is available. D: Holding Display is available. ¥: LCD Operation is not available.			

For transition to CPU mode in which LCD operation is not available, turn the LCD off and switch segment output to port in advance.

For transition to the mode with low speed oscillation, set the bp0 of the XI dual function selection register (XSEL) to "1".

16.1.3 Maximum Pixels

Table:16.1.3 shows the maximum pixels.

Table:16.1.3 Maximum Pixels

Duty	Maximum Pixels (Segment ¥ Common)	8-Segment LCD Panel	Common Pins	Segment Output Latch bits
Static	12 (12 ¥ 1)	1 figures	COM0	bit0, bit4
1/2	24 (12 ¥ 2)	3 figures	COM0 to COM1	bit0 to bit1, bit4 to bit5
1/3	36 (12 ¥ 3)	4 figures	COM0 to COM2	bit0 to bit2, bit4 to bit6
1/4	48 (12 ¥ 4)	6 figures	COM0 to COM3	bit0 to bit3, bit4 to bit7

16.1.4 Switching I/O ports and LCD segment pins

Switching of general port and LCD segment pin is controlled by the LCD output control register 1, 2 (LCCTR1, LCCTR2).

[Chapter 16 16.2 Control Registers]

Port 7, 1 (SEG0 to SEG11) are switchable to I/O port in 1-bit unit.

Port 3 (COM0 to COM3) is switchable to I/O port in 1-bit unit.

16.1.5 Switching I/O Ports and LCD Voltage¶

Switching of general ports, P34 to P36 and LCD voltage, V_{LC3} to V_{LC1} are controlled by the LCD control register3 (LCDMD3).
[16.2 Control Registers]

Only when the LCD functions are unused, general ports, P34 to P36 are available. When general ports, P34 to P36 are used, set the VLC3SL to VLC1SL flags of the LCD control register 3 (LCCTR3) to “0” and select P34 to P36.

16.1.6 Block Diagram

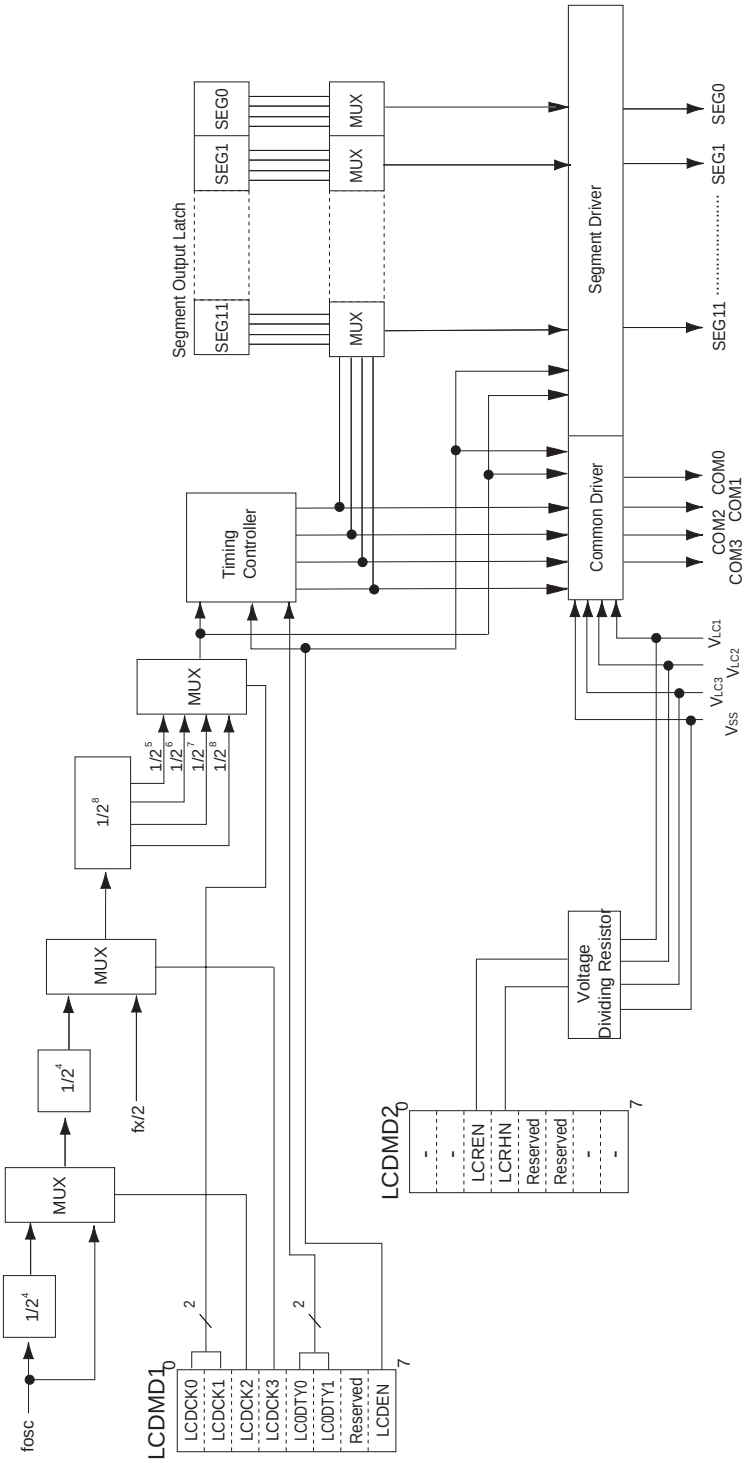


Figure:16.1.1 LCD Driver Circuit Block Diagram

16.2 Control Registers

The LCD is controlled by LCD mode control register 1 (LCDMD1), LCD mode control register 2 (LCDMD2), LCD output control register 1 (LCCTR1), LCD output control register 2 (LCCTR2), and LCD output control register 3 (LCCTR3). The LCD display data is stored in the segment output latch.

16.2.1 Registers

Table:16.2.1 shows the LCD control registers.

Table:16.2.1 LCD Control Registers List

Register	Address	R/W	Function	Page
LCDMD1	X'03FC0'	R/W	LCD mode control register 1	XVI-7
LCDMD2	X'03FC1'	R/W	LCD mode control register 2	XVI-8
LCCTR1	X'03FC2'	R/W	LCD output control register 1	XVI-9
LCCTR2	X'03FC3'	R/W	LCD output control register 2	XVI-10
LCCTR3	X'03FC4'	R/W	LCD output control register 3	XVI-11

R/W: Readable/Writable

* Address x’02E00’ to x’02E05’ are assigned to the segment output latch.

[Chapter 16.2.7 Segment Output Latch]

16.2.2 Mode Control Register 1 (LCDMD1)

The LCD mode control register 1 (LCDMD1) is a 8-bit register that controls LCD clock, LCD display ON/OFF, and display duty. The address is assigned to X'3FC0' and read/write can be done by the instruction to RAM, I/O. The value of the LCDMD1 register is initialized at reset. Table:16.2.2 shows the LCD mode control register 1.

■ Mode Control Register 1 (LCDMD1: X'03FC0', R/W)

Table:16.2.2 LCD Mode Control Register 1

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	LCDEN	Reserved	LCDTY1	LCDTY0	LCDCK3	LCDCK2	LCDCK1	LCDCK0
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

	Flag	Description
7	LCDEN	LCD driver circuit start flag 0: Stop 1: Start
6	Reserved	Set always to "0".
5-4	LCDTY1 LCDTY0	LCD display duty selection 00: 1/4 duty 01: 1/3 duty 10: 1/2 duty 11: Static
3-0	LCDCK3 LCDCK2 LCDCK1 LCDCK0	LCD clock source selection 0000: OSC1/2^{11} 0001: OSC1/2^{12} 0010: OSC1/2^{13} 0011: OSC1/2^{14} 0100: OSC1/2^{15} 0101: OSC1/2^{16} 0110: OSC1/2^{17} 0111: OSC1/2^{18} 1X00: XI/2^{6} 1X01: XI/2^{7} 1X10: XI/2^{8} 1X11: XI/2^{9}

For transition to the mode with low speed oscillation, set the bp0 of the XI dual function selection register (XSEL) to "1".

16.2.3 Mode Control Register 2 (LCDMD2)

The LCD mode control register 2 (LCDMD2) is a 8-bit register that controls internal voltage dividing resistor ON/OFF, and internal voltage dividing resistor type. The address is assigned to X'3FC1' and read/write can be done by the instruction to RAM, I/O. The value of the LCDMD2 register is initialized at reset. Table:16.2.3 shows the LCD mode control register 1.

■ Mode Control Register 2 (LCDMD2: X'03CF1', R/W)

Table:16.2.3 LCD Mode Control Register 2

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	-	Reserved	Reserved	LCRHL	LCREN	-	-
Reset	-	-	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

	Flag	Description
7-6	-	-
5-4	Reserved	Set always to "0".
3	LCRHL	Internal voltage dividing resistor selection 0: Low resistance (V_{LC1} to V_{LC2}, V_{LC2} to V_{LC3}, V_{LC3} to V_{SS}, about 10 kW) 1: High resistance (V_{LC1} to V_{LC2}, V_{LC2} to V_{LC3}, V_{LC3} to V_{SS}, about 100 kW)
2	LCREN	Internal voltage dividing circuit connect selection 0: Unconnected 1: Connected
1-0	-	-

With the internal voltage dividing resistor, P34 (V_{LC3}), P35 (V_{LC2}), P36 (V_{LC1}) can be used as ports. However, depending on the panel, if LCD display does not have enough brightness due to the lack of connection with a stabilizing capacitor, connect with a stabilizing capacitor or use an external voltage dividing resistor.

16.2.4 Output Control Register 1 (LCCTR1)

The LCD output control register 1 (LCCTR1) switches port I/O (P30 to P33) and common output (COM0 to COM3), port I/O (P74 to P77) and segment output (SEG0 to SEG3). The address is assigned to X'3FC2'. At reset, these ports are set to the input port.

■ Output Control Register 1(LCCTR1:X'3FC2', R/W)

Table:16.2.4 LCD Output Control Register 1

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	LC1SL3	LC1SL2	LC1SL1	LC1SL0	COMSL3	COMSL2	COMSL1	COMSL0
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

	Flag	Description
7	LC1SL3	SEG3/P74 selection 0: P74 1: SEG3
6	LC1SL2	SEG2/P75 selection 0: P75 1: SEG2
5	LC1SL1	SEG1/P76 selection 0: P76 1: SEG1
4	LC1SL0	SEG0/P77 selection 0: P77 1: SEG0
3	COMSL3	COM3/P33 selection 0: P33 1: COM3
2	COMSL2	COM2/P32 selection 0: P32 1: COM2
1	COMSL1	COM1/P31 selection 0: P31 1: COM1
0	COMSL0	COM0/P30 selection 0: P30 1: COM0

16.2.5 Output Control Register 2 (LCCTR2)

The LCD output control register 2 (LCCTR2) switches port I/O (P73 to P70), port I/O (P14 to P17) and segment output (SEG4 to SEG11). The address is assigned to X'3FC3'. At reset, these ports are set to the input port.

■ Output Control Register 2(LCCTR2:X'3FC3', R/W)

Table:16.2.5 LCD Output Control Register 2

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	LC2SL7	LC2SL6	LC2SL5	LC2SL4	LC2SL3	LC2SL2	LC2SL1	LC2SL0
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

	Flag	Description
7	LC2SL7	SEG11/P14 selection 0: P14 1: SEG11
6	LC2SL6	SEG10/P15 selection 0: P15 1: SEG10
5	LC2SL5	SEG9/P16 selection 0: P16 1: SEG9
4	LC2SL4	SEG8/P17 selection 0: P17 1: SEG8
3	LC2SL3	SEG7/P70 selection 0: P70 1: SEG7
2	LC2SL2	SEG6/P71 selection 0: P71 1: SEG6
1	LC2SL1	SEG5/P72 selection 0: P72 1: SEG5
0	LC2SL0	SEG4/P73 selection 0: P73 1: SEG4

16.2.6 Output Control Register 3 (LCCTR3)

The LCD output control register 3 (LCCTR3) switches port I/O (P34 to P36) and V_{LC1} to V_{LC3}. The address is assigned to X'3FC4'. At reset, these ports are set to the input port.

■ Output Control Register 3 (LCCTR3:X'3FC4', R/W)

Table:16.2.6 LCD Output Control Register 3

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Flag	-	-	-	-	-	LC3SL2	LC3SL1	LC3SL0
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

	Flag	Description
7-3	-	-
2	LC3SL2	VLC3/P34 selection 0: P34 1: VLC3
1	LC3SL1	VLC2/P35 selection 0: P35 1: VLC2
0	LC3SL0	VLC1/P36 selection 0: P36 1: VLC1

With the internal voltage dividing resistor, P34 (V_{LC3}), P35 (V_{LC2}), P36 (V_{LC1}) can be used as ports. However, depending on the panel, if LCD display does not have enough brightness due to the lack of connection with a stabilizing capacitor, connect with the stabilizing capacitor or use an external voltage dividing resistor.

16.2.7 Segment Output Latch

A 4-bit latch is allocated per segment. Bit0 and bit4 are read out at the timing of COM0, bit1 and bit5 are read out at the timing of COM1, bit2 and bit6 are read out at the timing of COM2, and bit3and bit7 are read out at the timing of COM3. If a bit points “1”, the segment pin outputs the “selected voltage”, and if a bit points “0”, the segment pin outputs “non-selected voltage”.
The assigned address are X’2E00’ to X’2E05’, and data reading/writing can be done as RAM. Segment output latch value is indefinite at reset.
Figure:16.2.1 shows the matching of the segment output latch and the segment/common pins.

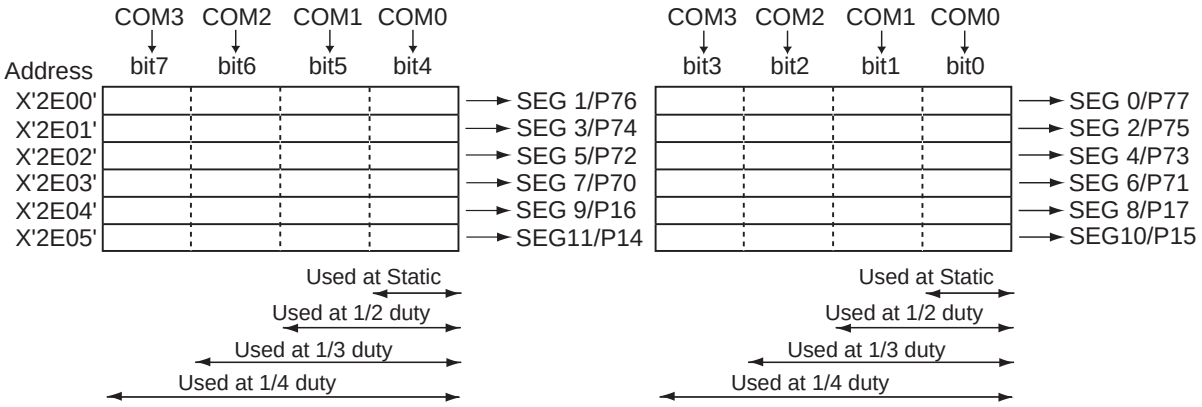


Figure:16.2.1 Matching of the Segment Output Latch and the Segment/Common Pins

16.3 Operation

16.3.1 Operation

The LCD driver is capable of static display and dynamic display (1/2 duty 1/2 bias, 1/3 duty 1/3 bias, 1/4 duty 1/3 bias) through the segment output pins (SEG0 to SEG11) and the common output pins (COM0 to COM3).

■ The LCD driver circuit operation

The LCD driver circuit generates the timing signals, which are necessary for controlling 1/2 duty, 1/3 duty, 1/4 duty and static, at the timing control circuit, based on the LCD clock divided by the prescaler, and supplies them to the common driver and the multiplexer.

The common driver outputs the common signals which are necessary for the LCD display, based on the voltage from the LCD power supply. When the LCD is OFF, Vss is output and the potential difference between the LCD electrodes becomes 0 V.

The multiplexer selects the segment output latched data in response to the signal from the timing control circuit and supplies it to the segment driver. The segment driver converts the content of the segment output latch into the signals, which is capable of driving the LCD, based on the voltage supplied to LCD power supply, then outputs the segment signal.
When the LCD is OFF, Vss is output and the potential difference between the LCD electrodes becomes 0 V.

At reset, common pins and segment pins become high impedance.
Therefore, when reset input from external sources is long, there could be some adverse effects such as blinks of the LCD display.

In STOP mode, supplies from the main clocks is stopped that the LCD drive cannot be operated. Set “0” to the enable flag of the LCD driver circuit before entering STOP mode.

For transition to the mode with low speed oscillation, set the bp0 of the XI dual function selection register (XSEL) to "1".

16.3.2 Power Supply

The driver power pins are V_{LC1}, V_{LC2} and V_{LC3}. This LSI contains the internal voltage dividing resistor to divide voltage for LCD drive. There are two ways to supply voltage to the LCD driver; to supply voltage to the V_{LC1}, V_{LC2} and V_{LC3} pins from external source (when external voltage dividing resistor is used), to supply voltage to V_{LC1} pin from external source and use internal divider resistor.

The power source for LCD drive and V_{DD} power supply for the micro controller are separated so that the voltage V_{DD} for LCD panel drive can be used at higher voltage than the V_{DD} power supply (usable at V_{LCD} £ V_{DD} £ 3.6 V).

The LCD driver voltage supplied through the LCD driver power pins (V_{LC1}, V_{LC2} and V_{LC3}) is converted by the LCD clock signal and the timing control signal, and then supplied to the segment driver and the common driver.

Table:16.3.1 Supplying LCD drive voltage (with 1/3 bias)

Supplying voltage		Reference voltage supplying pin	Description
1	Supply the driving voltage directly	V_{LC1} V_{LC2} V_{LC3}	Supply voltage to VLC1, VLC2, VLC3 pins externally.
2	Use the external dividing resistor	V_{LC1} V_{LC2} V_{LC3}	Supply the reference voltage to VLC1 pin externally and generate VLC2, VLC3 potentials at the external resistor divider, then supply the voltage to each pin.
3	Use the internal dividing resistor	V_{LC1}	Supply the reference voltage to VLC1 externally and generate VLC2, VLC3 potentials by using the internal resistor.,

■ Supplying voltage with the external voltage driving resistor

Supply the voltage as shown in Table:16.3.2.

Table:16.3.2 LCD Power Supply

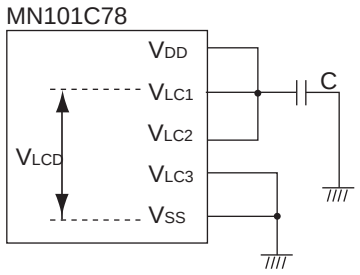
	Static	1/2	1/3
V_{LC1}	$V_{LCD} + V_{SS}$	$V_{LCD} + V_{SS}$	$V_{LCD} + V_{SS}$
V_{LC2}		$1/2V_{LCD} + V_{SS}$	$2/3V_{LCD} + V_{SS}$
V_{LC3}	V_{SS}		$1/3V_{LCD} + V_{SS}$

V_{LCD}: LCD panel driver voltage (Maximum voltage to the LCD panel)

Use the LCD panel driver voltage V_{LCD} at V_{LCD} £ V_{DD} £ 3.6 V.

Figure:16.3.1 shows example of the LCD power supply connection.

(a) Static (V_{DD}=V_{LCD})



(b) 1/3duty 1/3bias, 1/4duty 1/3bias (V_{DD}=V_{LCD})

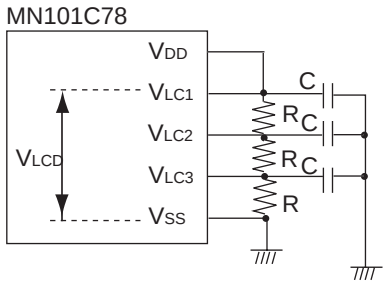


Figure:16.3.1 LCD Power Supply Connection (When using External Voltage Divider Resistors)

1.In Figure:16.3.1, current always flows through the voltage dividing resistors.
The following connection is used to cut the current flowing through these dividing resistors.
(at $V_{CL1} = V_{DD}$)

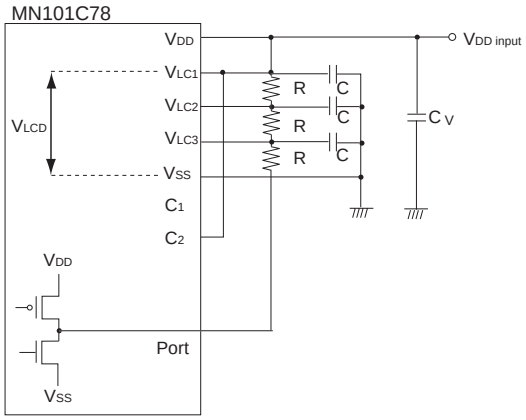


Figure:16.3.2 LCD Power Supply Connection

2.The LCD power supply V_{LC1} to V_{LC3} is supplied as shown in the following Figure:16.3.3.
V_{LCD} value varies depending on the type of LCD. Refer to the specifications of LCD for the appropriate value.

$V_{LC1} = V_{LCD} + V_{SS}$
$V_{LC2} = 2/3\ V_{LCD} + V_{SS}$
$V_{LC3} = 1/3\ V_{LCD} + V_{SS}$

Usually V_{DD} - Vss are divided by resistors and supplied to the LCD.
Standard resistance voltage ranges from tens to several hundreds kW.

In Figure:16.3.3, a bypass capacitor C (0.01 mF to 0.1 mF) is used to lower the impedance of power supply.

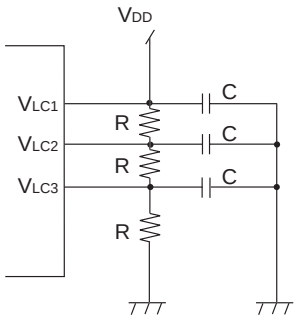


Figure:16.3.3 Supplying Voltage to V_{LC1} to V_{LC3}

■ Supplying voltage when using the internal voltage driving circuit

Supply the voltage as shown in Table:16.3.3.

Table:16.3.3

	Static	1/2 bias	1/3 bias
V_{LC1}	Disabled	V_{LCD}	V_{LCD}
V_{LC2}		Connect V_{LC2} to V_{LC3} ($1/2\ V_{LCD}$ is output.)	- ($2/3\ V_{LCD}$ is output.)
V_{LC3}			- ($1/3\ V_{LCD}$ is output.)

When internal voltage dividing resistor is used, voltages of V_{LC1}, V_{LC2} and V_{LC3} could be dropped depending on a used LCD panel and that may lower the brightness of LCD display. Use the external divider resistor when this happens.

With the internal voltage dividing resistor, P34 (V_{LC3}), P35 (V_{LC2}), P36 (V_{LC1}) can be used as ports. However, depending on the panel, if LCD display does not have enough brightness due to the lack of connection with a stabilizing capacitor, connect with the stabilizing capacitor or use an external voltage dividing resistor.

The internal dividing resistor is formed of connecting between V_{LC1} and V_{LC2}, V_{LC2} and V_{LC3}, V_{LC3} and V_{SS}.
In the selection of the internal dividing resistor type, when low resistor is selected, about 10 kW resistor is connected between V_{LC1} and V_{LC2}, V_{LC2} and V_{LC3}, V_{LC3} and V_{SS}. When high resistor is selected, about 100 kW resistor is connected to each pin.

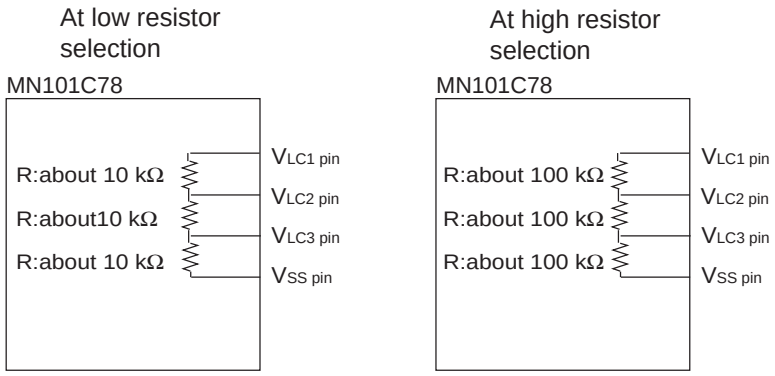


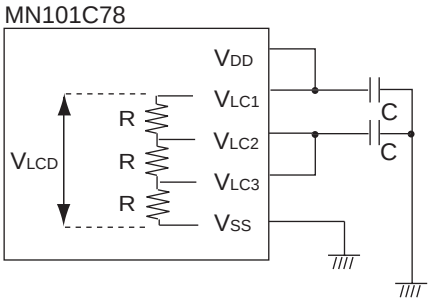
Figure:16.3.4 Forming of Internal Dividing Resistor and Resistor Value

Figure:16.3.5 shows example of the LCD power supply connection.

Stabilizing capacitor C for LCD power supply is recommended to be C = 0.1 mF.

Cv Š 0.1 mF should be connected as stabilization condenser Cv for V_{DD} power supply.

(a)1/2duty 1/2bias (V_{DD}=V_{LCD})



(b)1/3duty 1/3bias, 1/4duty 1/3bias (V_{DD}=V_{LCD})

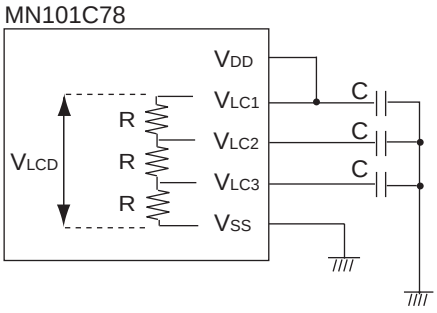


Figure:16.3.5 LCD Power Supply Connection

16.3.3 Frame Cycle

■ Setup of the LCD frame cycle

The clock fosc or fx is divided by the prescaler and supplied as the LCD clock. Set the LCD clock by the bit0 to bit3 of the LCDMD1 register, and set the LCD frame cycle by the bit4 to bit5 of the LCDMD1 register. Figure:16.3.6 shows reference input frequencies and the matching of the LCD clock and the LCD frame cycle.

		Input frequency									
Input cloci	duty	10 MHz		8 MHz		4 MHz		2 MHz		32.768 kHz	
LCDCK3 to 0	LCDTY1 to 0	LCD clock	frame	LCD clock	frame	LCD clock	frame	LCD clock	frame	LCD ckock	frame
0000 (OSC1/2^{11})	00 (1/4 duty)	4883 Hz	1221 Hz	3906Hz	977 Hz	1953 Hz	488 Hz	977 Hz	244 Hz		
	01 (1/3 duty)		1628 Hz		1302 Hz		651 Hz		326 Hz		
	10 (1/2 duty)		2441 Hz		1953 Hz		977 Hz		488 Hz		
	11 (static)		4883 Hz		3906 Hz		1953 Hz		977 Hz		
0001 (OSC1/2^{12})	00 (1/4 duty)	2441 Hz	610 Hz	1953 Hz	488 Hz	977 Hz	244 Hz	488 Hz	122 Hz		
	01 (1/3 duty)		814 Hz		651 Hz		326 Hz		163 Hz		
	10 (1/2 duty)		1221 Hz		977 Hz		488 Hz		244 Hz		
	11 (static)		2441 Hz		1953 Hz		977 Hz		488 Hz		
0010 (OSC1/2^{13})	00 (1/4 duty)	1221 Hz	305 Hz	977 Hz	244 Hz	488 Hz	122 Hz	244 Hz	61 Hz		
	01 (1/3 duty)		407 Hz		326 Hz		163 Hz		81 Hz		
	10 (1/2 duty)		610 Hz		488 Hz		244 Hz		122 Hz		
	11 (static)		1221 Hz		977 Hz		488 Hz		244 Hz		
0011 (OSC1/2^{14})	00 (1/4 duty)	610 Hz	153 Hz	488 Hz	122 Hz	244 Hz	61 Hz	122 Hz	31 Hz		
	01 (1/3 duty)		203 Hz		163 Hz		81 Hz		41 Hz		
	10 (1/2 duty)		305 Hz		244 Hz		122 Hz		61 Hz		
	11 (static)		610 Hz		488 Hz		244 Hz		122 Hz		
0100 (OSC1/2^{15})	00 (1/4 duty)	305 Hz	76 Hz	244 Hz	61 Hz	122 Hz	31 Hz	61 Hz	15 Hz		
	01 (1/3 duty)		102 Hz		81 Hz		41 Hz		20 Hz		
	10 (1/2 duty)		153 Hz		122 Hz		61 Hz		31 Hz		
	11 (static)		305 Hz		244 Hz		122 Hz		61 Hz		
0101 (OSC1/2^{16})	00 (1/4 duty)	153 Hz	38 Hz	122 Hz	31 Hz	61 Hz	15 Hz	31 Hz	8 Hz		
	01 (1/3 duty)		51 Hz		41 Hz		20 Hz		10 Hz		
	10 (1/2 duty)		76 Hz		61 Hz		31 Hz		15 Hz		
	11 (static)		153 Hz		122 Hz		61 Hz		31 Hz		
0110 (OSC1/2^{17})	00 (1/4 duty)	76 Hz	19 Hz	61 Hz	15 Hz	31 Hz	8 Hz	15 Hz	4 Hz		
	01 (1/3 duty)		25 Hz		20 Hz		10 Hz		5 Hz		
	10 (1/2 duty)		38 Hz		31 Hz		15 Hz		8 Hz		
	11 (static)		76 Hz		61 Hz		31 Hz		15 Hz		
0111 (OSC1/2^{18})	00 (1/4 duty)	38 Hz	10 Hz	31 Hz	8 Hz	15 Hz	4 Hz	8 Hz	2 Hz		
	01 (1/3 duty)		13 Hz		10 Hz		5 Hz		3 Hz		
	10 (1/2 duty)		19 Hz		15 Hz		8 Hz		4 Hz		
	11 (static)		38 Hz		31 Hz		15 Hz		8 Hz		
1X00 (XI/2^{6})	00 (1/4 duty)									512 Hz	128 Hz
	01 (1/3 duty)										171 Hz
	10 (1/2 duty)										256 Hz
	11 (static)										512 Hz
1X01 (XI/2^{7})	00 (1/4 duty)									256 Hz	64 Hz
	01 (1/3 duty)										85 Hz
	10 (1/2 duty)										128 Hz
	11 (static)										256 Hz
1X10 (XI/2^{8})	00 (1/4 duty)									128 Hz	32 Hz
	01 (1/3 duty)										43 Hz
	10 (1/2 duty)										64 Hz
	11 (static)										128 Hz
1X11 (XI/2^{9})	00 (1/4 duty)									64 Hz	16 Hz
	01 (1/3 duty)										21 Hz
	10 (1/2 duty)										32 Hz
	11 (static)										64 Hz

Figure:16.3.6 Input Frequency and the LCD Clock

16.3.4 Setup Example of the LCD Driver Circuit

■ Setup example of the internal voltage dividing resistor

An example of setup procedure to display “23” on a 8 segment type LCD panel in 1/4 duty, 1/3 bias with both segment signals (SEG0 to SEG3) and common signals (COM0 to COM3), using internal voltage divider circuit is shown below.

Refer to XIV-18. Figure:16.3.5 for the LCD power supply connection. Refer to XIV-22. LCD display for connection of LCD panel.

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Select the internal voltage dividing resistor LCDMD2 (x'3FC1') bp3 : LCRHL = 1	(1) Set the LCRHL flag of the LCD mode control register 2 (LCDMD2) to “1” to set up the internal voltage dividing resistor to high resistor.
(2) Select the internal voltage dividing resistor connection LCDMD2 (x'3FC1') bp2 : LCREN = 1	(2) Set the LCREN flag of the LCD mode control register 2 (LCDMD2) to “1” to connect the internal voltage dividing resistor between V_{LC1} and V_{LC2}, V_{LC2} and V_{LC3}, V_{LC3} and Vss.
(3) Set the pins LCCTR1 (x'3FC2') bp3-0 : COMSL3-0 = 1111 LCCTR1 (x'3FC2') bp5-4 : LC1SL1-0 = 11	(3) Set COMSL3 to COMSL0 flags of the LCD output control register 1 (LCCTR1) to “1111” to set up the common pins 3 to 0. Set LC1LS1 to LC1LS0 flags of the LCD output control register 1 (LCCTR1) to “1” to set up the segment pins 3 to 0.
(4) Select the LCD clock source LCDMD1 (x'3FC0') bp3-0 : LCDCK3-0 = 0111	(4) Select OSC1/2^{18} as the LCD clock source by LCDCK3 to LCDCK0 flags of the LCD mode control register 1 (LCDMD1).
(5) Select the LCD display duty LCDMD1 (x'3FC0') bp5-4 : LCDTY1-0 = 00	(5) Set LCDTY1 to LCDTY0 flags of the LCD mode control register 1 (LCDMD1) to “00” to setup the display duty
(6) Set the LCD panel display data x'2E00' = x'5E' x'2E01' = x'7C'	(6) Set the display data on the address X’2E00’, X’2E01’ of the segment output latch. [Refer to 16.4 LCD Display]
(7) Start the LCD drive circuit LCDMD1 (x'3FC0') bp7 : LCDEN = 1	(7) Set the LCDEN flag of the LCD mode control register 1 (LCDMD1) to “1” to start the LCD driver circuit.

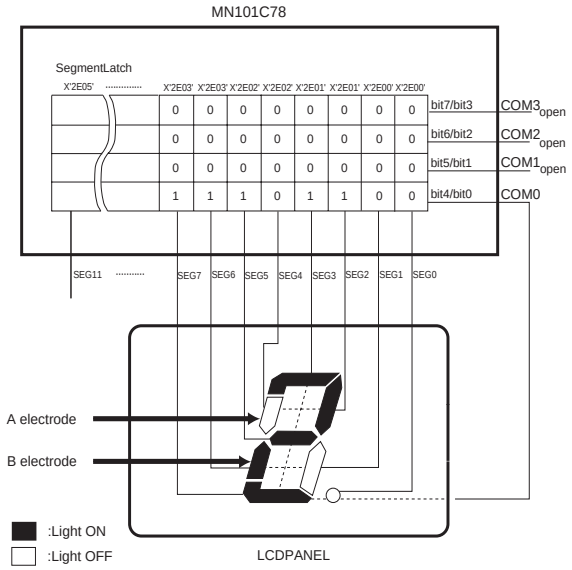
If internal voltage booster circuit is used, voltage of V_{LC1}, V_{LC2} and V_{LC3} could be dropped depending on the load of used LCD panel and that may lower the brightness of LCD display. In this case, set “0” to the internal voltage dividing resistor selection bit of the LCD mode control register 2 (LCDMD2) to select the low resistor. By selecting the low resistor, the current supply ability can be larger.

16.4 Display

Figure:16.4.1 to Figure:16.4.4 show example of connections, display and waveforms of the LCD panel in 1/2 duty, 1/3 duty, 1/4 duty and static.

16.4.1 Static

■ Static



		LCD ON		LCD OFF
		COM=S SEG=S	COM=S SEG=N	
LCD clock				Uncertain
Data		"1"	"0"	Uncertain
COM	V_{LC1}			
	V_{SS}			
SEG	V_{LC1}			
	V_{SS}			
COM-SEG	V_{LCD}			
	0			
	$-V_{LCD}$			
		Light ON	Light OFF	Light OFF

S:selected voltage N:non-selected voltage

V_{LCD}:LCD driver voltage

On static COM(COM0) always outputs selected voltage.

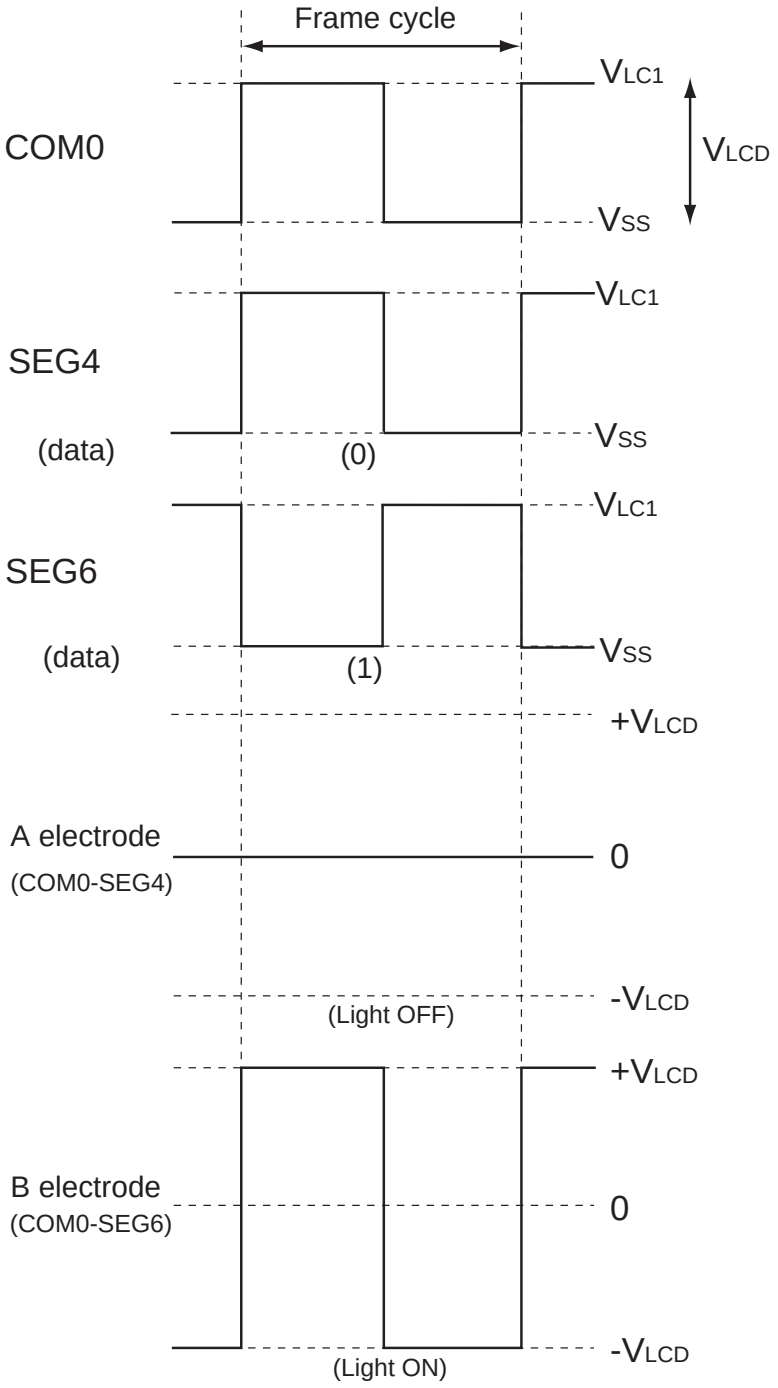


Figure:16.4.1 LCD Display in Static

16.4.2 Setup Example (Static)

■ Setup example of the LCD (static)

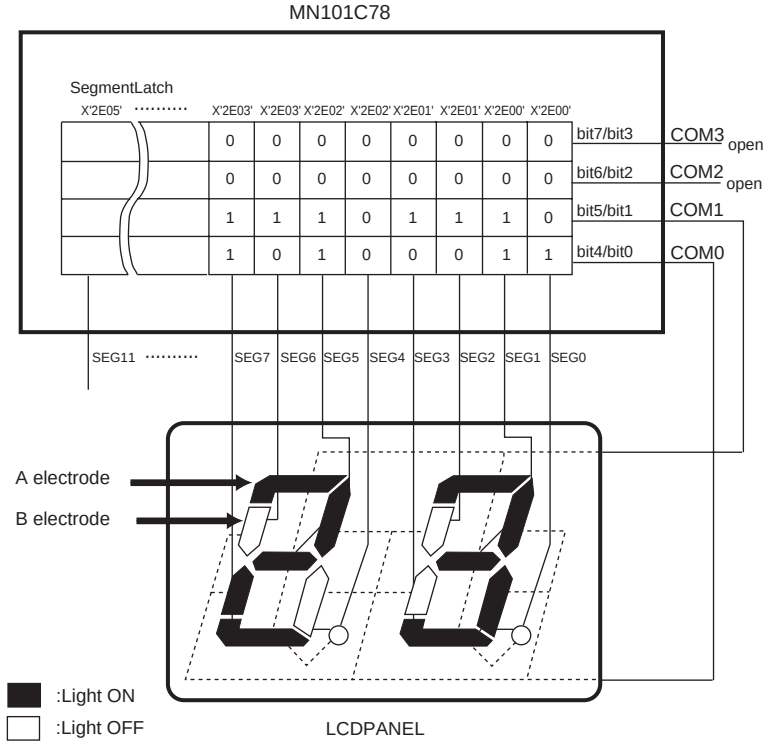
An example of setup procedure to display “23” on a single-digit, 8 segment type LCD panel with both segment signals (SEG0 to SEG7) and common signals (COM0), using an external dividing resistor is shown below. [Chapter 16.4.1. LCD Display (static)]

Clock source fosc = 4 MHz, LCD clock source fosc/2^{15} = 122 Hz, and flame cycle = 122 Hz are selected in this example.

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Stop the LCD operation LCDMD1(X'3FC0') bp7 :LCDEN = 0	(1) Set “0” to the LCDEN flag of the LCD mode control register (LCDMD1) to “1” to stop the LCD operation.
(2) Set the display duty LCDMD1(X'3FC0') bp5-4:LCDDTY1-0= 11	(2) Set the LCDTY1 to LCDTY0 flags of the LCD mode control register (LCDMD1) to “11” to enter the static driving mode.
(3) Select the LCD clock source LCDMD1(X'3FC0') bp3-0:LCDCK3-0 = 0100	(3) Select fosc/2^{15} as a LCD clock source by the LCDCK3 to LCDCK0 flags of the LCD mode control register (LCDMD).
(4) Select the segment output/port pin Select the common output/port pin LCCTR1(X'3FC2') bp7-0:SC1SL3-0, COMSL3-0 = 11110001 LCCTR2(X'3FC3') bp3-0:SC2SL3-0 = 1111	(4) Select SEG0 to SEG3 by the LCD output control register 1 (LCCTR1) and SEG4 to SEG7 by the COM0 and the LCD output control register 2 (LCCTR2).
(5) Set the LCD panel display data Segment output latch SEG1-0 (X'2E00') = X'00' Segment output latch SEG3-2 (X'2E01') = X'11' Segment output latch SEG5-4 (X'2E02') = X'10' Segment output latch SEG7-6 (X'2E03') = X'11'	(5) Display “23” on the display panel by the address X’2E00’ to X’2E03’ of the segment output latch SEG0 to SEG7. [Chapter 16.4.1 Static]
(6) Start the LCD operation LCDMD1(X'3FC0') bp7:LCDEN = 1	(6) Set the LCDEN flag of the LCD mode control register (LCDMD1) to “1” to start the LCD operation.

16.4.3 1/2duty

■ 1/2 duty



	LCD ON				LCD OFF
	COM=S SEG=S	COM=N SEG=S	COM=S SEG=N	COM=N SEG=N	
LCD clock					uncertain
Data	"1"		"0"		uncertain
COM	V_{LC1} / V_{LC2}=V_{LC3} / V_{SS}				
SEG	V_{LC1} / V_{LC2}=V_{LC3} / V_{SS}				
COM-SEG	V_{LCD} / 1/2V_{LCD} / 0 / -1/2V_{LCD} / -V_{LCD}				
	Light ON	Light OFF	Light OFF	Light OFF	Light OFF

S:selected voltage N:non-selected voltage
V_{LCD}:LCD driver voltage

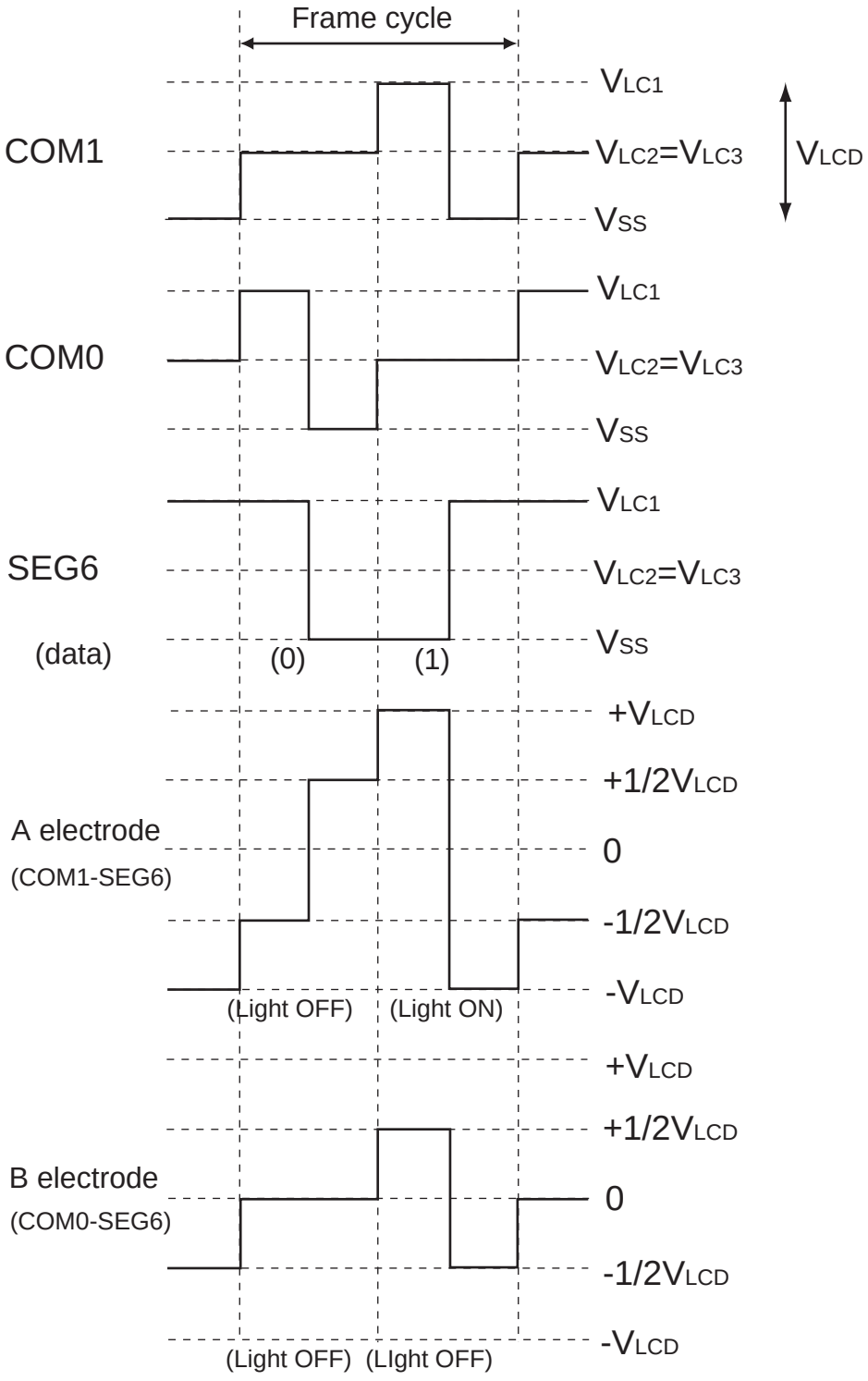


Figure:16.4.2 LCD Display (1/2 duty)

16.4.4 Setup Example (1/2 duty)

■ Setup example of the LCD (1/2 duty)

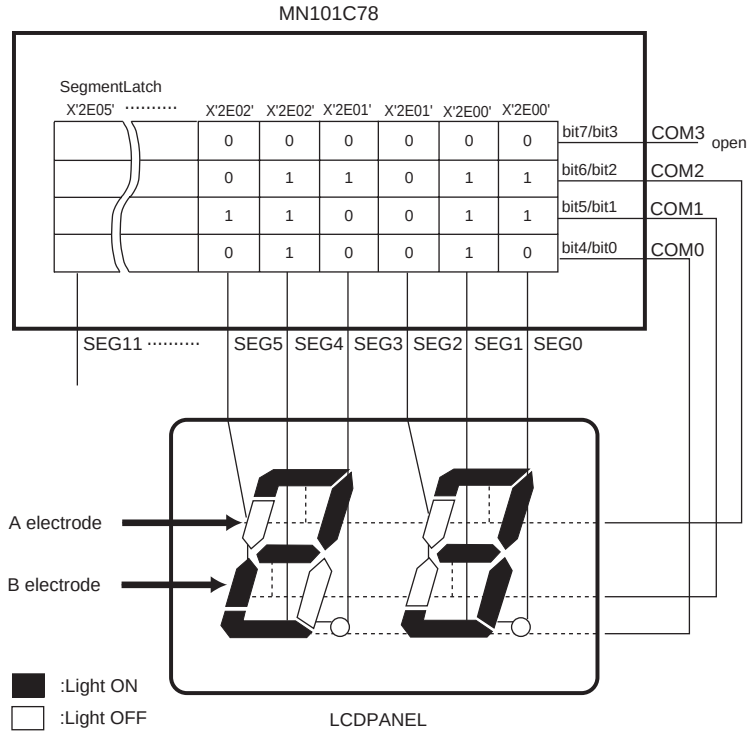
An example of setup procedure to display “23” on a 2-digit, 8 segment type LCD panel with both segment signals (SEG0 to SEG7) and common signals (COM0), using an external dividing resistor is shown below.
[Chapter 16.4.3. LCD Display (1/2 duty)]

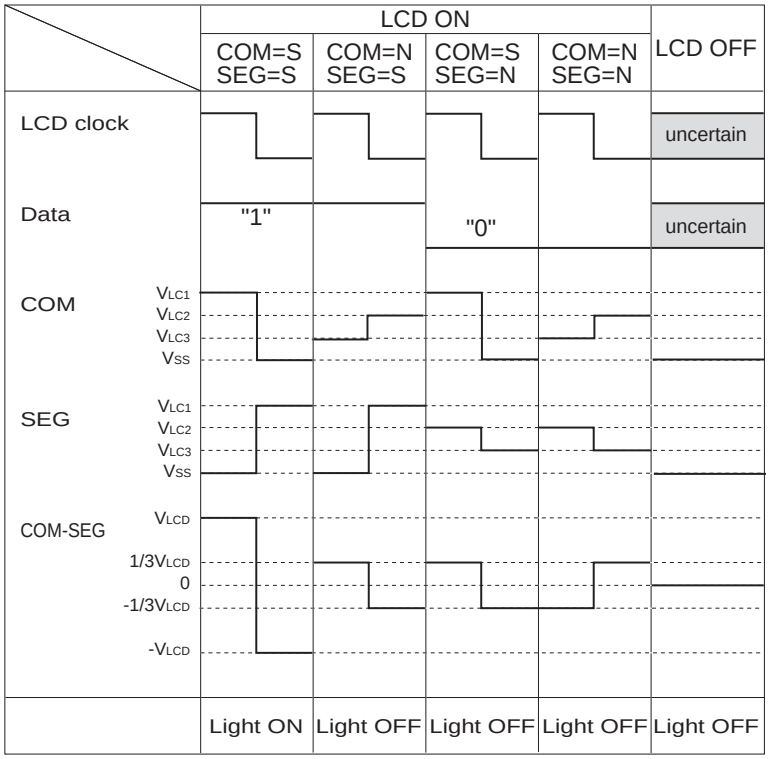
Clock source fosc = 4 MHz, a LCD clock source fosc/2^{15} = 122 Hz, and flame cycle = 61 Hz are selected in this example.

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Stop the LCD operation LCDMD1(X'3FC0') bp7 :LCDEN = 0	(1) Set the LCDEN flag of the LCD mode control register (LCDMD1) to “0” to stop the LCD operation.
(2) Set the display duty LCDMD1(X'3FC0') bp5-4 :LCDDTY1-0= 10	(2) Set the LCDTY1 to LCDTY0 flags of the LCD mode control register (LCDMD1) to “10” to enter 1/2 duty driving mode.
(3) Select the LCD clock source LCDMD1(X'3FC0') bp3-0 :LCDCK3-0 = 0100	(3) Select fosc/2^{15} as a LCD clock source by the LCDCK3 to LCDCK0 flags of the LCD mode control register 1 (LCDMD1).
(4) Select the segment output/port pin Select the common output/port pin LCCTR1(X'3FC2') bp7-0 :SC1SL3-0, COMSL3-0 = 11110011 LCCTR2(X'3FC3') bp3-0 :SC2SL3-0 = 1111	(4) Select the SEG3 to SEG0 and COM1 to COM0 by the LCD output control register 1(LCCTR1) and SEG7 to SEG4 by the LCD output control register 2 (LCCTR2).
(5) Set the LCD panel display data Segment output latch SEG1-0 (X'2E00') = X'31' Segment output latch SEG3-2 (X'2E01') = X'22' Segment output latch SEG5-4 (X'2E02') = X'30' Segment output latch SEG7-6 (X'2E03') = X'32'	(5) Display “23” on the display panel by the address X’2E00’ to X’2E03’ of the segment output latch SEG7 to SEG0. [Chapter 16.4.3 1/2 duty]
(6) Start the LCD operation LCDMD1(X'3FD0') bp7 :LCDEN = 1	(6) Set the LCDEN flag of the LCD mode control register1 (LCDMD1) to “1” to start the LCD operation.

16.4.5 1/3 duty

■ 1/3 duty





S:selected voltage N:non-selected voltage
V_{LCD}:LCD driver voltage

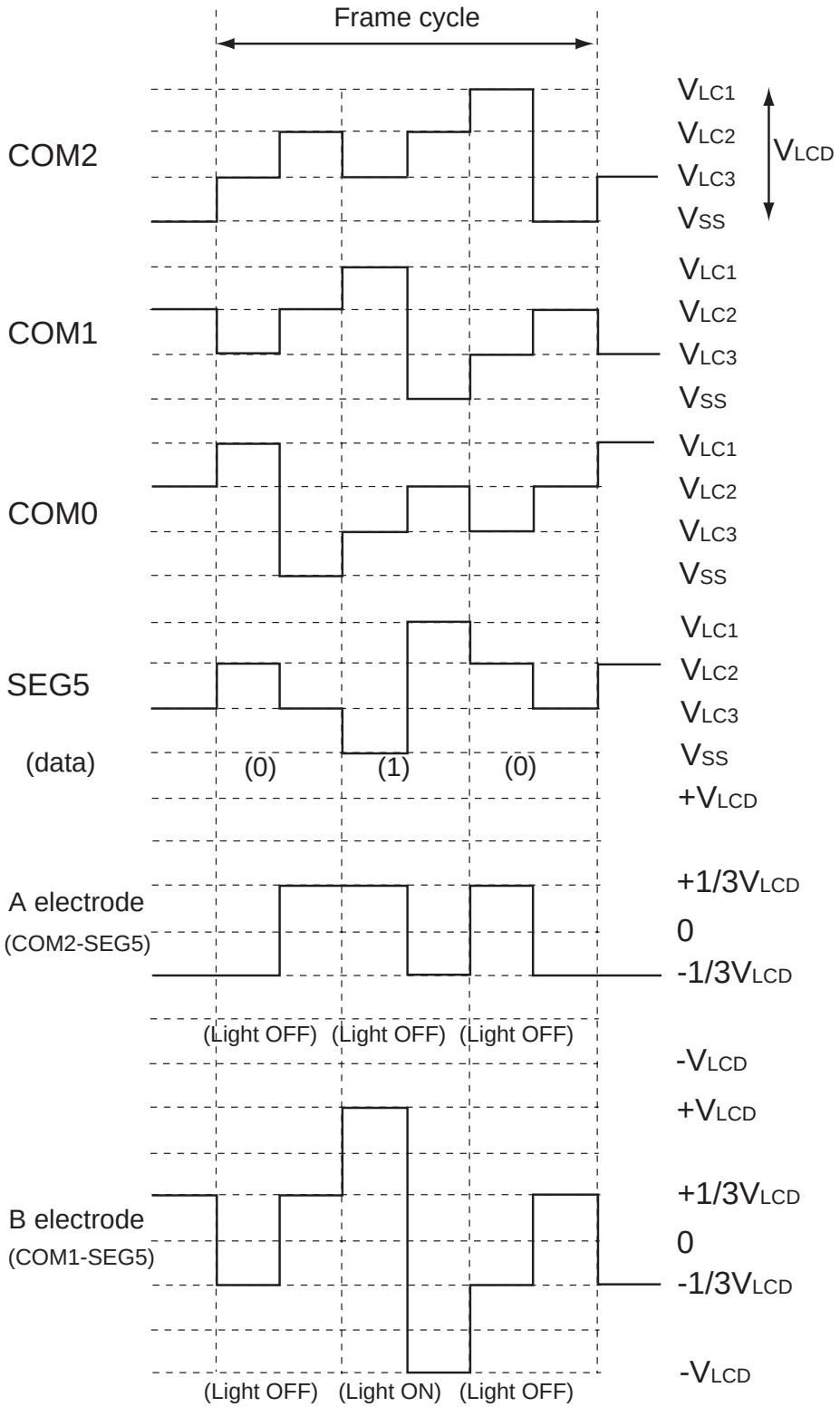


Figure:16.4.3 LCD Display (1/3 duty)

16.4.6 Setup Example (1/3 duty)

■ Setup example of the LCD (1/3 duty)

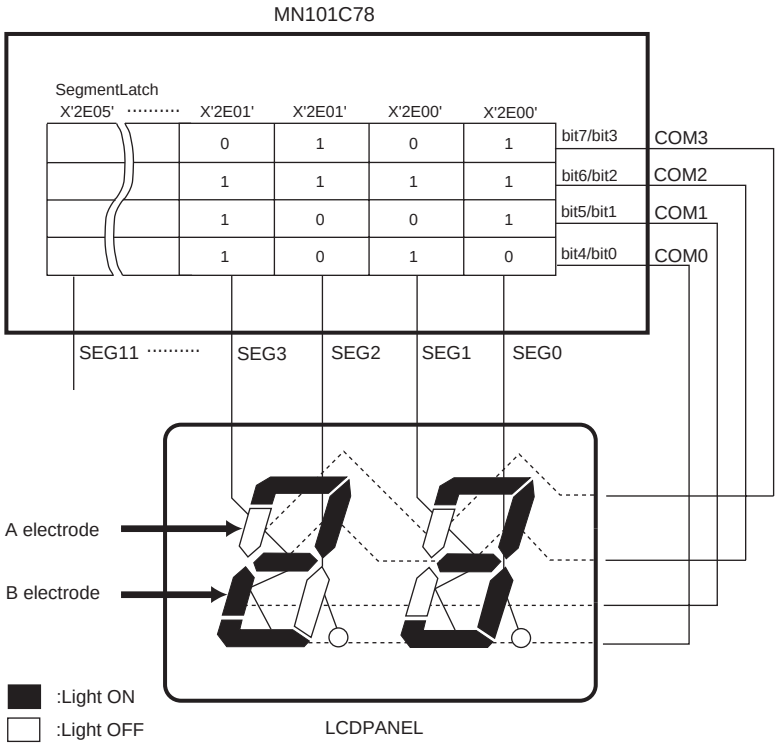
An example of setup procedure to display “23” on a 2-digit, 8 segment type LCD panel with both segment signals (SEG0 to SEG7) and common signals (COM0), using an external dividing resistor is shown below.

[Chapter 16.4.5. LCD Display (1/3 duty)] Clock source fosc = 4 MHz, a LCD clock source fosc/2^{15} = 122 Hz, and flame cycle = 41 Hz are selected in this example.

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Stop the LCD operation LCDMD1(X'3FC0') bp7 :LCDEN = 0	(1) Set the LCDEN flag of the LCD mode control register1 (LCDMD1) to “1” to stop the LCD operation.
(2) ïSet the display duty LCDMD1(X'3FC0') bp5-4 :LCDDTY1-0= 01	(2) Set the LCDTY1 to LCDTY0 flags of the LCD mode control register 1 (LCMD1) to “01” to enter 1/3 duty driving mode.
(3) Select the LCD clock source LCDMD1(X'3FC0') bp3-0 :LCDCK3-0 = 0100	(3) Select fosc/2^{15} as a LCD clock source by the LCDCK3 to LCDCK0 flags of the LCD mode control register 1 (LCDMD1).
(4) Select the segment output/port pin Select the common output/port pin LCCTR1(X'3FC2') bp7-0 :SC1SL3-0, COMSL3-0 = 11110111 LCCTR1(X'3FC3') bp3-0 :LC1SL3-0 = 111	(4) Select the SEG3 to SEG0 and COM2 to COM0 by the LCD output control register 1 (LCCTR1) and SEG7 to SEG4 by the LCD output control register 2 (LCCTR2).
(5) Set the LCD panel display data Segment output latch SEG1-0 (X'2E00') = X'76' Segment output latch SEG3-2 (X'2E01') = X'40' Segment output latch SEG5-4 (X'2E02') = X'27'	(5) Display “23” on the display panel by the address X’2E00’ to X’2E03’ of the segment output latch SEG7 to SEG0. [Chapter 16.4.5 1/3 duty]
(6) Start the LCD operation LCDMD1(X'3FC0') bp7 :LCDEN = 1	(6) Set the LCDEN flag of the LCD mode control register 1 (LCMD1) to “1” to start the LCD operation.

16.4.7 1/4 duty

■ 1/4 duty



	LCD ON				LCD OFF
	COM=S SEG=S	COM=N SEG=S	COM=S SEG=N	COM=N SEG=N	
LCD clock					uncertain
Data	"1"		"0"		uncertain
COM	V_{LC1} / V_{LC2} / V_{LC3} / V_{SS}				
SEG	V_{LC1} / V_{LC2} / V_{LC3} / V_{SS}				
COM-SEG	V_{LCD} / $1/3V_{LCD}$ / 0 / $-1/3V_{LCD}$ / $-V_{LCD}$				
	Light ON	Light OFF	Light OFF	Light OFF	Light OFF

S:selected voltage N:non-selected voltage
V_{LCD}:LCD driver voltage

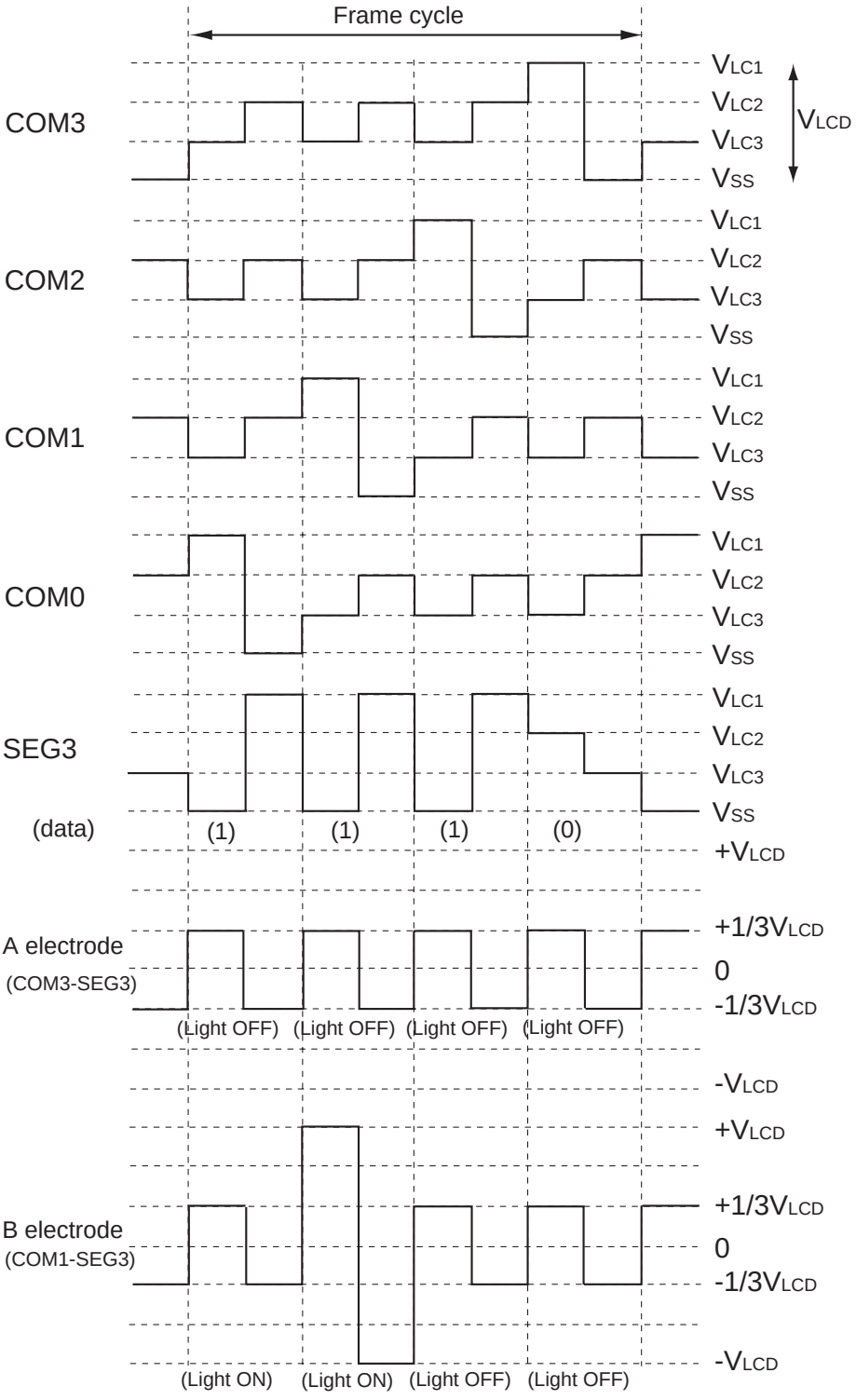


Figure:16.4.4 LCD Display (1/4 duty)

16.4.8 Setup Example (1/4 duty)

■ Setup example of the LCD (1/4 duty)

An example of setup procedure to display “23” on a 2-digit, 8 segment type LCD panel with both segment signals (SEG0 to SEG4)and common signals (COM0 to COM3) in 1/4 duty, 1/3 bias, using an external dividing resistor is shown below.

[Chapter 16.4.7 LCD Display (1/4 duty)]

Clock source fosc = 4 MHz, LCD clock source fosc/2^{15} = 122 Hz, and flame cycle = 31 Hz are selected in this example.

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Stop the LCD operation LCDMD1(X'3FC0') bp7 :LCDEN = 0	(1) Set the LCDEN flag of the LCD mode control register 1 (LCDMD1) to “0” to stop the LCD operation.
(2) Set the display duty LCDMD1(X'3FC0') bp5-4 :LCDDTY1-0= 00	(2) Set the LCDTY1 to LCDTY0 of the LCD mode control register 1 (LCDMD1) to “00” to enter 1/4 duty driving mode.
(3) Select the LCD clock source LCDMD1(X'3FC0') bp3-0 :LCDCK3-0 = 0100	(3) Select fosc/2^{15} as the LCD clock source by the LCDKC3 to LCDCK0 flags of the LCD mode control register 1 (LCMD1).
(4) Select the segment output/port pin Select the common output/port pin LCCTR1(X'3FC2') bp3-0 :COMSL3-0 = 1111 bp7-4 :LC1SL3-0 = 1111	(4) Select SEG7 to SEG0 and COM3 to COM0 by the output control register (LCCTR), (LCCTR2), (LCCTR3), (LCCTR4).
(5) Set the LCD panel display data Segment output latch SEG1-0 (X'2E00') = X'5E' Segment output latch SEG3-2 (X'2E01') = X'7C'	(5) Display “23” on the display panel by the address X’2E00’ to X’2E01’ of the segment output latch SEG0 to SEG4.
(6) Start the LCD operation LCDMD1(X'3FC0') bp7:LCDEN = 1	(6) Set the LCDEN flag of the LCD mode control register 1 (LCMD1) to “1” to start the LCD operation.

Chapter 17 Appendix

17

17.1 Flash EEPROM

17.1.1 Overview

The MN101CF78A is equivalent to MN101C78A except its Mask ROM is substituted with 32 KB of flash EEPROM.

The MN101CF78A is programmed in the following modes;

-PROM writer mode, which uses a dedicated PROM writer for a microcontroller's stand-alone programming.

-Onboard programming mode, which the CPU controls programming of a microcontroller on a target board.

-User program area (32 KB : 0x0000 to 0x7FFF)

This area stores an user program. It is overwritten in both programming modes.

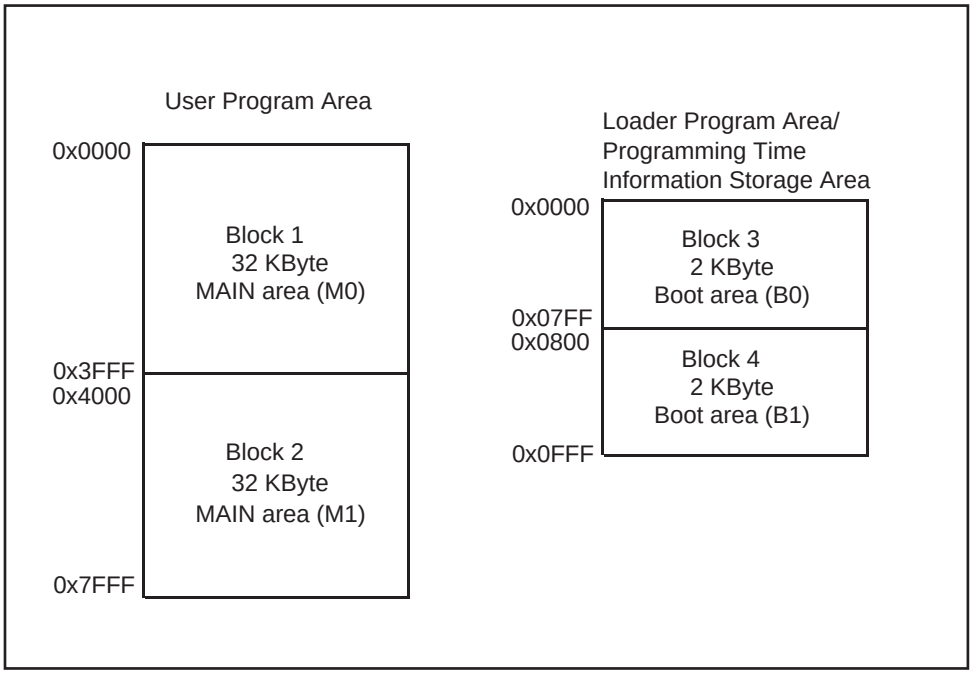


Figure:17.1.1 Memory Map in Internal Flash EEPROM

One cycle of "erase-write" process is counted as 1 programming in every block. When several blocks are programmed separately, programming count is added by just the number of programming cycle. (For instance, when block 1, 2 and 3 are programmed separately, 3 programming count is added.) Therefore, program several blocks together to reduce the programming count.

Boot area stores the loader program for onboard serial programming. Boot area can be programmed by the PROM writer only.

17.2 PROM Writer Mode

17.2.1 Overview

In PROM writer mode, the CPU is halted for the internal flash EEPROM to be programmed. The microcntroller is inserted into a dedicated adaptor socket, which connects to a PROM writer. When the microcontroller connects to the adaptor socket, it automatically enters PROM writer mode.

The programming adaptor differs depending on the writer and the package type.

Table:17.2.1 Programming Adaptor List

Programming Writer	Product Number
By Ando Electric Co., Ltd. By Panax	TEF009-CF78A48 (48 pin)

Matching information of the dedicated writer is posted on our semiconductor website, which is listed on the last page of this manual.

■ Fixing a Device on the Adapter Socket and the Position of No.1 Pin

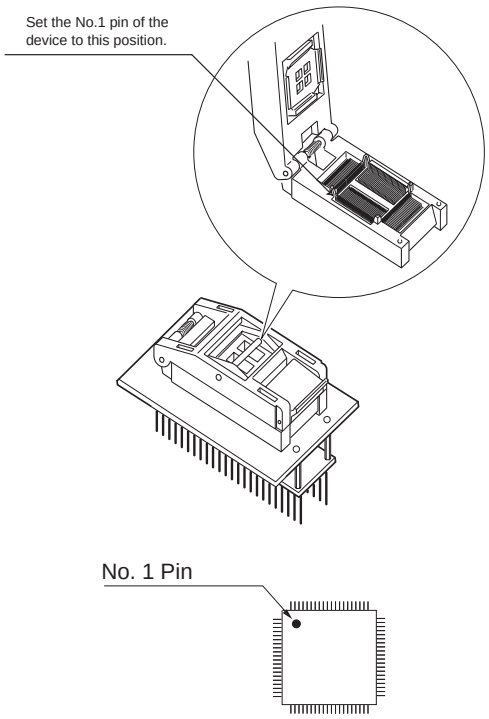


Figure:17.2.1 Fixing a Device on the Adapter Socket and the Position of No.1 Pin

17.3 Onboard Serial Programming Mode

17.3.1 Overview

The onboard serial programming mode is primarily used to program the flash EEPROM in devices that are already installed on a PCB board with internal serial interface. Use the dedicated serial writer for programming controlled by the load program. In this mode, load program is write/erase-protected in the hardware.

■ Hardware and software requirements

Hardware and software products required for onboard serial programming are as follows.

Hardware requirements

-Onboard serial writer

-Flash programming connectors or pins for target board

Software requirements

-Load program installed in the internal flash EEPROM

(Load program should be programmed with PROM writer in advance. The load program is attached to the serial writer.)

-Programming algorithm for operating onboard serial writer

■ Built-in hardware for onboard serial programming mode

Use this LSI's serial interface 0 as a standard serial writer for programming the flash EEPROM in onboard serial programming mode.

[Refer to Chapter 11 Serial Interface 0]

Serial interface I/O pins (SBT0B, SBI0B, P76), used for onboard serial programming should be reserved as dedicated pins to prevent other user circuits from communicating with the device. Alternatively, design your target board to be capable of normal communication with serial writer.

■ Onboard serial programming writer

The onboard serial programming writer supports the following model. Also, the load program can be downloaded on the following website;

YDC AF220/B

http://ydc.co.jp/micom/product/download_impress.htm

17.3.2 Circuit Requirements for the Target Board

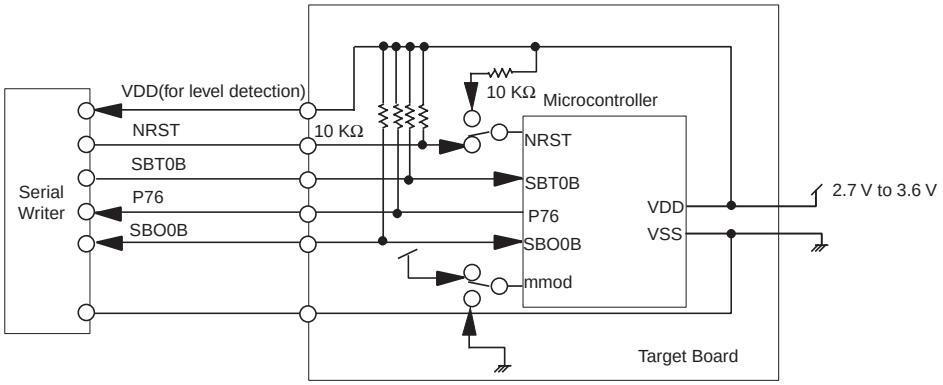


Figure:17.3.1 Circuit Requirements for the Target Board

Pins

-V_{DD1} (8.23 pin)	2.7V to 3.6V power supply
-NRST (12 pin)	Reset
-SBT0B (40 pin)	Serial interface clock supply pin
-SBO0B (38 pin)	Serial interface data input pin
-GND (5 pin)	Ground
-P76 (39 pin)	Busy signal output pin
-MMOD (11 pin)	MMOD pin (Low at user mode, High at on board programming)

-V_{DD2} should be 2.7V≤ V_{DD2} ≤3.6V. When V_{DD} level (2.7V to 3.6V) is too low, serial writer generates error message.

-Connect pull-up resistors to NRST, MMOD, SBT0B and P76 pins on the target board. The pull-up resistor value should be 10 kΩ ± 1 kΩ.

Design NRST and MMOD to be able to toggle by a switch between serial writer programming and normal operation. Alternatively, install a wired-OR connection. (For a wired-OR connection, disable NRST and MMOD from the target board during serial writer programming.

-NRST is output from the serial writer through an open-drain.

-To prevent the other user circuits on the target board from communicating, the circuit of the target board should be designed for SBT0O, SBO0B, and P76 pins to communicate with the serial writer.

-To prevent noise malfunction of Mask ROM, design the circuit of the target board carefully for the signal used for the serial writer.

17.3.3 Built-in Hardware for Onboard Programming

1. I/F

   The following built-in hardware is used as the I/F for serial programming of Flash EEPROM.

   One 8bit serial interface (Use serial 0)

   -External clock for data transmission/reception

   -LSB first transmission bit clock speed can be selected from 500 kbps, 250kbps, 125kbps, or 62.5kbps.

   -Input/output is positive logic

   -Two channels serial interface (SBT0B, SBO0B)

   Three I/O pins

   -SBT0B, SBO0B and P76 serve for both serial interface port and I/O port.

2. I/F Block Diagram

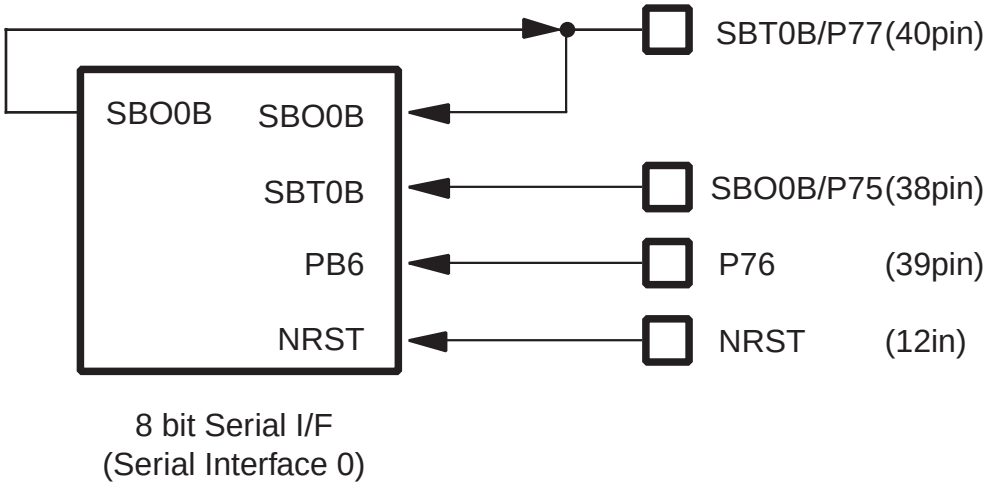


Figure:17.3.2 I/F Block Diagram

To prevent the other user circuits on the target board, shown on the Figure:17.3.2, from communicating, SBT0B, SBO0B and P76 pins should be reserved for serial programming, or the circuit of the target board should be designed for normal communication with serial writer.

17.3.4 MN101CF78A Clock on the Target Board

-Use the existing clock on the target board for the clock supply to the MN101CF78A on the target board.

Therefore, the clock frequency of the MN101CF78A differs depending on each user.

-The guaranteed clock frequency for the MN101CF78A during serial programming is shown below.

Frequency	Operating voltage
10 MHz (internal 5MHz)	2.7 V to 3.6 V
5.7 MHz (internal 5.7MHz)	3.0 V to 3.6 V
4.6 MHz (internal 4.6 MHz)	2.7 V to 3.6 V

17.4 Special Function Registers List

Address	Register	Bit Symbol								Page
		Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
0x03F00	CPUM	RESERVED	0SCSEL1	0SESEL0	0SEDBL	STOP	HALT	OSC1	0SC0	II-24 II-28
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
		Set always to “0”.	Division rate setup		Internal system clock	STOP mode setup	HALT mode setup	Oscillation control		
0x03F01	MEMCTR	IOW1	IOW0	IVBM	Reserved	Reserved	IRWE	Reserved	Reserved	II-20
		1	1	0	0	1	0	1	1	
		IO wait setup		Interrupt base address	Set always to “0”	Set always to “1”	Interrupt request software writes	Set always to “11”		
0x03F02	WDCTR	-	-	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	WDTS1	WDTS0	WDEN	IX-4
		-	-	0	0	0	1	1	0	
				Set always to “0”.			Watchdog timer detection period		Watchdog timer control	
0x03F03	DLYCTR	BUZOE	BUZS2	BUZS1	BUZS0	DLYS1	DLYS0	-	-	II-33 X-5
		0	0	0	0	0	0	-	-	
		Buzzer output selection	Buzzer output frequency selection			Oscillation stabilization wait period selection				
0x03F11	P1OUT	P1OUT7	P1OUT6	P1OUT5	P1OUT4	P1OUT3	P1OUT2	P1OUT1	P1OUT0	IV-7
		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
		Port 1 output data								
0x03F12	P2OUT	P2OUT7	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	IV-22
		1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
		Output data (Reset output)								
0x03F13	P3OUT	P3OUT7	P3OUT6	P3OUT5	P3OUT4	P3OUT3	P3OUT2	P3OUT1	P3OUT0	IV-26
		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
		Port 3 output data								

Address	Register	Bit Symbol								Page
		Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
0x03F15	P5OUT	-	P5OUT6	P5OUT5	P5OUT4	P5OUT3	P5OUT2	P5OUT1	P5OUT0	IV-41
		-	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
		Port 5 output data								
0x03F17	P7OUT	P7OUT7	P7OUT6	P7OUT5	P7OUT4	P7OUT3	P7OUT2	P7OUT1	P7OUT0	IV-51
		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
		Port 7 output data								
0x03F19	P9OUT	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	P9OUT0	IV-67
		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	x	
									Port 9 output data	
0x03F1A	PAOUT	-	PAOUT6	PAOUT5	PAOUT4	PAOUT3	PAOUT2	PAOUT1	PAOUT0	IV-74
		-	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
		-	Port A output data							
0x03F1B	P1ODC	P17ODC	-	P15ODC	-	-	-	P11ODC	P10ODC	IV-11
		0	-	0	-	-	-	0	0	
		P17 open-drain control		P15 open-drain control				P11 open-drain control	P10 open-drain control	
0x03F1C	P1OMD	P1OMD7	P1OMD 6	P1OMD 5	P1OMD 4	P1OMD 3	NBUZSE L	P1OMD 2	BUZSEL	IV-10
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
		I/O port Timer 2B output selection	I/O port Timer 2B output selection	I/O port Timer 0B output selection	I/O port, Timer 0 remote control output selection	I/O port, Timer 7 output selection	I/O port NBUZZE output selection	I/O port, Timer 8 output selection	I/O port BUZZER selection	
0x03F1D	P7ODC	P77ODC	P76ODC	P75ODC	-	-	-	-	-	IV-54
		0	0	0	-	-	-	-	-	
		P77 open-drain control	P76 open-drain control	P75 open-drain control						

Address	Register	Bit Symbol								Page
		Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
0x03F1E	EDGDT	-	-	-	-	-	EDGSEL1	-	-	III-49
		-	-	-	-	-	0	-	-	
							IRQ2 both edges interrupt opera-tion setup			
0x03F1F	CLKOUT	-	-	-	-	SCHMITT	PDOWN	CLKSEL	OUTEN	IV-13
		-	-	-	-	0	0	0	0	
						Switch port input level	Clock output function	Clock type selection	Clock output enable	
0x03F21	P1IN	P1IN7	P1IN6	P1IN5	P1IN4	P1IN3	P1IN2	P1IN1	P1IN0	IV-8
		x	x	x	x	x	x	1	1	
		Port 1 input data								
0x03F23	P3IN	P3IN7	P3IN6	P3IN5	P3IN4	P3IN3	P3IN2	P3IN1	P3IN0	IV-27
		1	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
		Port 3 input data								
0x03F25	P5IN	-	P5IN6	P5IN5	P5IN4	P5IN3	P5IN2	P5IN1	P5IN0	IV-42
		-	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
		Port 5 input data								
0x03F27	P7IN	P7IN7	P7IN6	P7IN5	P7IN4	P7IN3	P7IN2	P7IN1	P7IN0	IV-52
		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
		Port 7 input data								
0x03F29	P9IN	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	P9IN0	IV-68
		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	
		Port 9 input data								
0x03F2A	PAIN	-	PAIN6	PAIN5	PAIN4	PAIN3	PAIN2	PAIN1	PAIN0	IV-75
		-	1	1	1	x	x	x	x	
		Port A input data								

Address	Register	Bit Symbol								Page
		Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
0x03F2C	P5OMD	P5LED3	P5LED2	P5LED1	P5LED0	P5OMD 3	P5OMD 2	P5OMD 1	P5OMD 0	IV-44
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
		LED3 (large current output) selection	LED2 (large current output) selection	LED1 (large current output) selection	LED0 (large current output) selection	I/O port, Timer 8 output selection	I/O port, Timer 2A output selection	I/O port, Timer 7 output selection	I/O port, Timer 0A output selection	
0x03F2D	PAODC	-	PA6ODC	PA5ODC	-	-	PA2ODC	-	PA0ODC	IV-77
		-	0	0	-	-	0	-	0	
			PA6 open-drain control	PA5 open-drain control			PA2 open-drain control	-	PA0 open-drain control	
0x03F2E	NFCTR	P55IM	NF1SCK 1	NF1SCK 0	NF1EN	P54IM	NF0SCK 1	NF0SCK 0	NF0EN	III-48
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
		ACZ 1 enable	IRQ1/noise sampling frequency		IRQ1/ noise filter	ACZ0 enable	IRQ0/noise sampling frequency		IRQ0/ noise filter	
0x03F31	P1DIR	P1DIR7	P1DIR6	P1DIR5	P1DIR4	P1DIR3	P1DIR2	P1DIR1	P1DIR0	IV-8
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
		Port 1 I/O direction control								
0x03F33	P3DIR	P3DIR7	P3DIR6	P3DIR5	P3DIR4	P3DIR3	P3DIR2	P3DIR1	P3DIR0	IV-27
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
		Port 3 I/O direction control								
0x03F35	P5DIR	-	P5DIR6	P5DIR5	P5DIR4	P5DIR3	P5DIR2	P5DIR1	P5DIR0	IV-42
		-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
		Port 5 I/O direction control								
0x03F37	P7DIR	P7DIR7	P7DIR6	P7DIR5	P7DIR4	P7DIR3	P7DIR2	P7DIR1	P7DIR0	IV-52
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
		Port 7 I/O direction control								
0x03F39	P9DIR	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	P9DIR0	IV-68
		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	
		Port 9 I/O direction control								
0x03F3A	PADIR	-	PADIR6	PADIR5	PADIR4	PADIR3	PADIR2	PADIR1	PADIR0	IV-75
		-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
		Port A I/O direction control								

Address	Register	Bit Symbol								Page
		Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
0x03F3B	P3ODC	-	-	-	-	P33ODC	P32ODC	-	-	IV-30
		-	-	-	-	0	0	-	-	
						P33 open-drain control	P32 open-drain control			
0x03F3C	P7OMD	-	-	-	-	-	-	P7OMD1	P7OMD0	IV-53
		-	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	
								I/O port Timer 3 output selection	I/O port Timer 1 output selection	
0x03F3D	P1CNT0	-	-	P1CNT05	P1CNT04	P1CNT03	P1CNT02	P1CNT01	P1CNT00	IV-12
		-	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	
				P16 real time control		P14 real time control		P12 real time control		
0x03F3E	KEYT3_1IMD	KEYT3SEL	-	-	-	KEYT3_1EN3	KEYT3_1EN2	KEYT3_1EN1	KEYT3_1EN0	III-50
		0	-	-	-	0	0	0	0	
		Key interrupt control				KEY3 key interrupt selection	KEY2 key interrupt selection	KEY1 key interrupt selection	KEY0 key interrupt selection	
0x03F3F	KEYT3_2IMD	-	-	-	-	KEYT3_2EN3	KEYT3_2EN2	KEYT3_2EN1	KEYT3_2EN0	III-51
		-	-	-	-	0	0	0	0	
						KEY7 key interrupt selection	KEY6 key interrupt selection	KEY5 key interrupt selection	KEY4 key interrupt selection	
0x03F41	P1PLUD	P1PLUD7	P1PLUD6	P1PLUD5	P1PLUD4	P1PLUD3	P1PLUD2	P1PLUD1	P1PLUD0	IV-9
		0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	
		Port 1 pull-up/pull-down resistor								
0x03F43	P3PLUD	P3PLUD7	P3PLUD6	P3PLUD5	P3PLUD4	P3PLUD3	P3PLUD2	P3PLUD1	P3PLUD0	IV-28
		1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
		Port 3 pull-up resistor/pull-down resistor								
0x03F45	P5PLU	-	P5PLU6	P5PLU5	P5PLU4	P5PLU3	P5PLU2	P5PLU1	P5PLU0	IV-43
		-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
		Port 5 pull-up resistor								

Address	Register	Bit Symbol								Page
		Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
0x03F47	P7PLUD	P7PLUD 7	P7PLUD 6	P7PLUD 5	P7PLUD 4	P7PLUD 3	P7PLUD 2	P7PLUD 1	P7PLUD 0	IV-53
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
		Port 7 pull-up/pull-down resistor								
0x03F49	P9PLU	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	P9PLUD 0	IV-69
		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	
		Port 9 pull-up/pull-down resistor								
0x03F4A	PAPLUD	-	PAPLUD 6	PAPLUD 5	PAPLUD 4	PAPLUD 3	PAPLUD 2	PAPLU1 D	PAPLUD 0	IV-76
		-	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	
		Port A pull-up/pull-down resistor								
0x03F4B	SELUD	-	-	-	PADWN	P3DWN	P9DWN	P7DWN	P1DWN	IV-77
		-	-	-	1	1	1	0	0	
					PA pull-up/down	P3 pull-up/down	P9 pull-up/down	P7 pull-up/down	P1 pull-up/down	
0x03F4C	XSEL	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	XSEL	IV-70
		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	
									P91, XI selection	
0x03F4E	PAIMD	PAIMD7	PAIMD6	PAIMD5	PAIMD4	PAIMD3	PAIMD2	PAIMD1	PAIMD0	IV-76
		-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
		Analog input pin selection								
0x03F50	TM0BC	TM0BC7	TM0BC6	TM0BC5	TM0BC4	TM0BC3	TM0BC2	TM0BC1	TM0BC0	V-13
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
		Timer 0 binary counter								
0x03F51	TM1BC	TM1BC7	TM1BC6	TM1BC5	TM1BC4	TM1BC3	TM1BC2	TM1BC1	TM1BC0	V-13
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
		Timer 1 binary counter								
0x03F52	TM0OC	TM0OC7	TM0OC6	TM0OC5	TM0OC4	TM0OC3	TM0OC2	TM0OC1	TM0OC0	V-12
		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
		Timer 0 compare register								
0x03F64	TM6BEN	-	-	-	-	-	-	TBEN	TM6EN	VII-7
		-	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	
		-	-	-	-	-	-	Time base timer operation control	TM6 operation control	

Address	Register	Bit Symbol								Page
		Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
0x03F6C	RMCTR	-	-	Reserved	TM0RM	RM0EN	RMDTY1	RMDTY0	RMBTMS	VIII-5
		-	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	
				Set always to “0”.	P14 special function output selection	Remote control career output enable	Remote control career duty selection		Remote control career base timer selection	
0x03F6D	PSCMD	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	PSCEN	III-47
		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	
		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Prescaler count control	
0x03F6E	TM7MD4	-	-	-	T7ONESHOT	T7NODED	-	T7ICT2	T7CAPCLR	VI-19
		-	-	-	-0	0	-	0	0	
		-	-	-	1 shot pulse selection	Dead time selection	-	Capture trigger selection	BC clear control at capture	
0x03F6F	TM8MD4	-	-	-	-	-	-	T8ICT2	T8CAPCLR	VI-23
		-	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	
		-	-	-	-	-	-	Capture trigger selection	BC clear control at capture	
0x03F70	TM7BCL	TM7BCL7	TM7BCL6	TM7BCL5	TM7BCL4	TM7BCL3	TM7BCL2	TM7BCL1	TM7BCL0	VI-11
		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
		Timer 7 binary counter lower 8 bits								
0x03F71	TM7BCH	TM7BCH7	TM7BCH6	TM7BCH5	TM7BCH4	TM7BCH3	TM7BCH2	TM7BCH1	TM7BCH0	VI-11
		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
		Timer 7 binary counter upper 8 bits								
0x03F72	TM7OC1L	TM7OC1L7	TM7OC1L6	TM7OC1L5	TM7OC1L4	TM7OC1L3	TM7OC1L2	TM7OC1L1	TM7OC1L0	VI-9
		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
		Timer 7 compare register 1 lower 8 bits								
0x03F73	TM7OC1H	TM7OC1H7	TM7OC1H6	TM7OC1H5	TM7OC1H4	TM7OC1H3	TM7OC1H2	TM7OC1H1	TM7OC1H0	VI-9
		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
		Timer 7 compare register 1 upper 8 bits								

Address	Register	Bit Symbol								Page
		Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
0x03F74	TM7PR1L	TM7PR1L7	TM7PR1L6	TM7PR1L5	TM7PR1L4	TM7PR1L3	TM7PR1L2	TM7PR1L1	TM7PR1L0	VI-10
		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
		Timer 7 preset register 1 lower 8 bits								
0x03F75	TM7PR1H	TM7PR1H7	TM7PR1H6	TM7PR1H5	TM7PR1H4	TM7PR1H3	TM7PR1H2	TM7PR1H1	TM7PR1H0	VI-10
		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
		Timer 7 preset register 1 upper 8 bits								
0x03F76	TM7ICL	TM7ICL7	TM7ICL6	TM7ICL5	TM7ICL4	TM7ICL3	TM7ICL2	TM7ICL1	TM7ICL0	VI-11
		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
		Timer 7 input capture register lower 8 bits								
0x03F77	TM7ICH	TM7ICH7	TM7ICH6	TM7ICH5	TM7ICH4	TM7ICH3	TM7ICH2	TM7ICH1	TM7ICH0	VI-11
		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
		Timer 7 input capture register upper 8 bits								
0x03F78	TM7MD1	Reserved	T7ICEDG1	TM7CL	TM7EN	TM7PS1	TM7PS0	TM7CK1	TM7CK0	VI-16
		0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	
		Set always to “0”	Capture trigger	Timer output reset signal	Timer count control	Count clock selection		Clock source selection		
0x03F79	TM7MD2	T7ICEDG0	TM7PWMSL	TM7BCR	TM7PWM	TM7IRS1	T7ICEN	T7ICT1	T7ICT0	VI-17
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
		Capture trigger edge selection	PWM mode selection	TM7 count clear factor selection	Timer output waveform selection	Timer 7 interrupt factor selection	Input capture operation enable	Capture trigger		
0x03F7A	TM7OC2L	TM7OC2L7	TM7OC2L6	TM7OC2L5	TM7OC2L4	TM7OC2L3	TM7OC2L2	TM7OC2L1	TM7OC2L0	VI-9
		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
		Timer 7 compare register 2 lower 8 bits								
0x03F7B	TM7OC2H	TM7OC2H7	TM7OC2H6	TM7OC2H5	TM7OC2H4	TM7OC2H3	TM7OC2H2	TM7OC2H1	TM7OC2H0	VI-9
		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
		Timer 7 compare register 2 upper 8 bits								

Address	Register	Bit Symbol								Page
		Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
0x03F7C	TM7PR2L	TM7PR2 L7	TM7PR2 L6	TM7PR2 L5	TM7PR2 L4	TM7PR2 L3	TM7PR2 L2	TM7PR2 L1	TM7PR2 L0	VI-10
		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
		Timer 7 preset register 2 lower 8 bits								
0x03F7D	TM7PR2H	TM7PR2 H7	TM7PR1 H6	TM7PR2 H5	TM7PR2 H4	TM7PR2 H3	TM7PR2 H2	TM7PR2 H1	TM7PR2 H0	VI-10
		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
		Timer 7 preset register 2 upper 8 bits								
0x03F7E	TM7DPR1	TM7DPR 17	TM7DP R16	TM7DP R15	TM7DP R14	TM7DP R13	TM7DP R12	TM7DP R11	TM7DP R10	VI-12
		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
		Timer 7 preset register 1								
0x03F7F	TM7DPR2	TM7DPR 27	TM7DP R26	TM7DP R25	TM7DP R24	TM7DP R23	TM7DP R22	TM7DP R21	TM7DP R20	VI-12
		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
		Timer 7 preset register 2								
0x03F80	TM8BCL	TM8BCL 7	TM8BCL 6	TM8BCL 5	TM8BCL 4	TM8BCL 3	TM8BCL 2	TM8BCL 1	TM8BCL 0	VI-15
		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
		Timer 8 binary counter lower 8 bits								
0x03F81	TM8BCH	TM8BCH 7	TM8BC H6	TM8BC H5	TM8BC H4	TM8BC H3	TM8BC H2	TM8BC H1	TM8BC H0	VI-15
		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
		Timer 8 binary counter upper 8 bits								
0x03F82	TM8OC1L	TM8OC1 L7	TM8OC1 L6	TM8OC1 L5	TM8OC1 L4	TM8OC1 L3	TM8OC1 L2	TM8OC1 L1	TM8OC1 L0	VI-13
		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
		Timer 8 compare register 1 lower 8 bits								
0x03F83	TM8OC1H	TM8OC1 H7	TM8OC1 H6	TM8OC1 H5	TM8OC1 H4	TM8OC1 H3	TM8OC1 H2	TM8OC1 H1	TM8OC1 H0	VI-13
		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
		Timer 8 compare register 1 upper 8 bits								
0x03F84	TM8PR1L	TM8PR1 L7	TM8PR1 L6	TM8PR1 L5	TM8PR1 L4	TM8PR1 L3	TM8PR1 L2	TM8PR1 L1	TM8PR1 L0	VI-14
		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
		Timer 8 preset register 1 lower 8 bits								
0x03F85	TM8PR1H	TM8PR1 H7	TM8PR1 H6	TM8PR1 H5	TM8PR1 H4	TM8PR1 H3	TM8PR1 H2	TM8PR1 H1	TM8PR1 H0	VI-14
		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
		Timer 8 preset register 1 upper 8 bits								

Address	Register	Bit Symbol								Page
		Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
0x03F86	TM8ICL	TM8ICL7	TM8ICL 6	TM8ICL 5	TM8ICL 4	TM8ICL 3	TM8ICL 2	TM8ICL 1	TM8ICL 0	VI-15
		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
		Timer 8 input capture register 1 lower 8 bits								
0x03F87	TM8ICH	TM8ICH7	TM8ICH 6	TM8ICH 5	TM8ICH 4	TM8ICH 3	TM8ICH 2	TM8ICH 1	TM8ICH 0	VI-15
		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
		Timer 8 input capture register 1 upper 8 bits								
0x03F88	TM8MD1	Reserved	T8ICED G1	TM8CL	TM8EN	TM8PS1	TM8PS0	TM8CK1	TM8CK0	VI-20
		0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	
		Set always to “0”.	Capture trigger	Timer output reset signal	Timer 8 count control	Count clock selection		Clock source selection		
0x03F89	TM8MD2	T8ICED G1	TM8PW MSL	TM8BC R	TM8PW M	TM8IRS 1	T8ICEN	T8ICT1	T8ICT0	VI-21
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
		Capture trigger edge selection	PWM mode selection	Timer 8 count clear factor selection	Timer output waveform selection	Timer 8 interrupt factor selection	Input capture operation enable	Capture trigger		
0x03F8A	TM8OC2L	TM8OC2 L7	TM8OC2 L6	TM8OC2 L5	TM8OC2 L4	TM8OC2 L3	TM8OC2 L2	TM8OC2 L1	TM8OC2 L0	VI-13
		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
		Timer 8 compare register 2 lower 8 bits								
0x03F8B	TM8OC2H	TM8OC2 H7	TM8OC2 H6	TM8OC2 H5	TM8OC2 H4	TM8OC2 H3	TM8OC2 H2	TM8OC2 H1	TM8OC2 H0	VI-13
		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
		Timer 8 compare register 2 upper 8 bits								
0x03F8C	TM8PR2L	TM8PR2 L7	TM8PR2 L6	TM8PR2 L5	TM8PR2 L4	TM8PR2 L3	TM8PR2 L2	TM8PR2 L1	TM8PR2 L0	VI-14
		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
		Timer 8 preset register 2 lower 8 bits								
0x03F8D	TM8PR2H	TM8PR2 H7	TM8PR2 H6	TM8PR2 H5	TM8PR2 H4	TM8PR2 H3	TM8PR2 H2	TM8PR2 H1	TM8PR2 H0	VI-14
		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
		Timer 8 preset register 2 upper 8 bits								

Address	Register	Bit Symbol								Page
		Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
0x03F8E	TM7MD3	TM7CKSMP	Reserved	TM7CKEDG	T7IGBTTR	T7IGBTDT	T7IGBTEN	T7IGBT1	T7IGBT0	VI-18
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
		Capture sampling	Set always to “0”.	TM7IO count edge selection	IGBT trigger level selection	IGBT dead time insert timing	IGBT operation enable	IGBT/Timer trigger selection		
0x03F8F	TM8MD3	TM8CKSMP	-	-	TM8CKEDG	TM8SEL	TM8PWMF	TM8PWMO	TM8CAS	VI-22
		0	-	-	0	0	0	0	0	
		Capture sampling			TM8IO count edge selection	Timer 8 output selection	PWM output control at timer 8 halt	Timer 8 PWM output polarity selection	Cascade selection	
0x03F90	SCSEL	TMPSC12	TMPSC11	TMPSCO2	TMPSCO1	SC4SL	-	SC1SL	SCOSL	XI-12
		0	0	0	0	0	-	0	0	
		Serial 1 Timer 2 output dividing selection		Serial 0 timer 2 output dividing selection		Serial 4 I/O pin switching		Serial 1 I/O pin switching	Serial 1 I/O pin switching	
0x03F91	SC0MD0	SC0CE1	-	-	SC0DIR	SC0STE	SC0LNG2	SC0LNG1	SC0LNG0	XI-7
		0	-	-	0	0	1	1	1	
		Transmission / Reception edge selection			Transfer bit specification	Start condition selection	Synchronous serial transfer bit selection			
0x03F92	SC0MD1	SC0IOM	SC0SBTS	SC0SBIS	SC0SBOS	SC0CKM	SC0MST	SC0DIIV	SC0CMD	XI-8
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
		Serial data input selection	SBT function selection	Serial input control selection	SBO0 function selection	Transfer clock dividing selection	Clock master/ slave selection	Transfer clock dividing selection (1/8, 1/16)	Synchronous/ URT	
0x03F93	SC0MD2	SC0FM1	SC0FM0	SC0PM1	SC0PM0	SC0NPE	-	SC0BRKF	SC0BRKE	XI-9
		0	0	0	0	0	-	0	0	
		Frame mode specification		Added bit specification		Parity enable		Bread status reception monitor	Break status transmission control	

Address	Register	Bit Symbol								Page
		Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
0x03F94	SC0MD3	SC0FDC1	SC0FDC0	-	-	SC0PSCE	SC0PSC2	SC0PSC1	SC0PSC0	XI-10
		0	0	-	-	0	0	0	0	
		Output selection after SBO0 final data transmit		-	-	Prescaler count control	Selection clock			
0x03F95	SC0STR	SC0TBSY	SC0RBSY	SC0TEMP	SC0REMP	SC0FEF	SC0PEK	SC0ORE	SC0ERE	XI-11
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
		Serial bus status		Transfer buffer empty	Receive buffer empty	Framing error detection	Parity error detection	Overrun error detection	Error monitor flag	
0x03F96	RXBUF0	RXBUF07	RXBUF06	RXBUF05	RXBUF04	RXBUF03	RXBUF02	RXBUF01	RXBUF00	XI-6
		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
		Serial interface 0 reception data buffer								
0x03F97	TXBUF0	TXBUF07	TXBUF06	TXBUF05	TXBUF04	TXBUF03	TXBUF02	TXBUF01	TXBUF00	XI-6
		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
		Serial interface 0 transmission data buffer								
0x03F99	SC1MD0	SC1CE1	-	-	SC1DIR	SC1STE	SC1LNG2	SC1LNG1	SC1LNG0	XII-7
		0	-	-	0	0	1	1	1	
		transmission/ reception edge selection	-	-	Transfer bit specification	Start condition selection	Synchronous transfer bit specification			
0x03F9A	SC1MD1	SC1IOM	SC1SBTS	SC1SBIS	SC1SBOS	SC1CKM	SC1MST	SC1DIV	SC0CMD	XII-8
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
		Serial data input	SBT function selection	Serial input control selection	SBO function selection	Transfer clock dividing selection	Clock master/ slave selection	Transfer clock dividing selection (1/8, 1/16)	Synchronous/ UART	
0x03F9B	SC1MD2	SC1FM1	SC1FM0	SC1PM1	SC1PM0	SC1NPE	-	SC1BRKF	SC1BRKE	XII-9
		0	0	0	0	0	-	0	0	
		Frame mode specification		Added bit specification		Parity enable	-	Break status reception monitor	Break status transmission control	

Address	Register	Bit Symbol								Page
		Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
0x03F9C	SC1MD3	SC1FDC1	SC1FDC0	-	-	SC1PSCE	SC1PSC2	SC1PSC1	SC1PSC0	XII-10
		0	0	-	-	0	0	0	0	
		Output selection after SBO final data transmit				Prescaler count control	Selection clock			
0x03F9D	SC1STR	SC1TBSY	SC1RBSY	SC1TEMP	SC1REMP	SC1FEF	SC1PEK	SC1ORE	SC1ERE	XII-11
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
		Serial bus status		Transmission buffer empty	Reception buffer empty	Frame error detection	Parity error detection	Overrun error detection	Error monitor flag	
0x03F9E	RXBUF1	RXBUF17	RXBUF16	RXBUF15	RXBUF14	RXBUF13	RXBUF12	RXBUF11	RXBUF10	XII-6
		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
		Serial interface 1 reception data buffer								
0x03F9F	TXBUF1	TXBUF17	TXBUF16	TXBUF15	TXBUF14	TXBUF13	TXBUF12	TXBUF11	TXBUF10	XII-6
		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
		Serial interface 1 transmission data buffer								
0x03FA0	SC3MD0	SC3BSY	SC3CE1	-	SC3DIR	SC3STE	SC3LNG2	SC3LNG1	SC3LNG0	XIII-6
		0	0	-	0	0	1	1	1	
		Clock synchronous transmission serial bus status	Transmission/ Reception edge selection	-	Transfer bit specification	Start condition selection	Synchronous transfer bit specification			
0x03FA1	SC3MD1	SC3IOM	SC3SBTS	SC3SBIS	SC3SBOS	-	SC3MST	-	-	XIII-7
		0	0	0	0	-	0	-	-	
		Serial data input selection	SBT3 function selection	Serial input control selection	SBO3 function selection		Clock master/ Slave			
0x03FA2	SC3MD3	SC3FDC1	SC3FDC0	-	-	SC3PSCE	SC3PSC2	SC3PSC1	SC3PSC0	XIII-8
		0	0	-	-	0	0	0	0	
		Output selection after SBO final data transmit				Prescaler count control	Selection clock			

Address	Register	Bit Symbol								Page
		Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
0x03FA3	SC3STR	-	-	SC3TEMP	-	-	-	-	-	XIII-9
		-	-	0	-	-	-	-	-	
				Transfer buffer empty flag						
0x03FA4	TXBUF3	TXBUF37	TXBUF36	TXBUF35	TXBUF34	TXBUF33	TXBUF32	TXBUF31	TXBUF30	XIII-5
		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
		Serial interface 3 transmission data buffer								
0x03FA5	SC3TRB	SC3TRB7	SC3TRB6	SC3TRB5	SC3TRB4	SC3TRB3	SC3TRB2	SC3TRB1	SC3TRB0	XIII-5
		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
		Serial interface 3 reception data buffer								
0x03FA6	SC3CTR	IIC3BSY	IIC3STC	IIC3STPC	IIC3TMD	IIC3REX	SC3CMD	SC3ACKS	SC3ACKO	XIII-10
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
		Serial bus status	Start condition selection	Stop condition selection	Communication mode	Transmission/ Reception mode selection	Synchronous/ IIC	ACK enable	ACK bit level	
0x03FA7	SC4AD0	I2CAD7	I2CAD5	I2CAD6	I2CAD4	I2CAD3	I2CAD2	I2CAD1	I2CAD0	XIV-6
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
		Serial interface 4 address setup								
0x03FA8	SC4AD1	SELI2C	I2CMON	-	-	I2CGEM	I2CADM	I2CAD9	I2CAD8	XIV-6
		0	0	-	-	0	0	0	0	
		Reset control	Pin monitor			Communication mode selection	Address mode selection	Serial interface 4 address setup		
0x03FA9	SC4RXB	I2CRXB7	I2CRXB6	I2CRXB5	I2CRXB4	I2CRXB3	I2CRXB2	I2CRXB1	I2CRXB0	XIV-5
		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
		Serial interface 4 reception data buffer								
0x03FAA	SC4TXB	I2CTXB7	I2CTXB6	I2CTXB5	I2CTXB4	I2CTXB3	I2CTXB2	I2CTXB1	I2CTXB0	XIV-5
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
		Serial interface 4 transmission data buffer								

Address	Register	Bit Symbol								Page
		Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
0x03FAB	SC4STR	WRS	I2CINT	STRT	RSTRT	I2CBSY	SLVBSY	ACKVALID	-	XIV-7
		1	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	
		Data transfer direction determination flag	Interrupt detection flag	Start condition detection	Re-start condition detection	Bus busy flag	Slave busy flag	ACK detection flag		
0x03FC0	LCDMD1	LCDEN	Reserved	LCDTY1	LCDTY0	LCDCK3	LCDCK2	LCDCK1	LCDCK0	XVI-7
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
		LCD start	Set always to “0”.	LCD display duty selection		Source clock				
0x03FC1	LCDMD2			Reserved	Reserved	LCRHL	LCREN	Reserved	Reserved	XVI-8
		-	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	
				Set always to “0”.		Internal voltage dividing resistor value selection	Dividing voltage resistor connection selection	Set always to “00”		
0x03FC2	LCCTR1	LC1SL3	LC1SL2	LC1SL1	LC1SL0	COMSL3	COMSL2	COMSL1	COMSL0	XVI-9
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
		P74/ SEG3 selection	P75/ SEG2 selection	P76/ SEG1 selection	P77/ SEG0 selection	P33/ COM3 selection	P32/ COM2 selection	P31/ COM1 selection	P30/ COM0 selection	
0x03FC3	LCCTR2	LC2SL7	LC2SL6	LC2SL5	LC2SL4	LC2SL3	LC2SL2	LC2SL1	LC2SL0	XVI-10
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
		P14/ SEG11 selection	P15/ SEG10 selection	P16/ SEG9 selection	P17/ SEG8 selection	P70/ SEG7 selection	P71/ SEG6 selection	P72/ SEG5 selection	P73/ SEG4 selection	
0x03FC4	LCCTR3	-	-	-	-	-	LC3SL2	LC3SL1	LC3SL0	XVI-11
		-	-	-	-	-	0	0	0	
							P34/ VLC3 selection	P35/ VLC2 selection	P36/ VLC1 selection	
0x03FCB	ANCTR0	ANSH1	ANSH0	ANCK1	ANCK0	ANLADE	-	-	-	XV-5
		0	0	0	0	0	-	-	-	
		Sample and hold time		A/D conversion clock		A/D ladder resistance control				

Address	Register	Bit Symbol								Page
		Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
0x03FCC	ANCTR1	-	-	-	-	-	ANSHS2	ANSHS1	ANSHS0	XV-6
		-	-	-	-	-	0	0	0	
							Analog input channel			
0x03FCD	ANCTR2	ANST	ANSTSEL1	Reserved	-	-	-	-	-	XV-6
		0	0	0	-	-	-	-	-	
		A/D conversion status	A/D conversion starting factor selection	Set always to “0”.						
0x03FCE	ANBUF0	ANBUF07	ANBUF06	-	-	-	-	-	-	XV-7
		x	x	-	-	-	-	-	-	
		A/D conversion data storage buffer 0								
0x03FCF	ANBUF1	ANBUF17	ANBUF16	ANBUF15	ANBUF14	ANBUF13	ANBUF12	ANBUF11	ANBUF10	XV-7
		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
		A/D conversion data storage buffer 1								
0x03FE1	NMICR	-	-	-	-	-	IRQNPG	IRQNWDG	Reserved	III-19
		-	-	-	-	-	0	0	0	
							Program interrupt request	Watch dog interrupt request	Set always to “0”.	
0x03FE2	IRQ0ICR	IRQ0LV1	IRQ0LV0	REDG0	-	-	-	IRQ0IE	IRQ0IR	III-20
		0	0	0	-	-	-	0	0	
		Interrupt level specification flag		Interrupt valid edge specification flag				Interrupt enable flag	Interrupt request flag	
0x03FE3	IRQ1ICR	IRQ1LV1	IRQ1LV0	REDG0	-	-	-	IRQ1IE	IRQ1IR	III-21
		0	0	0	-	-	-	0	0	
		Interrupt level specification flag		Interrupt valid edge specification flag				Interrupt enable flag	Interrupt request flag	

Address	Register	Bit Symbol								Page
		Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
0x03FE4	IRQ2ICR	IRQ2LV1	IRQ2LV0	REDG1	-	-	-	IRQ2IE	IRQ2IR	III-22
		0	0	0	-	-	-	0	0	
		Interrupt level specification flag		Interrupt valid edge specification flag				Interrupt enable flag	Interrupt request flag	
0x03FE6	IRQ4ICR	IRQ4LV1	IRQ4LV0	-	-	-	-	IRQ4IE	IRQ4IR	III-23
		0	0	0	-	-	-	0	0	
		Interrupt level specification flag		Interrupt valid edge specification flag				Interrupt enable flag	Interrupt request flag	
0x03FE7	TM0ICR	TM0LV1	TM0LV0	-	-	-	-	TM0IE	TM0IR	III-24
		0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	
		Interrupt level flag						Interrupt enable flag	Interrupt request flag	
0x03FE8	TM1ICR	TM1LV1	TM1LV0	-	-	-	-	TM1IE	TM1IR	III-25
		0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	
		Interrupt level flag						Interrupt enable flag	Interrupt request flag	
0x03FE9	TM2ICR	TM2LV1	TM2LV0	-	-	-	-	TM2IE	TM2IR	III-26
		0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	
		Interrupt level flag						Interrupt enable flag	Interrupt request flag	
0x03FEA	TM3ICR	TM3LV1	TM3LV0	-	-	-	-	TM3IE	TM3IR	III-27
		0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	
		Interrupt level flag						Interrupt enable flag	Interrupt request flag	
0x03FEB	TM6ICR	TM6LV1	TM6LV0	-	-	-	-	TM6IE	TM6IR	III-28
		0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	
		Interrupt level flag						Interrupt enable flag	Interrupt request flag	

Address	Register	Bit Symbol								Page
		Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
0x03FEC	TBICR	TBLV1	TBLV0	-	-	-	-	TBIE	TBIR	III-29
		0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	
		Interrupt level flag						Interrupt enable flag	Interrupt request flag	
0x03FED	TM7ICR	TM7LV1	TM7LV0	-	-	-	-	TM0IE	TM0IR	III-30
		0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	
		Interrupt level flag						Interrupt enable flag	Interrupt request flag	
0x03FEE	T7OC2ICR	T7OC2LV1	T7OC2LV0	-	-	-	-	T7OC2IE	T7OC2IR	III-31
		0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	
		Interrupt level flag						Interrupt enable flag	Interrupt request flag	
0x03FEF	SC0RICR	SC0RLV1	SC0RLV0	-	-	-	-	SC0RIE	SC0RIR	III-32
		0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	
		Interrupt level flag						Interrupt enable flag	Interrupt request flag	
0x03FF0	SC0TICR	SC0TLV1	SC0TLV0	-	-	-	-	SC0TIE	SC0TIR	III-33
		0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	
		Interrupt level flag						Interrupt enable flag	Interrupt request flag	
0x03FF1	SC1RICR	SC1RLV1	SC1RLV0	-	-	-	-	SC0RIE	SC0RIR	III-34
		0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	
		Interrupt level flag						Interrupt enable flag	Interrupt request flag	
0x03FF2	SC1TICR	SC1TLV1	SC1TLV0	-	-	-	-	SC1TIE	SC1TIR	III-35
		0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	
		Interrupt level flag						Interrupt enable flag	Interrupt request flag	
0x03FF3	SC3ICR	SC3LV1	SC3LV0	-	-	-	-	SC3IE	SC3IR	III-36
		0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	
		Interrupt level flag						Interrupt enable flag	Interrupt request flag	

Address	Register	Bit Symbol								Page
		Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
0x03FF4	ADICR	ADLV1	ADLV0	-	-	-	-	ADIE	ADIR	III-37
		0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	
		Interrupt level flag						Interrupt enable flag	Interrupt request flag	
0x03FF5	SC4ICR	SC4LV1	SC4LV0	-	-	-	-	SC4IE	SC4IR	III-38
		0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	
		Interrupt level flag						Interrupt enable flag	Interrupt request flag	
0x03FF6	TM8ICR	TM8LV1	TM8LV0	-	-	-	-	TM8IE	TM8IR	III-39
		0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	
		Interrupt level flag						Interrupt enable flag	Interrupt request flag	
0x03FF7	T8OC2ICR	T8OC2LV1	T8OC2LV0	-	-	-	-	T8OC2IE	T8OC2IR	III-40
		0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	
		Interrupt level flag						Interrupt enable flag	Interrupt request flag	

17.5 Instruction Set

MN101C SERIES INSTRUCTION SET

Group	Mnemonic	Operation	Flag VF	Flag NF	Flag CF	Flag ZF	Code Size	Cycle	Re-peat	Machine Code Ext.	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	Notes
Data Move Instructions																						
MOV	MOV Dn,Dm	Dn→Dm	--	--	--	--	2	1			1010 DnDm											
	MOV imm8,Dm	imm8→Dm	--	--	--	--	4	2			1010 DmDm	<#8.	...>									
	MOV Dn,PSW	Dn→PSW	●	●	●	●	3	3		0010	1001 01Dn											
	MOV PSW,Dm	PSW→Dm	--	--	--	--	3	2		0010	0001 01Dm											
	MOV (An),Dm	mem8(An)→Dm	--	--	--	--	2	2			0100 1ADm											
	MOV (d8,An),Dm	mem8(d8+An)→Dm	--	--	--	--	4	2			0110 1ADm	<d8.	...>									*1
	MOV (d16,An),Dm	mem8(d16+An)→Dm	--	--	--	--	7	4		0010	0110 1ADm	<d16	....	....	...>							
	MOV (d4,SP),Dm	mem8(d4+SP)→Dm	--	--	--	--	3	2			0110 01Dm	<d4>										*2
	MOV (d8,SP),Dm	mem8(d8+SP)→Dm	--	--	--	--	5	3		0010	0110 01Dm	<d8.	...>									*3
	MOV (d16,SP),Dm	mem8(d16+SP)→Dm	--	--	--	--	7	4		0010	0110 00Dm	<d16	....	....	...>							
	MOV (io8),Dm	mem8(IOTOP+io8)→Dm	--	--	--	--	4	2			0110 00Dm	<io8	...>									
	MOV (abs8),Dm	mem8(abs8)→Dm	--	--	--	--	4	2			0100 01Dm	<abs	8..>									
	MOV (abs12),Dm	mem8(abs12)→Dm	--	--	--	--	5	2			0100 00Dm	<abs	12..	...>								
	MOV (abs16),Dm	mem8(abs16)→Dm	--	--	--	--	7	4		0010	1100 00Dm	<abs	16..	....	...>							
	MOV Dn,(Am)	Dn→mem8(Am)	--	--	--	--	2	2			0101 1aDn											
	MOV Dn,(d8,Am)	Dn→mem8(d8+Am)	--	--	--	--	4	2			0111 1aDn	<d8.	...>									*1
	MOV Dn,(d16,Am)	Dn→mem8(d16+Am)	--	--	--	--	7	4		0010	0111 1aDn	<d16	....	....	...>							
	MOV Dn,(d4,SP)	Dn→mem8(d4+SP)	--	--	--	--	3	2			0111 01Dn	<d4>										*2
	MOV Dn,(d8,SP)	Dn→mem8(d8+SP)	--	--	--	--	5	3		0010	0111 01Dn	<d8.	...>									*3
	MOV Dn,(d16,SP)	Dn→mem8(d16+SP)	--	--	--	--	7	4		0010	0111 00Dn	<d16	....	....	...>							
	MOV Dn,(io8)	Dn→mem8(IOTOP+io8)	--	--	--	--	4	2			0111 00Dn	<io8	...>									
	MOV Dn,(abs8)	Dn→mem8(abs8)	--	--	--	--	4	2			0101 01Dn	<abs	8..>									
	MOV Dn,(abs12)	Dn→mem8(abs12)	--	--	--	--	5	2			0101 00Dn	<abs	12..	...>								
	MOV Dn,(abs16)	Dn→mem8(abs16)	--	--	--	--	7	4		0010	1101 00Dn	<abs	16..	....	...>							
	MOV imm8,(io8)	imm8→mem8(IOTOP+io8)	--	--	--	--	6	3			0000 0010	<io8	...>	<#8.	...>							
	MOV imm8,(abs8)	imm8→mem8(abs8)	--	--	--	--	6	3			0001 0100	<abs	8..>	<#8.	...>							
	MOV imm8,(abs12)	imm8→mem8(abs12)	--	--	--	--	7	3			0001 0101	<abs	12..	...>	<#8.	...>						
	MOV imm8,(abs16)	imm8→mem8(abs16)	--	--	--	--	9	5		0011	1101 1001	<abs	16..	....	...>	<#8.	...>					
	MOV Dn,(HA)	Dn→mem8(HA)	--	--	--	--	2	2			1101 00Dn											
MOVW	MOVW (An),DWm	mem16(An)→DWm	--	--	--	--	2	3			1110 00Ad											
	MOVW (An),Am	mem16(An)→Am	--	--	--	--	3	4		0010	1110 10Aa											*4
	MOVW (d4,SP),DWm	mem16(d4+SP)→DWm	--	--	--	--	3	3			1110 011d	<d4>										*2
	MOVW (d4,SP),Am	mem16(d4+SP)→Am	--	--	--	--	3	3			1110 010a	<d4>										*2
	MOVW (d8,SP),DWm	mem16(d8+SP)→DWm	--	--	--	--	5	4		0010	1110 011d	<d8.	...>									*3
	MOVW (d8,SP),Am	mem16(d8+SP)→Am	--	--	--	--	5	4		0010	1110 010a	<d8.	...>									*3
	MOVW (d16,SP),DWm	mem16(d16+SP)→DWm	--	--	--	--	7	5		0010	1110 001d	<d16	....	....	...>							
	MOVW (d16,SP),Am	mem16(d16+SP)→Am	--	--	--	--	7	5		0010	1110 000a	<d16	....	....	...>							
	MOVW (abs8),DWm	mem16(abs8)→DWm	--	--	--	--	4	3			1100 011d	<abs	8..>									
	MOVW (abs8),Am	mem16(abs8)→Am	--	--	--	--	4	3			1100 010a	<abs	8..>									
	MOVW (abs16),DWm	mem16(abs16)→DWm	--	--	--	--	7	5		0010	1100 011d	<abs	16..	....	...>							
	MOVW (abs16),Am	mem16(abs16)→Am	--	--	--	--	7	5		0010	1100 010a	<abs	16..	....	...>							
	MOVW DWn,(Am)	DWn→mem16(Am)	--	--	--	--	2	3			1111 00aD											
	MOVW An,(Am)	An→mem16(Am)	--	--	--	--	3	4		0010	1111 10aA											*4
	MOVW DWn,(d4,SP)	DWn→mem16(d4+SP)	--	--	--	--	3	3			1111 011D	<d4>										*2
	MOVW An,(d4,SP)	An→mem16(d4+SP)	--	--	--	--	3	3			1111 010A	<d4>										*2
	MOVW DWn,(d8,SP)	DWn→mem16(d8+SP)	--	--	--	--	5	4		0010	1111 011D	<d8.	...>									*3
	MOVW An,(d8,SP)	An→mem16(d8+SP)	--	--	--	--	5	4		0010	1111 010A	<d8.	...>									*3
	MOVW DWn,(d16,SP)	DWn→mem16(d16+SP)	--	--	--	--	7	5		0010	1111 001D	<d16	....	....	...>							
	MOVW An,(d16,SP)	An→mem16(d16+SP)	--	--	--	--	7	5		0010	1111 000A	<d16	....	....	...>							
	MOVW DWn,(abs8)	DWn→mem16(abs8)	--	--	--	--	4	3			1101 011D	<abs	8..>									
	MOVW An,(abs8)	An→mem16(abs8)	--	--	--	--	4	3			1101 010A	<abs	8..>									
	MOVW DWn,(abs16)	DWn→mem16(abs16)	--	--	--	--	7	5		0010	1101 011D	<abs	16..	....	...>							
	MOVW An,(abs16)	An→mem16(abs16)	--	--	--	--	7	5		0010	1101 010A	<abs	16..	....	...>							
	MOVW DWn,(HA)	DWn→mem16(HA)	--	--	--	--	2	3			1001 010D											
	MOVW An,(HA)	An→mem16(HA)	--	--	--	--	2	3			1001 011A											
	MOVW imm8,DWm	sign(imm8)→DWm	--	--	--	--	4	2			0000 110d	<#8.	...>									*5
	MOVW imm8,Am	zero(imm8)→Am	--	--	--	--	4	2			0000 111a	<#8.	...>									*6
	MOVW imm16,DWm	imm16→DWm	--	--	--	--	6	3			1100 111d	<#16	....	....	...>							

*1 d8 sign-extension *4 A=An, a=Am
*2 d4 zero-extension *5 #8 sign-extension
*3 d8 zero-extension *6 #8 zero-extension

MN101C SERIES INSTRUCTION SET

Group	Mnemonic	Operation	Flag VF	NF	CF	ZF	Code Size	Cycle	Re-peat	extension	Machine Code 1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	Notes
	MOVW imm16,Am	imm16→Am	--	--	--	--	6	3			1101	111a	<#16	....	....	...>						
	MOVW SP,Am	SP→Am	--	--	--	--	3	3			0010	0000	100a									
	MOVW An,SP	An→SP	--	--	--	--	3	3			0010	0000	101A									
	MOVW DWn,DWm	DWn→DWm	--	--	--	--	3	3			0010	1000	00Dd									*1
	MOVW DWn,Am	DWn→Am	--	--	--	--	3	3			0010	0100	11Da									
	MOVW An,DWm	An→DWm	--	--	--	--	3	3			0010	1100	11Ad									
	MOVW An,Am	An→Am	--	--	--	--	3	3			0010	0000	00Aa									*2
PUSH	PUSH Dn	SP-1→SP,Dn→mem8(SP)	--	--	--	--	2	3			1111	10Dn										
	PUSH An	SP-2→SP,An→mem16(SP)	--	--	--	--	2	5			0001	011A										
POP	POP Dn	mem8(SP)→Dn,SP+1→SP	--	--	--	--	2	3			1110	10Dn										
	POP An	mem16(SP)→An,SP+2→SP	--	--	--	--	2	4			0000	011A										
EXT	EXT Dn,DWm	sign(Dn)→DWm	--	--	--	--	3	3			0010	1001	000d									*3
Arithmetic manupulation instructions																						
ADD	ADD Dn,Dm	Dm+Dn→Dm	●	●	●	●	3	2			0011	0011	DnDm									
	ADD imm4,Dm	Dm+sign(imm4)→Dm	●	●	●	●	3	2			1000	00Dm	<#4>									*6
	ADD imm8,Dm	Dm+imm8→Dm	●	●	●	●	4	2			0000	10Dm	<#8.	...>								
ADDC	ADDC Dn,Dm	Dm+Dn+CF→Dm	●	●	●	●	3	2	○		0011	1011	DnDm									
ADDW	ADDW DWn,DWm	DWm+DWn→DWm	●	●	●	●	3	3	○		0010	0101	00Dd									*1
	ADDW DWn,Am	Am+DWn→Am	●	●	●	●	3	3	○		0010	0101	10Da									
	ADDW imm4,Am	Am+sign(imm4)→Am	●	●	●	●	3	2			1110	110a	<#4>									*6
	ADDW imm8,Am	Am+sign(imm8)→Am	●	●	●	●	5	3			0010	1110	110a	<#8.	...>							*7
	ADDW imm16,Am	Am+imm16→Am	●	●	●	●	7	4			0010	0101	011a	<#16	....	....	...>					
	ADDW imm4,SP	SP+sign(imm4)→SP	--	--	--	--	3	2			1111	1101	<#4>									*6
	ADDW imm8,SP	SP+sign(imm8)→SP	--	--	--	--	4	2			1111	1100	<#8.	...>								*7
	ADDW imm16,SP	SP+imm16→SP	--	--	--	--	7	4			0010	1111	1100	<#16	....	....	...>					
	ADDW imm16,DWm	DWm+imm16→DWm	●	●	●	●	7	4			0010	0101	010d	<#16	....	....	...>					
ADDUW	ADDUW Dn,Am	Am+zero(Dn)→Am	●	●	●	●	3	3	○		0010	1000	1aDn									*8
ADDSW	ADDSW Dn,Am	Am+sign(Dn)→Am	●	●	●	●	3	3	○		0010	1001	1aDn									
SUB	SUB Dn,Dm(when Dn≠Dm)	Dm-Dn→Dm	●	●	●	●	3	2	○		0010	1010	DnDm									
	SUB Dn,Dn	Dn-Dn→Dn	0	0	0	1	2	1			1000	01Dn										
	SUB imm8,Dm	Dm-imm8→Dm	●	●	●	●	5	3			0010	1010	DmDm	<#8.	...>							
SUBC	SUBC Dn,Dm	Dm-Dn-CF→Dm	●	●	●	●	3	2	○		0010	1011	DnDm									
SUBW	SUBW DWn,DWm	DWm-DWn→DWm	●	●	●	●	3	3			0010	0100	00Dd									*1
	SUBW DWn,Am	Am-DWn→Am	●	●	●	●	3	3			0010	0100	10Da									
	SUBW imm16,DWm	DWm-imm16→DWm	●	●	●	●	7	4			0010	0100	010d	<#16	....	....	...>					
	SUBW imm16,Am	Am-imm16→Am	●	●	●	●	7	4			0010	0100	011a	<#16	....	....	...>					
MULU	MULU Dn,Dm	Dm*Dn→DWk	0	●	●	●	3	8			0010	1111	111D									*4
DIVU	DIVU Dn,DWm	DWm/Dn→DWm-l...DWm-h	●	●	●	●	3	9			0010	1110	111d									*5
CMP	CMP Dn,Dm	Dm-Dn...PSW	●	●	●	●	3	2			0011	0010	DnDm									
	CMP imm8,Dm	Dm-imm8...PSW	●	●	●	●	4	2			1100	00Dm	<#8.	...>								
	CMP imm8,(abs8)	mem8(abs8)-imm8...PSW	●	●	●	●	6	3			0000	0100	<abs	8..>	<#8.	...>						
	CMP imm8,(abs12)	mem8(abs12)-imm8...PSW	●	●	●	●	7	3			0000	0101	<abs	12..	...>	<#8.	...>					
	CMP imm8,(abs16)	mem8(abs16)-imm8...PSW	●	●	●	●	9	5			0011	1101	1000	<abs	16..	....	...>	<#8.	...>			
CMPW	CMPW DWn,DWm	DWm-DWn...PSW	●	●	●	●	3	3			0010	1000	01Dd									*1
	CMPW DWn,Am	Am-DWn...PSW	●	●	●	●	3	3			0010	0101	11Da									
	CMPW An,Am	Am-An...PSW	●	●	●	●	3	3			0010	0000	01Aa									*2
	CMPW imm16,DWm	DWm-imm16...PSW	●	●	●	●	6	3			1100	110d	<#16	....	....	...>						
	CMPW imm16,Am	Am-imm16...PSW	●	●	●	●	6	3			1101	110a	<#16	....	....	...>						
Logical manipulation instructions																						
AND	AND Dn,Dm	Dm&Dn→Dm	0	●	0	●	3	2			0011	0111	DnDm									
	AND imm8,Dm	Dm&imm8→Dm	0	●	0	●	4	2			0001	11Dm	<#8.	...>								
	AND imm8,PSW	PSW&imm8→PSW	●	●	●	●	5	3			0010	1001	0010	<#8.	...>							
OR	OR Dn,Dm	DmIDn→Dm	0	●	0	●	3	2			0011	0110	DnDm									
	OR imm8,Dm	DmIimm8→Dm	0	●	0	●	4	2			0001	10Dm	<#8.	...>								
	OR imm8,PSW	PSWIimm8→PSW	●	●	●	●	5	3			0010	1001	0011	<#8.	...>							
XOR	XOR Dn,Dm	Dm^Dn→Dm	0	●	0	●	3	2			0011	1010	DnDm									*9
	XOR imm8,Dm	Dm^imm8→Dm	0	●	0	●	5	3			0011	1010	DmDm	<#8.	...>							

*1 D=DWn, d=DWm
*2 A=An, a=Am
*3 d=DWm
*4 D=DWk
*5 D=DWm
*6 #4 sign-extension
*7 #8 sign-extension
*8 Dn zero extension
*9 m≠n

MN101C SERIES INSTRUCTION SET

Group	Mnemonic	Operation	Flag VF	Flag NF	Flag CF	Flag ZF	Code Size	Cycle	Re-peat	Extension	Machine Code 1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	Notes
NOT	NOT Dn	¯Dn→Dn=	0	●	0	●	3	2			0010	0010	10Dn									
ASR	ASR Dn	Dn.msb→temp,Dn.lsb→CF Dn>>1→Dn,temp→Dn.msb	0	--	●	●	3	2	○		0010	0011	10Dn									
LSR	LSR Dn	Dn.lsb→CF,Dn>>1→Dn 0→Dn.msb	0	0	●	●	3	2	○		0010	0011	11Dn									
ROR	ROR Dn	Dn.lsb→temp,Dn>>1→Dn CF→Dn.msb,temp→CF	0	●	●	●	3	2	○		0010	0010	11Dn									
Bit manipulation instructions																						
BSET	BSET (io8)bp	mem8(IOTOP+io8)&bpdata...PSW 1→mem8(IOTOP+io8)bp	0	●	0	●	5	5			0011	1000	0bp.	<io8	...>							
	BSET (abs8)bp	mem8(abs8)&bpdata...PSW 1→mem8(abs8)bp	0	●	0	●	4	4			1011	0bp.	<abs	8..>								
	BSET (abs16)bp	mem8(abs16)&bpdata...PSW 1→mem8(abs16)bp	0	●	0	●	7	6			0011	1100	0bp.	<abs	16..	....	...>					
BCLR	BCLR (io8)bp	mem8(IOTOP+io8)&bpdata...PSW 0→mem8(IOTOP+io8)bp	0	●	0	●	5	5			0011	1000	1bp.	<io8	...>							
	BCLR (abs8)bp	mem8(abs8)&bpdata...PSW 0→mem8(abs8)bp	0	●	0	●	4	4			1011	1bp.	<abs	8..>								
	BCLR (abs16)bp	mem8(abs16)&bpdata...PSW 0→mem8(abs16)bp	0	●	0	●	7	6			0011	1100	1bp.	<abs	16..	....	...>					
BTST	BTST imm8,Dm	Dm&imm8...PSW	0	●	0	●	5	3			0010	0000	11Dm	<#8.	...>							
	BTST (abs16)bp	mem8(abs16)&bpdata...PSW	0	●	0	●	7	5			0011	1101	0bp.	<abs	16..	....	...>					
Branch instructions																						
Bcc	BEQ label	if(ZF=1), PC+3+d4(label)+H→PC if(ZF=0), PC+3→PC	--	--	--	--	3	2/3			1001	000H	<d4>									*1
	BEQ label	if(ZF=1), PC+4+d7(label)+H→PC if(ZF=0), PC+4→PC	--	--	--	--	4	2/3			1000	1010	<d7.	...H								*2
	BEQ label	if(ZF=1), PC+5+d11(label)+H→PC if(ZF=0), PC+5→PC	--	--	--	--	5	2/3			1001	1010	<d11	....	...H							*3
	BNE label	if(ZF=0), PC+3+d4(label)+H→PC if(ZF=1), PC+3→PC	--	--	--	--	3	2/3			1001	001H	<d4>									1
	BNE label	if(ZF=0), PC+4+d7(label)+H→PC if(ZF=1), PC+4→PC	--	--	--	--	4	2/3			1000	1011	<d7.	...H								*2
	BNE label	if(ZF=0), PC+5+d11(label)+H→PC if(ZF=1), PC+5→PC	--	--	--	--	5	2/3			1001	1011	<d11	....	...H							*3
	BGE label	if((VF^NF)=0),PC+4+d7(label)+H→PC if((VF^NF)=1),PC+4→PC	--	--	--	--	4	2/3			1000	1000	<d7.	...H								*2
	BGE label	if((VF^NF)=0),PC+5+d11(label)+H→PC if((VF^NF)=1),PC+5→PC	--	--	--	--	5	2/3			1001	1000	<d11	....	...H							*3
	BCC label	if(CF=0),PC+4+d7(label)+H→PC if(CF=1), PC+4→PC	--	--	--	--	4	2/3			1000	1100	<d7.	...H								*2
	BCC label	if(CF=0), PC+5+d11(label)+H→PC if(CF=1), PC+5→PC	--	--	--	--	5	2/3			1001	1100	<d11	....	...H							*3
	BCS label	if(CF=1),PC+4+d7(label)+H→PC if(CF=0), PC+4→PC	--	--	--	--	4	2/3			1000	1101	<d7.	...H								*2
	BCS label	if(CF=1), PC+5+d11(label)+H→PC if(CF=0), PC+5→PC	--	--	--	--	5	2/3			1001	1101	<d11	....	...H							*3
	BLT label	if((VF^NF)=1),PC+4+d7(label)+H→PC if((VF^NF)=0),PC+4→PC	--	--	--	--	4	2/3			1000	1110	<d7.	...H								*2
	BLT label	if((VF^NF)=1),PC+5+d11(label)+H→PC if((VF^NF)=0),PC+5→PC	--	--	--	--	5	2/3			1001	1110	<d11	....	...H							*3
	BLE label	if((VF^NF)|ZF=1),PC+4+d7(label)+H→PC if((VF^NF)|ZF=0),PC+4→PC	--	--	--	--	4	2/3			1000	1111	<d7.	...H								*2
	BLE label	if((VF^NF)|ZF=1),PC+5+d11(label)+H→PC if((VF^NF)|ZF=0),PC+5→PC	--	--	--	--	5	2/3			1001	1111	<d11	....	...H							*3
	BGT label	if((VF^NF)|ZF=0),PC+5+d7(label)+H→PC if((VF^NF)|ZF=1),PC+5→PC	--	--	--	--	5	3/4			0010	0010	0001	<d7.	...H							*2

*1 d4 sign-extension
*2 d7 sign-extension
*3 d11 sign-extension

MN101C SERIES INSTRUCTION SET

Group	Mnemonic	Operation	Flag VF	Flag NF	Flag CF	Flag ZF	Code Size	Cycle	Re-peat	Exten-sion	Machine Code 1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	Notes
Bcc	BGT label	if((VF^NF)|ZF=0),PC+6+d11(label)+H→PC if((VF^NF)|ZF=1),PC+6→PC	--	--	--	--	6	3/4			0010	0011	0001	<d11	....	...H						*3
	BHI label	if(CFIZF=0),PC+5+d7(label)+H→PC if(CFIZF=1), PC+5→PC	--	--	--	--	5	3/4			0010	0010	0010	<d7.	...H							*2
	BHI label	if(CFIZF=0),PC+6+d11(label)+H→PC if(CFIZF=1), PC+6→PC	--	--	--	--	6	3/4			0010	0011	0010	<d11	....	...H						*3
	BLS label	if(CFIZF=1),PC+5+d7(label)+H→PC if(CFIZF=0), PC+5→PC	--	--	--	--	5	3/4			0010	0010	0011	<d7.	...H							*2
	BLS label	if(CFIZF=1),PC+6+d11(label)+H→PC if(CFIZF=0), PC+6→PC	--	--	--	--	6	3/4			0010	0011	0011	<d11	....	...H						*3
	BNC label	if(NF=0),PC+5+d7(label)+H→PC if(NF=1),PC+5→PC	--	--	--	--	5	3/4			0010	0010	0100	<d7.	...H							*2
	BNC label	if(NF=0),PC+6+d11(label)+H→PC if(NF=1),PC+6→PC	--	--	--	--	6	3/4			0010	0011	0100	<d11	....	...H						*3
	BNS label	if(NF=1),PC+5+d7(label)+H→PC if(NF=0),PC+5→PC	--	--	--	--	5	3/4			0010	0010	0101	<d7.	...H							*2
	BNS label	if(NF=1),PC+6+d11(label)+H→PC if(NF=0),PC+6→PC	--	--	--	--	6	3/4			0010	0011	0101	<d11	....	...H						*3
	BVC label	if(VF=0),PC+5+d7(label)+H→PC if(VF=1),PC+5→PC	--	--	--	--	5	3/4			0010	0010	0110	<d7.	...H							*2
	BVC label	if(VF=0),PC+6+d11(label)+H→PC if(VF=1),PC+6→PC	--	--	--	--	6	3/4			0010	0011	0110	<d11	....	...H						*3
	BVS label	if(VF=1),PC+5+d7(label)+H→PC if(VF=0),PC+5→PC	--	--	--	--	5	3/4			0010	0010	0111	<d7.	...H							*2
	BVS label	if(VF=1),PC+6+d11(label)+H→PC if(VF=0),PC+6→PC	--	--	--	--	6	3/4			0010	0011	0111	<d11	....	...H						*3
	BRA label	PC+3+d4(label)+H→PC	--	--	--	--	3	3			1110	111H	<d4>									*1
	BRA label	PC+4+d7(label)+H→PC	--	--	--	--	4	3			1000	1001	<d7.	...H								*2
	BRA label	PC+5+d11(label)+H→PC	--	--	--	--	5	3			1001	1001	<d11	....	...H							*3
CBEQ	CBEQ imm8,Dm,label	if(Dm=imm8),PC+6+d7(label)+H→PC if(Dm≠imm8),PC+6→PC	●	●	●	●	6	3/4			1100	10Dm	<#8.	...>	<d7.	...H						*2
	CBEQ imm8,Dm,label	if(Dm=imm8),PC+8+d11(label)+H→PC if(Dm≠imm8),PC+8→PC	●	●	●	●	8	4/5			0010	1100	10Dm	<#8.	...>	<d11	....	...H				*3
	CBEQ imm8,(abs8),label	if(mem8(abs8)=imm8),PC+9+d7(label)+H→PC if(mem8(abs8)≠imm8),PC+9→PC	●	●	●	●	9	6/7			0010	1101	1100	<abs	8..>	<#8.	...>	<d7.	...H			*2
	CBEQ imm8,(abs8),label	if(mem8(abs8)=imm8),PC+10+d11(label)+H→PC if(mem8(abs8)≠imm8),PC+10→PC	●	●	●	●	10	6/7			0010	1101	1101	<abs	8..>	<#8.	...>	<d11	....	...H		*3
	CBEQ imm8,(abs16),label	if(mem8(abs16)=imm8),PC+11+d7(label)+H→PC if(mem8(abs16)≠imm8),PC+11→PC	●	●	●	●	11	7/8			0011	1101	1100	<abs	16..	....	...>	<#8.	...>	<d7.	...H	*2
	CBEQ imm8,(abs16),label	if(mem8(abs16)=imm8),PC+12+d11(label)+H→PC if(mem8(abs16)≠imm8),PC+12→PC	●	●	●	●	12	7/8			0011	1101	1101	<abs	16..	....	...>	<#8.	...>	<d11	....	...H	*3
CBNE	CBNE imm8,Dm,label	if(Dm≠imm8),PC+6+d7(label)+H→PC if(Dm=imm8),PC+6→PC	●	●	●	●	6	3/4			1101	10Dm	<#8.	...>	<d7.	..H>						*2
	CBNE imm8,Dm,label	if(Dm≠imm8),PC+8+d11(label)+H→PC if(Dm=imm8),PC+8→PC	●	●	●	●	8	4/5			0010	1101	10Dm	<#8.	...>	<d11	....	...H				*3
	CBNE imm8,(abs8),label	if(mem8(abs8)≠imm8),PC+9+d7(label)+H→PC if(mem8(abs8)=imm8),PC+9→PC	●	●	●	●	9	6/7			0010	1101	1110	<abs	8..>	<#8.	...>	<d7.	...H			*2
	CBNE imm8,(abs8),label	if(mem8(abs8)≠imm8),PC+10+d11(label)+H→PC if(mem8(abs8)=imm8),PC+10→PC	●	●	●	●	10	6/7			0010	1101	1111	<abs	8..>	<#8.	...>	<d11	....	...H		*3
	CBNE imm8,(abs16),label	if(mem8(abs16)≠imm8),PC+11+d7(label)+H→PC if(mem8(abs16)=imm8),PC+11→PC	●	●	●	●	11	7/8			0011	1101	1110	<abs	16..	....	...>	<#8.	...>	<d7.	...H	*2
	CBNE imm8,(abs16),label	if(mem8(abs16)≠imm8),PC+12+d11(label)+H→PC if(mem8(abs16)=imm8),PC+12→PC	●	●	●	●	12	7/8			0011	1101	1111	<abs	16..	....	...>	<#8.	...>	<d11	....	...H	*3
TBZ	TBZ (abs8)bp,label	if(mem8(abs8)bp=0),PC+7+d7(label)+H→PC if(mem8(abs8)bp=1),PC+7→PC	0	●	0	●	7	6/7			0011	0000	0bp.	<abs	8..>	<d7.	...H					*2
	TBZ (abs8)bp,label	if(mem8(abs8)bp=0),PC+8+d11(label)+H→PC if(mem8(abs8)bp=1),PC+8→PC	0	●	0	●	8	6/7			0011	0000	1bp.	<abs	8..>	<d11	....	...H				*3

*1 d4 sign-extension
*2 d7 sign-extension
*3 d11 sign-extension

MN101C SERIES INSTRUCTION SET

Group	Mnemonic	Operation	Flag VF	Flag NF	Flag CF	Flag ZF	Code Size	Cycle	Re-peat	Extension	Machine Code 1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	Notes
TBZ	TBZ (io8)bp,label	if(mem8(IOTOP+io8)bp=0),PC+7+d7(label)+H→PC if(mem8(IOTOP+io8)bp=1),PC+7→PC	0	●	0	●	7	6/7			0011	0100	0bp.	<io8	...>	<d7.	...H					*1
	TBZ (io8)bp,label	if(mem8(IOTOP+io8)bp=0),PC+8+d11(label)+H→PC if(mem8(IOTOP+io8)bp=1),PC+8→PC	0	●	0	●	8	6/7			0011	0100	1bp.	<io8	...>	<d11	....	...H				*2
	TBZ (abs16)bp,label	if(mem8(abs16)bp=0),PC+9+d7(label)+H→PC if(mem8(abs16)bp=1),PC+9→PC	0	●	0	●	9	7/8			0011	1110	0bp.	<abs	16..	....	...>	<d7.	...H			*1
	TBZ (abs16)bp,label	if(mem8(abs16)bp=0),PC+10+d11(label)+H→PC if(mem8(abs16)bp=1),PC+10→PC	0	●	0	●	10	7/8			0011	1110	1bp.	<abs	16..	....	...>	<d11	....	...H		*2
TBNZ	TBNZ (abs8)bp,label	if(mem8(abs8)bp=1),PC+7+d7(label)+H→PC if(mem8(abs8)bp=0),PC+7→PC	0	●	0	●	7	6/7			0011	0001	0bp.	<abs	8..>	<d7.	...H					*1
	TBNZ (abs8)bp,label	if(mem8(abs8)bp=1),PC+8+d11(label)+H→PC if(mem8(abs8)bp=0),PC+8→PC	0	●	0	●	8	6/7			0011	0001	1bp.	<abs	8..>	<d11	....	...H				*2
	TBNZ (io8)bp,label	if(mem8(io)bp=1),PC+7+d7(label)+H→PC if(mem8(io)bp=0),PC+7→PC	0	●	0	●	7	6/7			0011	0101	0bp.	<io8	...>	<d7.	...H					*1
	TBNZ (io8)bp,label	if(mem8(io)bp=1),PC+8+d11(label)+H→PC if(mem8(io)bp=0),PC+8→PC	0	●	0	●	8	6/7			0011	0101	1bp.	<io8	...>	<d11	....	...H				*2
	TBNZ (abs16)bp,label	if(mem8(abs16)bp=1),PC+9+d7(label)+H→PC if(mem8(abs16)bp=0),PC+9→PC	0	●	0	●	9	7/8			0011	1111	0bp.	<abs	16..	....	...>	<d7.	...H			*1
	TBNZ (abs16)bp,label	if(mem8(abs16)bp=1),PC+10+d11(label)+H→PC if(mem8(abs16)bp=0),PC+10→PC	0	●	0	●	10	7/8			0011	1111	1bp.	<abs	16..	....	...>	<d11	....	...H		*2
JMP	JMP (An)	0→PC.17-16,An→PC.15-0,0→PC.H	---	---	---	---	3	4			0010	0001	00A0									
	JMP label	abs18(label)+H→PC	---	---	---	---	7	5			0011	1001	0aaH	<abs	18.b	p15~	0..>					*5
JSR	JSR (An)	SP-3→SP,(PC+3).bp7-0→mem8(SP) (PC+3).bp15-8→mem8(SP+1) (PC+3).H→mem8(SP+2).bp7, 0→mem8(SP+2).bp6-2, (PC+3).bp17-16→mem8(SP+2).bp1-0 0→PC.bp17-16 An→PC.bp15-0,0→PC.H	---	---	---	---	3	7			0010	0001	00A1									
	JSR label	SP-3→SP,(PC+5).bp7-0→mem8(SP) (PC+5).bp15-8→mem8(SP+1) (PC+5).H→mem8(SP+2).bp7, 0→mem8(SP+2).bp6-2, (PC+5).bp17-16→mem8(SP+2).bp1-0 PC+5+d12(label)+H→PC	---	---	---	---	5	6				0001	000H	<d12	....	...>						*3
	JSR label	SP-3→SP,(PC+6).bp7-0→mem8(SP) (PC+6).bp15-8→mem8(SP+1) (PC+6).H→mem8(SP+2).bp7, 0→mem8(SP+2).bp6-2, (PC+6).bp17-16→mem8(SP+2).bp1-0 PC+6+d16(label)+H→PC	---	---	---	---	6	7				0001	001H	<d16	....	....	...>					*4
	JSR label	SP-3→SP,(PC+7).bp7-0→mem8(SP) (PC+7).bp15-8→mem8(SP+1) (PC+7).H→mem8(SP+2).bp7, 0→mem8(SP+2).bp6-2, (PC+7).bp17-16→mem8(SP+2).bp1-0 abs18(label)+H→PC	---	---	---	---	7	8			0011	1001	1aaH	<abs	18.b	p15~	0..>					*5
	JSRV (tbl4)	SP-3→SP,(PC+3).bp7-0→mem8(SP) (PC+3).bp15-8→mem8(SP+1) (PC+3).H→mem8(SP+2).bp7 0→mem8(SP+2).bp6-2, (PC+3).bp17-16→mem8(SP+2).bp1-0 mem8(x'004080+tbl4<<2)→PC.bp7-0 mem8(x'004080+tbl4<<2+1)→PC.bp15-8 mem8(x'004080+tbl4<<2+2).bp7→PC.H mem8(x'004080+tbl4<<2+2).bp1-0→ PC.bp17-16	---	---	---	---	3	9				1111	1110	<t4>								
NOP	NOP	PC+2→PC	---	---	---	---	2	1	○			0000	0000									

*1 d7 sign-extension
*2 d11 sign-extension
*3 d12 sign-extension
*4 d16 sign-extension
*5 aa=abs18.17 - 16

MN101C SERIES INSTRUCTION SET

Group	Mnemonic	Operation	Flag VF	Flag NF	Flag CF	Flag ZF	Code Size	Cycle	Re-peat	Exten-sion	Machine Code 1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	Notes
RTS	RTS	mem8(SP)→(PC).bp7-0 mem8(SP+1)→(PC).bp15-8 mem8(SP+2).bp7→(PC).H mem8(SP+2).bp1-0→(PC).bp17-16 SP+3→SP	---	---	---	---	2	7			0000 0001											
RTI	RTI	mem8(SP)→PSW mem8(SP+1)→(PC).bp7-0 mem8(SP+2)→(PC).bp15-8 mem8(SP+3).bp7→(PC).H mem8(SP+3).bp1-0→(PC).bp17-16 mem8(SP+4)→HA-l mem8(SP+5)→HA-h SP+6→SP	●	●	●	●	2	11			0000 0011											
Contorl instructions																						
REP	REP imm3	imm3-1→RPC	---	---	---	---	3	2			0010 0001 1rep											*1

*1 no repeat whn imm3=0, (rep: imm3-1)

Other than the instruction of MN101C Series,the assembler of this Series has the following instructions as macro instructions.
The assembler will interpret the macro instructions below as the assembler instructions.

macro instructions		replaced instructions		remarks
INC	Dn	ADD	1,Dn	
DEC	Dn	ADD	-1,Dn	
INC	An	ADDW	1,An	
DEC	An	ADDW	-1,An	
INC2	An	ADDW	2,An	
DEC2	An	ADDW	-2,An	
CLR	Dn	SUB	Dn,Dm	n=m
ASL	Dn	ADD	Dn,Dm	n=m
LSL	Dn	ADD	Dn,Dm	n=m
ROL	Dn	ADDC	Dn,Dm	n=m
NEG	Dn	NOT ADD	Dn 1,Dn	
NOPL		MOVW	DWn,DWm	n=m
MOV	(SP),Dn	MOV	(0,SP),Dn	
MOV	Dn,(SP)	MOV	Dn,(0,SP)	
MOVW	(SP),DWn	MOVW	(0,SP),DWn	
MOVW	DWn,(SP)	MOVW	DWn,(0,SP)	
MOVW	(SP),An	MOVW	(0,SP),An	
MOVW	An,(SP)	MOVW	An,(0,SP)	

Ver3.2(2002.01.31)

17.6 Instruction Map

MN101C SERIES INSTRUCTION MAP

1st nibble\2nd nibble

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
0	NOP	RTS	MOV #8,(io8)	RTI	CMP #8,(abs8)/(abs12)		POP An		ADD #8,Dm				MOVW #8,DWm		MOVW #8,Am	
1	JSR d12(label)		JSR d16(label)		MOV #8,(abs8)/(abs12)		PUSH An		OR #8,Dm				AND #8,Dm			
2	When the exension code is b'oo10'															
3	When the extension code is b'0011'															
4	MOV (abs12),Dm				MOV (abs8),Dm				MOV (An),Dm							
5	MOV Dn,(abs12)				MOV Dn,(abs8)				MOV Dn,(Am)							
6	MOV (io8),Dm				MOV (d4,SP),Dm				MOV (d8,An),Dm							
7	MOV Dn,(io8)				MOV Dn,(d4,SP)				MOV Dn,(d8,Am)							
8	ADD #4,Dm				SUB Dn,Dn				BGE d7	BRA d7	BEQ d7	BNE d7	BCC d7	BCS d7	BLT d7	BLE d7
9	BEQ d4		BNE d4		MOVW DWn,(HA)		MOVW An,(HA)		BGE d11	BRA d11	BEQ d11	BNE d11	BCC d11	BCS d11	BLT d11	BLE d11
A	MOV Dn,Dm / MOV #8,Dm															
B	BSET (abs8)bp								BCLR (abs8)bp							
C	CMP #8,Dm				MOVW (abs8),Am		MOVW (abs8),DWm		CBEQ #8,Dm,d7				CMPW #16,DWm		MOVW #16,DWm	
D	MOV Dn,(HA)				MOVW An,(abs8)		MOVW DWn,(abs8)		CBNE #8,Dm,d7				CMPW #16,Am		MOVW #16,Am	
E	MOVW (An),DWm				MOVW (d4,SP),Am		MOVW (d4,SP),DWm		POP Dn				ADDW #4,Am		BRA d4	
F	MOVW DWn,(Am)				MOVW An,(d4,SP)		MOVW DWn,(d4,SP)		PUSH Dn				ADDW #8,SP	ADDW #4,SP	JSRV (tbl4)	

Extension code: b'0010'

2nd nible\3rd nibble

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
0	MOVW An,Am				CMPW An,Am				MOVW SP,Am		MOVW An,SP		BTST #8,Dm			
1	JMP (A0)	JSR (A0)	JMP (A1)	JSR (A1)	MOV PSW,Dm				REP #3							
2		BGT d7	BHI d7	BLS d7	BNC d7	BNS d7	BVC d7	BVS d7	NOT Dn				ROR Dn			
3		BGT d11	BHI d11	BLS d11	BNC d11	BNS d11	BVC d11	BVS d11	ASR Dn				LSR Dn			
4	SUBW DWn,DWm				SUBW #16,DWm		SUBW #16,Am		SUBW DWn,Am				MOVW DWn,Am			
5	ADDW DWn,DWm				ADDW #16,DWm		ADDW #16,Am		ADDW DWn,Am				CMPW DWn,Am			
6	MOV (d16,SP),Dm				MOV (d8,SP),Dm				MOV (d16,An),Dm							
7	MOV Dn,(d16,SP)				MOV Dn,(d8,SP)				MOV Dn,(d16,Am)							
8	MOVW DWn,DWm (NOPL @n=m)				CMPW DWn,DWm				ADDUW Dn,Am							
9	EXT Dn,DWm		AND #8,PSW	OR #8,PSW	MOV Dn,PSW				ADDSW Dn,Am							
A	SUB Dn,Dm / SUB #8,Dm															
B	SUBC Dn,Dm															
C	MOV (abs16),Dm				MOVW (abs16),Am		MOVW (abs16),DWm		CBEQ #8,Dm,d12				MOVW An,DWm			
D	MOV Dn,(abs16)				MOVW An,(abs16)		MOVW DWn,(abs16)		CBNE #8,Dm,d12				CBEQ #8,(abs8),d7/d11		CBNE #8,(abs8),d7/d11	
E	MOVW (d16,SP),Am		MOVW (d16,SP),DWm		MOVW (d8,SP),Am		MOVW (d8,SP),DWm		MOVW (An),Am				ADDW #8,Am		DIVU	
F	MOVW An,(d16,SP)		MOVW DWn,(d16,SP)		MOVW An,(d8,SP)		MOVW DWn,(d8,SP)		MOVW An,(Am)				ADDW #16,SP		MULU	

Extension code: b'0011'

2nd nibble\ 3rd nibble	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
0	TBZ (abs8)bp,d7								TBZ (abs8)bp,d11							
1	TBNZ (abs8)bp,d7								TBNZ (abs8)bp,d11							
2	CMP Dn,Dm															
3	ADD Dn,Dm															
4	TBZ (io8)bp,d7								TBZ (io8)bp,d11							
5	TBNZ (io8)bp,d7								TBNZ (io8)bp,d11							
6	OR Dn,Dm															
7	AND Dn,Dm															
8	BSET (io8)bp								BCLR (io8)bp							
9	JMP abs18(label)								JSR abs18(label)							
A	XOR Dn,Dm / XOR #8,Dm															
B	ADDC Dn,Dm															
C	BSET (abs16)bp								BCLR (abs16)bp							
D	BTST (abs16)bp								cmp #8,(abs16)	mov #8,(abs16)			CBEQ #8,(abs16),d7/11		CBNE #8,(abs16),d7/11	
E	TBZ (abs16)bp,d7								TBZ (abs16)bp,d11							
F	TBNZ (abs16)bp,d7								TBNZ (abs16)bp,d11							

Ver2.1(2001.03.26)

Record of Changes

The following shows the changes in the publication of “MN101C78A/F78A LSI User’s Manual”(Edition: 1.2 to 1.3)

Page	Line	Definition	Former Edition (1.2)	New Edition (1.3)
Cover	-	Add	MN101C78A LSI User’s Manual	MN101C78A/F78A LSI User’s Manual

MN101C78A/F78A
LSI User's Manual

March, 2004 1st Edition 3rd Printing

Issued by Matsushita Electric Industrial Co., Ltd.

SALES OFFICES

□NORTH AMERICA

● **U.S.A. Sales Office:**
Panasonic Industrial Company□ [PIC]
• **New Jersey Office:**
2 Panasonic Way Secaucus, New Jersey 07094, U.S.A.
Tel:1-201-348-5257 Fax:1-201-392-4652
• **Chicago Office:**
1707 N. Randall Road Elgin, Illinois 60123-7847, U.S.A.
Tel:1-847-468-5720 Fax:1-847-468-5725
• **San Jose Office:**
2033 Gateway Place, Suite 200, San Jose, California 95110, U.S.A
Tel:1-408-487-9510 Fax:1-408-436-8037
• **Atlanta Office:**
1225 Northbrook Parkway Suite 1-151 Suwanee, Georgia 30024, U.S.A.
Tel:1-770-338-6953 Fax:1-770-338-6849
• **San Diego Office:**
9444 Balboa Avenue, Suite 185, San Diego, California 92123, U.S.A.
□Tel:1-858-503-2910 Fax:1-858-715-5545

● **Canada Sales Office:**
Panasonic Canada Inc.□ [PCI]
5770 Ambler Drive 27 Mississauga, Ontario L4W 2T3, Canada
Tel:1-905-238-2243 Fax:1-905-238-2414

□LATIN AMERICA

● **Mexico Sales Office:**
Panasonic de Mexico, S.A. de C.V.□ [PANAMEX]
Amores 1120 Col. Del Valle Delegacion Benito Juarez C.P. 03100 Mexico, D.F. Mexico
Tel:52-5-488-1000 Fax:52-5-488-1073
• **Guadalajara Office:**
Sucursal Guadarajara Av. Lazaro Cardenas 2305 Local G-102 Plaza Comercial Abastos; Col. Las Torres Guadalajara, Jal. 44920, Mexico
Tel:52-3-671-1205 Fax:52-3-671-1256

● **Brazil Sales Office:**
Panasonic do Brasil Ltda.□ [PANABRAS]
Caixa Postal 1641, Sao Jose dos Campos, Estado de Sao Paulo, Brasil
Tel:55-12-3935-9000 Fax:55-12-3931-3789

□EUROPE

● **Europe Sales Office:**
Panasonic Industrial Europe GmbH□ [PIE]
• **Germany Sales Office:**
Hans-Pinsel-Strasse 2 85540 Haar, Germany
Tel:49-89-46159-119 Fax:49-89-46159-195

□ASIA

● **Singapore Sales Office:**
Panasonic Semiconductor of South Asia□ [PSSA]
300 Beach Road, #16-01, the Concourse, Singapore 199555, the Republic of Singapore
Tel:65-6390-3688 Fax:65-6390-3689

● **Malaysia Sales Office:**
Panasonic Industrial Company (M) Sdn. Bhd.□ [PICM]
• **Head Office:**
15th Floor, Menara IGB, Mid Valley City, Lingkaran Syed Putra, 59200 Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia
Tel:60-3-2297-6888 Fax:60-6-2284-6898
• **Penang Office:**
Suite 20-07,20th Floor, MWE Plaza, No.8, Lebuh Farquhar,10200 Penang, Malaysia
Tel: 60-4-201-5113 Fax:60-4-261-9989
• **Johore Sales Office:**
Menara Pelangi, Suite8.3A, Level8, No.2, Jalan Kuning, Taman Pelangi, 80400 Johor Bahru, Johor, Malaysia
Tel:60-7-331-3822 Fax:60-7-355-3996

● **Thailand Sales Office:**
Panasonic Industrial (Thailand) Ltd.□ [PICT]
252-133 Muang Thai-Phatra Complex Building, 31st Floor Rachadaphisek Road, Huaykwang, Bangkok 10320, Thailand
Tel:66-2-693-3400 to 3421 Fax:66-2-693-3422 to 3427

● **Philippines Sales Office:**
Panasonic Industrial Sales Philippines□ [PISP]
102 Laguna Boulevard,Bo.Don Jose Laguna Technopark, Santa. Rosa, Laguna 4026, the Philippines
Tel:63-2-520-8615 Fax:63-2-520-8629

● **China Sales Office:**
Panasonic Industrial (Shanghai) Co., Ltd.□ [PI(SH)]
Floor 12, China Insurance Building, 166 East Road Lujiazui, Pudong New District, Shanghai 200120, China
Tel:86-21-6841-9642 Fax:86-21-6841-9631
Panasonic Industrial (Tianjin) Co., Ltd. [PI(TJ)]
Room No.1001, Tianjin International Building 75, Nanjin Road, Tianjin 300050, China
Tel:86-22-2313-9771 Fax:86-22-2313-9770
Panasonic SH Industrial Sales (Shenzhen) Co., Ltd.□[PSI(SZ)]
• **Shum Yip Centre Office:**
25F, Shum Yip Centre, #5045, East Shennan Road, Shenzhen, China
Tel:86-755-8211-0888 Fax:86-755-8211-0970
Panasonic Shun Hing Industrial Sales (Hong Kong) Co., Ltd.□ [PSI(HK)]
11th Floor, Great Eagle Center 23 Harbour Road, Wanchai, Hong Kong
Tel:852-2529-7322 Fax:852-2865-3697

● **Taiwan Sales Office:**
Panasonic Industrial Sales (Taiwan) Co.,Ltd.□ [PIST]
• **Head Office:**
6F, 550, Sec. 4, Chung Hsiao E. RD. Taipei 110, Taiwan
Tel:886-2-2757-1900 Fax:886-2-2757-1906
• **Kaohsiung Office:**
6th Floor, Hsin Kong Bldg. No.251, Chi Hsien 1st Road, Kaohsiung 800, Taiwan
Tel:886-7-346-3815 Fax:886-7-236-8362

● **Korea Sales Office:**
Panasonic Industrial Korea Co., Ltd.□ [PIKL]
Kukje Center Bldg. 11th Floor, 191 Hangangro 2ga, Youngsan-ku, Seoul 140-702, Korea
Tel:82-2-795-9600 Fax:82-2-795-1542

Semiconductor Company, Matsushita Electric Industrial Co., Ltd.
Nagaokakyo, Kyoto 617-8520, Japan
Tel:075-951-8151
http://panasonic.co.jp/semicon/e-index.html
050204□ Printed in Japan